



# PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery/ PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra

---

## Reference Guide

### Windows®

The software to which this Reference Guide relates is subject to change without notice. All efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy of the contents of this Reference Guide.

The software described in this book is furnished under a license agreement and may be used only in accordance with the terms of the agreement.

Permission is hereby granted to the licensee of the software to which this guide is related to reproduce and distribute copies of this guide for nonprofit educational purposes. The copyright statement on this page must be included on any copy of this work.

Windows® is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation. Acrobat®, the Adobe PDF logo and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries. Facebook® and the "f" logo are registered trademarks of Facebook and its affiliate companies. Google+® and the Google+ icon are registered trademarks of Google Inc. YouTube® and the YouTube® social icon are registered trademarks of YouTube, LLC, which is a Google® company. Instagram® and the Camera logo are trademarks of Instagram, LLC in the United States and elsewhere. Twitter® and the Twitter bird logo are trademarks of Twitter, Inc. Flickr® is a trademark of Yahoo! Inc. Other product names mentioned in this guide may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies and are hereby acknowledged.

VIKING, PFAFF, PREMIER+ and 6D are trademarks of Singer Sourcing Limited LLC

HUSQVARNA is the trademark of Husqvarna AB.

All trademarks are used under license by Singer Sourcing Limited LLC.

© 2019 Singer Sourcing Limited LLC

All rights reserved (Version E)



# Contents

- 1 Chapter 1: Getting Started**
  - 5 Where to Start
  - 6 Parts of the Software Window
  - 9 PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Terms and Conventions
  - 10 Touch Gestures
  - 12 Hoop Selection
  
- 14 Chapter 2: Managing Embroideries**
  - 14 New
  - 14 New Window
  - 14 Open Embroideries
  - 18 Save Embroideries
  - 20 Export
  
- 29 Chapter 3: Viewing Embroideries**
  - 29 3D and 2D View
  - 30 Zoom Commands
  - 32 Overview Window
  - 32 Show Grid
  - 33 Viewing Backgrounds
  - 35 Design Information
  - 38 Design Player
  - 39 Life View
  
- 45 Chapter 4: Changing Colors**
  - 45 Thread Colors
  - 50 Color Tone
  - 52 Quick Colors and Quick Color Themes
  - 52 Quick Color Themes
  - 55 Colors Dialog Box
  
- 57 Chapter 5: Adjusting Embroideries**
  - 57 Selecting Embroideries
  - 62 Grouping Selected Embroideries
  - 66 Move
  - 66 Resize and Scale
  - 67 Rotation
  - 68 Modify Design
  - 69 Flip Vertical and Horizontal
  - 69 Alignment
  - 72 Layout Order
  - 72 Undo and Redo
  - 73 Combine

## 76 Chapter 6: Encore and Endless

- 76 Encore
- 82 Endless Embroidery

## 93 Chapter 7: Modifying Embroideries

- 93 Viewing Embroideries in the Modify Tab
- 94 Cut, Copy, Paste and Duplicate
- 96 Delete
- 96 Select and Edit Single Stitches
- 97 Select a Block of Stitches
- 102 View Selected Colors
- 104 Draw Range

## 106 Chapter 8: ExpressDesign Wizard

- 107 ExpressDesign into Hoop
- 107 ExpressDesign into Rectangle
- 108 Choosing and Optimizing Pictures for the ExpressDesign Wizard
- 112 Choose Design Type
- 113 Choose Picture
- 115 Rotate and Crop Picture
- 117 Outline Finder and Expander
- 118 Monochrome Threshold
- 120 Express Embroidery Options
- 126 Express Trace Options
- 128 Express Border Options
- 131 Using Express Embroidery, Trace and Border

## 136 Chapter 9: Quilt Block Wizard

- 136 Overview
- 136 Quilt Block Wizard
- 137 Select Quilt Block Style
- 138 Select Size
- 140 Load Embroidery
- 141 Adjust Embroidery
- 143 Select Shape
- 144 Select Fill Pattern
- 146 Quilt Block Wizard Examples

## 155 Chapter 10: Backgrounds

- 155 Viewing Backgrounds
- 156 Background Wizard
- 157 Load and Create Backgrounds
- 158 Choose Background
- 159 Load an Existing Background with the Background Wizard
- 160 Make a New Background with the Background Wizard

## 176 Chapter 11: Appliqué

- 176 View and Adjust Appliqué Pieces

- 185 Appliqué Selection
- 188 Background Picture Viewer
- 189 Background Wizard
- 195 Load Picture Wizard
- 198 Appliqué Options

## 201 Chapter 12: Decorations

- 201 Decoration
- 201 Adding Decorations
- 205 Editing Decorations
- 208 Decoration Selection
- 210 Using and Adjusting Decorations

## 216 Chapter 13: Split Project Wizard

- 216 Split Project Wizard
- 216 Using the Split Project Wizard
- 218 Split Embroidery
- 222 Save Embroidery
- 224 Print Options
- 226 Stitch Out and Align Split Project Sections
- 229 Split Project Wizard Examples

## 232 Chapter 14: Using the PhotoStitch Wizard

- 233 PhotoStitch Wizard
- 234 Selecting and Editing Pictures
- 238 Using the PhotoStitch Wizard
- 243 Choose Embroidery Type
- 244 Choose Picture
- 247 Rotate and Crop Picture
- 249 Remove Background
- 252 Picture Options
- 255 Design Size
- 256 Choose Thread Colors
- 260 Choose Thread Colors (Linear PhotoStitch)
- 263 PhotoStitch Embroidery Options
- 265 Color Tile Options
- 268 Using the PhotoStitch Wizard

## 273 Chapter 15: Family Tree Wizard

- 273 Family Tree Wizard
- 276 Family
- 282 Lettering
- 285 Frame
- 287 Connectors
- 289 Create a Family Tree Embroidery

## 292 Chapter 16: Word Sculpt Wizard

- 292 Overview

- 292 Word Sculpt Wizard
- 292 Select Outline
- 294 Select Words
- 296 Word Sculpt Wizard Examples

## 298 Chapter 17: Project-in-the-Hoop Wizard

- 298 Overview
- 298 Project-in-the-Hoop Wizard
- 298 Using the Project-in-the-Hoop Wizard

## 301 Chapter 18: ExpressMonogram Wizard

- 301 ExpressMonogram Wizard
- 304 Create a Monogram
- 308 Monogram
- 310 Full Letter
- 312 Small Letter
- 315 Border
- 317 Adjusting Monograms
- 318 Create a Monogram with a Border
- 323 Create a Two Letter Monogram

## 326 Chapter 19: Creating Lettering

- 329 Font Selection
- 334 Entering Letters
- 335 Lettering Shapes
- 349 Letter Properties
- 353 Fixing Lettering as an Embroidery
- 354 Font Manager
- 357 QuickFont
- 357 Import Font from Embroideries
- 363 Lettering Examples

## 370 Chapter 20: Creating Fonts Automatically

- 370 How to Create a Font
- 373 Select Font
- 378 Set Stitch Options
- 392 Output Options
- 395 Create a Pattern Fill Font

## 398 Chapter 21: Creating SuperDesigns

- 398 Using SuperDesigns
- 401 Edit SuperDesigns
- 402 SuperDesign Options
- 406 Fixing SuperDesigns as Embroideries
- 407 Create a SuperDesign Daisy Chain

## 408 Chapter 22: Frames, Borders and Motifs

- 408 Frames

408	Creating Frames
410	Frame Selection
413	Editing Frames
415	Fixing Frames and Flourishes as Embroideries
415	Using Frames
418	Borders and Motifs
418	Border
422	Motifs
422	Using Motifs

## 424 Chapter 23: Choosing Stitch Properties

425	Pattern Fill
431	Motif Fill
435	Crosshatch Fill
437	Curved Crosshatch Fill
441	MultiWave Fill
444	Echo Fill
446	Shape Fill
449	Radial Fill
450	Spiral Fill
452	QuiltStipple Fill
454	Contour Fill
455	Satin Area
456	Columns
464	Line Types
471	Fill and Satin Patterns

## 476 Chapter 24: Printing

476	Print Page
480	Print

## 482 Chapter 25: Preferences

## 484 Chapter 26: Troubleshooting

484	Error Messages
493	Other Topics

## 504 Chapter 27: Quick Reference Guide

504	Ribbon Tabs
529	Toolbars
531	Design Panel
531	Character Sets

## 534 Chapter 28: Index



Welcome to PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery and PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.

*In this guide we will use the name PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery to refer to features available in both modules. Screen captures show PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*

PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery is available if you own PREMIER+™ 2 EMBROIDERY. PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery and PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra are available if you own PREMIER+™ 2 EXTRA or PREMIER+™ 2 ULTRA. PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery helps you to adjust your embroideries on the computer before you sew. Personalize your embroideries in true 3D in a real hoop, and store the hoop information in your project file. Rotate your embroideries to any degree, mirror them from side to side or end to end and scale or resize your embroideries. Adjust an unlimited number of designs and lettering 'side by side' in multiple windows. Choose from a library of hundreds of SuperDesigns with numerous style options.

Adjust the colors to the thread shades from your preferred manufacturer, or even create your own threads in PREMIER+™ 2 Thread Cache. Add and store Color Effects such as Puffy Foam or Dual Threads, or Twin, Wing, Cutwork and Felting Needles. ColorSort to intelligently re-sort the color order of a design to reduce the number of thread changes. Select multiple designs and align, move, resize or rotate them as a group. Cut, copy or paste and duplicate embroideries between PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System modules.

Use 'Encore' to repeat embroideries in a circle, in 8 line and 28 shape options, or around the hoop. Use the Endless function to make endless embroideries for any hoop.

Add multi-line lettering with your choice of 35 lettering shapes and flexibility to resize and space letters individually. Alternatively, use the ExpressMonogram Wizard. Use the QuickFont Wizard to create new fonts for PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery from most TrueType® or OpenType® fonts on your computer. Select machine motif stitches individually or as lines to create new designs or embellish existing ones, or add SuperDesigns. Surround monograms, names or any design with frames and flourishes or an automatic border with optional appliqué stitching and fabric. Adjust the stitch types and settings for most fonts and SuperDesigns.

Use Design Player  to play through all sections of an embroidery. Use Life View  to view the embroidery in real-world perspective with the desired export options. Save  your project with its design sections and groups kept separate and editable (including lettering, SuperDesigns and frames) in multipart .vp4 format. Finally, Export  in the desired format according to the chosen options to optimize for sewing.

Create appliqué outlines for cutwork needles or your fabric cutter using File, Export Appliqué Pieces, and create placement stitches for decorations when Exporting. Alternatively, create crystal transfer templates for decorations using File, Export Decoration Template. Share pictures and videos of your projects with your friends on popular social media sites (using Life View and Design Player).

# PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra Features

In PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra, use 2D editing to modify individual stitches or whole blocks of stitches, even insert new stitches. Manage colors in your embroideries: move colors up or down, merge color blocks and insert color changes and Stop Commands with stitchout hints.

## ExpressDesign Wizard

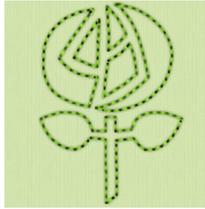
PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra also includes the ExpressDesign Wizard . Use it to automatically create embroideries from a picture, either to fit the current hoop or to fit an area you select. Choose from three design types:

### Express Embroidery



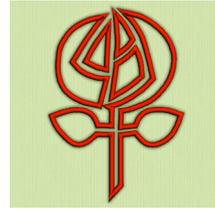
Create a standard embroidery using satin, fill areas and outlining.

### Express Trace



Trace outlines in a picture to create, for example, redwork, quilt stencils and so on.

### Express Border



Create satin line, appliqué, running stitch, triple stitch or motifs around the edges of solid color areas in the picture.

## PhotoStitch Wizard

Use the PhotoStitch Wizard  to create unique embroideries automatically from your own photos, including photos from social media sites. Generate a linear pattern of stitches, or a Maze or Spiral effect, using one thread for a single color result.

### Color PhotoStitch Embroidery



Create an embroidery from a color photo, using multiple threads for a full color result.

### Sepia PhotoStitch Embroidery



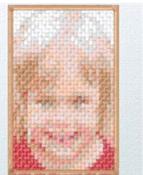
Create a sepia embroidery from a photo to give a heritage look, similar to old photos.

### Monochrome PhotoStitch Embroidery



Create a grayscale embroidery from a black and white photo.

### Color Tile PhotoStitch Embroidery



Create an embroidery from a color photo, generating small blocks of stitches with a tiled effect.

### Linear PhotoStitch Embroidery



Create a single thread embroidery from a photo, generating a linear pattern of stitches, or a Maze or Spiral effect.

*Color PhotoStitch, Sepia PhotoStitch, Monochrome PhotoStitch and Color Tile PhotoStitch options are also available in the PhotoStitch Wizard if you own PREMIER+™ 2 ULTRA.*

## Quilt Block Wizard

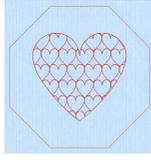
Use the Quilt Block Wizard  to create a filled or outline quilt block automatically. Place a quilting fill around an embroidery!

Filled Quilt Block;  
Inner Embroidery



Create a filled quilt block surrounding an embroidery.

Outline Quilt Block;  
Filled Inner Shape



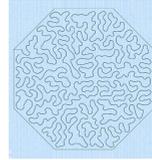
Create an unfilled quilt block containing a filled shape.

Filled Quilt Block;  
Outline Inner Shape



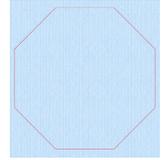
Create a quilt block with an unfilled shape, surrounded by a fill.

Filled Quilt Block;  
No Inner Shape



Fill a quilt block with a motif or pattern.

Outline Quilt Block;  
No Inner Shape



Create a quilt block without any internal shape or fill.

## Audition Features

Use the Background Wizard to view your embroideries on real garments, fabrics and quilt blocks. Also view, reposition and store an unlimited number of appliqués and decorations for your designs.

## Split Project Wizard

Use the Split Project Wizard  to split your embroidery automatically for your preferred hoop.

## Family Tree Wizard

Use the Family Tree Wizard to create an embroidery chart of your family's history quickly and easily. If desired, add individual pictures or PhotoStitch embroideries in PREMIER+™ 2 Family Tree.

*The Family Tree Wizard is available if you own PREMIER+™ 2 ULTRA.*

## PREMIER+™ 2 Card Shop

Use the PREMIER+™ 2 Card Shop module to create personalized embroidered greeting cards automatically with themed templates for special occasions. Adjust the card projects in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra, too!

*PREMIER+™ 2 Card shop is available if you own PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra or PREMIER+™ 2 ULTRA.*

## Finding Information

### User's Guide and Reference Guide

The User's Guide and Reference Guide show how to start the module and provide a quick tour of the main screen. This is followed by information on key features, with short 'How-To' examples, which will help you learn how to use the module. The Reference Guide

additionally contains full reference information. The Reference Guide is supplied in PDF format  ready for printing.

## Tooltips and Online Help

To learn about a function, position the arrow pointer over its icon. A tooltip with the function name and some information will appear.

The online help contains the 'How-To' examples and full reference information. Use the Help icon , press F1 or click the Help button. Where available, a help topic will appear that is relevant to the item where help was requested.

## Sample Guides

The Sample Guides show examples of the Fonts, Motifs, and Stitch Types that are available in the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System. The Sample Guides are supplied in PDF format  ready for printing.

*The Fonts Guide shows the keystrokes used to produce the alternative alphabets used in some fonts in the National category.*

## Viewing and Printing PDF Guides

To find all the Reference and Sample Guides for your PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System software, in Windows® 10 and 8 select the Desktop tile on the start screen. Then in Windows® 10, 8 or 7, double-click the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System shortcut on your desktop, and double-click Reference Guides or Sample Guides. Select the desired PDF guide.

*To view and print the PDF Guides, you will need a PDF reader such as Windows® Reader (included in Windows® 10 and 8) or Adobe® Reader (available from adobe.com).*

## Readme

The most up-to-date details about the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System are in the Readme.rtf file  (Double-click on a Readme file to open it in WordPad or Microsoft® Word.)

## Internet FAQs

The Internet FAQs option on the Help menu connects to a database of frequently asked questions about the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System. Search topics relating to the module you are using, or search all topics.

## Tutorials

The Learning Center option on the Help menu connects to tutorials in the Internet Learning Center. The tutorials or interactive training exercises provide a 'show-me' experience that will help you learn how to use key features of the software.

## Sample Files

Samples are included that are shown in the 'How-To' examples and tutorials. The sample files will be installed to subfolders of Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb or the folder of your choice.

PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra also includes additional clipart, which may be used in the ExpressDesign Wizard. The additional clipart is installed to:  
Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Pics2.

## Where to Start

### Starting PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery

#### Windows® 10; Windows® 8 Start Screen

- 1 At the bottom left of your computer screen, open the Windows® 10 or Windows® 8 Start Screen.
- 2 Type "Prem" and the Search Screen will appear.
- 3 Ensure Apps is selected.
- 4 Click on PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery  to launch it.

#### Windows® 7 Start Menu

- 1 Click the Start button at the bottom left of your computer screen and the Start menu appears.
- 2 Move the arrow pointer to All Programs and another menu will appear.
- 3 Move the arrow pointer to PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System and a menu of programs will appear.
- 4 Click on PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery  to launch it.

#### Shortcuts

An alternative to the Start screen/menu method described previously is to use a Shortcut to PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery. This is created automatically during the installation process.

#### Windows® 10 (Start Screen); Windows® 8

- 1 Click on the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery  tile in the Start Screen.

#### Windows® 10 (Desktop); Windows® 7

- 1 Close or minimize any programs you have running.
- 2 Double-click on the Shortcut to the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System folder. A list of the programs appears.
- 3 Double-click on PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery  to launch it.

### Closing PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery

#### Exit

Ends the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery session. You can also use the Close command on the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Control menu.

#### Shortcuts

- Mouse: Click the Close icon  on the title bar or double-click the Control menu box.
- Keys: Alt + F4

*When you close PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, all other PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System modules will close automatically.*

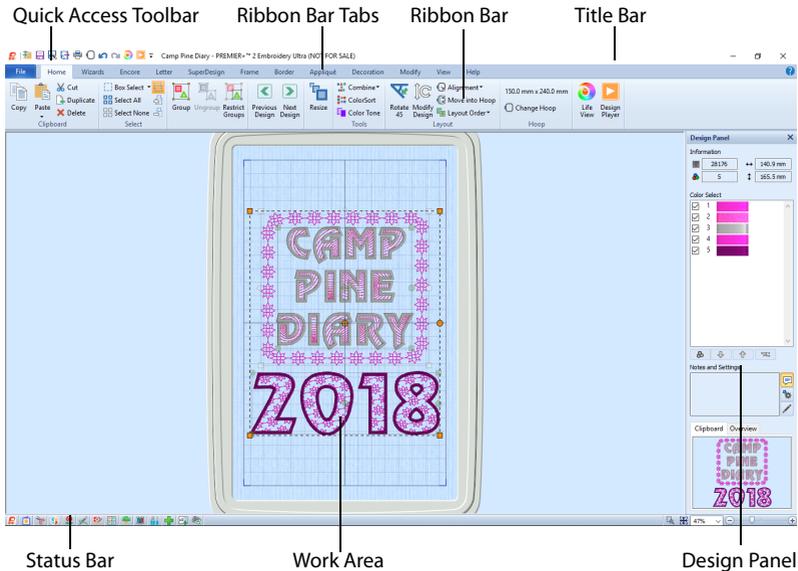
### About PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery

Access via the Help tab. The version number of your PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery module is given here. You will need this if you contact technical support at any time.

## Shortcut

- Keys: Alt, P, A

# Parts of the Software Window



## Title Bar

The title bar at the top of the window is highlighted if PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery is active.



The Quick Access toolbar gives icons for the following frequently used features: Insert, Save, Save As, Export, Print, Change Hoop, Undo, Redo, Life View and Design Player.

If more than one instance of PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery is open, each open window will show the name of the embroidery file.

## Ribbon Bar

There are 13 tabs on the ribbon of PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra: File, Home, Wizards, Encore, Letter, SuperDesign, Frame, Border, Appliqué, Decoration, Modify, View and Help.

*An alternative way to access ribbon options is to press the Alt key, then the highlighted letter of the tab, followed by the highlighted letter of the tab item, e.g. Alt, H, R to change between scale and resize modes. Some functions are available by pressing the Ctrl key and another key at the same time. These shortcuts are shown in the tooltip for the relevant function.*

Use the Home tab to select, copy, group designs, resize, align and rotate, change threads with Color Tone, change the hoop, and display embroideries with Life View and Design Player.

## Wizards Tab

Use the Wizards tab to access the wizards. These are: the ExpressMonogram Wizard , the Endless , the ExpressDesign Wizard , the PhotoStitch Wizard , the

Word Sculpt Wizard , the Quilt Block Wizard , the Project-in-the-Hoop Wizard , and the Split Project Wizard . If PREMIER+™ 2 ULTRA is owned, the Family Tree Wizard  is also available. In PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery only the ExpressMonogram Wizard and the Endless Wizard are available.

Use the Encore tab to repeat embroideries along 8 different line types, in a circle, around one of 28 shapes, or to border your hoop.

Use the Letter tab to add lettering using single or multicolor fonts, fonts using puffy foam or special color effects, and fonts with alternative alphabets. Use the font gallery to choose a font visually from the font categories. Place characters with 35 different lettering shapes, 31 of which can be used with multi-line lettering, and 29 can be used with individual lettering. Select the size, line formatting and adjust stitch types and settings in most fonts. Use the Font Manager to search for fonts by name and size, and to create and delete user fonts. Use the QuickFont Wizard  to create new fonts for PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery from most TrueType® or OpenType® fonts on your computer, and use Import Font from Embroideries  to create a font from embroideries of letters.

Use the SuperDesign tab to add SuperDesigns, and adjust their size and appearance.

Use the Frame tab to surround a design with over 700 beautiful decorative frame and flourish options, including frames designed for puffy foam. Place flourishes above, below, or as a duo.

Use the Border tab to create a border automatically (optionally with appliqué fabric and placement stitching), or individual decorative motifs, or a motif underline.

In PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra, use the Appliqué tab to view and adjust appliqué pieces. The appliqué fabric is shown under the embroidery, as it would appear when stitched out.

In PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra, use the Decoration tab to decorate your chosen background and embroidery with beads or sequins, and hotfix crystals or nailheads.

In PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra, use the Modify tab to edit and insert stitches, or select a block of stitches for editing. Hide stitches by color or by using the draw range, to help with selecting the desired stitches. Cut and copy blocks of stitches or whole embroideries and paste to attach them to the last visible stitch. Insert new color changes and Stop commands with stitchout hints, change the order of colors and merge color blocks.

Use the View tab to adjust the Grid, measure a design, show and create garment, quilt block and fabric backgrounds with the Background Wizard  (PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra only), and change the view mode or hoop.

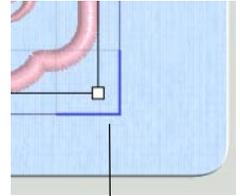
## Work Area

The work area is the area where embroideries are loaded. The work area includes the area surrounding the selected hoop. It is where you make changes to an embroidery. The stitch area is the available area inside the selected hoop.

Stitches are drawn in the appropriate colors. The embroideries are shown in either 3D or 2D. The background color and texture can be changed using PREMIER+™ 2 Configure .

In PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra a background garment, fabric or quilt block may be displayed.

In Standard 3D view  the real hoop is shown, with blue corners showing the stitch area within the hoop. The background is shown.



In Realistic 3D view  the embroidery and background are shown without selection boxes, grid or hoop.

In 2D view , the hoop size is shown by a blue outline with bold corners. Stitches are drawn in plain colors only, and stitches using multicolor threads are drawn using only the first color in the thread definition. The background does not use texture in 2D view.

## Background Grid

The work area has a grid, which can be turned on or off in the View tab, and the grid size changed. Zooming in or out makes the grid squares look bigger or smaller. The grid size can be changed from 2mm to 50mm using the View tab.

## Design Panel

To the right of the work area is the Design Panel. Use the Design Panel to change colors, and to add or edit the Notes and Settings.

### Design Information

The Design Information shows the dimensions (Height  and Width ) , Stitch Count , and number of colors  for the active embroidery.

### Color Select

The Color Select area shows the order of the color blocks in the color worksheet and any notes that are included in the embroidery. Click on a color block to change thread colors, and to add thread effects. In the Modify tab (PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra only), use the color worksheet to show or hide stitches by color block, and move color blocks up  or down  and merge  them. Edit or add information to the Notes and Settings as desired.

*Color Select is blank if no embroidery is selected.*

### Clipboard Block

The Clipboard Block shows the embroidery that can be pasted into the work area.

*Click in the clipboard to remove the current Clipboard Block.*

### Overview Window

The overview window gives a small overview of the whole work area for the embroidery.

## Status Bar

The status bar is found at the bottom of the window. Starting from the left, the status bar shows:

- The QuickLink Toolbar.

- The zoom tools and Zoom Bar.

## PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Terms and Conventions

### On-screen pointers

The mouse pointer is most commonly shown as an arrow  on the screen.

If it is positioned over a text box it changes to an I-bar  and you can type, such as the Edit Notes dialog box.

If Zoom To Rectangle , or Zoom In  in a dialog box, is chosen the Zoom In pointer  appears. If Zoom Out  is chosen in a dialog box, the Zoom Out pointer  appears.

When zoomed in if the Pan feature is used to move around the screen, the Pan cursor  appears.

The Box Select pointer , Freehand Select pointer  or Freehand Point Select pointer  appears when the associated Select function is chosen. Add to a selection with the Add to Selection  pointer, and remove items from a selection with the Remove from Selection  pointer.

There are several pointers indicating functions in the selection box. The Rotate pointer  appears when the mouse pointer is over the Rotate handle , or the rounded rotate part of the Fabric handle . The cross-hair pointer  appears when the mouse is over the center of rotation .

The diagonal double-headed arrow  pointer appears when the mouse pointer is over a square corner handle . The horizontal double-headed arrow  pointer appears when the mouse pointer is over the Flip Horizontal handle . The vertical double-headed arrow  pointer appears when the mouse pointer is over the Flip Vertical handle . The pointer becomes a four-headed arrow  when it is over the selection box for one or more embroideries, when Move and Rotate Background  is selected, or when the square move fabric part of the Fabric handle  is selected.

The selection box handles are blue if in resize mode (density retained when resized), white in scale mode (stitch count retained when resized), and green for lettering, SuperDesigns and Frames or Flourishes, and light green for Monograms before they are fixed as embroideries.

The Measure pointer  appears when the Get Length  function is selected.

The Insert Color Command pointer , the Insert Stop Command pointer  or Insert Stitches pointer  appears when the associated Modify function is chosen.

When Fit to Rectangle  is chosen, the Draw Rectangle pointer  appears. In the ExpressDesign Wizard Rotate and Crop Picture page, the pointer becomes a double-headed arrow  when you move the crop lines or a four-headed arrow  when you move the crop area. Also, for an Express Embroidery, the pointer becomes an eyedropper  to pick colors from a picture for thread colors or pick a background color.

The pointer becomes the Appliqué Fabric pointer  when adjusting appliqué fabric pieces.

# Information Symbols

The following information symbols are used.

	Height		Rotate
	Width		Height (percentage)
	Number of Stitches		Width (percentage)
	Number of Colors		

## Touch Gestures

Touch gestures are used when viewing and moving embroideries in the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System. They are available when using a touch-sensitive screen.

### General

#### Select and move

One finger touch and one finger slide are equivalent to click and drag with a mouse. Use to move embroideries, select, draw or create stitches with freehand features, and so on.

#### Autoscroll

When you drag within a document, the autoscroll feature moves the pointer automatically, changing the view of the work area.

This is useful when zoomed in. Use autoscroll while moving or resizing a selected embroidery.

- Use a two finger swipe on the work area.

#### Pinch to zoom

Pinch two fingers to zoom in, and spread two fingers to zoom out.

#### Context menu

Press and hold and a context-sensitive menu will appear if available (similar to a right-click).

## PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery and PREMIER+™ 2 Modify only

#### Multiple select

Two finger touch will add or remove an embroidery in the current selection (similar to Ctrl+click).

#### Pinch to resize or scale

Pinch two fingers inside the selection box to reduce, and spread two fingers to enlarge the selected embroidery, lettering or SuperDesign.

*Pinch outside the selection box to zoom.*

## Rotate

Twist your thumb and forefinger to rotate the selected embroidery, lettering or SuperDesign.

## Embroidery File Formats

PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery can load any of the following embroidery file formats: Bernina (.art version 1, 2, 3), Brother/Baby Lock/Bernina PEC (.pec), Brother/Baby Lock/Bernina PES (.pes version 2 - 10), Compucon/Singer PSW (.xxx), Husqvarna Viking / Pfaff (.vp4, .vp3 and .vip), Husqvarna (.hus, .shv and .dhv), Janome (.jef and .sew), Melco (.exp), Pfaff (.pcs), Tajima (.dst) and Toyota (.10\*).

PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery saves embroidery files in Husqvarna Viking / Pfaff (.vp4) format.

*Embroideries may only be saved in .vp4 format as this will preserve the separate parts of multipart designs. It also preserves thread color information and notes.*

PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery exports any of the following embroidery file formats: Husqvarna Viking / Pfaff (.vp4 and .vp3), Brother/Baby Lock/Bernina PEC (.pec), Brother/Baby Lock/Bernina PES (.pes version 2 - 10), Compucon/Singer PSW (.xxx), Husqvarna Viking / Pfaff (.vip), Husqvarna (.hus, .shv), Janome (.jef, .sew), Melco (.exp), Pfaff (.pcs), Tajima (.dst) and Toyota (.10\*).

## Picture Files

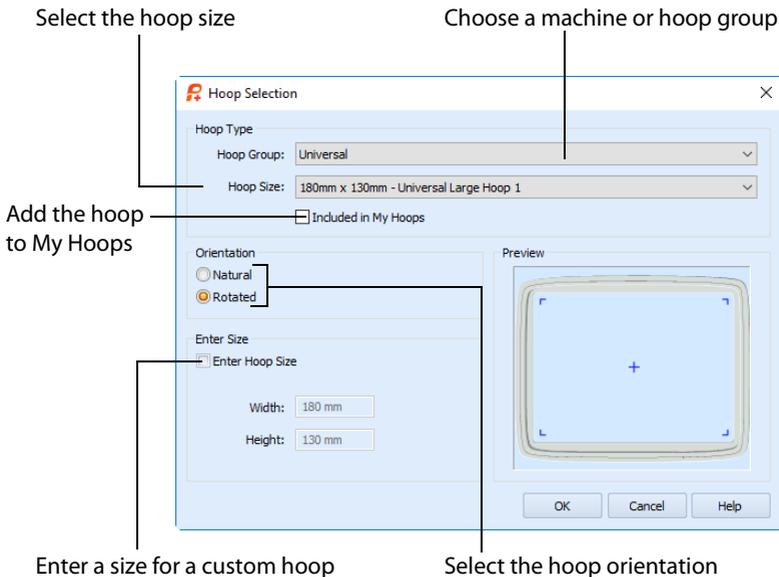
PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra can load any of the following picture file formats in the ExpressDesign, PhotoStitch or Background Wizard: Windows or OS2 Bitmap (.bmp), JPEG-JFIF Compliant (.jpg, .jif, .jpeg), Portable Network Graphics (.png), Tagged Image File Format uncompressed (.tiff, .tif), Windows Meta File (.wmf), Windows Enhanced Meta File (.emf) and Windows Icon (.ico). In addition, the ExpressDesign Wizard can load .4dq files produced by the Grace Company PatternCAD module.

PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra also includes additional clipart, which may be used in the ExpressDesign Wizard. The additional clipart is installed to Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Pics2.

PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery can upload pictures and videos of embroidery designs from Design Player and Life View to the social media sites Facebook® , Flickr® , Twitter®  and YouTube® .

# Hoop Selection

Use Hoop Selection  to choose the hoop size you wish to use in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery. Set the hoop size according to the size of your embroidery or the hoop you wish to use for stitching out, or enter any other desired size. The hoop information is stored in your .vp4 embroidery file, and used for your initial Export settings.



## Shortcuts

- Quick Access Toolbar, Home Tab, View Tab: 
- Keys: Ctrl + H; Alt, 6; Alt, H, H; Alt, V, H

## Hoop Group

The drop-down list of Hoop Groups shows all the machine Hoop Groups, and the My Hoops group, if used.

## Hoop Size

The drop-down Hoop Size list shows the hoops in the chosen Hoop Group. Select the desired hoop size and a picture of the hoop will be shown in the Preview.

## Included in My Hoops

Select (check) Included in My Hoops to add the selected hoop to the My Hoops list. Use the My Hoops list to create a list of your favorite hoops.

*The selected hoops will be displayed in the My Hoops group in the order that they were selected.*

## Orientation

Select Natural or Rotated orientation according to the shape of the embroidery that is to fit in the hoop. Natural orientation is similar to the way the hoop would appear when you sit in front of your machine; note the position of the bracket.

*It is recommended to use natural hoop orientation for designs with Twin Needle colors.*

## Enter Size

To enter a hoop size that is not listed in any of the Hoop Groups, click the Enter Hoop Size box so that it is selected (checked). The Width and Height boxes will become available. You can enter any size from 10mm to 4000mm. The preview shows the shape of the hoop you enter.

*If you position the arrow pointer over the box without clicking, the alternative units and range will be shown.*

Use New  to create a blank embroidery work area, Open  to load an existing embroidery in a new window, and Insert  to open an embroidery into the current window.

## New

Use New  to clear the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery screen so that you can adjust new embroideries or place lettering, motifs, SuperDesigns or frames. If there are any new embroideries or embroideries with unsaved changes, you will be asked if you want to save them.

*To open an existing embroidery, use Insert or Open.*

### Shortcuts

- File Menu: 
- Keys: Ctrl + N

## New Window

Use File, New Window to open an additional PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery window so that you can paste a block to start a new project, or place embroideries, lettering, motifs, SuperDesigns or frames to form a project.

*To move between open PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery windows, hover over the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery icon  on the taskbar, and select the desired window.*

### Shortcuts

- File Menu: 
- Keys: Ctrl + Shift + N

## Open Embroideries

Use Open  to load individual files by thumbnail image, name or number, replacing the current embroidery. Use Insert  to insert an existing embroidery into your current project. Use Windows® Explorer to select an embroidery by key words in the file name or Notes, or to Load Embroideries with Drag and Drop. Use Paste  or Paste into Center  to insert a file from the clipboard. Open Recently Used Embroideries with File, Recent.

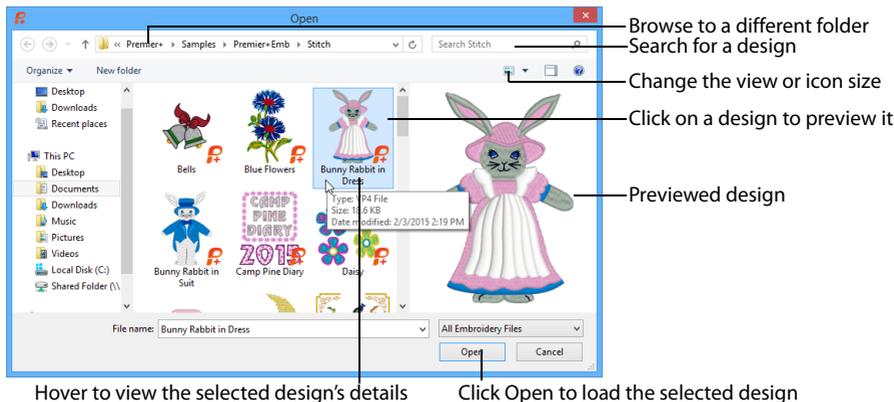
The following embroidery file formats may be loaded: Bernina (.art version 1, 2, 3), Brother/Baby Lock/Bernina PEC (.pec), Brother/Baby Lock/Bernina PES (.pes version 2 - 10), Compucon/Singer PSW (.xxx), Husqvarna Viking / Pfaff (.vp4, .vp3 and .vip), Husqvarna (.hus, .shv and .dhv), Janome (.jef and .sew), Melco (.exp), Pfaff (.pcs), Tajima (.dst), and Toyota (.10\*).

Only Husqvarna Viking / Pfaff (.vp4, .vp3 and .vip) embroidery files contain full thread color information that will be shown in the original thread colors. Other files that hold

some color information, such as .hus, .shv, .dhv, .pcs, .pes, .sew and .xxx, are shown in the nearest match to the colors in which they were created. The shades are converted to the Import Thread Range, as selected in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure. For files that do not store colors, such as .dst, .exp and .10\*, the embroidery will be shown in a default color sequence, using thread colors from the Import Thread Range.

## Open

Use Open  to load an existing embroidery, replacing the project in the current window. PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery displays the Open dialog box so you can choose an embroidery to open. Files in .vp4 format will be loaded in the correct hoop, with background and groups exactly as saved. Alignment stitches will be retained.



Use Insert  to add an existing embroidery to a project.

The following options allow you to specify which file to open:

### File Name

Type or select the filename you want to open. This box lists files with the extension you select in the Files Of Type box.

### Files of Type

Select the type of file you want to open.

### Look In

Select the drive or folder containing the file that you want to open.

### More Options

Switch from list  or details  view to icons with thumbnail images of the embroideries. For example, Extra Large icons .

### Preview Pane

Preview the embroidery before opening .

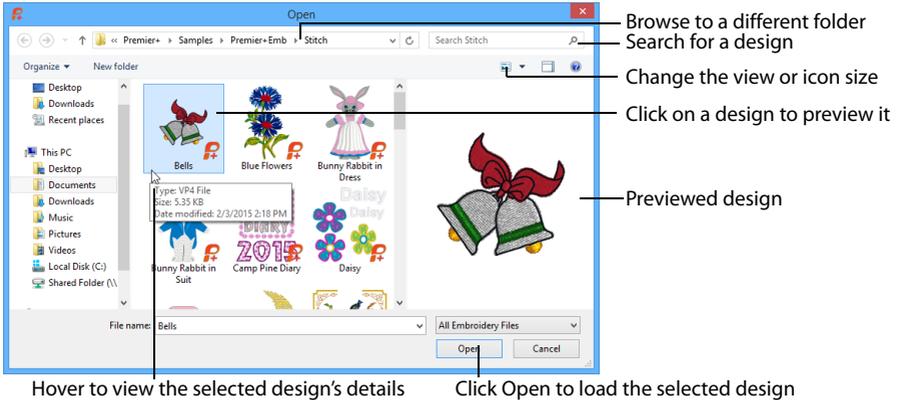
## Shortcuts

- File Menu: 
- Keys: Ctrl + O

## Insert

Use Insert  to add an existing embroidery into your current project. The Open dialog is displayed so that you can choose an embroidery to insert. Multipart designs will be grouped automatically. Alignment stitches will be removed.

*The hoop and background are not shown when inserting an embroidery. Use Open  to load a design with the hoop and background.*



## Shortcuts

- Quick Access Toolbar: 
- Keys: Ctrl + I; Alt, 1

## Load an Embroidery

- 1 Click New .
- 2 Click the Hoop icon , and ensure that the hoop is set to 100mm x 100mm - Universal Square Hoop 1. Click OK.
- 3 Click Insert .
- 4 In the Open dialog box, browse to the folder Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Stitch. The embroideries in the folder will be shown.

*If desired, click Change Your View  to view icons of the embroideries.*

- 5 Scroll down to show the thumbnail of the bells.  
*If you position the arrow pointer over a thumbnail without clicking, the details about the embroidery will be shown.*



- 6 Click the picture of the bells and the embroidery will be selected.  
7 Click Open to load the embroidery onto the screen.



## Load Embroideries with Drag and Drop

To drag and drop as many embroideries as desired onto the screen, use Windows® Explorer. Hold down the Shift key to select a consecutive group of embroideries. Hold down the Ctrl key to select individual embroideries.

### Drag an Embroidery to the Work Area

- 1 Open a Windows® Explorer window. If required, resize the Explorer window so you can see both Explorer and PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery.  
*In Windows® 10 and 8, click File Explorer on the Status Bar. In Windows® 7, right-click the Start button on the Taskbar, then click Explore.*
- 2 Browse through the drives and folders of your computer to find the Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Stitch folder.
- 3 Click on an embroidery icon to highlight it. Hold down the Shift key to select consecutive files or Ctrl key to select multiple individual files.
- 4 Use the mouse to drag and drop the embroideries on the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery screen. All the embroideries will be opened in the same window in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery.
- 5 Close Windows® Explorer.

## Open Recently Used Embroideries

Use File, Recent to open previously used embroideries via the filenames listed in the Recent section of the File menu. Select the name of the desired embroidery.

# Save Embroideries

There are four methods of saving embroideries: Save, Save As, Export and Save On Close or Exit.

Use *Save* or *Save As* to retain a multipart project file.

Use *Export* to save an embroidery for stitching out, or to save in a format other than .vp4.

## Save

Use Save  to save the active embroidery file as a multipart embroidery in .vp4 format. If the embroidery has already been saved, this will save any changes using the existing name and folder.

Use *Save* for projects that you cannot *Export*, such as multipart embroidery projects with designs that do not fit in the selected hoop.

When first saving a new embroidery, this saves the embroidery with the name you give it in the *Save As* dialog.

*Save* will overwrite the existing embroidery. If you want to change the name and folder of an existing embroidery file before you save it, choose the *Save As* or *Export* functions.

## Shortcuts

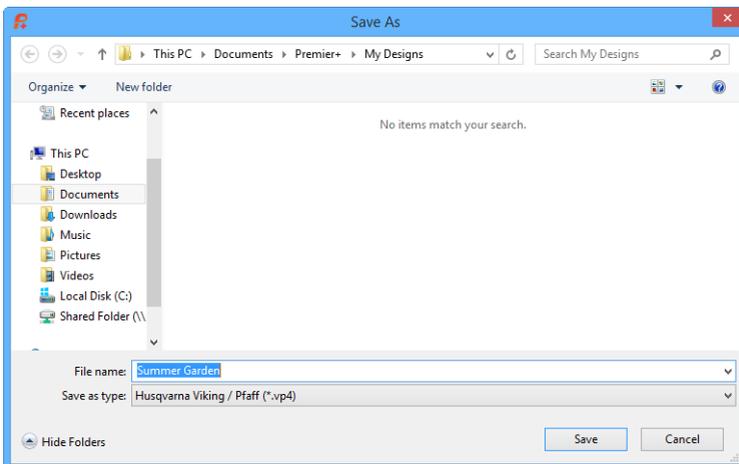
- Quick Access Toolbar: 
- Keys: Ctrl + S; Alt, 2

## Save As

Use Save As  to save the embroidery project in .vp4 format under a new name. For instance, you might add some lettering to an embroidery and want to save the changed embroidery with a new name.

This displays the *Save As* dialog box so that you can save the embroidery with a new file name.

To save an existing embroidery file without changing its name, use Save .

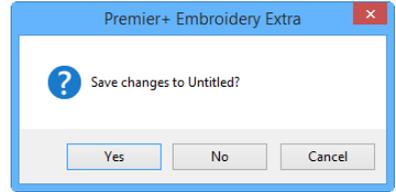


## Shortcuts

- Quick Access Toolbar: 
- Keys: Ctrl + Shift + S; Alt, 3

## Save On Close or Exit

If you make changes to an embroidery, then try to close the embroidery before saving the changes, a message will appear, asking if you want to save the changed embroidery.



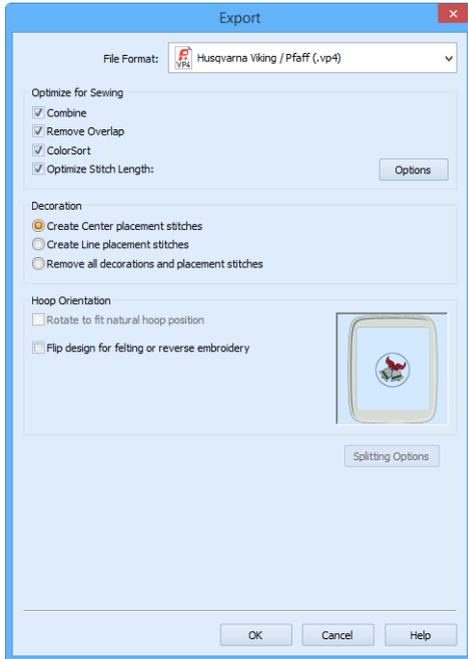
Choose between:

- Yes** Save the changes to the embroidery. If it is a new embroidery, show the Save As dialog box.
- No** Do not save the embroidery and continue. Any changes to the embroidery are lost. If it was a new embroidery then it is discarded without being saved.
- Cancel** Do not save the embroidery, but keep the embroidery open and do not close PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery.

# Export

Use Export  to save the embroidery in the current window as a flattened .vp4 file, or in an alternative embroidery format. The embroidery must fit in the currently selected hoop. Use the Design Player to see how the embroidery will be exported according to the current options.

You can customize the initial Export options in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.



The preferred file format for exporting embroideries is Husqvarna Viking / Pfaff .vp4, as this will preserve background and appliqué information, thread color information and notes.

You can also export embroideries as Brother/Baby Lock/Bernina PEC (.pec), Brother/Baby Lock/Bernina PES (.pes), Compucon/Singer PSW (.xxx), Husqvarna (.hus ,.shv), Husqvarna Viking /Pfaff (.vp4, .vp3, .vip), Janome (.jef and .sew), Melco Expanded (.exp), Pfaff (.pcs), Tajima (.dst) or Toyota (.10o).

*The initial name will be the current file name with "Exported" added. The text "Exported" may be changed in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.*

## Shortcuts

- Quick Access Toolbar: 
- Keys: Ctrl + E; Alt, 4

## Optimize for Sewing Options

All of these options are initially selected when saving as a .vp4 file, or in any other format.

**Combine:** Merge the embroideries into a single embroidery during Export.

*Combine is not enabled if there is only one design, and for embroidery formats that are automatically combined.*

**Remove Overlap:** Prevent areas of stitches building up where embroideries overlap. Remove Overlap is not used if any of the designs contain appliqué.

*Remove Overlap is not available when Combine is not enabled.*

*Deselect this option if, for example, your embroideries are low density and you wish to have a blend effect where they overlap. Also, some multipart embroideries are created with areas that are designed to overlap each other near the mid-section of a turnable hoop. When viewing these designs in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, deselect Remove Overlap before exporting. Deselect Remove Overlap in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure, Export, before sending them to the embroidery machine.*

**ColorSort:** Reduce the number of thread colors during Export. See “ColorSort” on page 49.

**Optimize Stitch Length:** Automatically remove small and insignificant stitches. See “Stitch Length Optimizer Options” on page 24.

*Cutwork Needle lines in the Inspira Cutwork Needle “thread range” and Felting Needle colors in the Inspira Felting Needle “thread range” are unaffected by Optimize Stitch Length.*

## Decoration

Create Center or Line placement stitches for Decorations added in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra, or remove all decorations and their associated placement stitches.

Center or Line placement stitches are created automatically for decorations according to the options set in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure, which may be altered when you export the embroidery. Alternatively, create crystal transfer templates for automated cutters with Export Decoration Template.

Center placement stitches are recommended when most decorations are individual and symmetrical. Line placement stitches are recommended when most decorations are individual and asymmetrical (such as bugle beads) or lines of closely spaced beads or sequins.

**Create Center placement stitches:** Create a small cross shape in stitches to show where the decoration is to be placed.

**Create Line placement stitches:** Create a single stitch that runs along the length of the decoration.

**Remove all decorations and placement stitches:** Remove all decorations and placement stitches from the exported version. This may be desired to create an embroidery with a complementary crystal transfer template (made using the Export Decoration Template dialog box). See “Export Decoration Template” on page 27.

## Hoop Orientation

Set the hoop orientation.

**Rotate to fit natural hoop position:** Rotate the embroidery if needed to fit with the default hoop orientation for the machine. This option is only available if the hoop on the

main screen is in the rotated orientation. It is useful if you prefer to create a "landscape" shaped project in the rotated orientation.

**Flip design for felting or reverse embroidery:** Flip the embroidery for being stitched in reverse. If an embroidery contains a Felting Needle color effect this option is selected initially. See "Felting Needle" on page 48.

## Splitting options

Click the button to open the splitting options dialog box. See "Splitting for Multipart Hoops" on page 22.

*Splitting for Multipart Hoops is available if .vp4, .vp3, .pes or .jef is chosen.*

## Additional Sections

Additional dialog sections are available, depending on the chosen file format.

- If .vp4, .vp3, .pes or .jef is chosen, Splitting for Multipart Hoops is present. See "Splitting for Multipart Hoops" on page 22.
- If .pes is chosen, you can select your machine type, file version, hoop size and rotation.
- If .jef is chosen, you can select your machine type, hoop size and rotation.

## OK

View the Save, or Saving As dialog, depending on the selected file format.

## Export an Embroidery

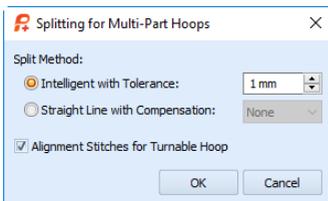
- 1 Create an embroidery project.
- 2 Save  the embroidery. See "Save" on page 18.
- 3 Click Export . The Export dialog box appears.
- 4 Select an embroidery format from the drop-down list.
- 5 Select your optimization options.
- 6 If you are using a multipart hoop, set Intelligent or Straight Line split.
- 7 Click OK.
- 8 The Save As dialog will appear. Save the embroidery as desired.

*When exporting an embroidery, the message 'Design is too large or is not in the hoop.' may appear. This means that some part of your embroidery is not entirely within the hoop, as indicated by round resize handles on the embroidery. If you have multiple elements that need to be combined, use the Tab key to step through the embroideries until you find the item with round resize handles. Move the embroidery so that it fits inside the hoop, and the resize handles will change back to squares. If desired, use the arrow keys to nudge the embroidery in small steps.*

*Alternatively, use the Move Into Hoop  feature on the Home tab.*

## Splitting for Multipart Hoops

*This dialog is available if .vp4, .vp3, .pes or .jef is selected as the file format.*



Embroideries for Multipart hoops are split automatically, according to your Export settings. Use an Intelligent or Straight Line Split.

*There is no need to ensure embroideries are in one stitch area of the hoop; just place your embroideries in the most pleasing arrangement.*

## Split Method

You can use one of two split methods:

- **Intelligent Split** automatically calculates a split line that is routed through gaps or across movement stitches, cuts the minimum number of stitches, and minimizes cuts through solid sections of embroidery. Where possible, use Intelligent Split.
- **Straight Line Split** cuts the embroidery straight across the center line of the overlap zone.

## Intelligent with Tolerance

Intelligent Split calculates a split line that cuts the minimum number of stitches, and minimizes cuts through solid sections of embroidery. For example, a large embroidery is split at a narrow section, and an embroidery that fits in one stitch area of the hoop is left in one piece even if it is part of a larger design.

**Tolerance** ensures that the Intelligent Split line stays a short distance from the edges of the overlap. This allows for play in the hoop when going from one hoop area to another, such as when aligning a hoop that has been turned to stitch out the other side of an embroidery.

You can set Tolerance from 0 to 3mm, in steps of 1mm. The initial setting is 1mm.

*To use Intelligent Split with Tolerance, select the "Intelligent with Tolerance" checkbox, then enter a number in the Tolerance number box, or use the arrows to increase or decrease the Tolerance.*

## Straight with Compensation

Straight Line Split cuts straight across the center of the overlap zone. Straight Line Split will only split an individual embroidery if, before it is combined with everything else, it does not fit entirely into one stitch area of the hoop.

*Lettering is split straight down the middle, as with any other type of embroidery. This may cut through characters rather than gaps and spaces. In such cases, it is recommended to use Intelligent Split instead.*

**Compensation** adds overlapping stitches along the edges where the embroidery is split. This compensates for pull on the fabric.

None	Use None if you can split an embroidery without cutting through any of the design elements. Compensation is initially set to None.
Low	Use Low when cutting through a lightly stitched embroidery or when the split lines go through only a few stitch areas.
High	Use High when the embroidery is dense, when the split lines make long splits through stitch areas, or when stitching onto materials such as knitted or stretchy fabric.

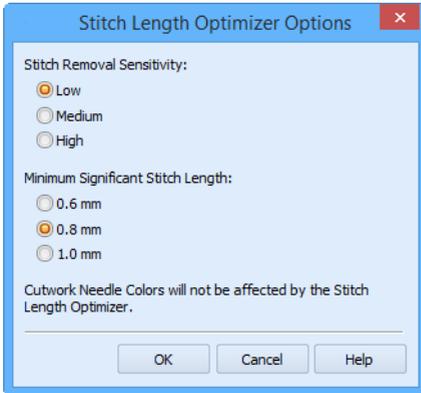
## Alignment Stitch for Turnable Hoops

Select this option to add an alignment cross at the end of each embroidery section when using the HUSQVARNA VIKING® Designer Majestic™, PFAFF® creative Grand Dream™, Universal Multipart hoop, or Brother Jumbo Frame. A hoop movement to the alignment

cross is added at the beginning of the next section. The next embroidery section can then be correctly aligned, or alignment can be confirmed.

## Stitch Length Optimizer Options

Use the Stitch Length Optimizer Options dialog box to automatically remove small and insignificant stitches. You can adjust the stitch removal sensitivity, or the minimum significant stitch length.



### Stitch Length Sensitivity

Adjust the sensitivity of the optimization. Low is set as the default.

- Choose from Low, Medium or High.

### Minimum Significant Stitch Length

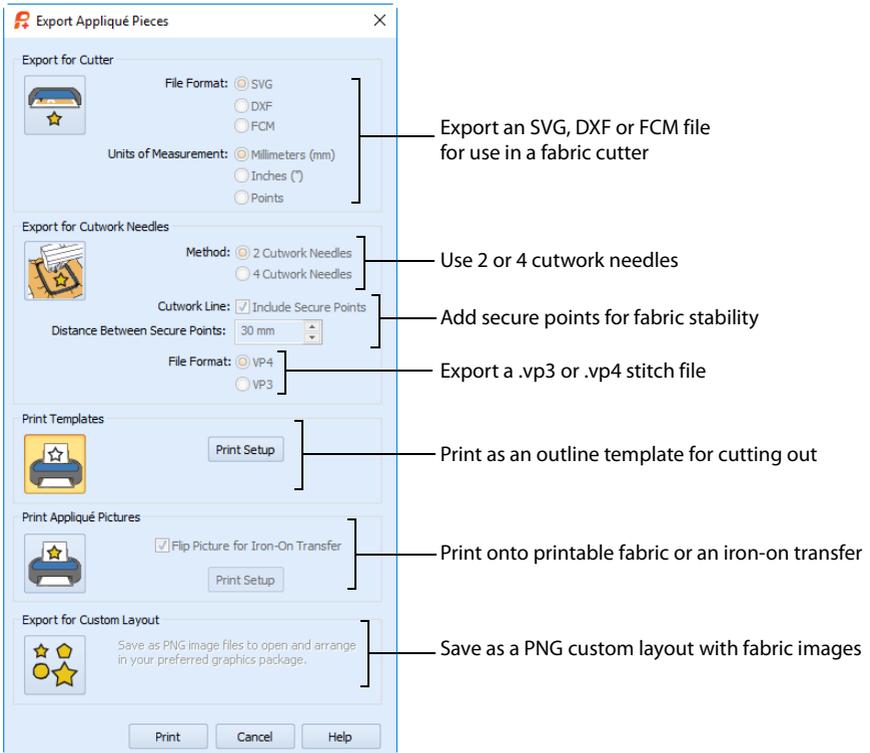
Select the shortest stitch length that you consider to be significant. Stitches below this length are removed during the optimization process. The default stitch length is 0.8 mm.

*Cutwork Needle lines are unaffected by the Minimum Significant Stitch Length.*

- Choose from 0.6 mm, 0.8 mm or 1.0 mm.

# Export Appliqué Pieces

Use Export Appliqué Pieces  to save or print appliqué outlines ready for cutting. Select the desired method and options, then click the Export or Print button at the bottom of the dialog box.



There are five appliqué piece export methods:

- **Export for Cutter:** Save as SVG, DXF or FCM files for use in fabric cutters
- **Export for Cutwork Needles:** Save as VP4 or VP3 stitch files that can be used with INSPIRA™ Cutwork Needles
- **Print Templates:** Print as an outline template to stick or pin to fabric and then cut out
- **Print Appliqué Pictures:** Print directly onto printable fabric or an iron-on transfer; this also prints the image of the appliqué piece
- **Export for Custom Layout:** Save as PNG files with the fabric image placed as the fill for each shape. This is designed for use with fully customized layouts.

## Export for Cutter

Export the appliqué piece as an SVG, DXF or FCM image file for use in a fabric cutter.

Set the units of measurement (millimeters, inches or points), and select a file type. Click Export to save the file.

The maximum size for the Brother ScanNCut FCM format is 12" x 12" (305mm x 305mm).

Recommended file formats for cutters:

Cutter	Software	Export Format
Cricut Explore®	Cricut Design Space 3.1512	SVG (points)
KNK Zing Air®	Make the Cut! 4.6.1 (Zing Plugin 2.1.0)	SVG (points)
Silhouette Cameo®	Silhouette Studio 3.6.57 ss (Use "As Is" import settings)	DXF (millimeters)
Brother ScanNCut® (2)	Direct to USB stick or machine	FCM
Sizzix Eclips2	eCal2 2.203	SVG (points)

## Export for Cutwork Needles

Export the appliqué piece for cutting with INSPIRA™ Cutwork Needles. Select 2 or 4 needles, choose whether to use secure points for fabric stability and their length, and use a .vp3 or .vp4 stitch file.

## Print Templates

Print the appliqué piece as an outline template to stick or pin to fabric and then cut out.

Select a printer and paper size in the Print Setup dialog box. See "Print Setup" on page 480.

## Print Appliqué Pictures

Print directly onto printable fabric or an iron-on transfer; this also prints the image of the appliqué piece.

Flip the picture for an iron-on transfer, and select a printer and paper size in the Print Setup dialog box. See "Print Setup" on page 480.

## Export for Custom Layout

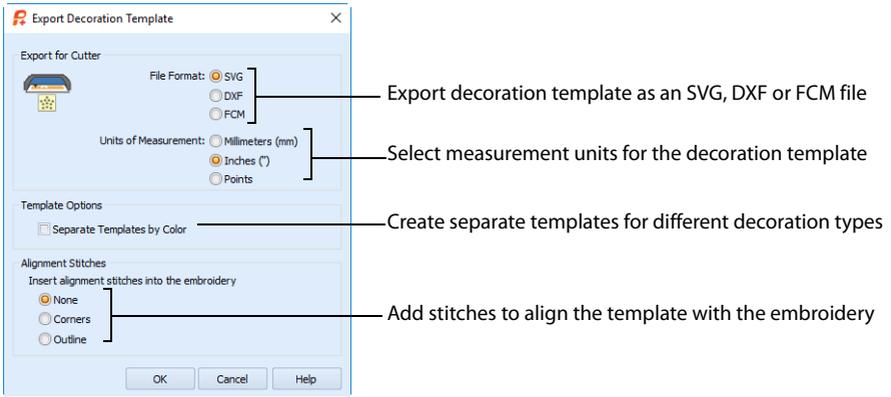
Save as PNG files with the fabric image placed as the fill for each appliqué piece shape. This is designed for use with fully customized layouts, for example if you wish to arrange the shapes in your cutter software or in another graphics package.

## Shortcuts

- File Menu: 
- Keys: Ctrl + Shift + E

# Export Decoration Template

Use Export Decoration Template  to save a template for all your decorations in a format for your automated cutter. This can be used to create a crystal transfer template (or rhinestone template) for pressing hotfix crystals and nailheads directly onto your work.



## Export for Cutter

Export the decorations as an SVG, DXF or FCM image file to create a crystal transfer template for use in an automated cutter.

Set the units of measurement (millimeters, inches or points), and select a file type.

Recommended file formats for cutters:

Cutter	Software	Export Format
Cricut Explore®	Cricut Design Space 3.1512	SVG (points)
KNK Zing Air®	Make the Cut! 4.6.1 (Zing Plugin 2.1.0)	SVG (points)
Silhouette Cameo®	Silhouette Studio 3.6.57 ss (Use "As Is" import settings)	DXF (millimeters)
Brother ScanNCut® (2)	Direct to USB stick or machine	FCM
Sizzix Eclips2	eCal2 2.203	SVG (points)

## Template Options

Select (check) Separate Templates by Color to create a separate template for different decoration types, for example if you wish to use the same size of crystal in two different color ways.

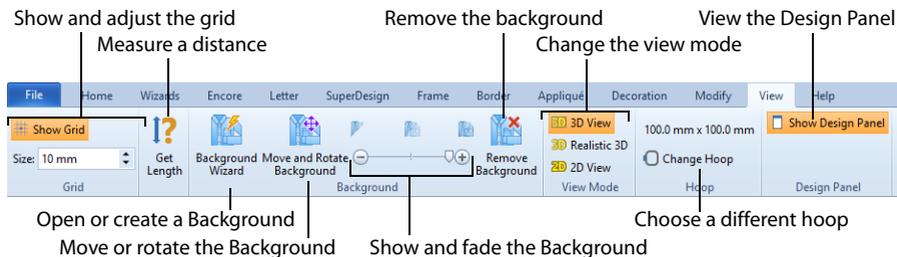
## Alignment Stitches

Add alignment stitches for aligning the decoration subdesign with the embroidery. Select from None (the default), Corners and Outline.

## Shortcuts

- File Menu: 

- Keys: Ctrl + Shift + D

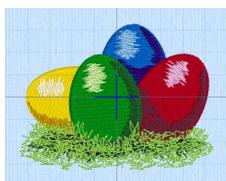


## 3D and 2D View

Use View Mode in the View tab to toggle between 3D View **3D**, Realistic 3D **3D**, and 2D View **2D** stitch display.

*Stitches are automatically displayed in 2D when you select the Modify tab.*

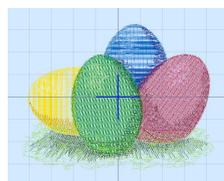
Use 2D to see the individual stitches with no shading. Use standard 3D View to see how the embroidery will be stitched out with three-dimensional shading. Use Realistic 3D to view embroideries and background in 3D without selection boxes, grid or hoop.



3D View **3D**



Realistic 3D **3D**



2D View **2D**

*Some functions are not available in Realistic 3D **3D**.*

### 3D View

Use 3D View **3D** to view embroideries and background in standard 3D mode. All editing functions are available, and the selection box is shown.

#### Shortcuts

- View Tab: **3D**
- Keys: Ctrl + T; Alt, V, 3

### Realistic 3D

Use Realistic 3D **3D** to view embroideries and background in 3D without selection boxes, grid or hoop. You can use the zoom commands, but some editing functions are not available.

## Shortcuts

- View Tab: **3D**
- Keys: Ctrl + R; Alt, V, R

## 2D View

Use 2D View **2D** to view the individual stitches in embroideries with no shading, or thread effects.

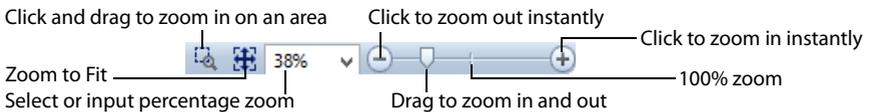
*Stitches are automatically displayed in 2D when you select the Modify tab in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*

## Shortcuts

- View Tab: **2D**
- Keys: Alt, V, 2

## Zoom Commands

A number of functions are available to make it easier to navigate around embroideries, including the Zoom functions and Overview Window. By default, the hoop is shown at a size so that the hoop fills the window, the same as if you click Zoom To Fit  after zooming in or out.



*You can also change the view of an embroidery by using the Modify tab to select the colors to see and change the range of stitches that are displayed.*

## Shortcuts

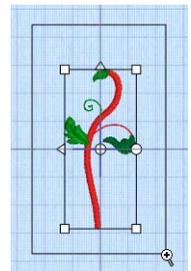
Zoom Out	Keys: Ctrl + -
Zoom To Rectangle	Keys: Ctrl + 0
Zoom In	Keys: Ctrl + =
Zoom To Fit	Keys: Ctrl + 9

## Zoom To Rectangle

Use Zoom To Rectangle  to enlarge the view of an area of the embroidery.

Click the Zoom To Rectangle  icon to the right of the status bar, and the mouse pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point on the embroidery you want to zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom.

Zoom To Rectangle is automatically deselected after you have used it.



## Shortcuts

- Status Bar: 
- Keys: Ctrl + 0

*If you have a wheel mouse, hold the Ctrl key and move the wheel to zoom.*

## Pan Mode

Use the Pan feature to move around the screen easily. The Pan feature works when you are zoomed in on part of the screen, making the scroll bars visible at the right and bottom of the work area.

Hold the Shift key down, then start to click and drag. The pan pointer  appears. Click and drag until the pointer is in the desired part of the screen.

The pan occurs in real time, that is you see the work area move as you drag across the screen.

*Alternatively, use the Overview Window to move around the screen when Zoomed In.*

## Pan Around the Work Area

- 1 Click Zoom To Rectangle  and the arrow pointer changes to the zoom in pointer .
- 2 Click and drag to draw a box, then release to zoom in. Scroll bars appear to allow you to move around the screen at this higher zoom level.
- 3 Hold the Shift key down, then start to click and drag. The pan cursor  appears.
- 4 Click and drag until the pointer is in the desired part of the screen. (If you have a wheel mouse, you can click the wheel to pan around the screen.)
- 5 Lift the pen or release the mouse button.

## Zoom To Fit

Use Zoom To Fit  to view the whole hoop area. Click the Zoom To Fit icon to the right of the status bar, and the view will zoom in or out to show the hoop area in the window.

## Shortcuts

- Status Bar: 
- Keys: Ctrl + 9

## Zoom By Percentage

Use the drop-down list in the Status Bar to set percentage levels to zoom in for the active embroidery, from 25% up to 800%. Alternatively, enter a number in the percentage text box.

*Select 100% to display the embroidery at a magnification as close as possible to the Real Size setting you chose in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.*

## Shortcuts

- Keys:
- |       |          |
|-------|----------|
| 100%: | Ctrl + 1 |
| 200%: | Ctrl + 2 |
| 400%: | Ctrl + 3 |
| 800%: | Ctrl + 4 |
| 75%:  | Ctrl + 5 |

50%: Ctrl + 6

25%: Ctrl + 7

## Zoom Bar

Use the Zoom Bar to zoom in or out from the center of the currently selected picture or embroidery.



The Zoom Bar is on the right side of the Status Bar.

Use the slider to zoom in or out of the picture or embroidery, or click on the Zoom In  or Zoom Out  icons to increase or decrease magnification 10% at a time.

## Overview Window

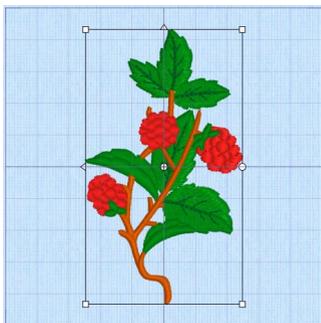
The overview window gives a small overview of the whole work area for the current embroidery window.

When you zoom in a box is shown around the area that is currently visible in the main window. Click and drag the box to move to another part of the window.

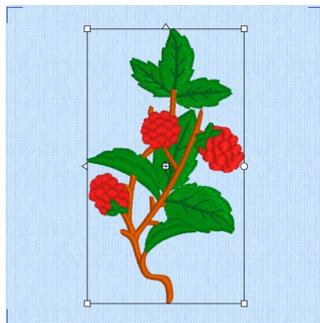
*If there are stitches hidden for the current embroidery, these will also be hidden in the Overview Window.*

## Show Grid

Use Show Grid  to switch the grid on and off. The grid may be used to help align embroideries and stitches.



Grid On



Grid Off

*The cross in the center marks the center of the embroidery. The cross is larger when you zoom in closer.*

## Size

Set the grid size between 2mm and 50mm, depending on what setting is most suitable for your screen resolution and embroideries. Type in a figure or use the up and down arrows to change the number. The initial setting is 10mm.

If you position the arrow pointer over the box without clicking, the alternative units and range are shown.

## Shortcuts

- View Tab checkbox
- Keys: Alt, V, G

## Get Length

Use Get Length  on the View tab (and on the Modify tab if PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra is owned) to measure the distance between any two points on an embroidery. Click the Get Length icon  and the mouse pointer changes to the Measure pointer . Then click and drag a line across the embroidery. The length of the line is displayed.

For example, use this to obtain the width of a column of stitches or the distance between lines of stitching.

The length is shown in millimeters or inches, according to the setting for Show Measurements in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure. The alternative units are shown in parentheses.



## Shortcuts

- View or Modify Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, V, L; Alt, M, L

## Measure Part of an Embroidery

- 1 Click the Get Length icon. The pointer changes to the measure pointer .
- 2 Click and drag across the part of an embroidery you want to measure.
- 3 Read, and if desired, make a note of the number.
- 4 Repeat the click and drag to measure any other distances, as required.
- 5 Right-click to deselect the function.

## Viewing Backgrounds

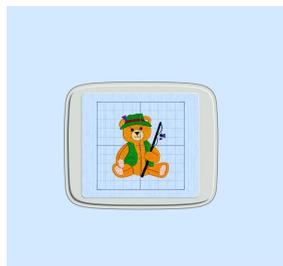
Use the Background slider bar to show the garment, quilt or fabric background as On, Off, or faded.



Background On  shows the picture in the background.



Click and drag the slider to fade the colors in the background picture (here by 50%).



Background Off  hides the picture.

Backgrounds are only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.

Use Move and Rotate Background  to move the garment, quilt or fabric background.

*The Background tools are only available after a Background has been selected in the Background Wizard. See "Backgrounds" on page 155.*

## Fade Background

Use the Fade background slider to vary the brightness of the background garment, quilt or fabric. Background On  shows the background at full brightness. Use the slider to fade  the background to make it easier to see the embroidery. Use Background Off  to hide the background and see only the embroidery.



## Move and Rotate Background

Use Move and Rotate Background  to move the background that you have placed behind your embroideries.

Click the Move and Rotate Background icon  and the mouse pointer changes to a four-headed arrow . Click and drag to move the garment, quilt block or fabric background around the hoop or project area, and move the round handle  to rotate the background.

*Right-click to set the background in place and deselect the function.*

### Shortcuts

- View Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, V, M

## Remove Background

Use Remove Background  to remove the garment, quilt block or fabric background that you have placed behind your embroideries.

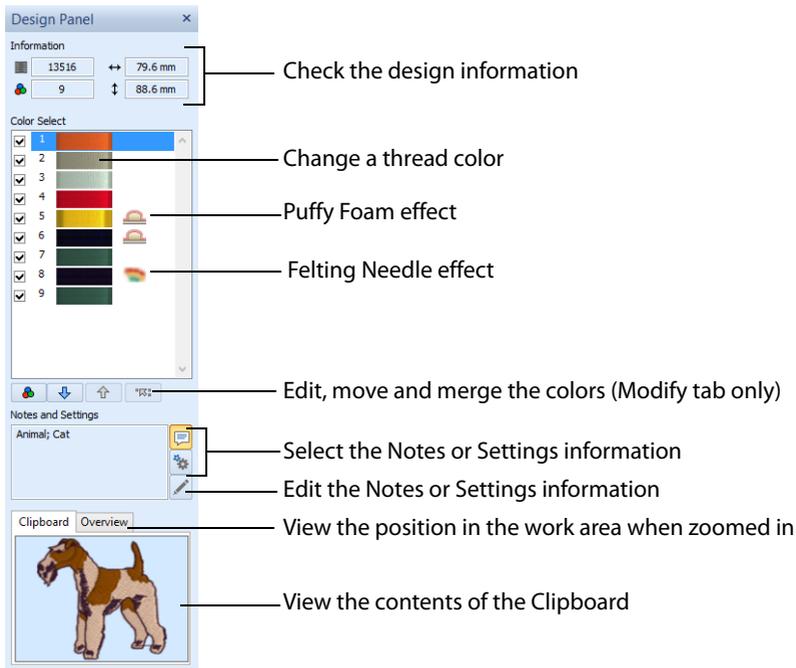
Click Remove Background  and the background will be removed from the work area.

### Shortcuts

- View Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, V, E

# Design Panel

Use the Design Panel to change colors, to view and change the Notes and Settings, and to view the Clipboard and Overview window.



## Show Design Panel

To open the Design Panel, click Show Design Panel in the View tab.

- Design Information: See "Design Information" on page 35.
- Thread Colors: See "Change an Existing Thread Color" on page 45.
- Edit, move and merge colors: See "Move and Merge Color Blocks" on page 102.
- Notes and Settings: See "Notes and Settings" on page 36.
- Overview Window: See "Overview Window" on page 32.
- Clipboard: See "Clipboard Block" on page 94.

## Design Information

The dimensions (Height  $\updownarrow$  and Width  $\leftrightarrow$ ), Stitch Count  $\equiv$ , and number of colors  $\color{red}\color{green}\color{blue}$  for the active embroidery are shown on the Design Panel.

The Design Panel also shows the order of the color blocks in the color worksheet and any notes and settings that are included in the embroidery.

*Information about lettering, monograms, motifs, SuperDesigns, frames and borders is automatically placed in the settings. When embroideries are merged with Combine or Export, all the notes and settings are also merged. You may wish to remove duplicate text when you have combined several copies of the same embroidery.*

Double-click on a color block to change thread colors (or select the block and click Change Color ). Also, on the Modify tab in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra, use the color worksheet to show or hide stitches by color block, and move and merge color blocks.

## Notes and Settings

Store up to 2000 characters of notes about an embroidery, such as a description, keywords or category of embroidery. This information is shown in the Notes and Settings tabs of the Design Panel. Select Notes  or Settings , then click Edit  to open the Notes or Settings dialogs.

*Information about lettering, monograms, motifs, SuperDesigns, Frames and borders is automatically placed in the Settings.*

Notes from .vp4, .vp3, .vip, .hus, .pcs and .pes embroideries are automatically placed in the Notes box when the embroideries are loaded in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery. Use the PREMIER+™ 2 Windows® Explorer plugin to search all your .vp4, .vp3 and .vip format embroideries for key words in the Filename or Notes to decide which embroideries to view and print.

When embroideries are merged with Combine or Export, all the notes are also merged and shown in the Notes box. You may wish to edit the notes and remove duplicate text when you have combined several copies of the same embroidery.

*To keep the Notes information, save your changed embroideries as file type Husqvarna Viking / Pfaff (.vp4, .vp3 or .vip).*

## Notes

Click Notes  to display the Notes, then click Edit  to change the Notes for the currently selected embroidery. The Notes dialog will appear.

The Notes dialog allows free text and keywords to be added to the Notes for the selected embroidery. Type additional Notes in the Notes box.

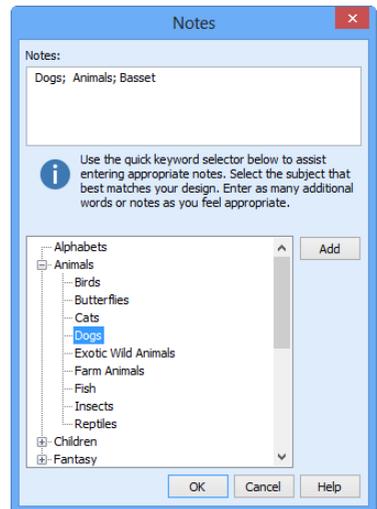
Use Ctrl+Enter to start a new line of text.

Up to 2000 characters can be entered in the Notes.

## Keywords

Select Keywords for the embroidery from the list, then click Add to add them to the Notes for the embroidery.

## Change the Notes for an Embroidery



- 1 Select the embroidery for which you want to amend the notes. The embroidery will be highlighted.
- 2 Click Notes .
- 3 Click Edit .
- 4 In the Notes text box make your desired changes to the Notes.  
*Use Ctrl+Enter to start a new line of text.*

- 5 To add Keywords, select the keyword from the category heading or subcategory in the scrolling list. Then click Add.  
*Double-click to expand the folders until the desired keyword is highlighted. (Alternatively click on the + sign.)*
- 6 Click OK to save your amended Notes and added keywords.

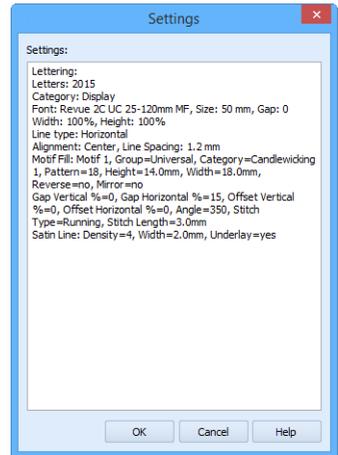
## Settings

Click Settings  to display the settings, then click Edit  to change the Settings for the currently selected embroidery. The Settings dialog will appear.

Use Ctrl+Enter to start a new line of text.

*You cannot change the Settings for a SuperDesign. Fix it as an embroidery first.*

Up to 2000 characters can be entered in the Settings.



## Change the Settings for an Embroidery

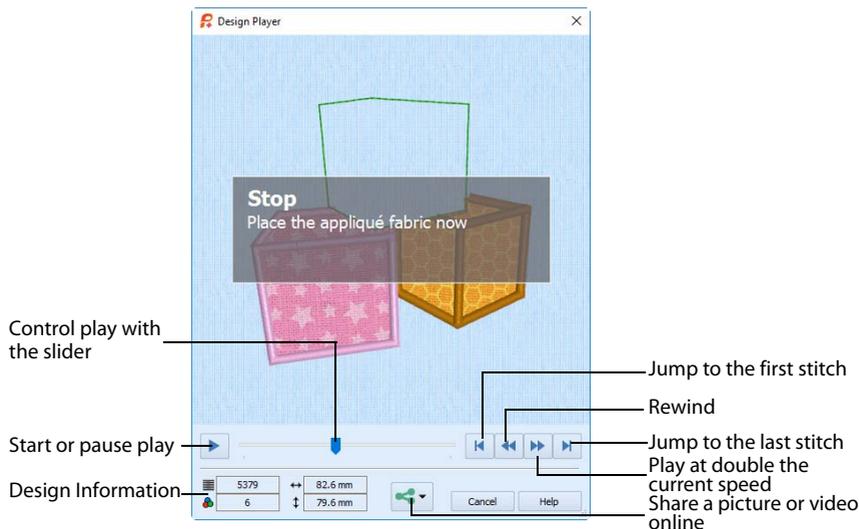
- 1 Select the embroidery for which you want to amend the settings. The embroidery will be highlighted.
- 2 Click Settings 
- 3 Click Edit .
- 4 In the Settings text box make your desired changes to the Settings.  
*Use Ctrl+Enter to start a new line of text.*
- 5 Click OK to save your amended Settings.

# Design Player

Use Design Player to play through the stitches in the embroidery as if they were being stitched from an exported embroidery. All parts of the embroidery that are within the hoop area are shown, whether or not they are selected.

The current Optimize for Sewing settings from PREMIER+™ 2 Configure are used.

- Any messages, for example instructions for appliqué placement, are displayed following their Stop commands.
- Appliqué fabric is displayed if present, but any background garment, quilt block or fabric is not shown.
- Decorations are shown following their placement stitches.



Embroideries that are outside the hoop are not shown in the Design Player. If an embroidery contains a felting needle, the project will be shown "flipped", as it would actually be stitched.

## Share

Use Share  to save or share a picture or video of your design on your favorite social media site. Share over Facebook® , Flickr® , Twitter®  and YouTube® . See "Share Picture" on page 42 and "Share Video" on page 42.

## Shortcuts

- Quick Access Toolbar or Home Tab: 
- Keys: Ctrl + J; Alt, 0; Alt, H, J

## Using the Design Player

- 1 Click New , then click the SuperDesign tab.
- 2 Choose "Appliqué" from the SuperDesign Category drop-down menu.
- 3 Click the arrow to the right of the SuperDesign set drop-down menu and choose Children 1.

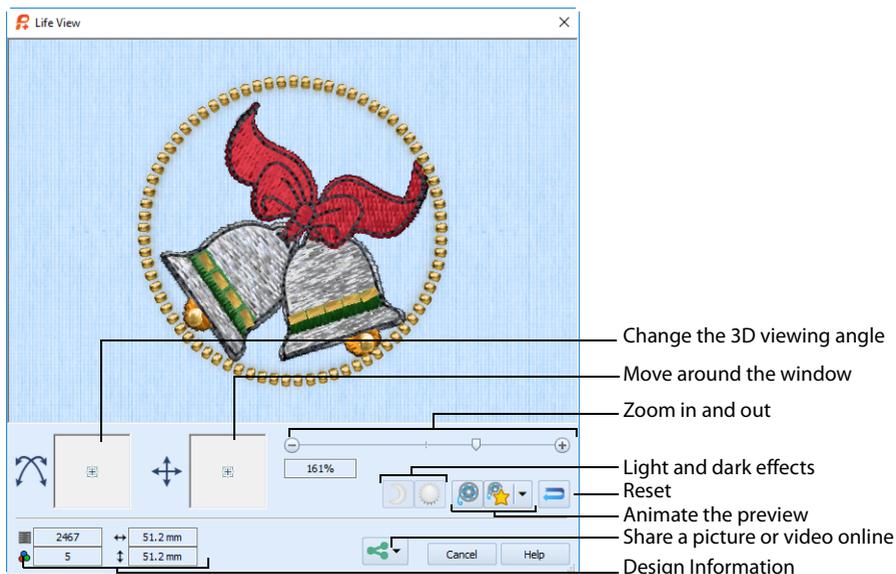
- 4 Click the fifth design in the set, Blocks, and click Apply . The embroidery appears in the work area.
- 5 Click Design Player .  
The Design Player dialog opens.
- 6 Use the Play button  at the bottom left to start playing through the stitches in the embroidery.
- 7 Use the controls to play forwards or backwards through the embroidery at different speeds, jump to the start or end of the stitches, and stop at any time.

## Life View

Use Life View  to show how an embroidery exported from the project will look in 3D with real-world perspective. Zoom in to see detail, and move and rotate the embroidery in a three-dimensional view. All parts of the embroidery that are within the hoop area are shown, whether or not they are selected.

Use Life View  at any time when you want to see the design with no grid, stitches selected, or markers displayed, and when you want to see the effects of glow in the dark and solar reactive threads.

- Any background garment, quilt block or fabric is shown, together with appliqué fabric, if present.
- Decorations are shown, but not their placement stitches.



### Shortcuts

- Quick Access Toolbar or Home Tab: 
- Keys: Ctrl + L; Alt, 9; Alt, H, L

### Position

Use the position  slider to move to another part of the Life View window.

Click and drag the cross marker in the center of the box to view the desired part of the embroidery, using the zoom slider to control the magnification.

## Rotation

Use the rotation  slider to view the stitching in the embroidery in 3D.

Click and drag the cross marker in the center of the box to change the angle at which the embroidery is viewed, and allow you to visualize the project in varying real-world views.

*Alternatively, click and drag directly in the embroidery preview area to change the angle of view.*

*Use the zoom and position sliders to select the part of the embroidery to view.*

## Zoom

Use the zoom slider to change the magnification of the embroidery.

Drag the slider bar to the right to magnify the view of the embroidery, and to the left to shrink the view of the embroidery. The box below the zoom bar displays the current magnification.

Click the marker in the center of the zoom bar (100%) to view the embroidery at a magnification as close as possible to the Real Size setting you chose in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

*When zoomed in, use the position slider to move around the embroidery.*

## Design Information

Life View shows the dimensions (Width  and Height ) , the number of stitches  and the number of colors  in the embroidery.

## Glow in the Dark

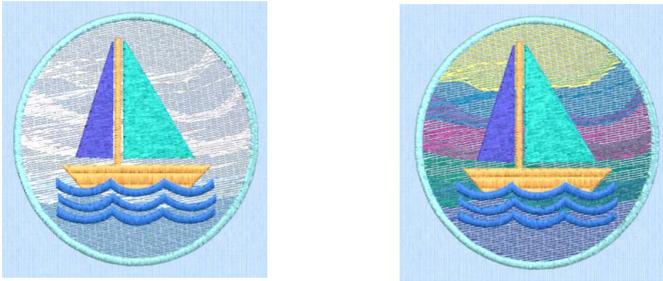
Use Glow in the Dark  to view the effect of using glow in the dark threads. The preview will darken to simulate the lights dimming, and the glow in the dark threads will be shown in their luminescent colors.

*Glow in the Dark  is only available if glow in the dark thread colors are used in the design.*



## Solar Reactive

Use Solar Reactive  to view the effect of using photochromic threads. The preview simulates the sun shining on the design, and the photochromic threads change shade to show the colors they become in sunlight.



Photochromic threads change color in sunlight.

Solar Reactive  is only available if photochromic thread colors are used in the design.

## Play Demo

Use Play Demo  to animate the preview and show the embroidery at different angles automatically. Click to start and stop the animation.

## Play My Demo

Use Play My Demo  to animate the preview using your own demo.

Use the menu options to add the current position as a point in the demo, or reset to create a new demo.



Adjust the window to the desired position and rotation, then select Store Demo Point. When complete, select Play My Demo to see a preview animation between the stored positions. Click to start and stop the animation.

The My Demo animation will be used for Life View in all modules. It is stored in the AnimationPath.txt file in the \User\AppData\Local\VSMSoftware\Premier+2\LifeView folder.

*Copy this file to another location as a backup before creating additional My Demo animation paths for Life View.*

## Reset

Use Reset  to set Rotation, Position and Zoom back to the default settings.

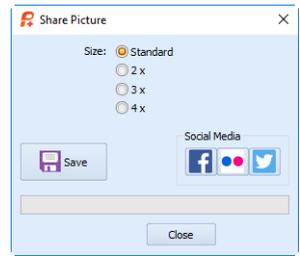
## Share

Use Share  to save or share a picture or video of your design on your favorite social media site. Share over Facebook® , Flickr® , Twitter®  and YouTube® . See “Share Picture” on page 42 and “Share Video” on page 42.

## Share Picture

Save or share a picture of your design. Share over Facebook® , Flickr®  or Twitter® .

Select a size for the picture, then save the picture to your computer or share it over Facebook®, Twitter® or Flickr®. A progress bar shows during the upload.

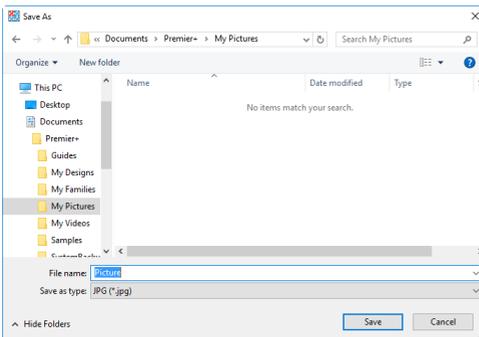


## Size

Select a size for your picture. Choose from Standard, 2x, 3x, and 4x. Standard size is the size of the picture in Design Player or Life View.

## Save

Click Save  to save the picture to your computer. The Save As dialog appears for you to save the picture, with the default file name being the same as the design. Change the name as desired.



The following file formats may be saved: JPEG Low Quality (.jpg), JPEG High Quality (.jpg), Tagged Image File Format uncompressed (.tif) and Portable Network Graphics (.png).

## Social Media

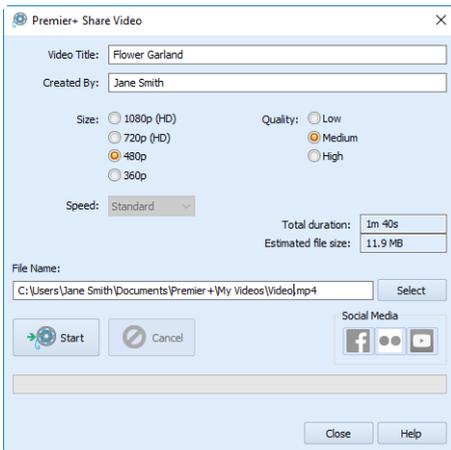
Upload the picture to Facebook® , Flickr® , or Twitter® . Log in to the Social Media website to upload your picture. A progress bar shows during the upload.

## Share Video

Save or share a video of your design. Share over Facebook® , Flickr®  or YouTube® .

Name the video and select its size, quality and speed. Then save it to your computer or share it over Facebook®, Flickr® or YouTube®. A progress bar is displayed while the video is created.

The higher the image quality, the slower the speed of upload and download.



## Video Title and Created By

The video title and the name of the creator are used on the opening frames of the video. Enter the name of the video, and the name of the creator.

## Size

The size of the moving image in pixels. The higher numbers create a higher quality video. Choose from 1080p (HD), 720p (HD), 480p and 360p. The initial setting is 480p.

## Quality

The bit rate, or speed of data transfer. Choose between Low, Medium and High. The initial setting is Medium.

## Speed

Set the speed of the Design Player for the video. Choose from Standard, 2x, 4x, 8x, 16x, 32x, 64x, and 128x. The initial speed is 16x.

*This option is only available for videos created from Design Player.*

## Video Information

The Total Duration of the video in minutes and seconds, and the estimated file size in MB are displayed. The duration and size vary according to the Size, Quality and Speed of the video.

## File Name

Select a folder and name for the video file. Click Select to browse to a different folder on your computer.

## Start and Cancel

Click Start to create your video, using the settings that you chose above. A progress bar shows during the creation of the video, with an estimate of the creation time. Click Cancel to stop the video creation.

*All other functions in the dialog box are unavailable (grayed out) during video creation.*

## Social Media

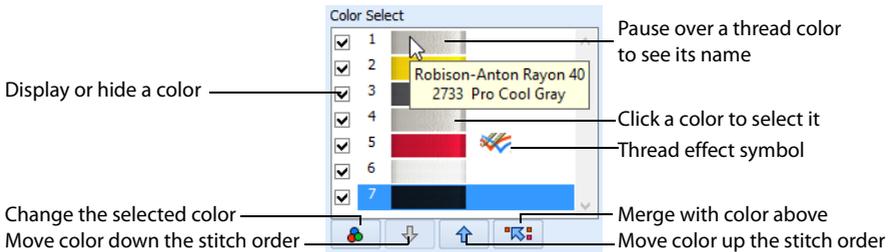
Upload the video to Facebook® , Flickr®  or YouTube® . Log in to the Social Media website to upload your video.

## Thread Colors

The thread colors are shown in the color worksheet on the Design Panel, in the order in which they are used. Any thread effects or special needles used with a color are also indicated. A group of stitches using a particular thread color is called a color block. The color worksheet can be used to change thread colors and to add thread effects.

There can be unlimited color changes in an embroidery saved in .vp4.

Colors can be added or changed to any color available in the standard thread ranges and an unlimited number of My Threads ranges. My Threads ranges can contain threads copied from the standard thread ranges, plus custom threads based on existing threads or added as completely new threads.



*The Display or Hide, Move color and Merge color functions are available only in the Modify tab of PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*

When the mouse pointer is paused over a thread color in the worksheet, the corresponding threads in the embroidery are highlighted. Also, the full name of the thread color will pop up.

The first color in the embroidery is at the top of the list, followed by all the thread color blocks. The check boxes show which color blocks are hidden. The numbers show the order in which the colors are used, and the samples show solid blocks of each thread color in 3D.

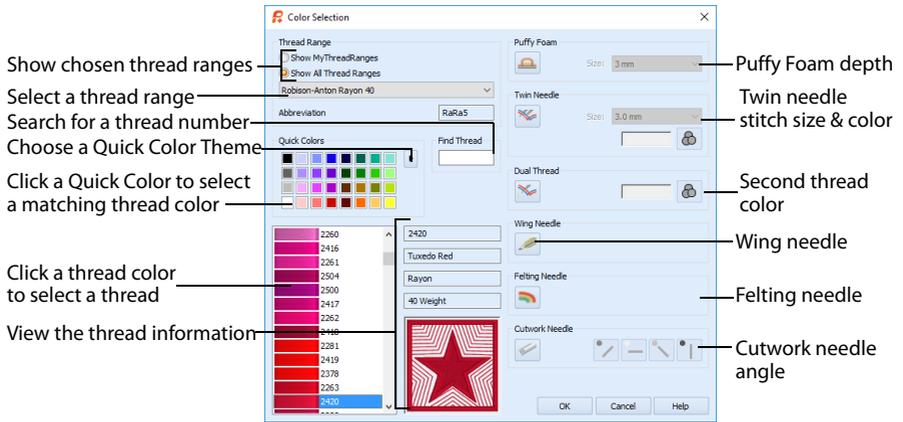
Double-click a thread sample to access the Color Selection dialog box for selecting a different thread color. Alternatively, select the thread and click the Change Color icon . When on the Modify tab, click a check box to show or hide a color block. When a color is hidden, its check box in the Color Worksheet is not selected, as shown here:



## Change an Existing Thread Color

The Color Selection dialog box will appear when you double-click a thread color in the color worksheet, or select a thread and click the Change Color icon . You may choose any thread shade from the available thread manufacturers' palettes (for instance, Sulky

Rayon 40 or Robison-Anton Cotton 50) or a thread you have added to My Threads. Select colors by visual selection or by typing in a shade number. Alternatively, click one of the Quick Colors to select the nearest matching thread color. Once the desired color is selected, click OK. Optionally, add a thread or needle effect to the selected color block.



When you select a new thread color, the color worksheet will show the change and the work area will show the block of stitches in the new color (assuming the stitches are not hidden).

## Change a Thread Color

- 1 Click a color that you want to change in the color worksheet. The color block will be highlighted.
- 2 Click the Change Color icon  below the color worksheet. The Color Selection dialog box will appear.  
*Alternatively, double-click the color block, or right-click the color block and choose Change Color from the context menu.*
- 3 If required, change the thread range. Select the desired thread range from all thread ranges or only MyThreadRanges. The available shades for the thread range will be shown in the list.  
*The Abbreviation shows the reference used for the thread range when threads from that range are added to MyThreads.*
- 4 Click a color in the list to select a thread shade visually. You can use the scroll bar to browse through the list of threads.
- 5 If you know the shade number, click in the Find Thread box then type the required shade number.
- 6 Alternatively, choose a Quick Color Theme then click the desired Quick Color. The nearest shade that is available from the current thread range will be selected.  
*This is also a quick way to jump to threads of that color (for example, click light yellow in the Standard Theme to jump to light yellow thread shades).*
- 7 If desired, add a thread or needle effect. Then click OK to confirm the color selection. The dialog box closes, and your changes are displayed in the work area.

## Effects

Use the effects area of the Color Selection dialog box to show the results of using thread effects or special needles.



Puffy Foam

Show the effect of stitching over embroidery foam

-  Dual Thread     Show the effect of using two threads in one needle
-  Twin Needle     Show the effect of using a twin needle
-  Wing Needle     Show the effect of using a wing needle for hemstitch or heirloom designs
-  Felting Needle     Show the effect of using a felting needle with a roving fiber
-  Cutwork Needle     Select a cutwork needle in one of four angles

Only one thread effect can be used on any thread. In the Modify tab of PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra, most thread effects are not shown in the active subdesign, as it would be difficult to edit the stitches. They are shown in Design Player  and Life View , in addition to the other tabs.

Choose an effect. If you choose Puffy Foam, set the foam height. If you choose Twin Needle, set the Twin Needle size. Click the color icon for the Second Color if you wish to use a different thread color. For Dual Thread, it is recommended to change the Second Color. For Twin Needle, this choice depends on the desired result. For Felting Needle select a color for the roving fiber for felting. For Cutwork Needle, choose the angle for your needles.

## Puffy Foam

Use Puffy Foam to show the three-dimensional effect of stitching over embroidery foam.

Click the drop-down arrow and select the height of the puffy foam, between 2.0mm and 6.0mm. The height is initially set to 3.0mm.

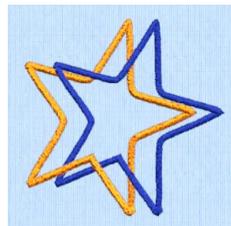
## Dual Thread

Use Dual Thread to show the effects of stitching out two threads through the same needle. This is particularly suited to blending threads for special effects, such as mixing a rayon thread with a metallic thread, as in the center of the star.



## Twin Needle

Use Twin Needle to show the effect of stitching out the color block with a twin needle. This creates a horizontal offset between the original thread color in the left-hand needle, and a second thread color in the right-hand needle.



There are several ways that the Twin Needle effect can be used, including:

- Use with running stitch to create a ribbon effect, typically using the same thread color in both needles

- Use with a low density fill area to blend two different thread colors and also have a lightly shadowed effect
- Use with a dense fill area to create a shadow effect

*It is recommended to use natural hoop orientation for designs with Twin Needle colors.*



### Twin Needle Size

This is only available if the Twin Needle effect is selected for the current color block. Click the drop-down arrow and select the size of the gap between the twin needles. This is initially set to 3.0mm.

Preview the effect of changing the twin needle size to help decide which needles to buy. Ensure that the desired size is recommended for embroidery on your machine.

### Second Color

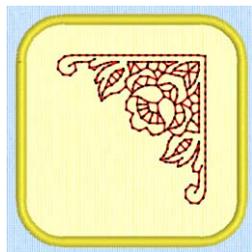
The second color is initially set to the same color as the original color block. Click the color change button  to choose a different thread for the second color. The Color Selection dialog box appears. Select the desired thread and click OK. The thread sample will change, and the thread range and thread number are shown.

### Wing Needle

Use Wing Needle  to show the effect of stitching out the color block with a wing needle and the chosen thread.

The wing needle creates holes in the fabric, for hemstitch and other heirloom techniques.

*To see the holes more than the stitch, use a fine thread such as Poly 60 weight. To see the actual stitching, Rayon 40 weight is ideal.*



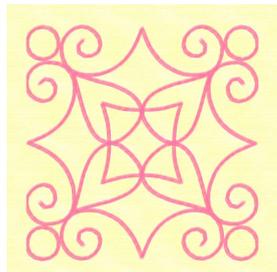
### Felting Needle

Use Felting Needle  to show the effect of embellishing the selected color block using a felting needle and a contrasting roving fiber.

Choose a color for the roving fiber for the felting in the Color Selection dialog box. In projects without a roving fiber, choose a felting needle color similar to the back of the fabric.

*If you select Felting Needle in PREMIER+™ 2 Create the stitching will be adjusted. In other modules the effect is purely visual; for example, to see how felting will look in a pre-made design.*

*When Exporting an embroidery with a Felting Needle effect, the option "Flip design for felting or reverse embroidery" is initially selected in the Export dialog box. See "Export" on page 20.*



### Cutwork Needle

Use Cutwork Needle  to show the line that would be used by cutwork needles to automatically cut holes in your fabric areas, or create appliqué areas. Use cutwork needle

lines for reverse appliqué embroideries and free-standing lace, or simply to cut out a shape or design.

Choose the cutting angle for the cutwork needle.

(When creating cutwork needle lines in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery or PREMIER+™ 2 Create, or converting running lines to cutwork needle lines in any PREMIER+™ 2 module, you may use two needles, or for more precise work use four needles.)



## ColorSort

Use ColorSort  (Home tab) to reduce the selected embroidery(ies) or group to the minimum number of color blocks. The final number of color blocks produced in the ColorSort process can vary, depending on any overlap between areas. If possible, it leaves only one color block for each thread color used. If necessary, trims are added to connect the areas that use the same thread color. Unnecessary Color Change commands are removed.

*It is usually recommended to use the ColorSort option in Export  when creating an embroidery file optimized for stitching.*

The ColorSort function in the Home tab is not available for single pieces of lettering, monograms, SuperDesigns or Frames.

*If desired, click Undo  to return to the original colors.*

*If you use ColorSort on a multiple selection or group, the number of colors seen in the Color Select area may be more than if the same embroideries were combined. This is because ColorSort looks at the embroideries within the selection or group separately. To minimize the number of colors for stitching out, use Export with ColorSort to create a version for stitching.*

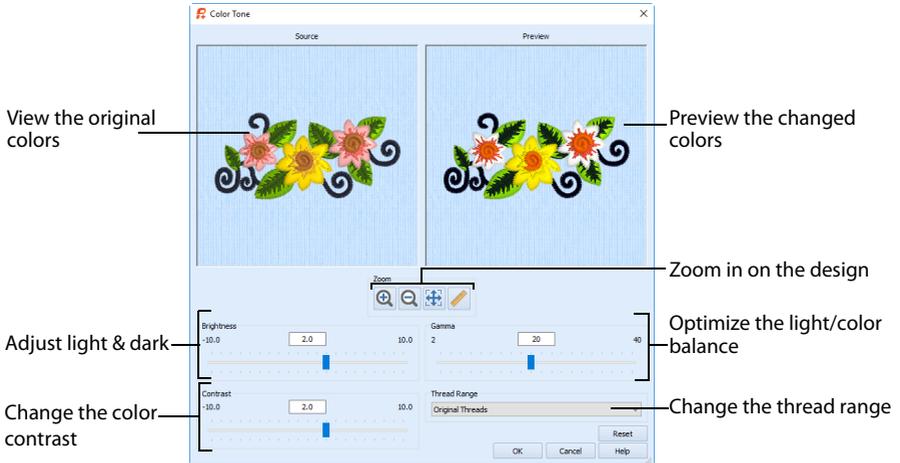
## Shortcuts

- Home Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, H, CS

# Color Tone

Use Color Tone  to change the thread colors in the selected embroidery(ies) or group. The Color Tone dialog box includes the Brightness, Contrast and Gamma sliders, and the Thread Range box.

*Try different settings to enhance different designs. You may also combine more than one Color Tone tool.* Use the Thread Range box to convert all the threads in the selected embroidery(ies) or group to a new thread range, with or without adjusting the Color Tone options. Thread and needle effects will not be removed.



## Shortcuts

- Home Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, H, CT

## Brightness

The Brightness effect makes the selected part or all of an embroidery lighter or darker than the original. Use it to lighten or darken embroideries.

Adjust Brightness from -10 to +10 in steps of 0.1. The default setting is 0.

## Contrast

The Contrast effect changes the amount of shading between areas for the embroidery. Use it to make specific areas stand out. Adjust Contrast up to +10 or -10 more or less than the original. Increasing the setting will increase the darkness of dark areas and the lightness of light areas.

Adjust Contrast from -10 to +10 in steps of 0.1. The default setting is 0.

## Gamma

Use Gamma to adjust the brightness and contrast together so that dark areas are made brighter, but bright areas are not overexposed.

Adjust Gamma from 2 to 40 in steps of 1. The default setting is 10. Lower values will make the embroidery appear lighter.

## Thread Range

Use the Thread Range box to select the thread range used for the embroidery from the drop-down list. Choose from any of the manufacturer's thread ranges or one of the MyThreads ranges you create using PREMIER+™ 2 Thread Cache.

*If the embroidery originally used more than one thread range, only one thread range will now be used. To return to the original thread range(s) used in the design select 'Original Threads' from the top of the list.*

## Reset

Reset the embroidery back to the original settings.

## Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the embroidery.

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the embroidery and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

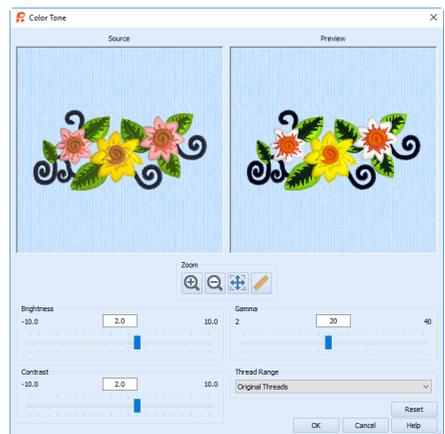
Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the embroidery and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the embroidery to the preview area.

Click Real Size  to view the embroidery at a magnification as close as possible to the Real Size setting you chose in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure .

## Use Color Tone to Change the Colors in a Floral Embroidery

- 1 Click New , then click Insert .
- 2 In the folder Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Stitch2\Flowers load the 'Floral Motif' embroidery.
- 3 Move the pointer over the first thread in the color worksheet. The thread is highlighted in the work area, and its Thread Range and name is displayed. *The Thread Range is Robison-Anton Rayon 40.*
- 4 Click Color Tone  in the Home tab. The Color Tone page is displayed.
- 5 In the Thread Range drop-down list, scroll down and select Robison-Anton Poly Neon 40. The colors are much brighter. With other thread ranges, e.g. Sulky Rayon 40, the change is more subtle. *The threads in the design are mapped to the nearest color in the range, and the result shown in the preview pane.*  
*Use Reset to reverse all changes made to the design.*



- 6 In the Thread Range drop-down list, scroll up and select 'Original Threads' to return to the original thread range(s) used in the design.
- 7 Move the slider to the right to change the Brightness to 2.  
Alternatively, click to select the slider and use the right arrow key, or enter a positive number in the box.  
*You can adjust the Brightness between -10 and +10 relative to the starting point by typing in a number, using the left and right arrow keys, or by clicking and dragging the slider bar. To darken the embroidery, move the slider to the left, use the left arrow key, or enter a negative number in the box.*
- 8 Enter 2.0 in the number box to change the Contrast.  
*You can adjust the Contrast between -10 and +10 relative to the starting point by typing in a number, using the left and right arrow keys, or by clicking and dragging the slider bar.*
- 9 Click the Gamma slider bar to select it, then use the right arrow key to change the Gamma to 20.  
*You can adjust the Gamma between 2 and 40 by typing in a number, using the left and right arrow keys, or by clicking and dragging the slider bar.*
- 10 Click OK to close the Color Tone dialog box. The threads in the color worksheet change to their new color and range.

## Quick Colors and Quick Color Themes

### Quick Colors

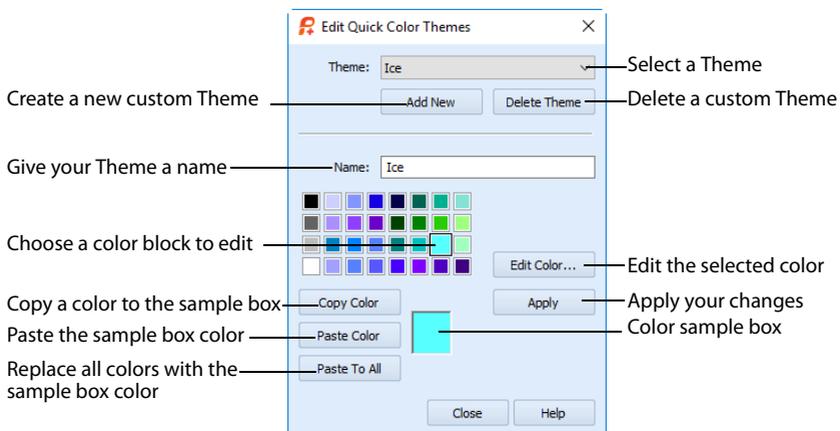
Use the Quick Colors palette to select the nearest matching color in the current range to the color that you pick. Use one of the theme palettes: Standard, Spring, Summer, Fall, Winter, or create your own palette.



Quick Colors are used for thread colors, Felting Needle colors, and appliqué fabric colors.

### Quick Color Themes

Use Quick Color Themes for quick selection of thread colors using a related set of colors. Create your own Quick Color Themes, which are available for selecting thread colors in the Color Selection dialog box in most PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System modules. Also use Quick Color Themes to set fabric colors in the Appliqué Selection dialog box.



## Select a Quick Color

- 1 Open a dialog box with the Quick Colors area, such as the Color Selection box.
- 2 Click the arrow to the right of the Quick Colors to choose a Quick Color Theme in the menu.

*In this menu you can also select Edit Themes to create a new theme, or edit a Custom theme.*

- 3 Click the desired Quick Color. The nearest shade that is available from the current thread range will be selected.

*This is also a quick way to jump to threads of that color (for example, click light yellow in the Standard Theme to jump to light yellow thread shades).*



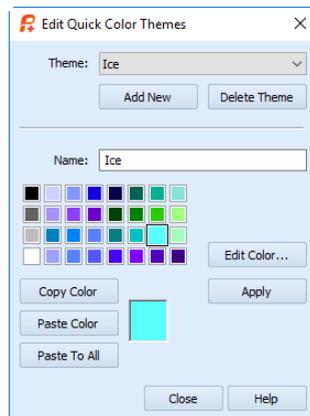
## Add a Quick Color Theme

You can add or customize your own Quick Colors themes in the Color Selection or the Appliqué Selection dialog box in most PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System modules.

- 1 Open a dialog box with the Quick Colors area, such as the Color Selection box.
- 2 Click the arrow to the right of the Quick Colors and select Edit Themes in the menu. The Edit Quick Color Themes dialog box opens.

*Note that if one of the system Themes is selected, the editing options will be unavailable (grayed out).*

- 3 Select a Theme from the drop-down menu at the top.  
*Your new Theme will be based on the colors in this theme.*
- 4 Click the Add New button. A new theme 'Untitled' appears.
- 5 Give your new theme a name, then click Apply. You can now select your new theme from the drop-down list at the top.
- 6 Select a color in the palette.
- 7 Click the Edit Color button. The Colors dialog box appears.
- 8 Choose a new color from the Standard or Custom tab, then click OK. Your chosen color will replace the original color.
- 9 To copy a color, select a color in the palette, then click Copy Color. Your selected color will appear in the Color Box.
- 10 To paste the color in the Color Box, select a color in the palette, then click Paste Color. The color in the palette will be replaced.
- 11 To replace all colors in the palette, click Paste To All.
- 12 Click Apply to save the changes to your new Quick Color Theme.
- 13 Click Close to finish editing your new Theme.



*To make further edits to your theme, select Edit Themes in the Quick Colors Theme menu.*

## Edit Quick Color Themes

### Theme

Select a Theme from the drop-down list.

*Any new Theme will be based on the colors in this theme.*

### Add New

Click Add New to create a new theme.

### Delete Theme

Click Delete Theme to remove a custom Theme.

*You cannot delete system Themes.*

## Name

Enter the desired theme name.

## Theme Colors

Click a color in the grid and a box will appear around the selected color.



## Edit Color

Click Edit Color to change the currently selected color in the Colors Dialog Box. Alternatively, double-click a color to change it in the Colors Dialog Box.

## Apply

Click Apply to save the changes you have made.

## Copy Color

Click Copy Color to place the color in the color sample box, to the right of the button.

*Use the color sample box to copy a color from one theme to another.*

## Paste Color

Click Paste Color to replace the color in the currently selected grid position with the color in the sample box.

## Paste To All

Click Paste To All to place the color in the sample box in all the grid positions. This is useful when starting a new Theme if you wish to vary the Theme around a single initial color.

## Close

Click Close to finish editing the new theme. The new theme is added to the end of the Theme list.

*You will be asked if you want to save any changes you have made, if you have not clicked Apply.*

## Change a Quick Color Theme

Select an existing Quick Color Theme you wish to change from the Theme drop-down list, then click Edit Theme.

*The predefined Quick Color Themes may not be edited. However, you may use any predefined theme as the basis for a new theme.*

The options are the same as when you Add a Quick Color Theme. See “Edit Quick Color Themes” on page 53.

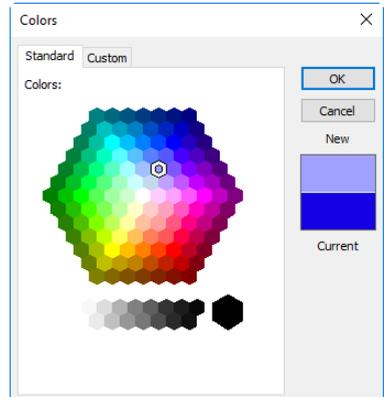
## Delete a Quick Color Theme

- 1 In the Edit Quick Color Themes dialog box, use the Theme drop-down list to select the Theme you wish to remove.
- 2 Click Delete Theme. A message will appear to remind you that this action may not be reversed.
- 3 Click Yes and the theme will be deleted.  
*The predefined Quick Color Themes may not be deleted.*

# Colors Dialog Box

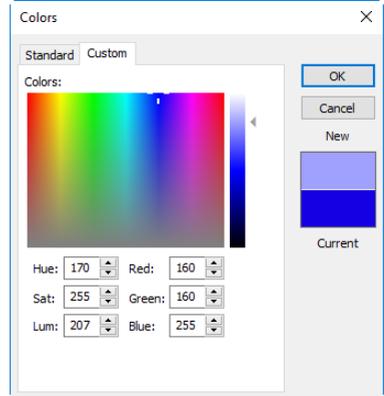
The Colors dialog box is used to choose or change a color for a thread or fabric, or modify any color in a Quick Colors Custom theme.

When the Colors dialog box appears, it shows the Standard color selection. If desired, click one of the Standard colors. A highlight shows the selected color. The New/Current box shows the difference between the newly chosen color and the color currently used.



Click the Custom tab to be able to select any of the 16 million RGB colors.

Click in the blended color palette to choose a basic color, then use the slider at the side to choose the desired brightness level. The HSL and RGB values are updated as you change the color and the color is previewed in the New/Current box.



You can also directly enter Hue, Sat(uration), Lum(inance) (HSL) and/or Red, Green, Blue (RGB) values. Alternatively, use the up/down buttons on each of the HSL and RGB value boxes to make fine adjustments to the color.

## Color Models

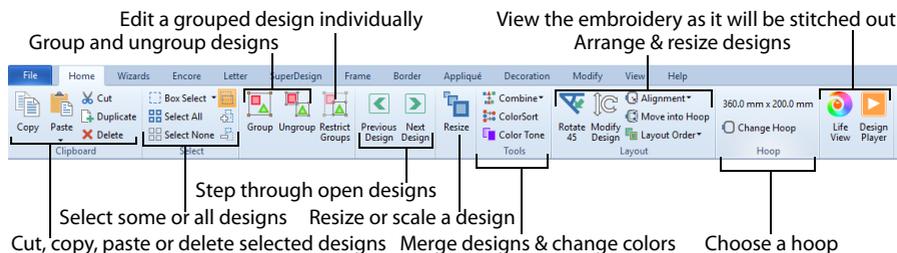
### Hue, Saturation, Luminance (HSL) Color Model

Hue is the color (red, yellow, green, or blue) for the selected color, expressed as a value between 0 and 239. Saturation (Sat) is the strength or purity of color in a specified hue. This is related to the amount of gray in it and is measured from 0 (completely gray) up to a maximum of 240 (no gray). The higher the saturation, the purer or more vivid the color. Luminosity (Lum) is the intensity of lightness or darkness in a color, specified by a value between 0 (black) and 240 (white). If Saturation is 0, the Luminosity setting specifies a shade of gray.

### Red, Green, Blue (RGB) Color Model

The RGB model, one of the Additive Color models, is used on computer monitors. It has three primary colors — red, green, and blue — that it creates by emitting light. These three colors are combined in various proportions to produce all the colors displayed on your screen. They are referred to as additive because they combine to produce white.

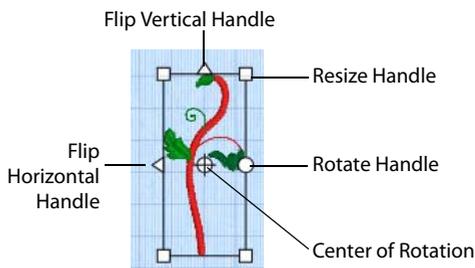
Primary colors are measured as a value from 0-255. The colors produced by combining the three primaries are a result of the amount of each of those shades present. For example, pure red has a red value of 255, a green value of 0, and a blue value of 0. Yellow has a red value of 255, a green value of 255, and a blue value of 0. If Red, Green and Blue are set to zero, the color is black; if all three are 255, they produce white.



## Selecting Embroideries

### Select an Embroidery

On all tabs except the Modify tab, the currently selected embroidery is shown with a selection box around it. The selection box has square resize handles on the corners, triangular flip handles on the top and left, and a circular rotate handle on the right.



*If a selection box has round handles on its corners, part of it is outside the selected hoop. Move it into the hoop, or change the hoop size.*

The handles are blue if in resize mode (density retained when resized), white in scale mode (stitch count retained when resized). They are green for lettering, SuperDesigns, Frames and Flourishes, and light green for Monograms, before they are fixed as embroideries.

If no design is selected there is no selection box visible and the color worksheet appears blank.

Select an embroidery with any of the following methods:

- Click an embroidery.
- Press the Tab key to select each embroidery in turn.
- Click Next Design  or Previous Design  (Home tab).

*When making a selection, only embroideries that are completely enclosed by the selection line (box, Freehand Point, Freehand Line) will be included in the selection.*

*After embroideries have been combined, there will be only one embroidery, so it will no longer be possible to select the individual parts in this way. Use Group  to keep multiple embroideries, lettering and SuperDesigns together while retaining the ability to edit them individually. To select items within a group, use Restrict Group .*

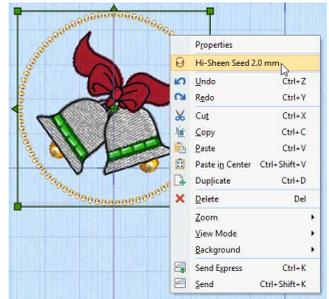
Alternatively, in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra, use the Modify tab to select and adjust the desired part of an embroidery. Individual stitches and blocks may always be adjusted on the Modify tab (see “Select and Edit Single Stitches” on page 96).

## The Context Menu and Individual Designs

Use the Context menu to access editing functions for individual designs, such as size and rotation. Right-click on the design, and select the desired function from the context menu.

From the context menu you can also change the properties for stitch types in lettering (in addition to font characters, Lettering Shape and so on), frames and SuperDesigns, or fix them as stitches.

Use the context menu to adjust the appliqué fabric and margin for lettering, Frames and SuperDesigns, and decorations for an embroidery. The Context menu allows you to adjust these properties if PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra is not owned.



See “Appliqué Selection” on page 185 and “Decoration Selection” on page 208.

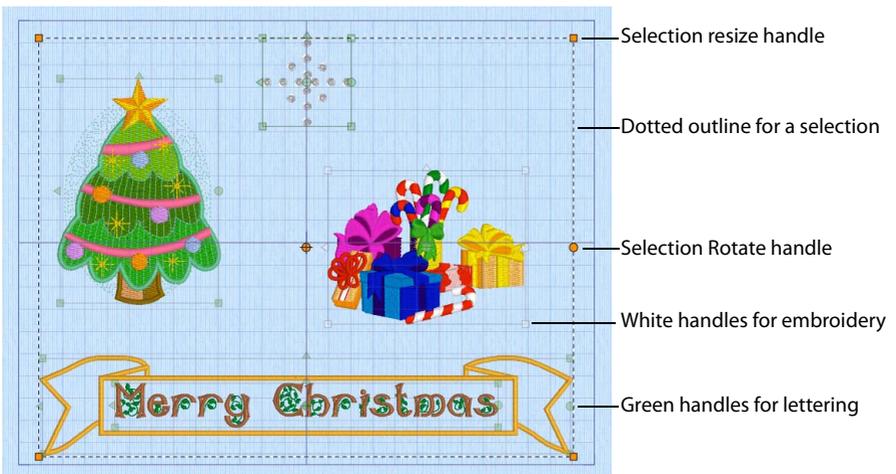
To adjust the properties for an individual design within a group, click Restrict Groups in the Home tab or context menu, then select the desired item.

## Multiple Select Features

Use multiple select to select more than one embroidery at a time.

Hold down the Ctrl key and click the desired embroideries. A selection box will be placed around each of the selected embroideries. Alternatively, use one of the multiple select tools in the Box Select  drop-down toolbar, or Select All  embroideries.

The selection area must include the complete embroidery, otherwise it will not be selected.



The selected designs are surrounded by a selection box with a dotted outline, and orange handles. The faded outlines of the selection boxes for the included embroideries and other designs can be seen within the larger selection. Lettering, frames, SuperDesigns and decoration SuperDesigns retain their green handles, while Monograms retain their light green handles.

The whole selection can be moved, resized or scaled proportionally, or rotated. When a selection is enlarged or reduced, each item is resized or scaled according to its individual state. Lettering or SuperDesigns with green handles are resized with constant stitch density, as are embroideries with blue handles. Embroideries with white handles are scaled. There are no flip handles. To mirror the whole selection it must be combined. The stitch count and thread colors for the complete selection can be seen in the Design Panel, and the width and height of the selection box are displayed.

*If you click outside the selection box, the designs will become separate. Use Undo  or select them again to recreate the multiple selection. To keep the selected embroideries together after saving, use Group. See "Group" on page 62.*

## Select All

Use Select All  to select all of the embroideries in the work area.

*Select All will select embroideries that are outside the chosen hoop.*

### Shortcuts

- Home Tab: 
- Keys: Ctrl + A; Alt, H, SA

## Box Select

Use Box Select  to select embroideries in a rectangular area. Click and drag around the area you want to select.

*Use Add to Selection  with any select function to increase the area of selected embroideries, or use Remove From Selection  to make the currently selected area smaller.*

### Shortcuts

- Home Tab, Select Drop-Down: 
- Keys: Alt, H, SS, B

## Freehand Select

Use Freehand Select  to select a block of embroideries within an area of any shape. Click and drag to draw an irregular outline around the desired designs. When you release the mouse the area is closed automatically.

*Use Add to Selection  with any select function to increase the area of selected embroideries, or use Remove From Selection  to make the currently selected area smaller.*

### Shortcuts

- Home Tab, Select Drop-Down: 

- Keys: Alt, H, SS, F

## Freehand Point Select

Use Freehand Point Select  to select a block of embroideries within an area of any shape, defined by a series of points. Click a series of points to create an irregular outline of straight or curved lines around the desired designs. Freehand Point Select may be easier to use than Freehand Select for precise selections.

Use Add to Selection  with any select function to increase the area of selected embroideries, or use Remove From Selection  to make the currently selected area smaller.

### Shortcuts

- Home Tab, Select Drop-Down: 
- Keys: Alt, H, SS, P

## Select a Leaf with Freehand Point Select

- 1 Click New  or File, New Window, then click the SuperDesign tab.
- 2 In Category, select Wreath, then load several of the leaf designs in this Category.
- 3 Move the designs so that they are close to each other.
- 4 Click the Home tab.
- 5 In the Box Select drop-down menu, choose Freehand Point Select . The pointer changes to the Freehand Point pointer .
- 6 Click to place the first point to select two of the leaves. A yellow round node appears.
- 7 Click to place a series of points around the leaves.  
*As you click the third point on the line, the line becomes closed (it becomes a loop). As you place more points the line adjusts itself.*  
*The line may 'swing' while you place points. Just carry on, you can adjust it afterwards.*
- 8 Use Ctrl+click to place square nodes for straight lines.
- 9 Move the pointer over one of the nodes on the line. The pointer changes to the Move Node pointer . Adjust the node as desired.  
*When the Move Node pointer is active you can adjust existing nodes.*  
*If you click while the Freehand Point pointer  is active, another point will be added to the line.*
- 10 When your line is as desired, right-click to surround the leaves with a selection box.  
*Freehand Point Select is useful when selecting a few among several adjacent designs.*
- 11 Right-click to deselect Freehand Point Select.

## Select None

Use Select None  to deselect all of the embroideries in the work area, including any outside the hoop.

### Shortcuts

- Home Tab: 
- Keys: Ctrl + Shift + A; Alt, H, SN

## Replace Selection

Use Replace Selection  to replace the currently selected embroideries with the new selection.

## Replace a Selection

- 1 Place several small embroideries on the work area.
- 2 Use Box Select  (or another selection tool) to select some of these designs.
- 3 Ensure that Replace Selection  is selected.  
*Replace Selection is initially selected.*
- 4 Using Box Select , select some different embroideries.  
*The new selection replaces your old selection.*

### Shortcuts

- Select, Home Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, H, RS

## Add To Selection

Use Add to Selection  to add the new selection to the currently selected embroideries.

## Add Designs to a Selection

- 1 Place several small embroideries on the work area.
- 2 Use Box Select  (or another selection tool) to select some of these designs.
- 3 Click Add to Selection .
- 4 Using Box Select , select some different embroideries.  
*The new selection is added to your old selection.*

### Shortcuts

- Select, Home Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, H, AS

## Remove From Selection

Use Remove From Selection  to remove the new selection from the currently selected embroideries.

## Remove Designs from a Selection

- 1 Place several small embroideries on the work area.
- 2 Use Box Select  (or another selection tool) to select some of these designs.
- 3 Click Remove From Selection .
- 4 Using Box Select , select some of the embroideries within your selection.  
*The new selection is removed from your original selection.*

### Shortcuts

- Select, Home Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, H, SD

## Previous Design

Use Previous Design  to select the previous design in the stitchout order.

### Shortcuts

- Home Tab: 
- Keys: Shift + Tab; Alt, H, P

## Next Design

Use Next Design  to select the next design in the stitchout order.

### Shortcuts

- Home Tab: 
- Keys: Tab; Alt, H, N

## Grouping Selected Embroideries

In PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, you can edit embroideries individually, in a selection, or in groups which remain together after saving.

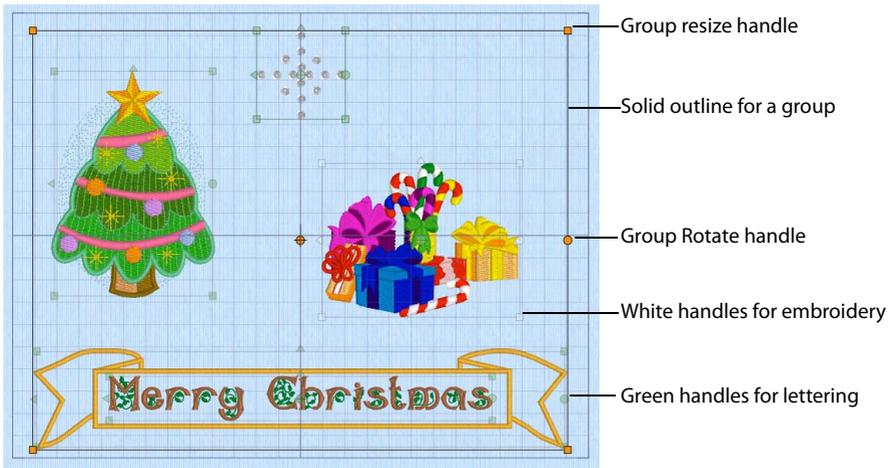
*When a design including multiple subdesigns is loaded using Insert , all sections will be grouped together, ready for moving, resizing and so on. If you use Open, it will match original groups exactly.*



## Group

Use Group  to make a more permanent group of all the currently selected designs. Use Group to group the designs permanently, or to make a temporary Group while moving or editing them. Each design in the group in turn is placed after the one that is earliest in the stitchout order (nearest the back of the project).

*A group can be modified in the same way as a selection. You can move, resize or scale it proportionally, or rotate it.*



The grouped embroideries are surrounded by a selection box with a solid outline, and orange handles. The faded outlines of the selection boxes for the included embroideries and other designs can be seen within the larger selection. Text, frames, SuperDesigns and decoration SuperDesigns retain their green handles, while Monograms retain their light green handles.

The group can be moved, resized or scaled proportionally or rotated. When a group is enlarged or reduced, each item is resized or scaled according to its individual state.

Lettering or SuperDesigns with green handles are resized with constant stitch density, as are embroideries with blue handles. Embroideries with white handles are scaled. There are no flip handles. To mirror the whole group it must be combined. The stitch count and thread colors for the complete selection can be seen in the Design Panel, and the width and height of the selection box are displayed.

*If you click outside the selection box, and then click one of the designs within the group, the designs will still be grouped.*

## Shortcuts

- Home Tab; Group: 
- Keys: Alt, H, G

## Ungroup

Use Ungroup  to split the currently selected group into the designs which make it up. These may be embroideries, or lettering, SuperDesigns, frames, Decoration SuperDesigns, and monograms.

*Ungroup can only be used when a group is selected.*

## Shortcuts

- Home Tab; Group: 
- Keys: Alt, H, U

## Restrict Groups

Use Restrict Groups  on the Home tab or context menu to select and edit individual designs within a group. The first design in the group is selected initially when Restrict Groups is chosen. Click the desired embroidery, use the tab key or Next Design  and Previous Design  to select.

*The designs remain grouped, but they can be moved, rotated, mirrored and resized or scaled individually.*

## Shortcuts

- Home Tab; Group: 
- Keys: Alt, H, E

## Christmas Greetings: Multiple Select and Group Designs

- 1 Click Change Hoop . From the Universal Hoop Group, set the Hoop Size to 260mm x 200mm - Universal Large Hoop 3, Rotated orientation. Click OK.
- 2 Click File, New  to open a new window.
- 3 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Insert .
- 4 In the folder Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Stitch2\Holidays load the embroidery 'Gifts & Candy Canes'.  
*This is an embroidery; it has white handles showing that it is initially in Scale rather than Resize  mode.*

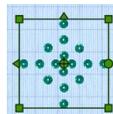


- 5 Move the embroidery to the right side of the hoop.
- 6 Click the SuperDesign tab and select the Christmas Tree 1 SuperDesign in the Holidays Category.
- 7 Set the Size of the SuperDesign to 90mm, then click Apply .  
*The SuperDesign has green handles. For more about SuperDesigns, see "Creating SuperDesigns" on page 398.*
- 8 Move the christmas tree SuperDesign to the left of the hoop, a little above the gifts embroidery.
- 9 Click the Letter tab and enter the words "Merry Christmas" in the Letters box.
- 10 In the Font drop-down list select the font Ivy 2C 15-60mm in the Floral Category. Ensure that the Lettering Shape is Horizontal Block, and the Size is 15mm.
- 11 Click Apply  and move the lettering to the bottom of the screen, in the middle.  
*The lettering has green handles. For more about lettering see "Creating Lettering" on page 326.*
- 12 Click the Frame tab.
- 13 In the Frames drop-down menu, select banner 3 in the Banners 2 category.
- 14 Ensure that Group is selected in Frame Surround.  
*The banner and lettering will be placed as a Group.*
- 15 Ensure that the Merry Christmas lettering is selected, and click Apply . The banner is placed around the lettering.



*The selection box around the banner has orange handles and a solid outline, as it is a Group. The lettering inside has a faded outline and pale green handles. For more about Frames, see "Frames, Borders and Motifs" on page 408.*

- 16 Click the Decoration tab (available if you own PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra), then click Decoration SuperDesign .  
*The Decoration tab is not available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery. Load a star SuperDesign from the SuperDesign tab, then go to step 20.*
- 17 Browse to the folder DecorationDesigns\Miscellaneous, select the design Cross 2, and click Open to load it into the work area. Close the File Viewer dialog box.
- 18 Right-click the decoration design and select Pearl Sequin Cup 4.0 mm in the Context menu.
- 19 In the Quick Colors, set the sequin color to white, then click OK.
- 20 Move the Decoration SuperDesign to the top center, to look like a star. It also has green handles.
- For more about Decoration SuperDesigns, see "Decoration SuperDesign" on page 205.*
- 21 Press the Tab key to see each design in turn. Each is in a selection or group with a solid outline and orange, green or white handles.
- 22 Click the Home tab.



- 23** Use Box Select  or Select All  to select all of the designs. The selection box for the selected designs has a dotted outline and orange handles.



Ensure that the selection box has square handles. If not move the designs so that all are within the hoop and try again.

- 24** Click and drag to move the selected designs as a unit, and use the round handle to rotate the selection. Use Undo  to reverse your changes.
- 25** Click outside the hoop. The designs are separate again.
- 26** In the ribbon bar, note that the Group  and Ungroup  icons are not available (are grayed out).
- 27** Use Select All  to select the designs again. The Group icon is now available.
- 28** Click Group . The selection box for the group has a solid outline.



The faded outlines and handles for the designs within the group can still be seen.

- 29** Click outside the group. None of the designs are selected.
- 30** Click the Christmas tree. The whole group is selected again.
- 31** Note that the Ungroup  icon is now available. Groups are permanent until they are broken apart with Ungroup. Note that you cannot Tab between the designs within the group.
- 32** Click Restrict Groups . The Restrict Groups icon is highlighted; and the last placed design, the decoration, is selected.

You can now select and edit the designs within the group individually, for example to adjust the position of the Merry Christmas lettering within the banner, or to adjust its properties. (The lettering and banner are no longer grouped together, because there is only one level of grouping. A group cannot contain subgroups.)

- 33 Click Restrict Groups  again. The group is now a single unit, and the Restrict Groups icon is no longer highlighted.
- 34 Click Ungroup . The designs that were in the group now form a selection.
- 35 Click and drag to move the selected designs. They move as a unit.  
*While the block is still selected you can reverse the effects of Ungroup by using either Group or Undo.*
- 36 Click outside the selection box. The designs are now separate.  
*Use Ungroup to make major changes to a group, or to use the designs within the group separately.*

## Move

Move the selected embroidery(ies), group or selected block of stitches using click and drag. Move the pointer over the selection box and it changes to the four-headed arrow pointer . Click inside the selection box and drag it to the required position.



When a block is moved on the Modify tab, any stitches which lead to or from the block will be stretched to accommodate the new position of the stitches moved in the block.

*If you accidentally move the center of rotation, simply click and drag inside the selection box again.*

## Nudge

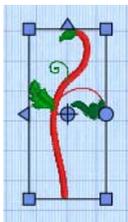
The selected embroidery(ies), group or block of stitches can be moved in small amounts to nudge it accurately into the desired position. Use the arrow keys on the keyboard to nudge an embroidery or block.

*When more than one embroidery is selected, all of the selected embroideries will be moved. If a group is selected, the whole group will be moved unless Restrict Group is enabled.*

You can also position embroideries automatically with Move into Hoop, Center in Hoop, and the alignment tools. See "Alignment" on page 69.

## Resize and Scale

Use Resize  to switch between resize and scale for the selected embroidery(ies) or block of stitches. Use resize to change the size of the embroidery and retain constant density. Use scale to change the size of the embroidery and retain constant stitch count. The handles on the embroidery selection show when resize or scale is selected.



Blue handles for resize



White handles for scale

The handles are blue if in resize mode (density retained when resized), and white in scale mode (stitch count retained when resized). They are green for lettering, SuperDesigns and Frames or Flourishes and light green for Monograms before they are fixed as embroideries. The resize and scale information for each subdesign is remembered separately.

*Newly created or inserted non-.vp4 designs are initially in scale mode (white handles).*

Move the pointer over one of the square corner handles  and it becomes the diagonal double-arrow pointer . Click and drag one of the handles to resize or scale.

*Hold down Ctrl as you click and drag to resize or scale proportionally. Hold down Shift to resize or scale from the center. Designs within multiple selections or groups (shown with orange handles) are always scaled or resized proportionally. If you resize a monogram created with the ExpressMonogram Wizard, it is fixed as stitches.*

*When a Decoration line or shape is enlarged, the number of decorations increases. It decreases as the line or shape is made smaller. Decorations placed individually do not change in number.*

In the Design Panel, the Height  and Width  boxes will show the new size of the embroidery when you release the mouse button. After resizing a group, the percentage size change from the original cannot be seen in the Modify Design dialog box.

Use Modify Design  to change the dimensions using numbers.

## Shortcuts

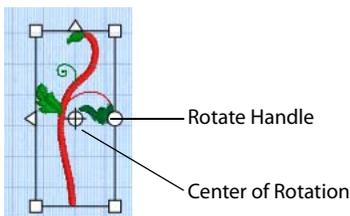
- Home or Modify Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, H, R or Alt, M, R

## Rotation

Rotate the selected embroidery(ies), group or block of stitches to any degree using free rotation with the mouse. Alternatively, enter a specific angle using Modify Design , or rotate in 45 degree steps .

### Free Rotation

Move the pointer over the rotation handle  and it changes to the rotate pointer . Click and drag the rotation handle to rotate the embroidery freely to any angle. If desired, move the center of rotation  before rotating the embroidery.



The selection box around the embroidery and the embroidery outline are rotated around the center of rotation.

## Move the Center of Rotation

The center of rotation  is initially shown in the middle of the embroidery, selection or group. Move the pointer over the center of rotation and it changes to the cross-hair pointer . Click on or within the center of rotation, then drag it to any position in the work area. This changes the pivot point around which the embroidery(ies) rotate for any of the rotation methods.

*Click outside the selection box and then select again to return the center of rotation to its initial position.*

## Rotate 45 Degrees

Use Rotate 45  to rotate the selected embroidery(ies) or group in 45 degree steps. If desired, move the center of rotation  before rotating.

### Shortcuts

- Home Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, H, OT

## Modify Design

Use Modify Design  to open the Modify Design dialog, where you can show and change the size and rotation of the currently selected embroidery(ies) or group.

*To rotate a selected embroidery or block of stitches in the Modify tab, see "Modify Block" on page 101.*

### Shortcuts

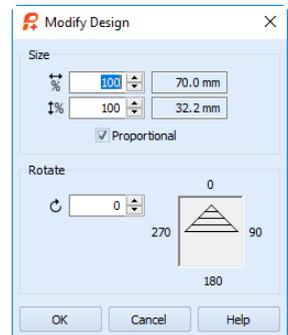
- Home Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, H, OD

## Modify Design

Use the Modify Design dialog box to show and change the size and rotation of the currently selected embroidery(ies) or group.

Modify the currently selected design as desired, then click OK to show your changes in the work area.

*Whenever you resize or rotate, it is from the original settings. If a single piece of lettering is selected the lettering Properties dialog will appear. If a single SuperDesign, Frame or Flourish is selected the Options dialog will appear.*



## Size

### Height and Width %

Show and change the height  and width  percentage of the currently selected embroidery(ies) or group. The height and width are scaled or resized according to the Resize mode.

The size in millimeters to which the design will be changed is shown to the right. After resizing a group, the percentage size change from the original cannot be seen in the Modify Design dialog box.

## Proportional

Use this option to keep the relative Height and Width in proportion when either is changed.

*Designs within multiple selections or groups (shown with orange handles) are always scaled or resized proportionally. If you resize a monogram from the ExpressMonogram Wizard, it is fixed as stitches. When a Decoration line or shape is enlarged, the number of decorations increases. It decreases as the line or shape is made smaller. Decorations placed individually do not change in number.*

## Rotate

### Angle

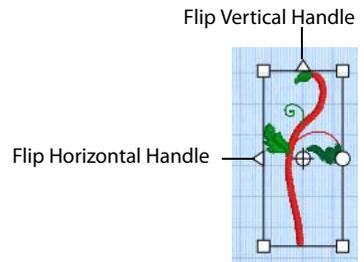
Use the up and down arrows or enter an angle  from 0 to 359 degrees in the Rotate box. The preview shows the selected angle.

*If desired, move the center of rotation  before rotating.*

## Flip Vertical and Horizontal

Mirror the selected embroidery or block of stitches vertically or horizontally using the flip handles on the selection box.

*There are no flip handles for multiple selections or groups; if desired, use Combine in order to mirror. There are no flip handles for Monograms; if desired fix as embroidery, then mirror.*



### Horizontally Flip Block

Move the pointer over the Flip Horizontal handle  and it becomes the horizontal double-arrow pointer . Click the Flip Horizontal handle to mirror an embroidery or selected block horizontally.

### Vertically Flip Block

Move the pointer over the Flip Vertical handle  and it becomes the vertical double-arrow pointer . Click the Flip Vertical handle to mirror an embroidery or selected block vertically.

## Alignment

The alignment features are found in the Alignment  drop-down list.

### Center In Hoop

Use Center In Hoop  to move the selected embroidery(ies) or group to the center of the hoop.

To move individual embroideries in a group to the center, use Restrict Groups.

## Shortcuts

- Home Tab, Alignment Drop-Down: 
- Keys: Alt, H, A, C

## Alignment Tools

The Alignment tools allow embroideries and groups to be aligned precisely.

*The Alignment tools are only available when more than one embroidery or group is selected. See “Multiple Select Features” on page 58.*

Select the embroideries and groups that you want to align, then use one of the alignment tools. Embroideries can be aligned horizontally or vertically. They can also be centered.

### Horizontal Alignment

#### Align Left

Align Left  aligns all selected embroideries and groups with the left edge of the design furthest to the left.

#### Shortcuts

- Home Tab, Alignment Drop-Down: 
- Keys: Alt, H, A, H, L

#### Align Center

Align Center (Center Horizontally)  centers all selected embroideries and groups horizontally relative to each other.

#### Shortcuts

- Home Tab, Alignment Drop-Down: 
- Keys: Alt, H, A, H, C

#### Align Right

Align Right  aligns all selected embroideries and groups with the right edge of the design furthest to the right.

#### Shortcuts

- Home Tab, Alignment Drop-Down: 
- Keys: Alt, H, A, H, R

#### Distribute Horizontally

Distribute Horizontally  aligns all selected embroideries and groups to be equally spaced horizontally.

#### Shortcuts

- Home Tab, Alignment Drop-Down: 
- Keys: Alt, H, A, H, D

## Vertical Alignment

### Align Top

Align Top  aligns all selected embroideries and groups with the top edge of the highest design.

#### Shortcuts

- Home Tab, Alignment Drop-Down: 
- Keys: Alt, H, A, V, T

### Align Middle

Align Middle (Center Vertically)  centers all selected embroideries and groups vertically relative to each other.

#### Shortcuts

- Home Tab, Alignment Drop-Down: 
- Keys: Alt, H, A, V, M

### Align Bottom

Align Bottom  aligns all selected embroideries and groups with the bottom edge of the lowest design.

#### Shortcuts

- Home Tab, Alignment Drop-Down: 
- Keys: Alt, H, A, V, B

### Distribute Vertically

Distribute Vertically  aligns all selected embroideries and groups to be equally spaced vertically.

#### Shortcuts

- Home Tab, Alignment Drop-Down: 
- Keys: Alt, H, A, V, D

### Move Into Hoop

Use Move Into Hoop  to move the selected embroideries and groups into the closest area of the hoop.

*Only the selected embroideries that are outside the hoop will be moved.*

#### Shortcuts

- Home Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, H, OV

# Layout Order

The Layout Order commands on the Home tab: Move Forwards , Move Backwards , Move to Front  and Move to Back , are used to move embroideries and groups within the design. Embroideries at the 'back' of the design will be stitched out first.

*To change the stitchout order of embroideries within a group, use Restrict Groups on the Home tab or context menu.*

## Move Forwards

Move Forwards  brings the selected embroidery or group one step closer to the front.

- Keys: Alt, H, B, F

## Move Backwards

Move Backwards  brings the selected embroidery or group one step closer to the back.

- Keys: Alt, H, B, B

## Move to Front

Move to Front  places the selected embroidery or group at the front.

- Keys: Alt, H, B, R

## Move to Back

Move to Back  places the selected embroidery or group at the back.

- Keys: Alt, H, B, A

# Undo and Redo

## Undo

Use Undo  to reverse the last action. If you are not satisfied with the result, click Redo.

*When you use Undo while on the Modify tab, all stitches in the embroidery being edited are displayed and the selected block is deselected.*

Each time you use Undo the undone action becomes a Redo.

For instance, you might move a stitch and then Undo the move. You could now Redo the move or do something else. If you delete the stitch instead of using Redo then the Redo is lost, along with any other Redos that may have followed.

Undo steps are only lost when you use New .

## Shortcuts

- Quick Access Toolbar: 
- Keys: Ctrl + Z; Alt, 7

## Redo

Use Redo  to reverse the last action that was undone by Undo. If you are not satisfied with the result, click Undo.

Redo only works if nothing has happened after the last Undo. For instance, if you insert a Color Change command, then Undo and move the embroidery then it is not possible to Redo the Color Change because something different has happened instead.

*When you use Redo while on the Modify tab, all stitches in the embroidery being edited are displayed and the selected block is deselected.*

Redo steps are only lost when you use New .

## Shortcuts

- Quick Access Toolbar: 
- Keys: Ctrl + Y; Alt, 8

# Combine

The Combine functions are useful if you are sure you will never need to adjust subdesigns again, or to enable mirroring of a selection or group of embroideries. Otherwise, it is usually recommended to use the Combine Options when you Export  your project to an embroidery file for stitching out.

*Decorations cannot be combined with other embroideries; instead they are added as a subdesign, last in the stitchout order.*

## Combine All

Use Combine All  to merge all the embroideries on the work area into a single embroidery, and fix lettering, SuperDesigns and Frames as stitches.

*It is usually recommended to use the Combine option in Export  when creating an embroidery file for stitching out. This method allows you to retain the separate embroideries, lettering, and so on of your multipart design as adjustable elements in the .vp4 project file.*

After the embroideries are combined, notes and settings from all the embroideries are also combined in the Notes and Settings boxes. Any overlapping stitches are removed if the option is selected in Preferences.

*If more than one copy of the same embroidery is combined, it is helpful to ColorSort . However, you may prefer not to ColorSort  if you plan to use the Split Project Wizard to split the embroidery for multiple hoopings.*

Embroideries are combined (and therefore stitched out) in the order that they were loaded into PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery. If you copy an embroidery after other files have been opened, then paste it back in, the second copy will be stitched after all the other embroideries. To change the order use the Layout Order commands.

## Shortcuts

- Home Tab, Combine Drop-Down: 
- Keys: Alt, H, M, A

## Combine All Embroideries on the Work Area

- 1 Click New to clear the screen, then load the desired embroideries. The color blocks for each embroidery are shown in the color worksheet when it is selected.
- 2 Create additional lettering, motifs or frames if required, and move, modify and edit each embroidery as desired.
- 3 Click the Home tab.
- 4 Click Combine , then Combine All. The embroideries are merged, with one outline box surrounding all of them. The color worksheet now shows the color blocks for the new combined embroidery.
- 5 The Notes box contains the notes from all the embroideries that have been combined. Click in the Notes box and amend as desired.
- 6 Save the new embroidery.

## Combine Selected

Use Combine Selected  to merge the selected embroideries into a single embroidery and fix lettering, SuperDesigns and Frames as stitches.

*It is usually recommended to use the Combine option in Export  when creating an embroidery file for stitching out. This method allows you to retain the separate embroideries, lettering, and so on of your multipart design as adjustable elements in the .vp4 project file.*

After the embroideries are combined, the notes and settings from the embroideries are combined in the Notes box. Any overlapping stitches are removed if the option is selected in Preferences.

### Shortcuts

- Home Tab, Combine Drop-Down: 
- Keys: Alt, H, M, S

## Combine the Selected Embroideries

- 1 Click the Home tab.
- 2 Use Multiple Select to select the desired embroideries.  
*See "Multiple Select Features" on page 58.*
- 3 From the Combine drop-down, select Combine Selected . The embroideries are merged, with one outline box surrounding all of them. The color worksheet now shows the color blocks for the new combined embroidery.
- 4 The Notes box contains the notes from all the embroideries that have been combined. Click in the Notes box and amend as desired.
- 5 Save the new embroidery.

## Fix As Stitches

Use Fix as Stitches  to fix the selected subdesign or subdesigns as embroidery.

*Designs such as lettering, SuperDesigns, frames and Monograms can be resized with constant stitch density, and the stitch types adjusted, until they are fixed as embroidery. Other aspects of lettering, such as the font or text may also be adjusted until it is fixed.*

Lettering, SuperDesigns, frames and Monograms are automatically fixed as embroidery if you adjust them in the Modify tab in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra. A warning is given to allow you to avoid fixing the design accidentally.

*You may occasionally wish to fix designs; for example, to mirror some lettering shapes, a selection or group, or resize or scale it without constant properties. It may also be useful if you wish to adjust the rotation of the Appliqué Fabric in a SuperDesign.*

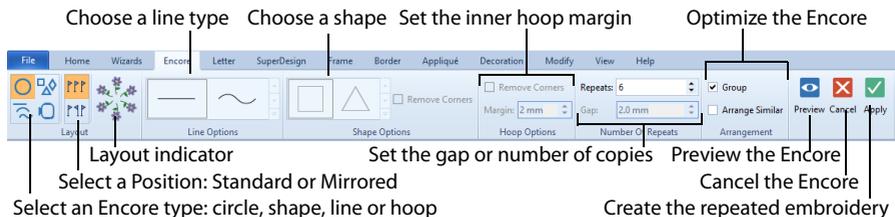
## Shortcuts

- Home Tab, Combine Drop-Down: 
- Keys: Alt, H, M, F

## Encore

Use the Encore tab features to place repeated copies of embroideries in a line, a circle or a shape, or around the edge of the hoop.

Choose the number of repeats, or the margin and gap, and the number of embroideries used. Set the position to standard or mirrored. Click Preview  to see the Encore, and Apply  to place the repeated embroidery in the work area according to the chosen Finalizing options.

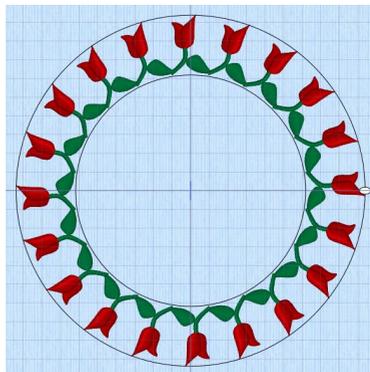


Use any number of embroideries with a line or circle, but only one or two embroideries with a shape or a hoop. To use more embroideries, you may Group  them before choosing Encore.

With Line and Circle you can choose the number of Repeats. For Shape and Hoop the number of repeats is set by the size of the embroidery, the Gap and the Margin.

## Repeat an Embroidery with Encore

- 1 Place a small embroidery on the work area and select it.
- 2 Click the Encore tab.
- 3 Select an Encore type (circle , line , shape  or hoop ) and Position (standard  or mirrored ), and any other options for that Encore type. A preview image illustrates the chosen layout.
- 4 Set the number of Repeats, or the Gap.
- 5 Click Preview  to view the repeated designs in the work area. *While in Preview mode it is not possible to select any other function in the Quick Access toolbar. If you click another tab, the Encore will be cancelled.*
- 6 Adjust the Encore line or shape on the work area. Alternatively, adjust the settings on the Encore tab and click Preview  again.



Drag inside the Encore shape to resize, drag the handle to reshape, e.g. to change a circle into an ellipse.

- 7 If desired, select Group and (if designs overlap) Arrange Similar.
- 8 Click Apply  to place the repeated designs as an embroidery with the chosen finalizing options.

## Shortcuts

- Encore Tab
- Keys: Alt, E

*In Encore the designs are repeated in order of their stitching out, from back to front. For Encore Shape or Hoop the embroidery that is first in the stitchout order will be placed in the corners. To change the order use the Layout Order commands.*

*Encore repeats an embroidery clockwise for Circle, Shape and Hoop, and from left to right for Line. If you combine multiple designs before using Encore, try to work from left to right. This will prevent trimmed threads from becoming caught under elements in the same color block.*

## Encore Types

Encore repeats the selected designs in a circle, line, shape or hoop using the chosen position and number of repeats.

*Encore repeats an embroidery clockwise for Circle, Shape and Hoop, and from left to right for Line. Therefore, if you wish to group multiple design elements before using Encore on the grouped result, try to work from left to right. This will prevent trimmed threads from becoming caught under elements in the same color block.*

### Type

With Line and Circle you can choose the number of Repeats. For Shape and Hoop the number of repeats is set by the size of the embroidery, the Gap and the Margin.

*Encore repeats designs in stitchout order, from back to front. In Shape and Hoop the embroidery that is first in the stitchout order is placed in the corners. Stitchout order can be changed with the Layout Order commands.*

Encore repeats an embroidery clockwise for Circle, Shape and Hoop, and from left to right for Line.

### Shortcut

- Keys: Alt, E, T

Circle		Place the embroideries in a circle.
Line		Place the embroideries in one of 8 line options from left to right.
Shape		Place up to two selected embroideries around the edge of a shape.
Hoop		Place up to two selected embroideries around the hoop edge.

### Position

Standard		The copies of the embroidery use the original orientation.
Mirrored		Each alternate copy of the embroidery is reflected. This works best if the number of Repeats is an even number.

*You can use any number of embroideries with a line or circle, but only one or two embroideries with a shape or a hoop. To use more embroideries, Group them first.*

## Circle

Use Circle  to place the embroideries in a circle and set the number of repeats. Adjust the circle to form an ellipse.

See “Number of Repeats” on page 81.

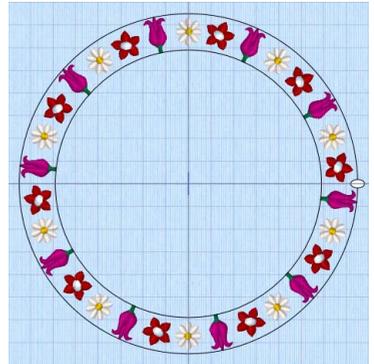
After clicking Preview , click and drag inside the circle to position the circle as desired. Click and drag one of the embroideries to make the circle smaller or larger.

Click and drag the white handle to reshape the circle to form an ellipse.

*When adjusting in an ellipse, you cannot overlap the two sides of the ellipse. When adjusting in a circle, you can overlap at the center of the design.*

## Flowers in an Encore Circle

- 1 Click the SuperDesign tab.
- 2 In the category drop-down list, select Flowers.
- 3 In Flowers 1, click the first flower, then click Apply . The flower is displayed in the work area.
- 4 Add the second and third flowers to the work area; they will each be added in the center.
- 5 Click the Home tab, then click Select All  to select the three embroideries.
- 6 Click the Encore tab.
- 7 In Type, select Circle.
- 8 In Repeats enter 30.
- 9 Click Preview . The three SuperDesigns are displayed in a repeating sequence around the edge of the circle.
- 10 Click on the embroidery at the top, and drag it downwards. The circle becomes smaller, and the embroideries move closer together.  
*You can also click and drag the white handle to reshape the circle to form an ellipse.*
- 11 Change the number of Repeats and preview again.  
*If you change to Hoop or Shape and preview, you will notice that only the first two flowers that you selected are in the Encore.*
- 12 Ensure Group is selected and if the designs are overlapped, select Arrange Similar.
- 13 Apply  to create the final, repeated embroidery.



## Line

Use Line  to place the embroideries in one of eight line types from left to right. Use Line Options to select the Line Type.

### Line Options

The Line Options are only available when the Type is set to Line.

### Line Type

Select a straight line, or one of seven types of curved line from the drop-down menu.

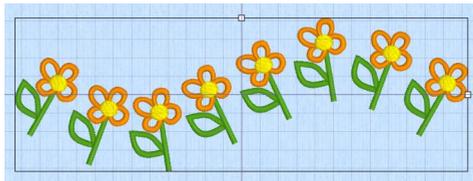
#### To Adjust an Encore Line

- Drag the line using the four-headed arrow Move pointer  to position it.
- Drag the square handle on the top or right side of the line, using the double-headed horizontal or vertical pointer, to change the spacing between the designs.

## Create a Line of Repeated Embroideries

- 1 Place some small embroideries on the work area and select them.
- 2 Click the Encore tab.
- 3 In Type, select Line .
- 4 Select the Position (standard  or mirrored .

- 5 Choose a Line Type from the drop-down menu. The first option is a straight line. The other seven line types are curved.
  - 6 Set the number of Repeats as desired, from 2 to 360.
  - 7 Click Preview  to view the repeated designs in the work area.
  - 8 Drag the line of embroideries to position it.
  - 9 Drag the square handles on right side and top of the box to stretch or compress the box, and change the spacing.
- With a straight line, only the handle on the right is available.*
- 10 Ensure Group is selected and if the designs are overlapped, select Arrange Similar.
  - 11 Click Apply  to place the repeated line as an embroidery.



## Shape

Use Shape  to place up to two selected embroideries around the edge of a shape. Use Shape Options to select from 28 shapes.

## Shape Options

The Shape Options are only available when the Type is set to Shape.

### Shape

Select your shape from the drop-down list of 28 shapes.

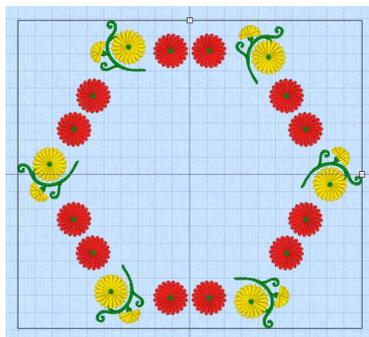
### Remove Corners

The embroidery is repeated along the sides of the hoop, with one embroidery placed at 45 degrees in each corner of the hoop. Select the Remove Corners option if you do not want the 45 degree embroideries in the corners. This option provides flexibility to create attractive designs with embroideries of different sizes and shapes.

*If two embroideries are selected, the embroidery that is first in the stitch-out order will be placed in the corners. Use Layout Order to change the order. See "Layout Order" on page 72.*

## Use Repeated Embroideries in a Shape

- 1 Place two small embroideries on the work area and select them.
- 2 Click the Encore tab.
- 3 In Type, select Shape .
- 4 Select the Position (standard  or mirrored .
- 5 Choose a Shape from the drop-down list. There are 28 shapes to choose from.
- 6 Ensure that Remove Corners is not selected.
- 7 Set the Gap between the embroideries.
- 8 Click Preview to view the repeated designs in the work area.  
*The embroidery that you loaded or created first is in the corners.*
- 9 Drag the shape to position it.
- 10 Drag the square handles on the top and right sides of the box to adjust the shape, and change the number and spacing of the embroideries.
- 11 Ensure Group is selected and if the designs are overlapped, select Arrange Similar.
- 12 Click Preview  to view the repeated designs in the work area.



- 13 Click Apply  to place the shape as an embroidery.

## Hoop

Place up to two selected embroideries around the edge of the hoop, to make a border or frame.

*If two embroideries are selected, the embroidery that is first in the stitchout order is placed in the corners. Use Layout Order to change the order.*

## Hoop Options

The Hoop Options are only available when the Type is set to Hoop.

### Remove Corners

The embroidery is repeated along the sides of the hoop, with one embroidery placed at 45 degrees in each corner of the hoop. Select the Remove Corners option if you do not want the 45 degree embroideries in the corners. This option provides flexibility to create attractive hoop borders with embroideries of different sizes and shapes.

*If two embroideries are selected, the embroidery that is first in the stitch-out order will be placed in the corners. Use Layout Order to change the order. See "Layout Order" on page 72.*

*The maximum size limit for Encore Hoop is 2000mm.*

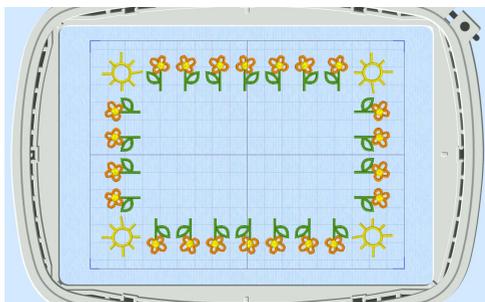
### Margin

Use Margin to leave space between the repeated embroideries and the edge of the hoop. This is useful if, for example, you wish to make the embroidery Endless, as this will leave a margin for adjustment in the hoop when stitching out.

The minimum Margin is zero. The maximum Margin varies, depending on the hoop size.

## Use Repeated Embroideries in a Hoop

- 1 Place two small embroideries on the work area and select them.
- 2 Click the Encore tab.
- 3 In Type, select Hoop .
- 4 Select the Position (standard  or mirrored .
- 5 Ensure that Remove Corners is not selected.
- 6 Set the Gap between the embroideries.
- 7 Set the Margin between the line of embroideries and the hoop.
- 8 Click Preview. The Encore forms a frame around the inside edge of the hoop.  
*The embroidery that you loaded first is in the corners.*
- 9 Adjust the Margin and Gap as desired.
- 10 Ensure Group is selected and if the designs are overlapped, select Arrange Similar.
- 11 Click Apply  to place the Encore as an embroidery.



## Position

### Standard

Use Standard  to place copies of the embroidery in the original orientation one after another around the circle, shape or hoop, or along the line.

## Mirror

Use Mirror  to reflect alternate copies of the embroidery.

*This generally looks best if the number of Repeats is an even number.*

## Number of Repeats

Set the number of repeats in the Encore by changing the gap, or setting the number of repeats.

- For Line and Circle, select the number of Repeats.
- For Shape and Hoop, set the Gap between the repeated embroideries.

## Repeats

*This option is only available for Line and Circle.*

The total number of copies of the selected embroidery(ies) that will make a circle or line of repeated embroideries. Set the number of repeats from 2 to 360.

Where more than one embroidery is selected, divide the number of repeats by the number of selected embroideries to give the number for each. For example, two embroideries using 10 repeats will produce five of each embroidery.

*Generally, the larger the initial embroidery, the fewer Repeats should be made.*

## Gap

*This option is only available for Shape and Hoop.*

Use Gap to set the minimum spacing between repeated embroideries. If necessary, the actual spacing is increased where the Gap value would cause incomplete embroideries on either side of the hoop. So the spacing between repeated embroideries may differ on the long and short sides of the hoop.

Increase the Gap to move the embroideries further apart. Decrease the Gap to move the embroideries closer together. Use negative Gap to overlap embroideries by up to 50%.

Set the Gap in steps of 0.1mm. The default Gap is 2.0mm.

## Arrangement

### Group

Group the embroideries during creation.

### Arrange Similar

Place individual designs together when using multiple embroideries that are overlapped, to optimize the results from ColorSort. This does not change the display order, only the stitchout order.

### Preview

Use Preview  to view the repeated designs in the work area, and make any further adjustments.

## Cancel

Use Cancel  to cancel the preview without applying the Encore.

## Apply

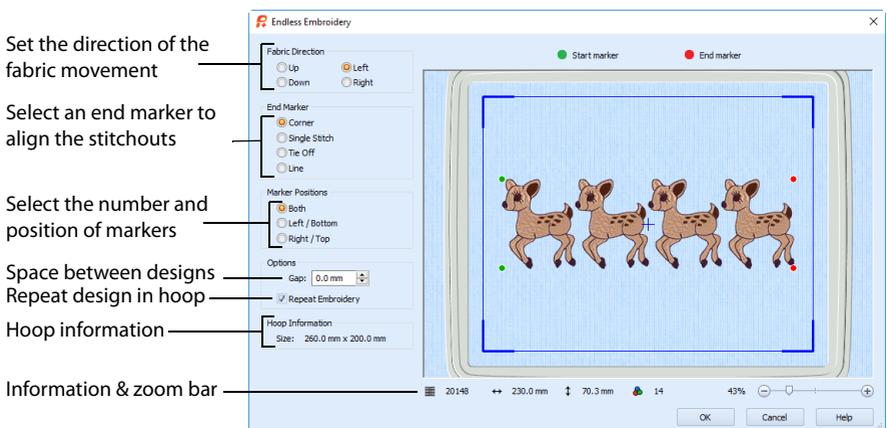
Click Apply  to create the repeated embroidery. If you selected the Group option, the embroidery will be grouped before it is shown on the work area.

*If designs overlap it may be helpful to use Arrange Similar to reduce the number of color changes.*

Once the repeated embroidery is created, you can change colors, move, resize or scale, rotate and so on. If it is created as a group, use Restrict Groups to adjust elements individually.

## Endless Embroidery

Use the Endless Embroidery wizard  to add markers (alignment stitches) to an embroidery so it can be stitched out in a continuous, regularly spaced, sequence as many times as desired. After each stitchout, the fabric is re-hooped and the markers are used to align the new stitchout to the previous stitchout. Hence, the embroidery can be stitched out as a single, endless embroidery in a band.



If there is more than one embroidery on the screen, the embroideries are grouped automatically when the Endless Embroidery wizard is started.

*When embroideries inside the hoop are made Endless, any embroideries placed outside the hoop are removed.*

When the settings are changed, the preview is updated automatically.

*The Endless Embroidery settings are reset to their defaults when PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery is closed.*

## Adjusting an Endless Embroidery

An endless embroidery is a grouped embroidery with start and end markers (alignment stitches). After creating an endless embroidery, save it as a .vp4 file to preserve the grouping of designs with alignment stitches.

To reload an Endless embroidery in the Endless Wizard, open it in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery and click the Endless tab. The Endless embroidery will be opened, and the alignment stitches will be removed. Adjust it as desired, for example change the End Marker type, then close it again and save it.

When you are ready to embroider your project, export it with the desired settings to optimize for sewing such as Combine, Remove Overlap and ColorSort.

## Shortcuts

- Wizards Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, W, N

## Fabric Direction

This is the direction the fabric will be moved in the hoop for each repeat. This is according to the size and orientation of the hoop as it is shown in the Preview area. The Fabric Direction affects which sides of the embroidery will be the Start and End, so that the Start marker is always on the side of the embroidery that matches the Fabric Direction. Hence, the Start Marker 'points' in the direction the fabric will be moved.

The default direction is Up for vertical (Natural) hoops and Left for horizontal (Rotated) hoops.

When the Direction is changed, the preview is updated.

## End Marker

The end marker alignment stitch is used to line up the next stitchout of the embroidery. End marker positions are shown by red dots on the preview. Choose from one of four types of end marker:

### Corner

A small L-shaped corner of three long loose stitches. The alignment point is the corner of the L. This is the default choice for the end marker.

### Single Stitch

A long stitch that moves to the corners, placing only one needle point at each corner. This is ideal if you are stitching onto a fabric that you are concerned about marking, such as leather or a very light weight fabric.

### Tie Off

A few stitches in the same place, centered on the alignment point. The Tie Off marker is very secure, but may be difficult to remove after stitching.

### Line

A line of three long stitches. The alignment point is at the outside end of the line, closest to the edge of the hoop.

The Corner and Line markers are particularly helpful for checking that you have re-hooped your fabric straight enough for the next embroidery repeat, especially when both marker positions are stitched.

The Preview is not affected by the choice of End Marker.

*There is no choice for start markers because they are always movement stitches. The start markers are used to move the needle into position so that it can be aligned with the end markers. Hence, only the single 'jump point' is needed for a start marker. The start marker positions are shown by green dots on the preview.*

## Marker Positions

Select the positions of the markers. Both is recommended for most situations. Some of the reasons that you may wish to have markers on only one side are as follows:

- You have fabric that may be easily marked
- You have a fabric edge that can be easily followed each time you re-hoop the fabric
- You have an embroidery with a lot of open space on one side and you do not want to have any stitches in the open space, which may also partly conceal the presence of the marker stitches

### Both

Select Both for movement stitches to both start corners and end markers on both end corners. This is the default choice for the marker position.

### Left/Bottom

When the Fabric Direction is Up or Down, the markers are placed on the left edge. When the Fabric Direction is Left or Right, the markers are placed on the bottom edge.

### Right/Top

When the Fabric Direction is Up or Down, the markers are placed on the right edge. When the Fabric Direction is Left or Right, the markers are placed on the top edge.

## Options

### Gap

Use Gap to change the spacing between each stitchout of an embroidery. Gap changes the position of the start and end markers, as shown when the preview is refreshed. The Gap is split evenly on each side of the stitchout.

Increase the Gap to move the embroideries further apart. Decrease the Gap to move the embroideries closer together. The Gap can be increased until the embroidery plus the Gap equals the full height or width of the selected hoop. Use negative Gap to overlap embroideries by up to 50%.

Set the Gap in steps of 0.1mm. The default Gap is 0mm.

After changing the Gap the preview updates to show the adjustments.

### Repeat Embroidery

Repeat the embroidery as many times as possible within the current hoop size. This saves having to re-hoop the fabric for each stitchout of a small embroidery.

After changing the Repeat Embroidery option, note how many times the embroidery can be repeated from the preview. The number of repeats is also affected by the Gap and the direction the fabric will be moved in the hoop.

Repeat Embroidery is selected by default.

*You may wish to save a single version of an endless embroidery as well as a repeated version. This will allow you to stitch out as many repeats as necessary. Use the repeated embroidery to stitch out the majority of the endless design, then use the single embroidery to stitch the remainder if the repeats do not give an exact fit. This works best if you move the single version of the embroidery to the center of the hoop before it is saved.*

## Previewing Changes

When the settings are changed, the preview is updated with any changes to the settings that can be shown. The preview shows how the embroidery will be made endless. The embroidery is shown in 3D, with the hoop shown as a blue outline. The current hoop size is shown in the Information area. The start and end marker positions are indicated by the green and red dots, respectively.

*To change the 3D background color or texture, use PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.*

When Repeat Embroidery is selected, the maximum number of repeated copies of the embroidery that will fit will be shown in the preview. The number of embroideries will change according to the size of the original embroidery, the orientation of the hoop, the direction in which the embroidery is made endless and the Gap.

*The red dot showing the end marker position is not affected by the choice of end marker type.*

## Information

### Hoop Information

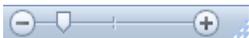
The size of the current hoop is given.

### Preview

The Information area shows the current hoop size set for PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, and the stitch count , width , height  and number of color blocks  of the endless, grouped embroidery shown in the preview.

### Zoom Bar

Use the Zoom Bar at the bottom of the screen to zoom in or out from the center of the endless embroidery.



Use the slider to zoom in or out, or click on the Zoom Out  or Zoom In  icons.

## OK

Click OK to make the embroidery endless. The preview area is updated automatically.

If Repeat Embroidery was selected and two or more repeated embroideries will fit, the repeated embroideries are grouped.

Start markers are inserted at the beginning of the embroidery as long movement stitches to the start marker positions. Movement stitches are added at the end of the embroidery to the end marker positions, which are then stitched according to the choice of end marker.

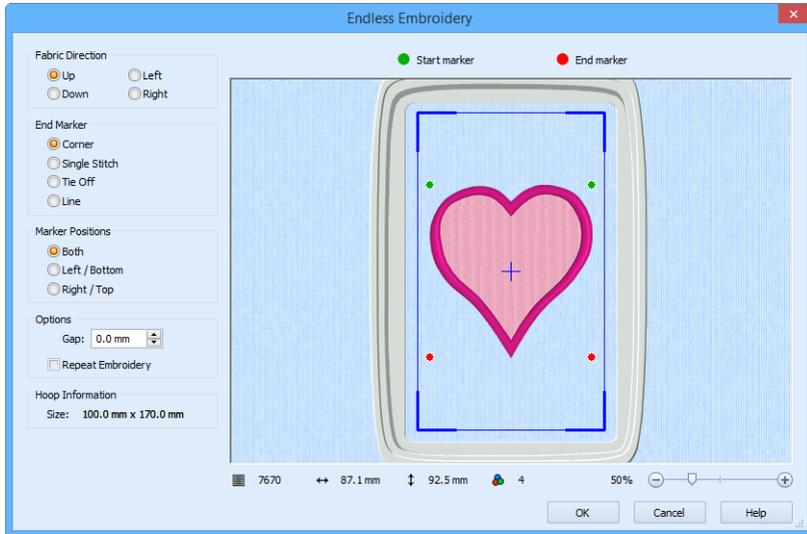
The endless embroidery is also centered in the hoop.

# Examples of Endless Embroidery Hoop Orientation and Fabric Direction

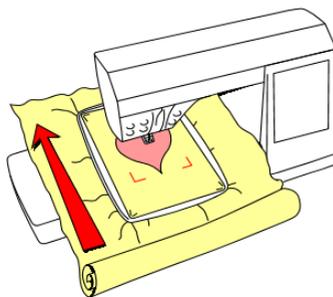
These pictures show how a heart-shaped embroidery (for example) could be repeated as an endless embroidery.

## Natural Orientation Hoop with Fabric Moving Up

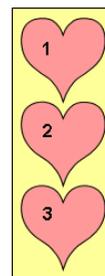
A hoop with natural orientation is selected, then the Fabric Direction is Up in the Endless Embroidery dialog box:



The fabric is hooped and moved in the machine like this:

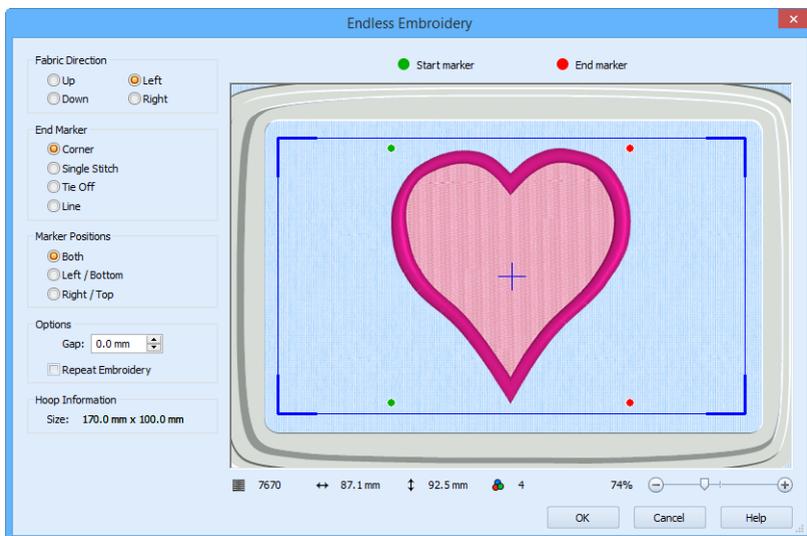


This results in a sequence of hearts, stitched in this order:

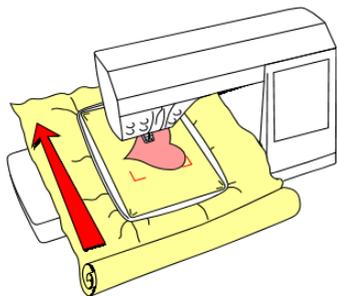


## Rotated Orientation Hoop with Fabric Moving Left

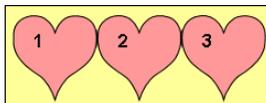
A hoop with rotated orientation is selected, then the Fabric Direction is Left in the Endless Embroidery dialog box:



The fabric is hooped and moved in the machine like this:



This results in a sequence of hearts, stitched in this order:

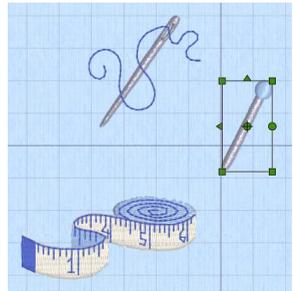


## Stitch Out an Endless Embroidery

- 1** Load the endless embroidery.
- 2** Click File, Print.
- 3** In the print preview, set the Design Scale to 100%.  
*This is so you can print a worksheet of the endless embroidery at full size to use as a template.*
- 4** Click Print  and print a worksheet of the endless embroidery.
- 5** If the fabric does not have a straight cut edge you can follow, you may wish to mark a center line on the fabric. Make a crease, a chalk line or a line with light-reactive marker down the full length of the fabric where the endless embroidery will be stitched.
- 6** Load the endless embroidery on your embroidery machine and hoop up your fabric.  
If you marked your fabric with a line, align the center marks on the edges of the hoop with the line.  
*It is recommended to always make a test stitchout of your endless embroidery on a sample of the final fabric. Stitch out more than one copy to check that the spacing and marker type give the desired result.*
- 7** Start by stitching out one copy of the embroidery. When the first copy stitches out, ignore the start marker movement stitches.
- 8** At the end of the stitchout, the end marker stitches will be stitched out last. Note where they are.
- 9** Re-hoop your fabric, moving it in the direction you chose in the Endless Embroidery dialog box.  
*For example, if you had a horizontal hoop on screen and chose Left, lay your hoop in front of you horizontally as it would appear on screen and move the fabric to the left in the hoop.*  
The stitches for the end markers (or single marker if you only used one), must be inside the stitch area so that the start marker for the next stitchout can be aligned.  
*If you have a hoop template that was supplied with the hoop, use this as a guide to positioning the end marker stitches inside the stitch area.*
- 10** Use the printed worksheet to confirm that the next copy of the embroidery will fit in the stitch area when the start and end markers are aligned.  
*This is particularly important if you are stitching an endless embroidery with a negative Gap, as you may need to bring the end marker stitches further into the hoop than seems obvious.*
- 11** Tighten the hoop and ensure the existing embroidery is straight, so that the next copy will stitch in a straight line from it. If you marked a center line, this will help to ensure that the fabric is straight.
- 12** Load the hoop back into the embroidery machine and thread the first color.
- 13** Instead of starting straight away, use stitch navigation on the embroidery machine to step forward by one stitch to the start marker. Then use the needle position controls to align the needle exactly over the end marker.  
*If the needle will not move far enough to align correctly with the end marker, this means the fabric is not hooped up with the end marker far enough inside the hoop. You will need to adjust your fabric in the hoop and try again.*
- 14** If you chose to use Both markers on the endless embroidery, step forward by one more stitch to the second start marker to confirm it is over the second end marker.  
*If the second marker is not aligned then the fabric may not be straight in the hoop, in which case you should adjust it and try again. Alternatively, there may be pull on the fabric and you may need to choose a compromise position that gives the best fit between the two markers.*
- 15** After confirming the alignment is correct, start embroidering.
- 16** Repeat from step 8 until you have stitched out the desired number of copies.

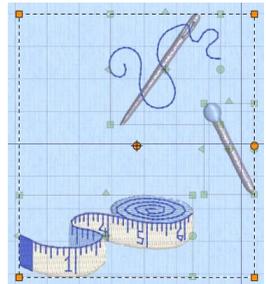
## Create an Endless Sewing Tools Border

- 1 Click Change Hoop . From the Universal Hoop Group, set the Hoop Size to 240mm x 150mm - Universal Large Hoop 2, Rotated orientation. Click OK.
- 2 Click the SuperDesign tab in the ribbon bar.
- 3 Select the Home Category from the drop-down menu.
- 4 Click to select the needle (2 - Needle), then click Apply to load it in the work area.
- 5 Select the Pin and Tape Measure SuperDesigns (numbers 3 and 6) and load them in the work area.  
*Use the three designs at their default size.*
- 6 Drag the three designs apart, with the Needle at the top, and the Pin and the Tape Measure below, as in the picture.
- 7 Select the Pin design, and click the  flip horizontal handle to make it face the other way.
- 8 Ensure that the Pin is between and to the right of the other designs.
- 9 Move the designs close together as in the picture. Use Select All  to check the relative positions of the selection boxes around each design.

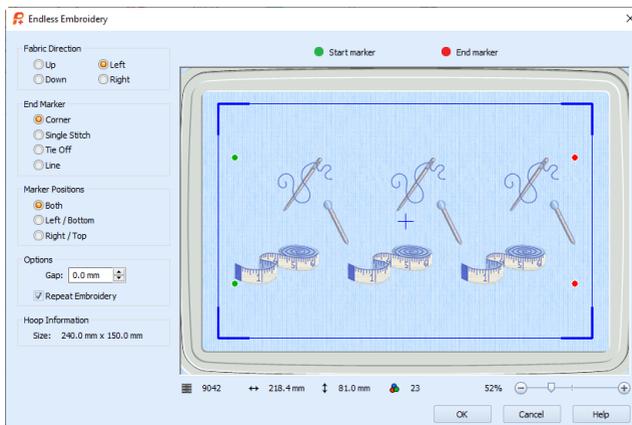


*The designs are positioned so as to show the features of the Endless Wizard. While the relative positions of the designs are important, their position within the hoop is not. Designs are positioned in the middle of the hoop when they are made Endless.*

- 10 Save the design as Sewing Tools.vp4.  
*This will make it easier to recreate your Endless Design later.*
- 11 Click the Wizards tab in the ribbon bar.
- 12 Click Endless  to use the design in the Endless Wizard.



*All designs that are entirely within the hoop are used for the Endless design. Any designs that are partially or fully outside the hoop will be removed.*

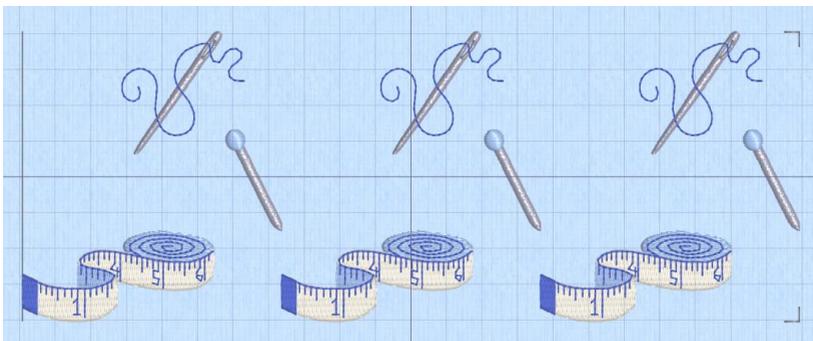


The hoop is in the Rotated position, and the green Start markers can be seen to the left. The design will be stitched from left to right. The red End Markers show where the End marker stitches will be placed after the rest of the design has been stitched.

*For a Natural hoop position, Up would be initially selected in Fabric Direction. This creates a vertical line of designs, rather than the horizontal border we are creating here.*

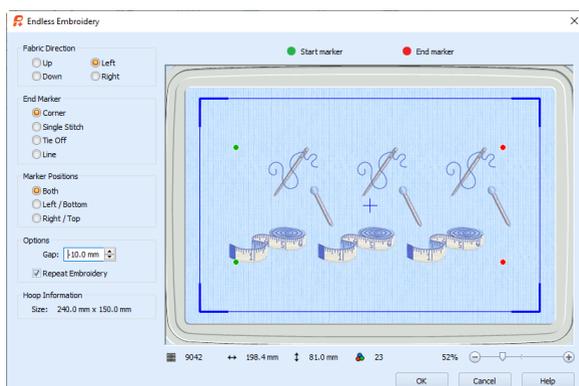
- 13 Deselect (uncheck) Repeat Embroidery. Your three SuperDesigns form an individual Endless Design.  
*Use single designs of this type to add an extra design at the end of a series of Endless embroidery sections.*

- 14 For this design we will use multiple design sets. Check Repeat Embroidery to view the three sets of designs again.
- 15 Click OK to view the Endless embroidery section in the work area.
- 16 Click outside the Grouped Endless design to see the gray stitched Start and End Markers.



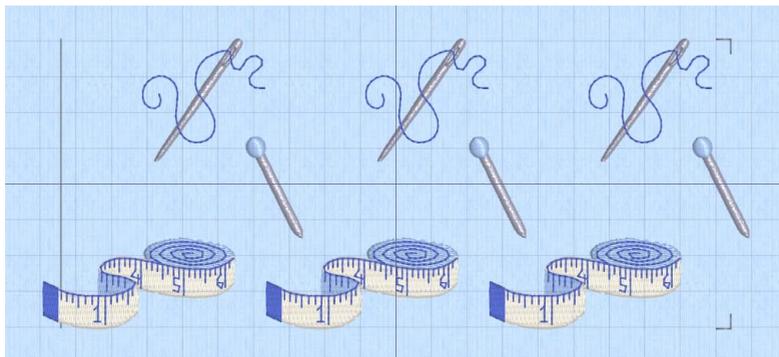
The straight line on the left is the Start Marker, and the corners at the right are the End Marker. The markers are immediately to the left and right of the Grouped designs.

- 17 In the Wizards tab, click Endless  again to reload the design in the Endless Wizard.
- 18 The original Start and End Markers were removed, and new ones added when you reopened the design.
- 19 Deselect (uncheck) Repeat Embroidery. This time there are three sets of designs. When you reloaded the design the Start and End Markers were removed, however the design was saved as a single Group. To adjust the space between the sets of three SuperDesigns, we need to go back to the original set of three.
- 20 Click Cancel to close the Endless dialog box, then click Undo  in the work area to view your original three designs.
- 21 Click Endless , and in the Endless dialog box click to select (check) Repeat Embroidery to view the repeated designs.
- 22 Set Gap to -10.0 mm. The set of designs move closer together, and to the left and right they overlap the Start and End Markers.



Use a negative Gap to overlap the position of designs, or to create a continuous line of adjoining designs.

- 23** Click OK to view your Endless design again in the work area.

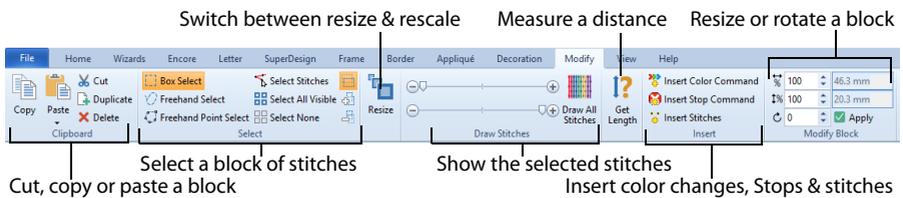


- 24** Save your design as Sewing Tools Endless.vp4, and then Export it in a format for your embroidery machine.  
*To view how the Endless design will be used, Copy the design, then use File, New Window and in this window set up a very large Custom Hoop (for example, 500 mm x 150 mm). Paste in two copies of your endless design. Place the Start Marker (the gray line) of the second design over the End Markers (the gray corner stitches) for the first design. This is how you will align your designs on your embroidery machine.*
- 25** Click File, Print and preview the worksheet for the Endless design.  
*The settings that you used for your Endless design can be seen at the top of the Settings area, below the threads. You can use these to recreate the design later. Underneath are the settings for the SuperDesigns that you used.*
- 26** In the print preview, set the Design Scale to 100%, then click Print  to print a worksheet for the embroidery.  
*You can use this full size worksheet as a template.*
- 27** Load the endless embroidery on your embroidery machine and hoop up your fabric.  
*An Endless hoop makes life easier, but you can use any hoop with suitable dimensions.*
- 28** Check the alignment of your fabric, then stitch out the first section of your endless embroidery.  
*The end marker stitches are stitched out last. Note their position.*
- 29** Re-hoop your fabric, with the end marker stitches for your first design towards the left of the hoop.  
*Remember that the first part of the Tape Measure will overlap the Start Marker. Leave room for it when hooping up and aligning on your embroidery machine.*
- 30** Use stitch navigation on your embroidery machine to step forward by one stitch to the start marker.
- 31** Use the needle position controls to align the needle exactly over the end marker.  
*If the needle will not align correctly, check the position of the fabric in your hoop before trying again.*
- 32** When the alignment is correct, embroider the second section.
- 33** Repeat for all of the other sections.  
*For more details on stitching out, see "Stitch Out an Endless Embroidery" on page 89.*

Use the Modify tab to edit and insert stitches, or select a block of stitches for editing. Hide stitches by color or by using the draw range. Cut and copy blocks of stitches or whole embroideries and paste them. Insert new color changes, change the order of colors and merge color blocks. Adjust a selected block of stitches precisely, changing its angle and size.

*The Modify tab is only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra. All Quick Access toolbar functions except Change Hoop, Undo and Redo are unavailable in the Modify tab.*

If more than one design or a group is selected when you click the Modify tab a warning message will appear. To edit a single design in a multiple selection, click the work area to deselect, then select the desired design. If a group is selected, use Restrict Groups on the Home tab or the context menu, then select the desired design. If lettering, a SuperDesign or Frame is selected, a warning message will appear that it will be fixed as embroidery stitches. Only use the Modify tab in this case if you are prepared to lose the ability to adjust the properties such as font and stitch type. Decoration designs cannot be altered on the Modify tab.



## Viewing Embroideries in the Modify Tab

Embroideries are shown in the Modify tab in 2D View as individual stitches with no shading. The selected embroidery is shown in color. Any other embroideries use pale ghost stitches.

### Automatic Ghost Mode

When the Modify tab is selected to edit an embroidery, only the embroidery selected for editing is shown in color. All other embroideries are automatically shown as pale ghost stitches. This allows you to see the positions of other embroideries, so that you can observe where they are in relation to the embroidery you are editing.

*If the background is white or very pale it may be difficult to see the 'ghost' stitches.*



# Get Length

Use Get Length  on the View tab (and on the Modify tab if PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra is owned) to measure the distance between any two points on an embroidery. Click the Get Length icon  and the mouse pointer changes to the Measure pointer . Then click and drag a line across the embroidery. The length of the line is displayed.



For example, use this to obtain the width of a column of stitches or the distance between lines of stitching.

*The length is shown in millimeters or inches, according to the setting for Show Measurements in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure. The alternative units are shown in parentheses.*

## Shortcuts

- View or Modify Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, V, L; Alt, M, L

## Measure Part of an Embroidery

- 1 Click the Get Length  icon. The pointer changes to the measure pointer .
- 2 Click and drag across the part of an embroidery you want to measure.
- 3 Read, and if desired, make a note of the number.
- 4 Repeat the click and drag to measure any other distances, as required.
- 5 Right-click to deselect the function.

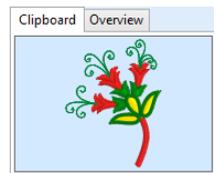
# Cut, Copy, Paste and Duplicate

*The Cut, Copy, Paste and Duplicate functions are available for whole embroidery(ies) and groups on the Home tab of PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery.*

*The Modify tab to work with blocks of stitches is only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*

## Clipboard Block

The Clipboard Block shows the current block that can be pasted into your embroideries. It shows the most recent block of stitches, embroidery(ies) or group that has been cut or copied from PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery or another PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System module. It can be used as many times as desired, until a new block is cut or copied.



*Click in the clipboard to remove the current Clipboard Block.*

## Cut

Use Cut  to remove a whole embroidery or the currently selected block of stitches from the embroidery and make it the Clipboard Block.

On the Modify tab, use one of the block selection methods (Box Select, Freehand Select, Freehand Point Select or Select All Visible) to select the desired block to be cut. It can then be pasted into the same or another embroidery, or pasted into another PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System module.

## Shortcuts

- Home or Modify Tab: 
- Keys: Ctrl + X; Alt, H, X or Alt, M, X

## Copy

Use Copy  to make a copy of a whole embroidery or the currently selected block of stitches. The copy becomes the Clipboard Block, where it can be pasted as many times as required, or pasted into another PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System module.

## Shortcuts

- Home or Modify Tab: 
- Keys: Ctrl + C; Alt, H, CP or Alt, M, CP

## Paste

Use Paste  to paste the Clipboard Block as a separate embroidery or, if the Modify tab is selected, attach it to the last currently visible stitch of an embroidery. The Clipboard Block shows the current stitches that will be pasted. If a group, lettering, a SuperDesign or Frame has been copied, a warning message will appear that it will be fixed as stitches if you paste into the Modify tab. Only use the Modify tab in this case if you are prepared to lose the ability to adjust the properties such as font and stitch type.

*If you paste a design with decorations into the Modify tab, the decorations are not visible. They will reappear as separate subdesigns when you move to one of the other tabs.*

## Paste as an Embroidery

To paste the Clipboard Block as an embroidery, ensure that a tab other than Modify is selected, then click Paste. The pasted embroidery is automatically selected, ready to be moved and manipulated as required.

## Paste as a Stitch Block

To insert a block at any stitch, use any of the controls on the Modify tab that change the End stitch in the Draw Range, then click Paste. A pasted block is automatically selected with Box Select so that it is ready to be moved and manipulated as required.

## Shortcuts

- Keys: Ctrl + V; Alt, H, V, P or Alt, M, V, P

## Paste into Center

Use Paste into Center to paste the Clipboard Block in the center of the hoop. The Clipboard Block shows the current stitches that will be pasted.

## Shortcuts

- Keys: Ctrl + Shift + V; Alt, H, V, C or Alt, M, V, C

## Duplicate

Use Duplicate  to make a copy of the selected embroidery or block of stitches, which is automatically pasted on the work area below and to the right of the original.

The copied stitches are shown in the Clipboard Block on the control panel.

## Shortcuts

- Home or Modify Tab: 
- Keys: Ctrl + D; Alt, H, DU or Alt, M, DU

## Delete

Use Delete  to delete one or more selected embroideries, groups or blocks of stitches after they have been selected using one of the block selection methods (Box Select , Freehand Select , Freehand Point Select  or Select All Visible ) on the Modify tab.

When all visible stitches are deleted because no block is selected, all remaining stitches are shown.

*This function differs from Cut because it does not place the stitches on the Clipboard. Therefore stitches that have been Deleted cannot be pasted into another embroidery (although Undo can be used if the wrong stitches are deleted).*

## Delete Single Stitches

When you have a single stitch selected, Delete  will remove the stitch.

## Shortcuts

- Home or Modify Tab: 
- Keys: Del; Alt, H, DE or Alt, M, DE

## Select and Edit Single Stitches

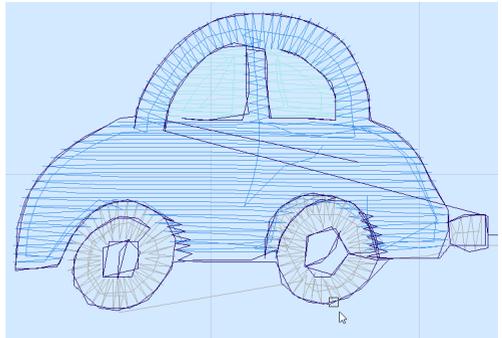
### Select Stitches

Use Select Stitches  to select and edit single stitches. Simply click a stitch and a box appears around it to show that it is selected.

*It may be helpful to zoom in close enough to see the separate stitches.*

Click and drag the box to move the stitch. If desired, use Delete  to delete the stitch point.

*This feature is only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*



## Shortcuts

- Modify Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, M, SS

## Select a Series of Stitches

Click the first required stitch point, then hold down Shift (on the keyboard) and click the last required stitch point. The two stitches you click and all stitches between them will be selected. Click outside the block to make a new selection using this method.

To select several individual stitches, hold down Ctrl and click the desired stitches.

*Alternatively, hold down Shift and use the left and right arrow keys to select a series of stitches.*

## Insert Stitches

Use Insert Stitches  to add new stitches to an embroidery. Click Insert Stitches and the pointer changes to the insert stitches pointer . Then click where you want to add stitches. The stitches will be added using the thread color where you insert the stitches. Click Delete to delete the last point placed. Right-click twice to deselect. If you need to use a different color for the stitches, insert color changes before and after the new stitches.

*This feature is only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*

Use Insert Stitches for many reasons. For example, you may add more underlay to an embroidery or make a new section of an embroidery. You can even change an embroidery into an appliqué embroidery by adding placement stitches and Stops to secure the appliqué fabric.

Uses include to increase underlay stitching or form a new section of an embroidery.

### Shortcuts

- Modify Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, M, IS

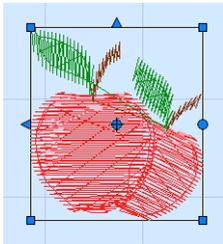
## Select a Block of Stitches

The block Select functions on the Modify tab allow you to select part of an embroidery. A selected part of an embroidery is called a block. A block can be resized, rotated, mirrored, moved, nudged, duplicated, copied, cut and deleted. You may find it easier to select a block when you have selected colors to display and/or changed the ranges of stitches that are visible.

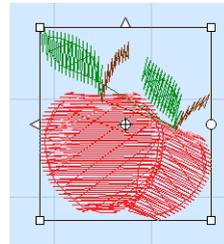
*This feature is only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*

When a block has been selected, it has a selection box around it on the work area. The selection box has handles which are used to resize, rotate and flip the block. Also, the

block is outlined within the selection box, to assist with accurate positioning when it is moved or rotated.



Blue handles for resize



White handles for scale

Click and drag inside the block to move it. Use the arrow keys on the keyboard to nudge the block. Click and drag the square corner handles to scale the block with constant stitch count (white handles) or resize with constant density (blue handles), depending on Resize mode . Click and drag the round rotate handle to rotate the block freely. Click and drag the center of rotation  to rotate around a different point. Click the triangular handles to flip the block horizontally or vertically.

*A block can also be resized/scaled and rotated precisely using the Modify Block section of the Modify tab.*

## Pasting a Block

When a block is pasted into an embroidery it is automatically selected as the current block and Box Select  is activated. The block is attached to the last visible stitch.

*See "Paste" on page 95 and "Paste into Center" on page 95.*

## Deselecting a Block

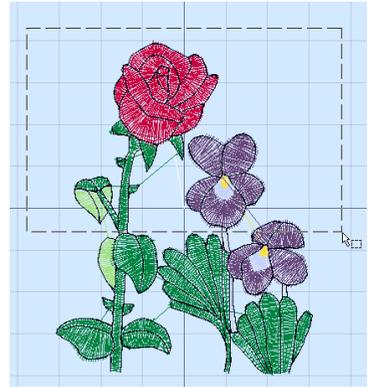
Click the work area outside a block to deselect it. The selection box around the block will disappear. Right-click to turn off the current select function without deselecting the block.

## Selecting an Embroidery to Modify

If there is more than one embroidery selected so that you are unable to enter the Modify tab, press the Tab key on the keyboard to select the embroidery you wish to edit.

## Box Select

Use Box Select  to select stitches in a rectangular area. Click Box Select and the pointer changes to the box select pointer . Click and drag around the area you want to select. When you release the mouse button, the block will show you the extent of your selection. Click outside the block to make a new selection using this method. Right-click to deselect.



*Use Box Select to make a quick selection of an area. When deleting a selection, if desired, use Freehand Select or Freehand Point Select to remove any extra stitches.*

*Use Add to Selection  with any select function to increase the area of selected stitches, or use Remove From Selection  to make the currently selected area smaller.*

Box Select is also activated automatically when a block is pasted into an embroidery.

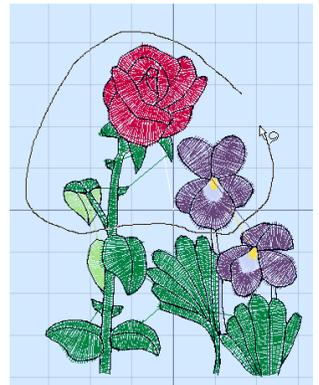
*If the wrong area is selected, click in the work area, but outside the box, to deselect.*

### Shortcuts

- Modify Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, M, SB

## Freehand Select

Use Freehand Select  to select a block of stitches within an area of any shape. Click Freehand Select and the pointer changes to the freehand select pointer . Click and drag to draw an irregular outline around the desired area. When you release the mouse the area is closed automatically with a straight line between the last mouse position and the start position. The block will show you the extent of your selection. Click outside the block to make a new selection using this method. Right-click to deselect.



*Use Add to Selection  with any select function to increase the area of selected stitches, or use Remove From Selection  to make the currently selected area smaller.*

Freehand Select is useful when an area cannot be easily selected by using the simpler Box Select function. It is particularly useful to highlight part of a color area which could not otherwise be easily selected.

*If the wrong area is selected, click in the work area, but outside the box, to deselect.*

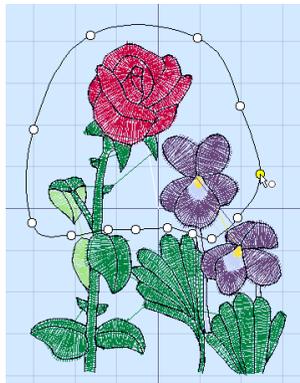
### Shortcuts

- Modify Tab: 

- Keys: Alt, M, SF

## Freehand Point Select

Use Freehand Point Select  to select a block of stitches within an area of any shape made of straight and curved lines. Click Freehand Point Select and the pointer changes to the Freehand point select pointer . Click a series of points to create an irregular outline of straight and curved lines around the desired area, using Ctrl+click to place a square (straight line) point. Click and drag  to reposition an existing point. Click Delete to remove the last-placed point. Right-click when the area is complete. The block will show you the extent of your selection. Freehand Point Select may be easier to use than Freehand Select for precise selections. Right-click to deselect.



Use Add to Selection  with any select function to increase the area of selected stitches, or use Remove From Selection  to make the currently selected area smaller.

If the wrong area is selected, click in the work area, but outside the box, to deselect.

### Shortcuts

- Modify Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, M, SP

## Select All Visible

Select All Visible  is a one-click function that selects all visible stitches in the current embroidery. Click outside the block to deselect.

Use the color worksheet and the Draw Range to select which stitches are visible in the current embroidery. This is useful to isolate an area of stitches, especially if it includes more than one color, or you only wish to apply a function to part of an area.

### Shortcuts

- Modify Tab: 
- Keys: Ctrl + A; Alt, M, SA

## Select None

Use Select None  to deselect all of the embroideries and blocks in the work area, including any outside the hoop.

### Shortcuts

- Modify Tab: 
- Keys: Ctrl + Shift + A; Alt, M, SN

## Replace Selection

Use Replace Selection  to replace the currently selected stitches with the new selection.

## Shortcuts

- Select, Modify Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, M, SR

## Add To Selection

Use Add to Selection  to add the new selection to the currently selected stitches.

## Shortcuts

- Select, Modify Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, M, SA

## Remove From Selection

Use Remove from Selection  to remove the new selection from the currently selected stitches.

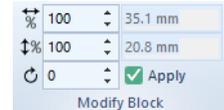
## Shortcuts

- Select, Modify Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, M, SD

## Modify Block

To rotate or resize the selected embroidery or block of stitches by an exact amount, use the Modify Block section of the Modify tab.

To rotate the block or embroidery, enter an angle from 0 to 359 degrees in the Angle  box, then click Apply . If desired, move the center of rotation  before rotating.



To resize the block or embroidery, change the height  and width  percentage of the selected block. The height and width are scaled or resized according to the Resize mode.

The size in millimeters to which the design will be changed is shown to the right.

*This feature is available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra for blocks of stitches, and in the Modify Design  dialog on the Home tab for designs.*

## Shortcuts

- |   |                   |                  |
|---|-------------------|------------------|
|  | Percentage Width  | Keys: Alt, M, MW |
|  | Percentage Height | Keys: Alt, M, MH |
|  | Angle             | Keys: Alt, M, MR |
|  | Apply             | Keys: Alt, M, MA |

## View Selected Colors

On the Modify tab you can hide blocks of stitches according to their color. Displaying the stitches according to their color is an easy method of showing sections of an embroidery. The functions for viewing stitches by color are on the Design Panel when the Modify tab is open.

*This feature is only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*

Hide stitches according to color, leaving the visible stitches available for other functions without affecting the hidden stitches. Selecting colors for display can be combined with the Draw Range to display a particular set of stitches that would be difficult to isolate with other functions.

*If you have set a Draw Range, then only the stitches in the color blocks that are visible within the range will be displayed. Also, hidden colors are not highlighted when the mouse pointer is paused over them in the color worksheet.*

## Color Worksheet

The color worksheet on the Design Panel shows the order in which the thread colors are used. The group of stitches using a particular thread color is called a color block. The color worksheet can be used to change thread colors, and to add thread effects. When the Modify tab is open, it may be used to hide and show the stitches in any of the color blocks.

*When you pause the arrow pointer over a thread color in the worksheet, the corresponding threads in the embroidery are highlighted. Also, a popup description of the thread color appears.*

The color worksheet can also be used to change the order of the color blocks, and to merge color blocks.

The first color in the embroidery is at the top of the list, followed by all the thread color blocks. The check boxes show which color blocks are hidden. The numbers show the order in which the colors are used, and the samples show solid blocks of each thread color in 3D.

Double-click a thread sample, or select the thread and click the Change Color  icon to access the Color Selection dialog box and select a different thread color, or add thread effects. When on the Modify tab, click a check box to show or hide a color block. When a color is hidden, its check box in the Color Worksheet is not selected, as shown here:



## Move and Merge Color Blocks

Use the arrows below the color worksheet, or the right-click Context menu, to change the order of the color blocks, and to choose color blocks to merge together selectively.

*For example, you can keep two adjacent identical color blocks in case you wish to vary them later. If you use ColorSort, all identical colors will be merged unless there are overlapping stitches.*

The changes you make are applied immediately.

*This may be useful if you want to merge two blocks of an identical thread color without affecting the color order of the rest of the embroidery. For example, use Move and Merge Color Blocks to assist in creating lettering with some characters in varying colors. Alternatively, the Move and Merge Color Blocks functions may be useful if ColorSort does not merge colors owing to a few overlapping stitches that do not affect the design stitchout.*

*You can also use Merge when optimizing designs with multiple areas of cutwork and stabilizing lines. ColorSort may occasionally merge stabilizing lines in these circumstances.*

## Move Colors

The Move Up  and Move Down  buttons move the selected color block so that the colors are stitched in a different order. Click the required color in the list and it will be highlighted, then click the Move Up or Move Down button to move the color to the required position.

*Alternatively, right-click the block and select Move Up or Move Down from the Context menu.*

## Merge Colors

The Merge Colors button  will merge the selected color block with the color block above it, removing the Color Change command.

*Alternatively, right-click the block and select Merge into Previous Color  or Merge into Next Color from the Context menu.*

Use Merge to delete color changes. Also use it to merge color blocks with the same thread color, after first moving one of the color blocks so that they are adjacent.

## Insert Color Command

Use Insert Color Command  to add a new color change at the point where you click.

*This feature is only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*

Click the icon and the pointer changes to the insert color pointer . Then click on the stitch where you want the color change. The Color Selection dialog box is displayed for you to select the thread color for the new color change.

After you have selected a thread color, the stitches on the embroidery are displayed in the new color after the new color change and up to the next color change.

When you select the Design tab you will see the new color block in sequence in the color worksheet according to where you inserted the Color Change command.

*To cancel the function, right-click on the work area or click Cancel in the Color Selection dialog box.*

## Shortcuts

- Modify Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, M, IC

## Insert Stop Command

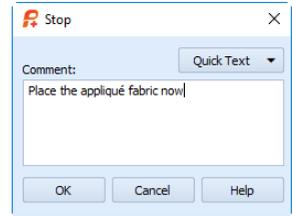
Use Insert Stop Command  to add a command which instructs the embroidery machine to stop at the point where you click, displaying a message.

Use stop commands to transform an existing satin stitched 'outline' embroidery into an appliqué. Insert the stop commands so the appliqué fabric may be placed on the hoop, tacked down and trimmed. Stop commands may also be useful where a movement stitch might become trapped under the stitches that follow it.

To view Stop commands with their messages, use the Design Player, or view them in the printed worksheet. To remove or edit the text of a Stop Command, use Undo, then Insert a new Stop, or use PREMIER+™ 2 Modify.

## Insert a Stop Command

- 1 Open an embroidery, then click the Modify tab.
- 2 Click Insert Stop Command and the pointer changes to the insert stop pointer .
- 3 Click on a stitch. The Stop dialog box opens.
- 4 Use the Quick Text drop-down menu to insert a stitchout hint, or enter a message. See "Stop Properties" on page 104.
- 5 Click OK to place the Stop Command.
- 6 To cancel the function, right-click on the work area.



## Shortcuts

- Modify Stitch, Modify Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, M, IP

## Stop Properties

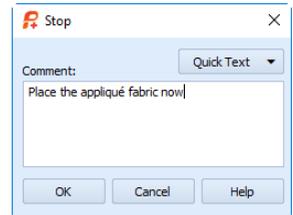
Add a stitchout hint to a Stop Command in the Stop properties dialog box.

Select a Quick Text comment from the drop-down menu, or enter text in the Comment text field. Click OK to save the text. Up to 200 characters may be entered.

### Quick Text

Select one of the following texts:

- Place the appliqué fabric now
- Cut around the appliqué
- Place the appliqué shape onto the placement line
- Cut the hole in your fabric
- Place the puffy foam on the fabric now
- Remove any excess puffy foam
- Check alignment now.



## Draw Range

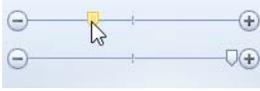
The draw Start and End slider bars on the Modify tab provide a very powerful way of viewing an embroidery and understanding exactly how it is formed. They allow you to progress forwards and/or backwards through an embroidery stitch by stitch and isolate a specific sequence of stitches. If desired, select the visible stitches as a block to work on with Select All Visible, without affecting the hidden stitches. Changing the range of

stitches can be combined with selecting colors to display a particular set of stitches that would be difficult to isolate with other functions.

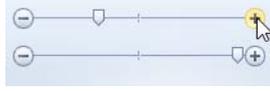
## Draw Range (Slider Bars)

The upper slider bar sets the Draw From Start stitch. The lower slider bar sets the Draw To End stitch.

Use the Draw Range to set the Start or End stitch in any of the following ways:



Drag the slider



Click the + or - button



Click the space by the slider

- Click and drag the slider box along the slider bar.
- Click the arrows at either end of the slider bar to progress by one stitch at a time. Click and hold on an arrow to progress more rapidly.
- Click in the space on the slider bar on either side of the slider box to move in that direction and jump through the stitches rapidly. You can also click and hold, but the slider box will stop when it reaches the arrow pointer.

In all cases, the work area will show the range of stitches as the Start or End stitch changes.

*When you set a Draw Range, only the stitches in the color blocks that are visible within the range will be displayed.*

## Draw All Stitches

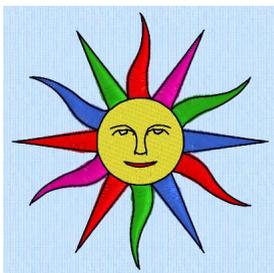
Use Draw All Stitches  on the Modify tab, to display all stitches in the embroidery selected for editing. When you have hidden stitches by changing the color selection or the Draw Range, click the icon to view all stitches again. All the color blocks will become visible and the Draw Range will be reset to all stitches.

### Shortcuts

- Display, Modify Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, M, DA

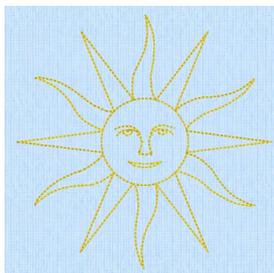
Use the ExpressDesign Wizard to create new embroideries automatically from pictures. There are three embroidery types that can be created in the ExpressDesign Wizard: Express Embroidery, Express Trace and Express Border.

Express Embroidery



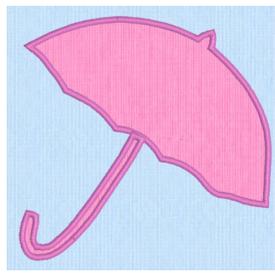
Create a new embroidery by converting color areas in a picture to fill and satin areas, outlining it with running stitch or satin line.

Express Trace



Create a new embroidery by tracing outlines in a picture.

Express Border



Create a new embroidery or appliqué design by creating borders around shapes in a picture.

*The ExpressDesign Wizard is only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*

## Express Embroidery

Create a new embroidery by converting color areas in a picture to fill and satin areas, using running stitch or satin border outlines where necessary.

Express Embroidery works best when using pictures that have well defined, flat color areas and outlines.

## Express Trace

Create a new embroidery by tracing outlines in the picture. Use light or heavy running stitch to create redwork or blackwork style embroidery, create quilt stencils and so on. Use satin border of constant width for designs that demand broader outlines.

## Express Border

Create a new embroidery by creating borders around shapes in a picture. The border can be created as a satin border, appliqué, an outline of running, double or triple stitch, or a border of motifs.

## Create an ExpressDesign Embroidery

- 1 Click the Wizards tab.
- 2 In the ExpressDesign drop-down list choose ExpressDesign into Hoop  or ExpressDesign into Rectangle .

*ExpressDesign into Hoop  creates an embroidery that is a best-fit to the currently selected hoop and orientation.*

*ExpressDesign into Rectangle*  creates an embroidery that is a best-fit to a rectangular area you draw on the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery screen with click and drag.

- 3 In the Choose Design Type wizard page, select the desired design type from: Express Embroidery, Express Trace, or Express Border, then click Next.
- 4 Select a picture in the Choose Picture page.
- 5 Step through the rest of the ExpressDesign Wizard.
- 6 When you Finish, the new embroidery will be placed in the center of the hoop, or where you drew the rectangle, fitting proportionally, depending on the picture shape.
- 7 Use Save  to keep the new embroidery in multipart .vp4 format.
- 8 Use Export  to save in other formats, and optimize for stitching.

## ExpressDesign into Hoop

Use the ExpressDesign into Hoop  option to create a new embroidery in the ExpressDesign Wizard that is a best-fit to the currently selected hoop and orientation.

*If desired, click Change Hoop*  and choose a different hoop size before using ExpressDesign into Hoop. Click ExpressDesign into Hoop  and the Choose Design Type page of the ExpressDesign Wizard will appear. Choose the desired design type, then choose a picture and step through the rest of the ExpressDesign Wizard. When you Finish, the new embroidery will be placed in the center of the hoop. Use Save  to keep the new embroidery, together with any other embroideries in the work area. Use Export  to save in other formats, and optimize for stitching.

### Shortcuts

- Wizards Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, W, E, H

## ExpressDesign into Rectangle

Use the ExpressDesign into Rectangle  option to create a new embroidery in the ExpressDesign Wizard that is a best-fit to a rectangular area you draw.

Click ExpressDesign into Rectangle  and the mouse pointer will change to the draw rectangle pointer . Click and drag on the work area to draw a rectangle of the desired size. When you release the mouse button, the Choose Design Type page of the ExpressDesign Wizard will appear.

*If the rectangle is wrong and you wish to try again, click Cancel when the ExpressDesign Wizard appears. Then click ExpressDesign into Rectangle again.*

Choose the desired design type, then choose a picture and step through the rest of the ExpressDesign Wizard. When you Finish, the new embroidery will be placed where you drew the rectangle, and will fit the rectangle proportionally, depending on the picture shape. Use Save  to keep the new embroidery. Use Export  to save in other formats, and optimize for stitching.

### Shortcuts

- Wizards Tab, ExpressDesign Wizard Drop-Down: 
- Keys: Alt, W, E, R

# Choosing and Optimizing Pictures for the ExpressDesign Wizard

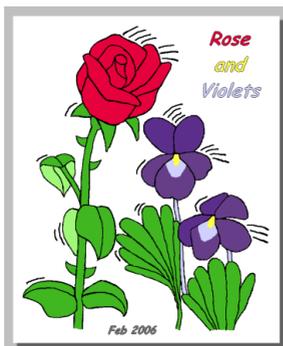
If you wish to modify a picture before using it in the ExpressDesign Wizard, you will need to use a picture editor. If you have it available, use PREMIER+™ 2 PhotoStitch to adjust your picture, save it with a new name, then use the new picture in the ExpressDesign Wizard.

*It is recommended to keep your original picture in case you wish to adjust it again with different options.*

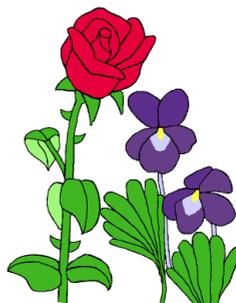
## General Considerations

The ExpressDesign Wizard works best with pictures that have well defined color areas and outlines.

You may also wish to tidy up a picture before using it in the ExpressDesign Wizard, by deleting elements that are not required. Some pictures have stray or irregular lines and shapes that are not part of the main picture. For example, lines that add emphasis or suggest movement, speech or thought bubbles, decorative symbols, undesirable text, date marks, and so on.



Before tidying: there are sections of text and emphasis lines in the picture



After tidying: the essential part of the picture is retained

*In the example, the border has also been removed. Alternatively, this could be done in the Crop page of the ExpressDesign Wizard. However, this rough crop has left white space around the edges of this picture. The Crop page of the ExpressDesign Wizard will now automatically remove the extra white around the edges, without requiring further adjustment.*

## Picture Proportions

To fill the hoop or rectangle, the picture proportions should be similar to the proportions of the hoop or rectangle you draw. The Rotate and Crop Picture page of the ExpressDesign Wizard can be used to crop the picture to the desired proportions.

## Cleaning a Picture

Some pictures may have random marks, speckles or excess details. If desired, use an image editor to clean up your picture before importing it. For example, you may have an outline

in a picture that is serrated on one side. Smoothing such an outline will usually give better results, particularly from Express Trace and Express Border.



Before cleaning: the line has shading serrations and there are dust marks from the scan

After cleaning: the line is smooth and the dust marks have been removed

## Enhancing Details

The significance of details in a picture is dependant on the overall size of the picture after it is cropped, so small details are more significant in a small picture. Also, small details are enlarged as the size of the created embroidery increases, so extra detail may appear if you simply make a larger embroidery with the same picture.

However, very small details in a picture may sometimes be ignored, as they may not have enough significance to be created as an area or outline in the embroidery. To enhance details, select Picture Options in the ExpressDesign Wizard, ensure Expand Pixel-Thin Lines is selected and set the Area Sensitivity to High. If this does not work, either enlarge the details in your picture editor, or, for outline details, connect small details together so they are created as a single outline.

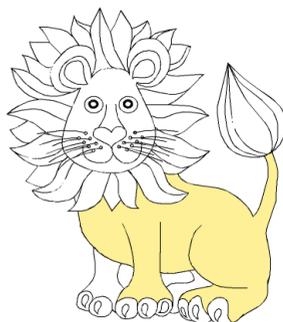
Thick lines in a picture may be created as satin border when you would prefer regular outlining for a more detailed effect. To automatically reduce thick outlines, select Reduce Thick Lines in the Picture Options.

## Patching Gaps in Pictures

Some pictures may have unwanted gaps in outlines that are too small to pick out easily. This can affect all the ExpressDesign Wizard design types. Outlining for an Express Embroidery and tracing for an Express Trace may not work as desired. Also, it may not be possible to make properly enclosed areas for Express Border. If you suspect your picture may have gaps, you can test your picture with flood fill in your picture editor, then patch up any gaps that are found.

## Patch the Gaps in a Picture of a Lion

- 1 Open the picture in your chosen picture editor.  
*The icons in this example are for PREMIER+™ 2 PhotoStitch.*
- 2 Choose contrasting foreground and background colors, so that it will be easy to see which color is being used. Try to choose bright colors that are not already used in the picture. If the picture is a black and white line drawing you wish to colorize, simply choose the color you desire for the area.
- 3 Select Flood Fill .
- 4 If adjacent areas are different colors, then right-click in the adjacent areas to fill them with the background color.
- 5 Click in one of the areas to fill with the foreground color. If there are gaps in the outline around the area, more than one area of the picture will be flood filled.



Click in an area to fill it

Draw lines to patch the gaps

The outline is now complete

- 6 Click Undo  until the flood fills have been undone and the picture is in its original state.
- 7 Use Pick Color  to select the color used for the outline around the area.
- 8 Click Paintbrush  and select the second line thickness.
- 9 Zoom To rectangle  to the outline to find the gaps, then draw lines to fill any gaps in the outline.  
*In the example, only gaps in the outline around the body have been patched. There are other outlines that need patching.*
- 10 Select the foreground color again, test with Flood Fill  and Undo . When only the expected area is flood filled, that part of the picture is ready for the ExpressDesign Wizard.
- 11 Repeat for other areas of the picture where you suspect there may be gaps.

## Pictures for Express Embroidery

Many types of picture are suitable for creating an Express Embroidery. The primary factor, however, is to use pictures with well defined color areas and/or well defined outlines. Pictures that have complex color areas, such as photographs or scanned pictures that have not been cleaned up, can be used to create an Express Embroidery, but you may not get the best result unless some time is spent modifying the original picture.

### Keeping and Removing Parts of the Background

In some pictures, you will want to use the option to remove all of the background color. However, this may also mean that some parts of the picture you wish to keep will not be included in the design. For example, if you have a cartoon character, the whites of the eyes or teeth might be removed if you remove all of the background color. To prevent this, use

a false color, such as gray, to flood fill the white parts you want to keep, then change the gray thread color to white after finishing the ExpressDesign Wizard.



The eyes are white, and so are the gaps between body and legs



The eyes are gray and will no longer be removed with all background areas

Some pictures may have graduated backgrounds, but you need to remove all of the background. In this case, use Pick Color to select the main background shade, then flood fill all the other shades in the graduated background so that the background is a single color. This will also prevent the multiple colors in the graduated background from interfering with color optimization on the Choose Thread Colors page of the ExpressDesign Wizard.

## Pictures for Express Trace

Pictures are converted to black and white using the Monochrome Threshold in the ExpressDesign Wizard. The objective is to end up with a black and white line drawing, that can be traced using only one color. If there are large solid areas that cannot be removed with the Monochrome Threshold, it may be best to edit the picture before loading it so that the solid areas are removed.

If a picture does not have its own outlines, use Find Outlines on the Outline Finder and Expander page. This works best with clearly defined color areas with sharp edges.

*Pictures that have gradual color changes, such as photographs or previously scanned pictures saved in JPEG format, may not have strong color boundaries that can be detected by Find Outlines.*

## Connected Outlines

When editing or creating a picture for Express Trace, check how the outlines are connected to each other and, where possible, look for unobtrusive places to connect outlines. When the outlines are more connected, there will be fewer movement stitches in the final embroidery and the embroidery will also stitch out more efficiently. Also, for smaller embroideries, adding connections between outlines will be less noticeable and will also prevent small sections of stitches that might be less secure.

## Pictures for Express Border

Express Border uses Monochrome Threshold to separate shapes from the background. This leaves black shapes on a white background. Any solid or fully enclosed shapes in the

picture will then have a border added around them. If there are shapes within shapes, the inner shapes will be ignored.

## Pictures with Dark Borders and Backgrounds

A picture that has a black or very dark border or background may simply create a rectangular border. This is especially the case if the background or border cannot be removed with Monochrome Threshold.

For pictures with a dark border, it may be possible to remove the border on the Rotate and Crop Picture page of the ExpressDesign Wizard. If this is not possible, edit the picture to remove the border or change the border color.

For pictures on a dark background, use a picture editor to invert the colors in the picture or change the background color to a light color.

After editing the picture, load it again in the ExpressDesign Wizard.

## Stippled Pictures

Stippled pictures are not suitable for creating an Express Embroidery. This is because the color areas approximate solid colors with dots of two or more colors in a stipple pattern.

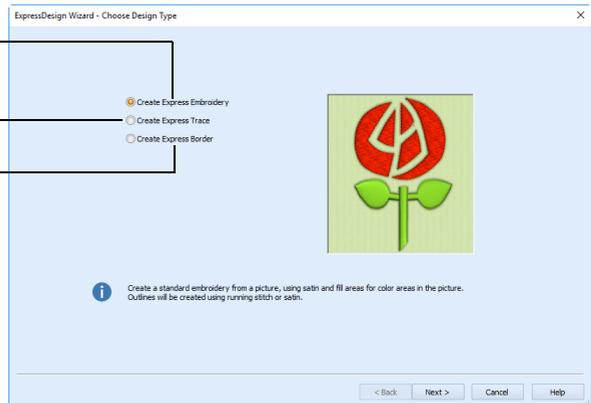
Stippled pictures may be used for Express Trace or Express Border, if they have solid outlines or areas that can be extracted using Monochrome Threshold.

## Choose Design Type

Convert color areas to satin and fill

Trace picture outlines

Create borders or appliqués around shapes in a picture



Use the Choose Design Type page to create a colored embroidery, trace an outline, or create a border or appliqué design from a picture.

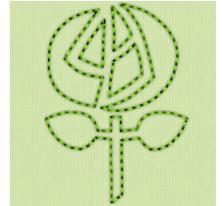
## Express Embroidery

Create a new design by converting color areas in a picture to fill and satin areas, using running stitch or satin border outlines where necessary.



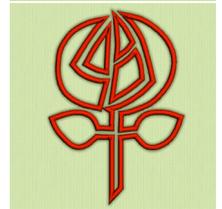
## Express Trace

Create a new design by tracing outlines in the picture. Use double trace or quadruple trace to create redwork or blackwork style embroidery, create quilt stencils and so on. Use satin line trace for larger designs or when a bolder outline is more pleasing.



## Express Border

Create a new design by simplifying a picture into solid color areas. Borders are created around these shapes as satin, appliqué, running stitch, double stitch, triple stitch or motifs.



## Next

Click Next to go to the Choose Picture page.

## Choose Picture

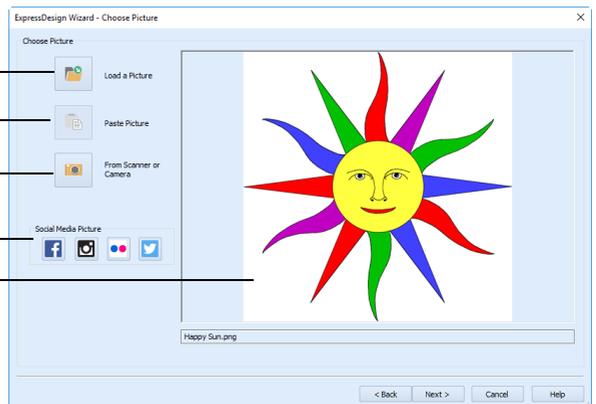
Select a picture file on your computer

Paste a copied picture

Import a file from a scanner or camera

Load a picture from Facebook®, Instagram®, Flickr®, or Twitter®

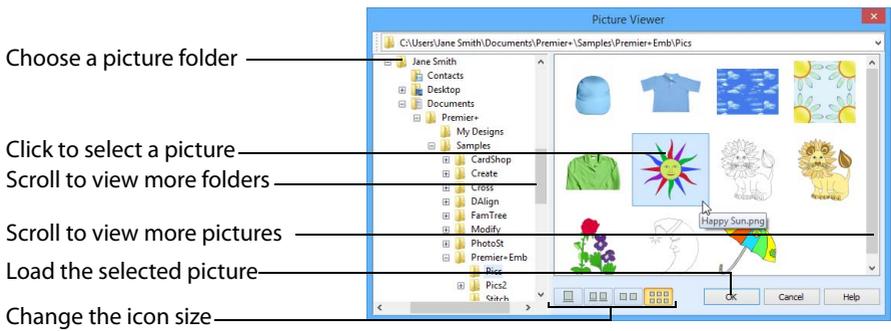
The picture is previewed



Use the Choose Picture page to select the picture you wish to convert to a design. Select a picture from clipart, or one you have previously scanned or created in an image editor. Alternatively, paste a captured picture, or one from social media.

## Load a Picture

Click Load a Picture  to open a picture from clipart, or one you have previously scanned or created in an image editor. After selecting a picture, the preview box will show the selected picture with its name underneath. Click Next to continue.



The following file formats may be loaded: Windows or OS2 Bitmap (.bmp), JPEG-JFIF Compliant (.jpg, .jif, .jpeg), PatternCAD (.4dq), Portable Network Graphics (.png), Tagged Image File Format uncompressed (.tiff, .tif), Windows Meta File (.wmf), Windows Enhanced Meta File (.emf) and Windows Icon (.ico).

PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra also includes additional clipart, which may be used in the ExpressDesign Wizard. The additional clipart is installed to Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Pics2.

## Select a Picture File

- 1 Click Load a Picture  and the Picture Viewer dialog box appears.
- 2 Double-click to expand the folders until the desired folder is highlighted.
- 3 Click on a picture to select it.
- 4 Click OK to open the picture in the Choose Picture page.
- 5 Click Cancel to exit without selecting a picture.

## Paste Picture

Use Paste Picture  to load the picture in the Clipboard Block. The picture is shown in the preview area.

*Paste Picture is not available if the Clipboard Block is empty.*

## From Scanner or Camera

Use From Scanner or Camera  to display the program that is used to acquire pictures from a scanner, a digital camera or another suitable device. Only devices that use Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) can be used to obtain pictures.

*WIA (Windows Image Acquisition) is a standard method for transferring pictures from the device's scanning or downloading program to another program, in this case the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra module of the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System. If the manufacturer provides the appropriate software components needed for WIA compliance, these should have been installed when the device was installed.*

Each scanner or digital camera has its own program that is used to scan or download pictures. Refer to the manual or online help provided with the program for instructions, if required. When the device and its software finish processing the picture, it will be shown in the Choose Picture page.

## Social Media Picture

Load a picture from Facebook® , Instagram® , Flickr® , or Twitter® . Log in to the Social Media website to load the desired picture.

## Preview and Name

Under the preview pane is a box for the name of the chosen file. If the picture is a scanned image then the box will contain the words Scanned Picture.

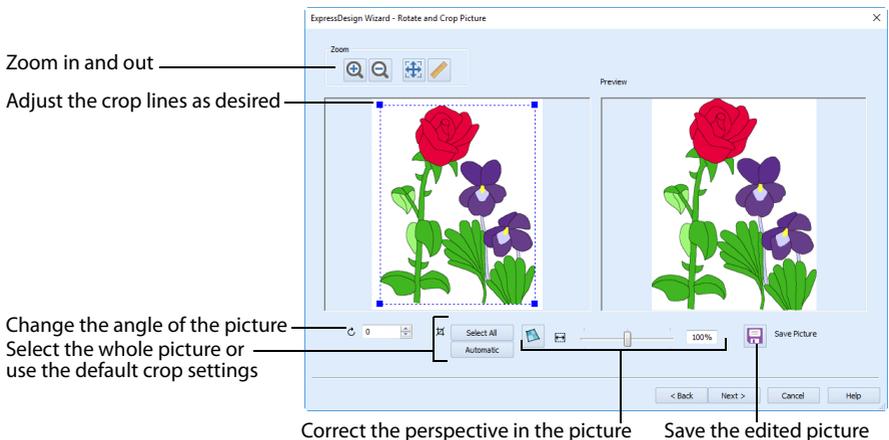
## Back

Return to the Choose Design Type page.

## Next

Go to the Rotate and Crop Picture page.

# Rotate and Crop Picture



If required, rotate the picture to any angle from 0 to 359 degrees. For example, this is useful for straightening scanned pictures.

When the picture is rotated between the 90 degree steps, the picture is made larger and the detected background color is added. If there is no distinctive background color, white is used.

Use the Crop function to select the section of the picture that is to be used to create the design. The picture is automatically cropped to remove excess background color. If required, adjust the crop lines to select the desired part of the picture. Use Perspective Correction to adjust for perspective or skew.

*Sometimes, the automatic crop area may not appear to remove as much background color as possible. This can happen when the background color appears to be a plain color, such as white, but actually has minor variations that are not immediately visible. For example, this often happens with the JPEG-JFIF Compliant (\*.jpg, .jif, .jpeg) picture format.*

Click and drag anywhere inside the crop box to move the crop box. Click and drag outside the crop box to draw a new crop box.

## Select All

Click the Select All button to select the whole picture. Alternatively, double-click the picture to select the whole picture.

## Automatic

Click Automatic to set the crop lines back to the default position for the current picture.

## Perspective Correction

To remove the effects of perspective in a picture, or to correct skew, select Perspective Correction . When using Perspective Correction, the crop handles are red.

Move the red handles so that the crop lines frame the picture. Use the Zoom tools to view the outline of the picture more clearly. Drag the Stretch Picture  slider to make the picture in the Preview wider or narrower. Use Save Picture  to save your edited picture.

## Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the picture.

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point on the picture you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the picture to the preview area.

Click Real Size  to view the picture at a magnification as close as possible to the Real Size setting you chose in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

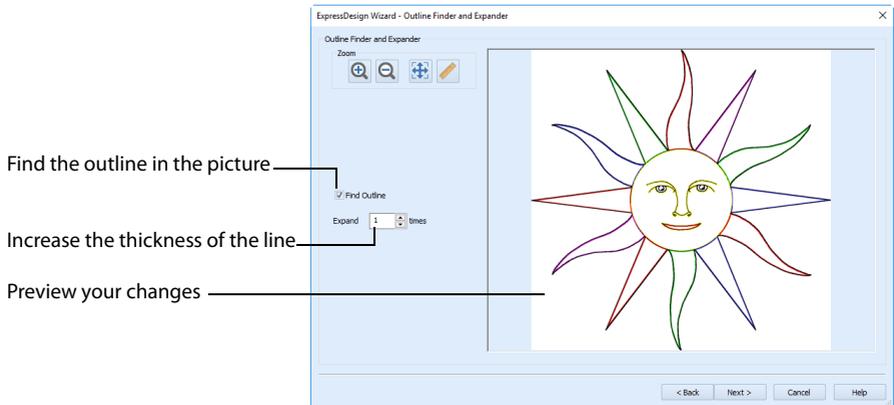
## Back

Return to the Choose Picture page.

## Next

Go to the Choose Thread Colors, Outline Finder and Expander or Monochrome Threshold page, according to the chosen design type.

# Outline Finder and Expander



The Outline Finder and Expander page of the ExpressDesign Wizard only appears if you are creating an Express Trace design. If the picture consists of mainly solid color areas, use this page to create outlines appropriate for tracing.

## Find Outlines

Select this option to find the outlines in your picture and show them in the preview area.

*Find Outlines looks for distinctive boundaries between color areas in the picture. Pictures that have gradual color changes, such as photographs or previously scanned pictures saved in JPEG format, may not have strong color boundaries that can be detected by Find Outlines.*

It is usually not necessary to Find Outlines in a picture that already has black outlining. However, if there are additional color boundaries that do not have outlining in the picture, you may still wish to use Find Outlines.

## Expand

This is only available when Find Outlines is selected. Use this option to increase the thickness of outlines that have been found, by adding up to 5 pixels on each side of the lines. It is initially set to 1. Lines are traced down the center by Express Trace, so setting Expand to at least 1 will allow curves to be traced more smoothly and continuously.

*If Expand is set to 0 (zero), the outlines found in the picture will be only one pixel wide. When a line changes direction, this may cause a break in the line where pixels only meet at the corner. This may cause a line to be traced in multiple sections, or not at all. Therefore, it is recommended to set Expand to at least 1.*

If desired, use higher Expand values to merge outlines when parallel outlines are close together. Alternatively, you may be able to exclude unwanted lines by using Monochrome Threshold on the next page.

## Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the picture.

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to zoom in towards,

or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point on the picture you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the picture to the preview area.

Click Real Size  to view the picture at a magnification as close as possible to the Real Size setting you chose in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

## Preview

The preview shows the picture. If Find Outlines is selected, the preview shows the outlines that have been found, and the effect of using Expand.

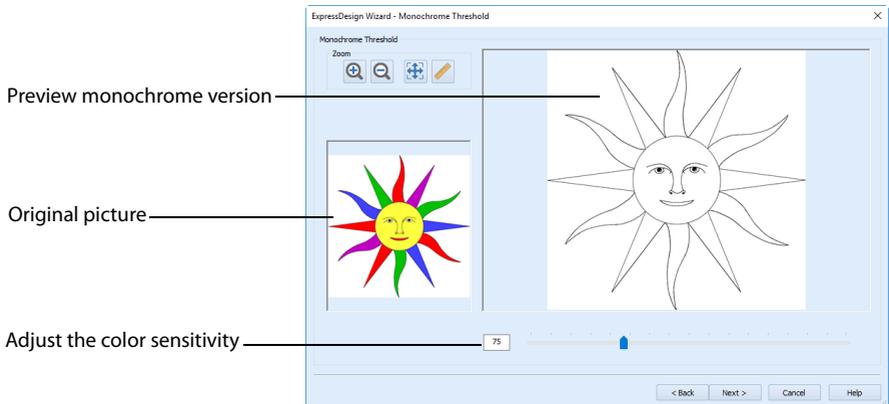
## Back

Return to the Rotate and Crop Picture page.

## Next

Go to the Monochrome Threshold page.

# Monochrome Threshold



The Monochrome Threshold page of the ExpressDesign Wizard appears if you are creating an Express Trace or Express Border design.

The Monochrome Threshold turns all shades or colors in the picture into either black or white. It acts on the whole picture. The Monochrome Threshold creates defined areas that are suitable for creating the final designs.

*Interior details, within enclosed shapes in the picture, will not be preserved when creating Express Border.* Move the Monochrome Threshold slider bar to the desired setting, or enter a value directly in the box, then click Next.

Adjust the Monochrome Threshold between 0 and 255 by typing in a number, clicking on the left or right of the slider bar or by clicking and dragging the slider bar. To make more of

the image black, move the slider to the right or type a higher number in the box. To make more of the image white, move the slider to the left or type a lower number in the box.

## Original Picture

The thumbnail on the left shows the original picture. This allows you to see which colors in the picture have been turned black or white.

## Preview

The preview picture shows the result of applying the Monochrome Threshold.

## Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the picture.

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point on the picture you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the picture to the preview area.

Click Real Size  to view the picture at a magnification as close as possible to the Real Size setting you chose in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

## Back

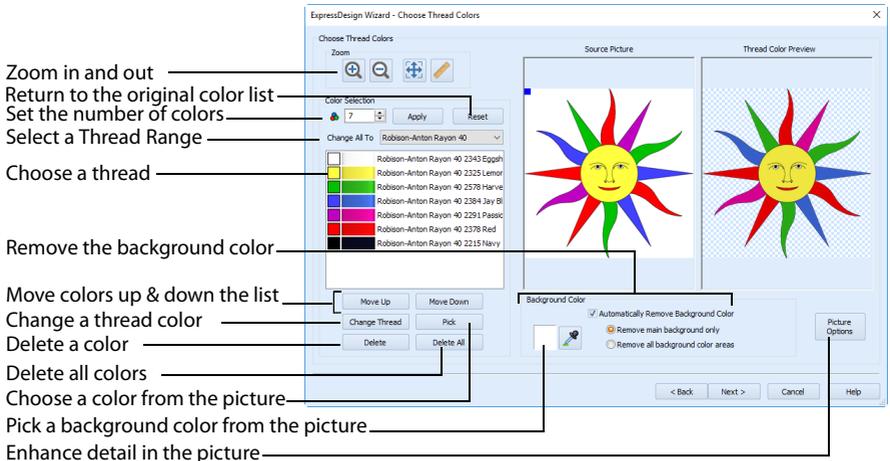
Return to the Rotate and Crop Picture page or Outline Finder and Expander page, according to the chosen design type.

## Next

Go to the Express Trace Options or Express Border Options page, according to the chosen design type.

# Express Embroidery Options

## Choose Thread Colors



The Choose Thread Colors page of the ExpressDesign Wizard only appears when you are creating an Express Embroidery. Use the Choose Thread Colors page to match thread colors to colors in the picture, to set the number of colors, and to choose the color order. Select whether or not to keep the background and, if desired, pick a different background color. Optionally, choose whether or not to expand thin lines and set the sensitivity to small areas in the picture.

## Color Selection

### Number of Colors

The Number of Colors  is initially set to the recommended number of colors. The ExpressDesign Wizard determines the optimal number of colors for converting the picture into thread colors. When this number is changed, the list of colors and the preview are updated.

The maximum Number of Colors is 256. For pictures with less than 256 colors, the maximum is the total number of colors in the picture.

*The total number of colors in photographs and other complex color pictures may be shown as 256+. This may mean that there are a lot of small color areas in the picture. This can also happen with clipart in JPEG-JFIF Compliant (.jpg, .jif, .jpeg) format, as this format introduces minor color variations that may not be visible.*

### Apply

Click Apply to recalculate the threads with the new number of colors.

### Reset

Use Reset to return the color list to the initial set of picture colors chosen on the Choose Thread Colors page. The colors are also re-ordered from light to dark. The picture colors

will be matched to thread colors from the thread range shown in the Change All To box. Any custom thread matches that are required must be re-selected with Change Thread.

## Change All To

Click the drop-down arrow to choose a different thread range. When a thread range is chosen, each picture color in the list will be assigned the nearest matching thread color from the chosen thread range.

*When a new thread range is chosen, all custom thread matches set by Change Thread will be lost.*

## Picture and Thread Color List

The color list shows the colors that have been automatically selected. The colors are picked to give the closest representation of the original picture with the current Number of Colors. Each time the number of colors is changed, this list is updated.

Sometimes, when the Number of Colors is reduced to a low number, colors will be chosen that are averages of two or more prominent colors in the picture. This can give a posterized appearance to the Reduced Colors Preview. If this effect is not desired, increase the Number of Colors.

The list shows a sample of each color currently selected from the picture. Initially, the colors are shown from light to dark, with each picture color automatically matched to a thread color from the thread range shown in Change All To. The color order can be changed. This affects the order that colors are used in the final design.

*The basic color order is set by this list. However, the order for stitch types is satin, then fill, then outlines (running stitch or satin border). Hence, if black is moved so that it is first in this list, it will still be last in the final design if it is only used for outlining.*

The same thread color may be matched to two or more colors in the picture. Each thread color can be individually changed with Change Thread. When thread colors are changed in the list, the Thread Color Preview is updated.

*When more than one color in the picture is matched to the same thread color, the number of color changes in the final embroidery is reduced.*

## Move Up and Move Down

Use Move Up and Move Down to change the order of colors in the list.

## Change Thread

Click a color in the list, then click the Change Thread button. The Color Selection dialog box will appear so that a different thread color can be chosen. Alternatively, double-click a color in the list and the Color Selection dialog box will appear.

*It is recommended only to use Change Thread after the main thread range has been selected.*

## Pick

Click Pick to add thread colors to the list by clicking the desired colors in the Source Picture.

When Pick is selected, the pointer changes to an eyedropper  over the source picture. Click the picture to pick up the color under the tip of the eyedropper, and the nearest matching thread color from the selected Thread Range will be automatically selected and

added to the thread color list. The Thread Color Preview will be updated to show any other areas that can use the selected thread color.

*The thread color is picked for the clicked color according to the RGB (red, green, blue) value at the point clicked. If there is already a thread color assigned to that exact RGB value, it will be highlighted in the list instead of adding a thread color to the list.*

## Delete

Delete the picture color currently highlighted in the list. The deleted color is replaced with the nearest remaining picture color in the list. The Thread Color Preview is re-displayed, with the reduced set of thread colors.

## Delete All

Click Delete All to remove all the thread colors from the list if you wish to use Pick to choose colors from the Source Picture.

## Background Color

The background color is automatically determined. It is the color which is used the most along the edges of the picture. If desired, select a different background color.

## Current Background Color

The large color square shows the current background color.

## Pick Background Color

Click Pick Background Color  to choose a different color from the Source Picture as the background color. When Pick Background Color is selected, the pointer changes to an eyedropper  over the source picture. Click the picture to pick up the color under the tip of the eyedropper. The sample of the current background will change. Depending on the choice for Automatically Remove Background Color, the Thread Color Preview may show the effect of removing the selected color.

## Automatically Remove Background Color

When this is selected, the Thread Color Preview will show any areas that will be removed as a checkerboard pattern.

When removing the background color, choose between:

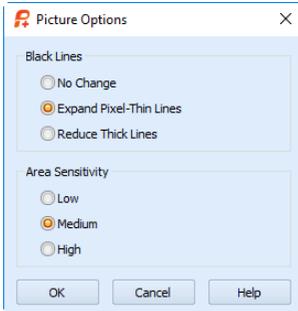
- Remove main background only  
Any areas of the background color that are connected to the edges of the picture will not be used in the final design. Use this option when there are significant design elements in the background color within the design.
- Remove all background color areas  
Any areas of the background color will not be used in the final design. Use this option when the background shows through gaps in the composition. Also choose this if you wish to remove a background color that is not connected to the edges of the picture.

## Removing Multiple Background Colors

Some pictures may have more than one background color, even after color reduction. To remove additional unwanted background colors, change the thread color so that all the background colors use the same thread color.

If the thread color used for the background color is the same as for a color area that you wish to keep, change the background thread color to a 'false color' that is not needed for this design.

## Picture Options



Click the Picture Options button to see the Picture Options dialog box, which is used to set the Black Lines option and set the Area Sensitivity.

### Black Lines

There are three options for handling black lines in your picture. Expand Pixel-Thin Lines is chosen by default.

*Select No Change if you feel that outlines in the picture do not need to be expanded or reduced.*

Select Expand Pixel-Thin Lines to make black lines thicker, to prevent broken lines where pixels join at corners. This option is on by default, to ensure that outlines in the picture are continuous.

*Select Reduce Thick Lines if your picture has very heavy outlines, and you prefer to have markout stitching in your picture rather than satin outlines.*

### Area Sensitivity

Area Sensitivity is used to determine how significant small areas of color in the picture may be. Choose High, Medium or Low. Area Sensitivity is set to Medium each time the ExpressDesign Wizard is used.

Use High sensitivity to increase the detail extracted from the picture. This is useful, for example, when facial details are ignored at Medium sensitivity. Use Low sensitivity to decrease the detail extracted from the picture. This is useful, for example, when unwanted details are retained in the design at Medium sensitivity.

## Previews

### Source Picture

This shows the original picture, after being rotated and cropped, in full color.

### Thread Color Preview

This shows how the thread colors have been chosen to replace colors in the picture. This gives an approximate indication of where thread blocks will be in the final design.

*If variegated threads have been selected, only the first color is shown in the preview.*

## Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the picture. The same area of the picture is shown in both previews when the zoom level is changed.

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point on the picture you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the picture to the preview area.

Click Real Size  to view the picture at a magnification as close as possible to the Real Size setting you chose in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

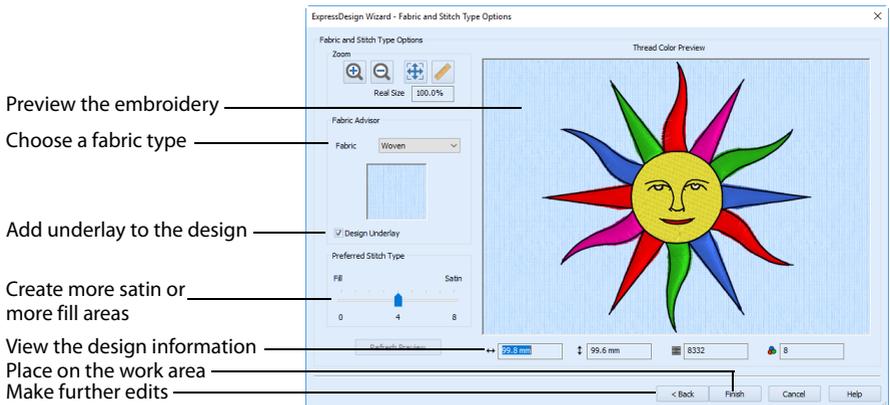
## Back

Return to the Rotate and Crop Picture page.

## Next

Go to the Fabric and Stitch Type Options page.

## Fabric and Stitch Type Options



The Fabric and Stitch Type Options page of the ExpressDesign Wizard only appears when you are creating an Express Embroidery. Use the Fabric and Stitch Type page to choose the typical fabric that the design will be stitched onto, and the preference for fill areas or satin areas.

## Fabric Advisor

### Fabric

Choose the fabric on which the design will be stitched. Adjustments are made in the embroidery creation process to suit the chosen fabric, such as the type of underlay chosen for individual areas of satin or fill.

### Design Underlay

Choose Design Underlay to provide stitching below the whole embroidery, in addition to automatic underlay in different areas.

*When Design Underlay is turned off it is easier to convert areas to lightly stitched specialty fills in PREMIER+™ 2 Modify or PREMIER+™ 2 Create.*

### Preferred Stitch Type

This affects whether areas are likely to be created as satin or fill. If you prefer satin, move the slider to the right. If you prefer fill, move the slider to the left. The design size also influences whether areas are created as satin or fill, as this affects the size of individual areas.

*To see the effect of different options, click Refresh Preview to regenerate the design.*

### Refresh Preview

Refresh the preview with your new settings. If a change is made to the options, you must click Refresh Preview before you can click Finish.

### Design Information

The design information boxes show the dimensions (Width  and Height ) , Stitch Count , and number of colors  for the embroidery. The design information may change when the embroidery is exported, depending on the Optimize for Sewing Options in the Export dialog.

### Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the picture.

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point on the picture you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the picture to the preview area.

Click Real Size  to view the picture at a magnification as close as possible to the Real Size setting you chose in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

## Thread Color Preview

This shows how the thread colors have been chosen to replace colors in the picture. This allows you to view and check the final design before closing the ExpressDesign Wizard.

## Back

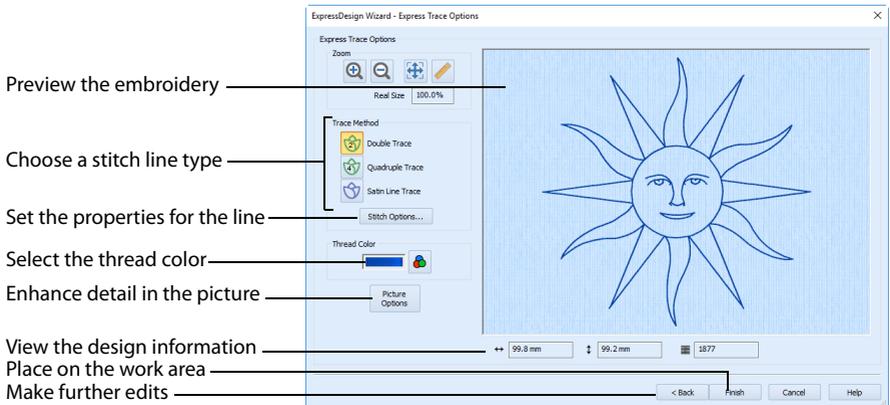
If desired, use the Back button to go back through the ExpressDesign Wizard and modify settings before previewing the design again.

## Finish

Accept the final design and close the ExpressDesign Wizard.

*If you have changed any of the options, you must click Refresh Preview before you can click Finish.*

## Express Trace Options



The Express Trace Options page of the ExpressDesign Wizard only appears if you are creating an Express Trace design. Select whether lines in the picture will be traced with a combination of double and running stitch, a combination of triple and running stitch, or satin line. Also select the thread color.

## Trace Method

### Double Trace

Trace the picture with Double Stitch where possible, with a layer of Running Stitch where necessary.

### Quadruple Trace

Trace the picture with Triple Stitch where possible, with an additional layer of Running Stitch where necessary.

### Satin Line Trace

Trace the picture with satin line, using the same width and density for the satin line throughout.

## Stitch Options

Click the Stitch Options button to see the options for the selected Trace Method.

- If Double Trace or Quadruple Trace are selected the Trace Options dialog box is displayed. See Trace Options below.
- If Satin Line Trace is selected the Satin Line dialog box is displayed. See “Satin Line” on page 468.

## Trace Options

Use the Trace Options dialog box to set the Stitch Length of the running stitch to use for Double Trace and Quadruple Trace, from 1 to 12mm in steps of 0.1mm. The initial setting is 2mm.

## Thread Color

Set the Thread Color for the stitches. Click the Color Change button  to choose a different color in the Color Selection dialog box. The thread sample is updated with the selected color. See “Change an Existing Thread Color” on page 45.

## Picture Options

Click the Picture Options button to see the Picture Options dialog box, which is used to set the Area Sensitivity.

### Area Sensitivity

Area Sensitivity is used to determine how significant small areas of color in the picture may be. Choose High, Medium or Low. Area Sensitivity is set to Medium each time the ExpressDesign Wizard is used.

Use High sensitivity to increase the detail extracted from the picture. This is useful, for example, when facial details are ignored at Medium sensitivity. Use Low sensitivity to decrease the detail extracted from the picture. This is useful, for example, when unwanted details are retained in the design at Medium sensitivity.

## Design Information

The design information boxes show the dimensions (Width  and Height ) , and Stitch Count  for the embroidery. The design information may change when the embroidery is exported, depending on the Optimize for Sewing Options.

## Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the picture.

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point on the picture you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the picture to the preview area.

Click Real Size  to view the picture at a magnification as close as possible to the Real Size setting you chose in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

## Preview

The preview allows you to view and check the final design before closing the ExpressDesign Wizard.

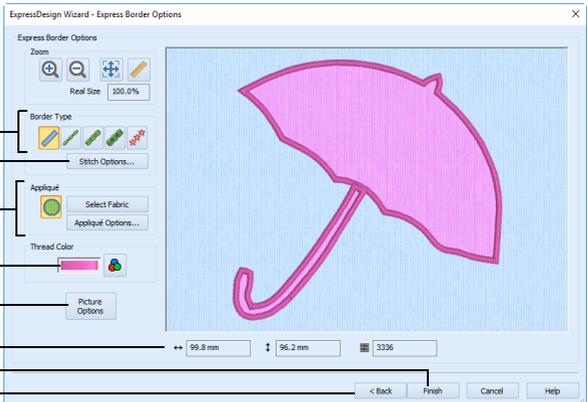
## Back

If desired, use the Back button to go back through the ExpressDesign Wizard and modify settings before previewing the design again.

## Finish

Accept the final design and close the ExpressDesign Wizard.

## Express Border Options



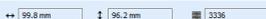
Choose a stitch type for the border —     

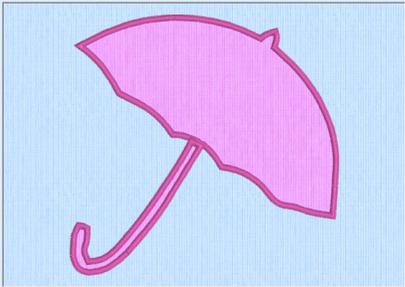
Set the properties for the border — 

Add appliqué to the design —   

Select the thread color — 

Enhance detail in the picture — 

View the design information — 

Place on the work area — 

Make further edits — 

The Express Border Options page of the ExpressDesign Wizard only appears if you are creating an Express Border design. Use the Border Options to select the type of stitching used for the borders, and to choose the thread color.

## Border Type

Select the type of border to create around areas of the picture from one of the following:

- Satin Line : see “Satin Line” on page 468.
- Running Stitch : see “Running Stitch” on page 464.
- Double Stitch : see “Double Stitch” on page 465.
- Triple Stitch : see “Triple Stitch” on page 467.
- Motif Line : see “Motif Line” on page 469.

## Stitch Options

After selecting the type of border, click the Stitch Options button to show the properties for that border type. If desired, adjust the properties and click OK.

## Appliqué

Select Appliqué  to use appliqué within the borders of the design.

- Click Select Fabric to change the appliqué fabric. See “Appliqué Selection” on page 185.
- Click Appliqué Options to select the appliqué type. See “Appliqué Options” on page 130.

*When Appliqué is selected, the preview shows where the appliqué fabric should be placed.*

## Thread Color

Set the Thread Color for the stitches. Click the Color Change button  to choose a different color in the Color Selection dialog box. The thread sample is updated with the selected color. See “Change an Existing Thread Color” on page 45.

## Picture Options

Click the Picture Options button to see the Picture Options dialog box, which is used to set the Area Sensitivity.

### Area Sensitivity

Area Sensitivity is used to determine how significant small areas of color in the picture may be. Choose High, Medium or Low. Area Sensitivity is set to Medium each time the ExpressDesign Wizard is used.

Use High sensitivity to increase the detail extracted from the picture. This is useful, for example, when facial details are ignored at Medium sensitivity. Use Low sensitivity to decrease the detail extracted from the picture. This is useful, for example, when unwanted details are retained in the design at Medium sensitivity.

## Design Information

The design information boxes show the dimensions (Width  and Height ) and Stitch Count  for the embroidery. The design information may change when the embroidery is exported, depending on the Optimize for Sewing Options.

## Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the picture.

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point on the picture you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the picture to the preview area.

Click Real Size  to view the picture at a magnification as close as possible to the Real Size setting you chose in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

## Preview

The preview shows where the borders will be created. It allows you to view and check the final design before closing the ExpressDesign Wizard.

## Back

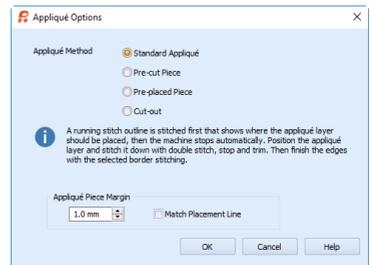
If desired, use the Back button to go back through the ExpressDesign Wizard and modify settings before previewing the design again.

## Finish

Accept the final design and close the ExpressDesign Wizard.

## Appliqué Options

Use the Appliqué Options dialog box to select an Appliqué Method for appliqué placement, and set the Appliqué Piece Margin.



### Appliqué Placement

When appliqué is created from a border shape, additional stitches are added at the beginning of the embroidery for placing appliqué fabric. Use these options to determine how these stitches are added. The border used to finish the appliqué uses line options for the selected border stitch type.

### Appliqué Method

Choose the method for placing and securing the appliqué fabric.

- **Standard Appliqué**  
Stitch a running line to show where appliqué fabric should be placed, then stop to position the fabric. Stitch down the appliqué fabric with double stitch, then stop so the fabric may be trimmed. Finish the edges with the selected border stitching.
- **Pre-cut Piece**  
Use a pre-cut appliqué piece; created, for example, using an automatic cutter or cutwork needles.  
  
Stitch a running line to show where the pre-cut appliqué piece should be placed, then stop to position the appliqué piece. Stitch down the appliqué piece with double stitch, then finish the edges with the selected border stitching.
- **Pre-placed Piece**  
Place the appliqué fabric before stitching.  
  
Place the appliqué layer in position, then stitch down the appliqué fabric with double stitch. Stop so the fabric may be trimmed. Finish the edges with the selected border stitching.
- **Cut-out**

Use the appliqué placement line as a guide to where the fabric should be cut; for example for reverse appliqué.

Stitch a double stitch line. Stop so the fabric may be cut to form a hole defined by the stitched outline. Finish the edges with the selected border stitching.

## Appliqué Piece Margin

Set the margin for appliqué placement relative to the drawn border shape from -10mm to 10mm. The initial value is 1.0mm.

*Use a positive value when trimming the appliqué fabric before the border is stitched, for example with Standard Appliqué and Pre-placed Appliqué. A negative value is recommended for cut-out and reverse appliqué.*

## Match Placement Line

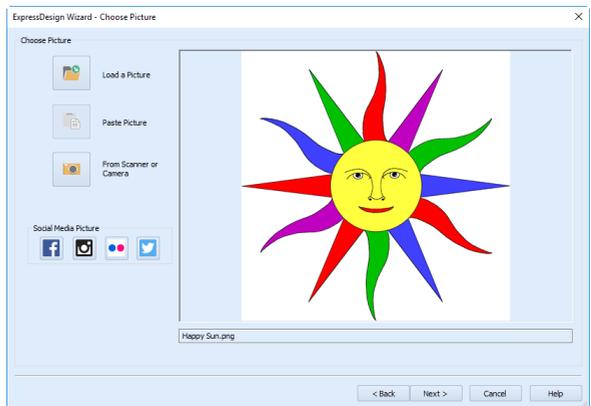
Adjust the position of the first running stitch line for either Standard Appliqué or Pre-cut Piece so that it matches the outline of the appliqué piece after the Appliqué Piece Margin has been applied.

*This may be useful for precise positioning of appliqué pieces that have been pre-cut with an automated cutter, to ensure the placement line is visible.*

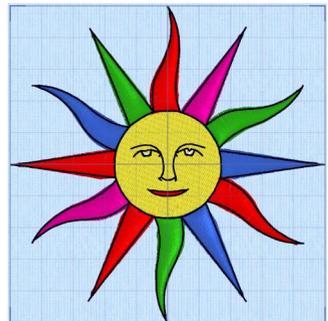
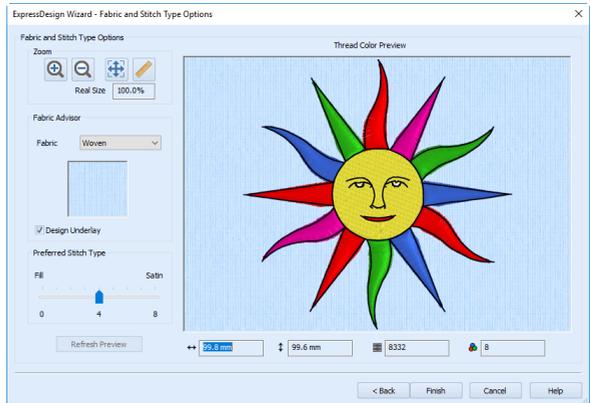
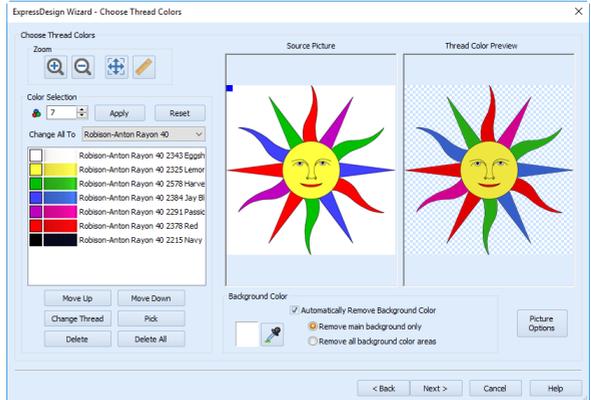
# Using Express Embroidery, Trace and Border

## Create a Happy Sun Embroidery

- 1 If required, click File, New Window.
  - 2 In the Quick Access toolbar click Change Hoop  and set the hoop size to 100mm x 100mm - Universal Square Hoop 1. Click OK.
  - 3 Click the Wizards tab.
  - 4 Click the drop-down arrow beneath the ExpressDesign Wizard icon , then click ExpressDesign into Hoop . The Choose Design Type page of the ExpressDesign Wizard appears.
  - 5 Leave Create Express Embroidery selected and click Next. The Choose Picture page of the ExpressDesign Wizard appears.
  - 6 Click Load a Picture  and the picture viewer will appear.
  - 7 Browse to the folder Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Pics.
  - 8 Click 'Happy Sun.png' and click OK.
- The picture is loaded onto the Choose Picture page, with its name shown below the preview area.
- 9 Click Next and the Rotate and Crop Picture page will appear. No rotation or adjustment of the crop lines is needed, so click Next and the Choose Thread Colors page will appear.
  - 10 There are 7 colors automatically picked for this picture. For this picture, it is recommended to use all 7 of the detected 7 colors, so no adjustment is needed.
- For other pictures, you may wish to increase or decrease the number of colors picked. Click the up and down arrows next to the number, or click in the box and enter the desired number.*

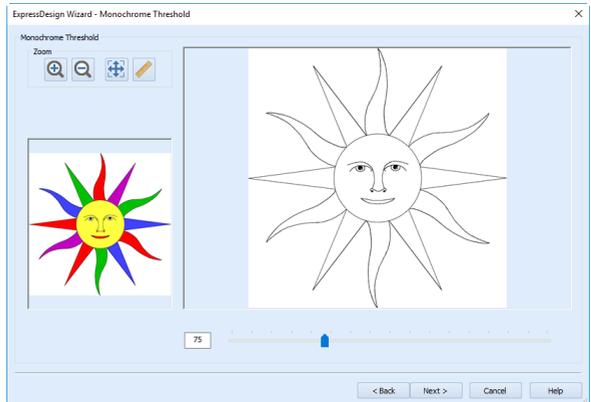
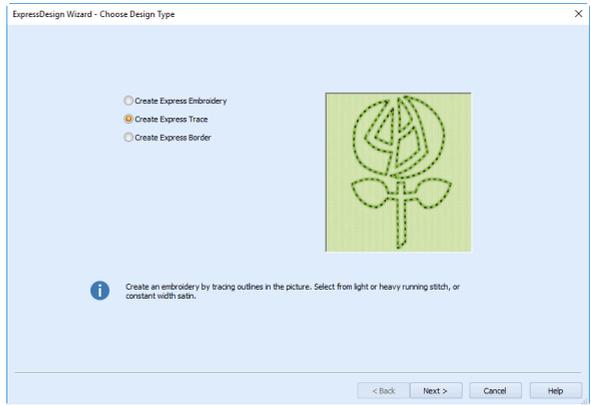


- 11 If the colors in the color list are not set to Robison-Anton Rayon 40, click the drop-down arrow at the end of the Change All To box and select Robison-Anton Rayon 40.
- 12 Ensure the Automatically Remove Background Color checkbox is selected to remove the white background.  
*In Background Color, the large white square shows that white is the detected background color. When Automatically Remove Background Color is selected, the background color is replaced by a check pattern in the Thread Color Preview. This shows where there will be no stitches.*
- 13 Click the Picture Options button.
- 14 In the Picture Options dialog, ensure that Expand Pixel-Thin Lines is selected in Black Lines.
- 15 In Area Sensitivity, ensure that the setting is Medium.
- 16 Click OK.
- 17 Click Next. The Fabric and Stitch Type Options page appears.
- 18 Leave fabric as Woven.
- 19 Ensure that Design Underlay is selected.
- 20 Move the Preferred Stitch Type slider to 4. This will use fill for the sun's face, and satin for the sun's rays.
- 21 Click Refresh Preview. The embroidery shown in the preview area is updated.
- 22 Click Finish. The Happy Sun embroidery appears on the work area.

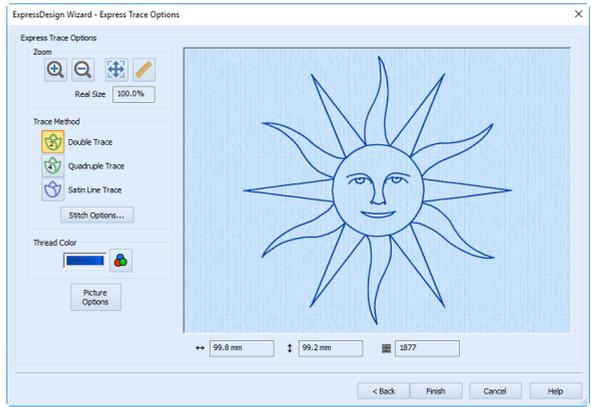


## Create a Happy Sun Express Trace

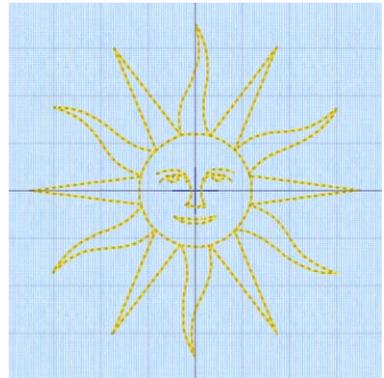
- 1 If required, click File, New Window, then click the Wizards tab.
- 2 Click the drop-down arrow beneath the ExpressDesign Wizard icon , and then click ExpressDesign into Rectangle . The pointer changes to the draw rectangle pointer .
- 3 Starting at the corner of a grid square, click and drag to draw a square that is seven by seven grid squares.  
*If the rectangle is wrong and you wish to try again, click Cancel when the Choose Design Type page of the ExpressDesign Wizard appears and return to step 2.*
- 4 Release the mouse button and the Choose Design Type page of the ExpressDesign Wizard will appear.
- 5 Select the Create Express Trace option.
- 6 Click Next and the Choose Picture page will appear.
- 7 Click Load a Picture  and the picture viewer will appear.
- 8 Browse to the folder Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Pics.
- 9 Select 'Happy Sun.png', then click OK. The picture will be loaded onto the Choose Picture page, with its name shown below the preview area.
- 10 Click Next and the Rotate and Crop Picture page will appear. No rotation or cropping is required, so click Next and the Outline Finder and Expander page will appear.
- 11 The picture already has outlines that can be used, so ensure the Find Outline option is not selected (unchecked). Click Next and the Monochrome Threshold page will appear.
- 12 Set the Monochrome Threshold to less than 75, so that only the outlines show in the preview.
- 13 Click Next and the Express Trace Options page will appear.



- 14** Ensure Double Trace is selected. *Double Trace traces lines in the picture with a combination of double stitch and running stitch. Quadruple Trace creates a bolder effect by using a combination of triple stitch and running stitch. If you prefer a bolder effect, choose Quadruple Trace instead.*

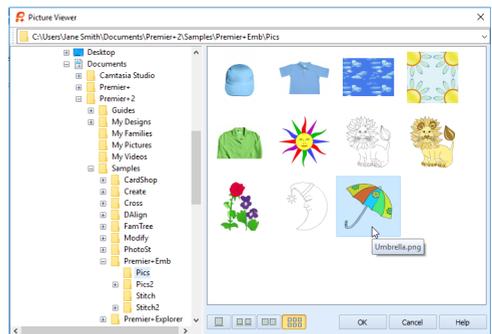


- 15** Click the Thread Color icon and set the thread color to Sulky Rayon 40 1124 (Sun Yellow). The preview will show the embroidery in the chosen thread color.
- 16** Click Finish and the Happy Sun embroidery will appear on the work area, where the rectangle was drawn.

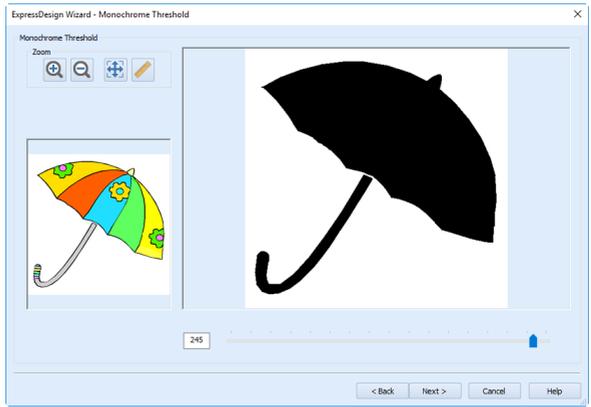


## Create an Umbrella Border

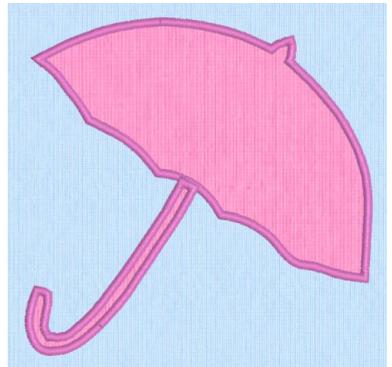
- 1** If required, click File, New Window, then click Change Hoop in the Quick Access toolbar.
- 2** Set the hoop size to 100mm x 100mm - Universal Square Hoop 1. Click OK.
- 3** Click the Wizards tab.
- 4** Click the drop-down arrow beneath the ExpressDesign Wizard icon, then click ExpressDesign into Hoop. The Choose Design Type page of the ExpressDesign Wizard appears.
- 5** Select the Create Express Border option and click Next. The Choose Picture page of the ExpressDesign Wizard appears.
- 6** Click Load a Picture and the picture viewer will appear.
- 7** Browse to the folder Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Pics.
- 8** Click 'Umbrella.png', then click OK. The picture will be loaded onto the Choose Picture page, with its name shown below the preview area.



- 9 Click Next and the Rotate and Crop Picture page will appear.
- 10 Click Select All.  
*This will create a small margin around the embroidery, so that it does not touch the edge of the hoop area.*
- 11 Click Next and the Monochrome Threshold page will appear.
- 12 Set the Monochrome Threshold to 244 or more, so that all of the colored areas in the umbrella are black.  
*This creates a clearly defined shape to use for the border. If a lower number is used, extra lines may appear in the umbrella handle, or there may be gaps.*



- 13 Click Next and the Express Border Options page will appear.
- 14 Ensure that Satin Line is selected as the Border Type.
- 15 Click Stitch Options. The Satin Line dialog box will appear.
- 16 Ensure that Width is set to 2.0mm, that Density is set to 4, and that Underlay is selected, then click OK.
- 17 Click the Thread Color icon  and set the thread color to Robison-Anton Rayon 40 2259 (Wild Pink). The preview will show the embroidery in the chosen thread color. Click OK. The umbrella border is now pink.
- 18 Ensure that Appliqué  is selected.
- 19 Click Select Fabric.
- 20 In the Quick Colors section of the Appliqué Selection dialog box, choose a fabric and color that will match the satin line for the border.  
*Click the arrow to the right of the Quick Colors to view more color palettes.*
- 21 Click Finish to place the embroidery on the work area.



## Overview

Use the Quilt Block Wizard  to create a filled or outline quilt block automatically – you can even create a quilting fill around an embroidery!

*The Quilt Block Wizard is only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*



*The most recently used quilt block dimensions are remembered, even if the program has been restarted. Information about the Fill Pattern used is stored in the settings of the embroidery that is created.*

## Quilt Block Wizard

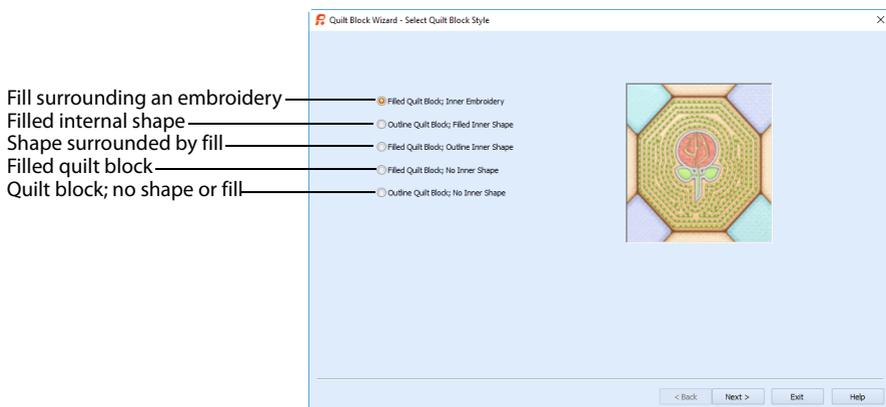
Use the Quilt Block Wizard to create a quilt block automatically. The Quilt Block Wizard opens at the Select Quilt Block Style page.

### Shortcuts

- Wizards Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, W, Q

# Select Quilt Block Style

The Quilt Block Wizard starts at the Select Quilt Block Style page. This enables you to select one of five quilt block styles.



Select a style for the quilt block. Choose the desired option, and then click Next to go to the Select Size page.

## Filled Quilt Block; Inner Embroidery

Use Filled Quilt Block; Inner Embroidery to make a filled quilt block surrounding an embroidery.

## Outline Quilt Block; Filled Inner Shape

Use Outline Quilt Block; Filled Inner Shape to make an unfilled quilt block containing a filled shape.

## Filled Quilt Block; Outline Inner Shape

Use Filled Quilt Block; Outline Inner Shape to make a quilt block with an unfilled shape, surrounded by a fill.

## Filled Quilt Block; No Inner Shape

Use Filled Quilt Block; No Inner Shape to fill the quilt block with a motif or pattern.

## Outline Quilt Block; No Inner Shape

Use Outline Quilt Block; No Inner Shape to create a quilt block without any internal shape or fill. This option is useful when creating blocks to piece.

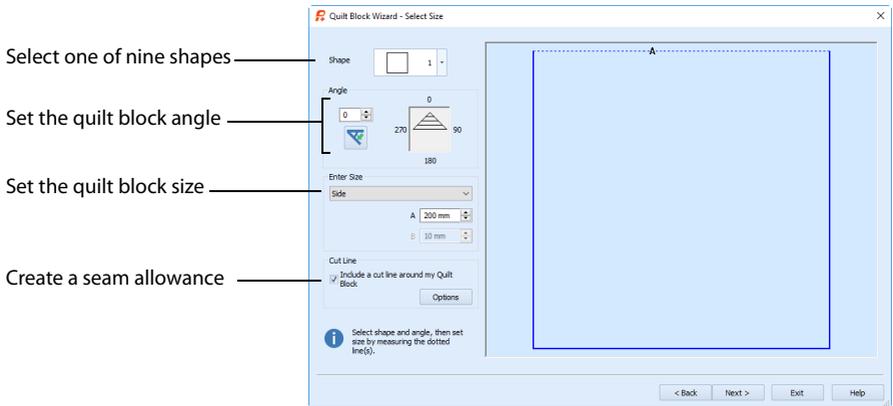


## Next

Go to the Select Size page.

# Select Size

Use the Select Size page to select a shape for your quilt block, set its size and angle, and add a cut line around the block.



## Shape

Select one of nine shapes from the drop-down list.

*All of these quilt block shapes can be tessellated — they will fill an area if tiled individually or combined with another shape, with no overlaps or gaps.*

## Angle

Use Angle to change the angle at which the quilt block is created and displayed. This is an easy way to place a block "on point".

Click the Rotate 45 icon  to rotate the shape by 45 degrees in a clockwise direction.

Alternatively, enter an Angle from 0 to 359 degrees. The initial setting is 0.

*Alter the Angle by typing a number in the box, or use the up and down arrows to change the number. Changes in Angle are visible in the preview pane.*

## Enter Size

Select which dimensions to measure for your quilt block, and enter the desired size(s). The selected dimension is indicated by the dotted line and letter A or B.

*The default dimensions will depend upon the shape selected. The minimum size for the sides of a square block is 10mm and the maximum size is 1m.*

## Cut Line

Use the Cut Line options to set the seam allowance for your quilt block.

### Include a cut line around my Quilt Block

Select this checkbox to add a line outside the edge of the quilt block to indicate where the fabric is to be cut and folded as a quilt block.

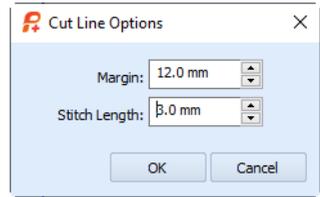
Click Options to set the Margin and Stitch Length for your quilt block in the Cut Line Options dialog.

## Margin

Set the Margin between the quilt block and the Cut Line. The minimum margin is 1mm, and the maximum margin is 100mm. The initial setting is 12mm.

## Stitch Length

Set the stitch length for the cut line. The stitch length can be changed from 0.3mm to 12mm in steps of 0.1mm. The initial setting is 3mm.



## Back

Return to the Select Quilt Block Style page.

## Next

If you selected 'Filled Quilt Block; Inner Embroidery' on the Select Quilt Block Style page, go to the Load Embroidery page.

If you selected 'Filled Quilt Block; No Inner Shape' on the Select Quilt Block Style page, go to the Select Fill pattern page.

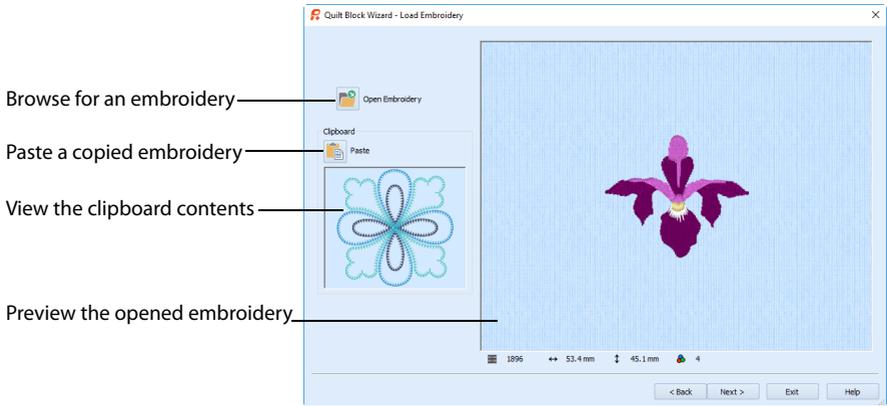
If you selected a quilt block with an Inner Shape on the Select Quilt Block Style page, go to the Select Shape page.

## Finish

If you selected 'Outline Quilt Block; No Inner Shape' on the Select Quilt Block Style page, click Finish to close the Wizard.

# Load Embroidery

This page appears if you chose Filled Quilt Block; Inner Embroidery in the Select Quilt Block Style page.



The Load Embroidery page enables you to load an embroidery to use in the center of your quilt block. Use the Load Embroidery page to load one embroidery. After choosing an embroidery, you can select a different embroidery but only the most recently chosen embroidery will be shown on the preview area.

*It is not possible to drag and drop an embroidery onto the Quilt Block Wizard from Windows® Explorer.*

## Open Embroidery

Click Open Embroidery  to load an embroidery with the Open dialog box. Select the desired embroidery and click Open. The Open dialog box will close and the embroidery is shown in the preview area.

## Paste

Click Paste  to load the embroidery shown in the Clipboard Block. The embroidery is shown in the preview area.

*Paste is not available if the Clipboard Block is empty.*

## Clipboard Block

This shows the embroidery, if any, that has been copied or cut to the clipboard, either from another PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System module or from within PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery before the Quilt Block Wizard was started.

## Preview

A preview of the embroidery, and its stitch count , width , height  and number of color blocks  is displayed.

## Back

Return to the Select Size page.

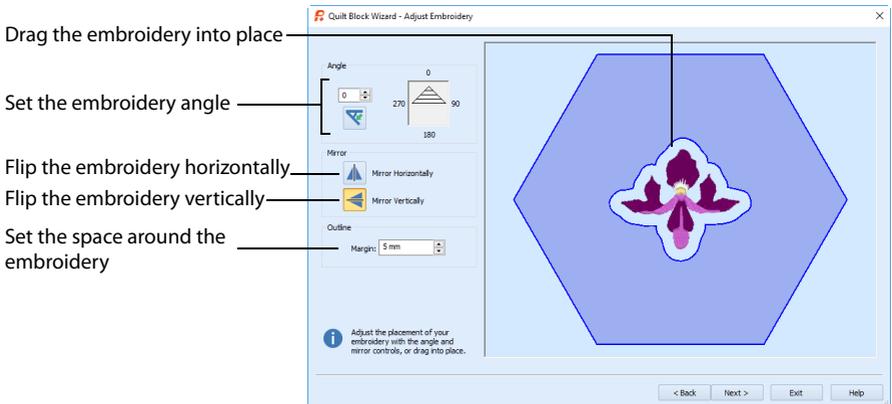
## Next

Go to the Adjust Embroidery page.

## Adjust Embroidery

This page appears after the Load Embroidery page if you chose Filled Quilt Block; Inner Embroidery in the Select Quilt Block Style page.

*If you loaded an embroidery that was too large for the specified quilt block, it will be outlined in red. Return to the Select Quilt Block Style page and choose a different size for the quilt block, or select another embroidery.*



Drag the embroidery into place

Set the embroidery angle

Flip the embroidery horizontally

Flip the embroidery vertically

Set the space around the embroidery

Use the Adjust Embroidery page to set the angle and position of the embroidery within the quilt block, and the margin around it.

*To reset all the settings quickly, go back to the Load Embroidery page and load the design again.*

## Position

Click and drag anywhere inside the solid blue line around the embroidery (the margin) to move the embroidery with the move pointer .

*If you drag the embroidery so that the margin is outside the edge of the quilt block, the outline will become red, and the Next button will be grayed out (unavailable).*

## Angle

Use Angle to change the angle at which the embroidery is displayed, as shown by the arrow.

Click the Rotate 45 icon  to rotate the embroidery by 45 degrees in a clockwise direction.

Alternatively, enter an Angle from 0 to 359 degrees. The initial setting is 0.

*Alter the Angle by typing a number in the box, or use the up and down arrows to change the number. Changes in Angle are visible in the preview pane.*

## Mirror Horizontally

Use Mirror Horizontally  to mirror the embroidery from left to right.

## Mirror Vertically

Use Mirror Vertically  to mirror the embroidery from top to bottom.

## Margin

Use Margin to leave space between the embroidery and the fill around it.

The minimum Margin is zero. The maximum Margin is 50mm. The initial setting is 5mm.

*A blue line around the embroidery indicates the position of the margin. If the margin is outside the edge of the quilt block, the outline becomes red, and the Next button is grayed out (unavailable).*

## Back

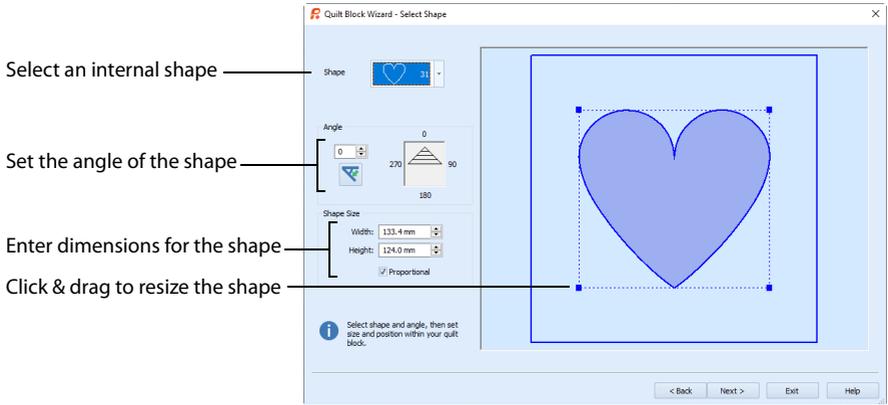
Return to the Load Embroidery page.

## Next

Go to the Select Fill Pattern page.

# Select Shape

This page appears if you chose to use an Inner Shape for your quilt block in the Select Quilt Block Style page.



Select an internal shape for your quilt block, and set its size and angle.

## Shape

Select one of 75 shapes from the drop-down list.

## Size and Position

Click and drag one of the corner resize handles, or anywhere on the dotted line box surrounding the internal Shape, to resize it. The Width and Height boxes will show the new dimensions.

Alternatively, enter the desired dimensions in the Width and Height boxes.

*Alter the shape by entering a number in the box, or use the up and down arrows to change the number. Click and drag anywhere inside the dotted line box to move the internal Shape.*

*To change the shape, deselect the Proportional checkbox and then adjust the size.*

## Angle

Use Angle to change the angle at which the internal shape is displayed.

Click the Rotate 45 icon  to rotate the shape by 45 degrees in a clockwise direction.

Alternatively, enter an Angle from 0 to 359 degrees. The initial setting is 0.

*Alter the Angle by typing a number in the box, or use the up and down arrows to change the number. Changes in Angle are visible in the preview pane.*

## Back

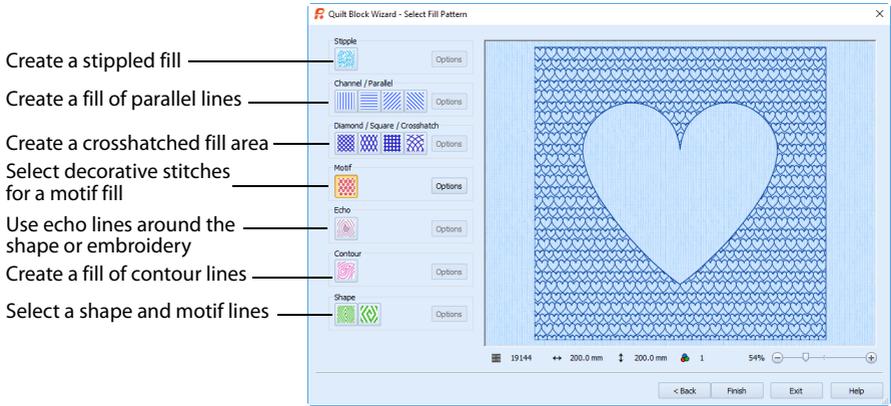
Return to the Select Size page.

## Next

Go to the Select Fill Pattern page.

# Select Fill Pattern

This page appears if you chose to use a fill for your quilt block in the Select Quilt Block Style page.



Choose a fill type for your quilt block, and set the options for it.

## Stipple Fill

Use Stipple Fill  to create a stippled fill for an area.

*When created, Stipple Fill areas do not have an outline.*

Click the Options button to set the properties for the stipple fill. The QuiltStipple Fill Properties dialog box appears.

*See "QuiltStipple Fill" on page 452.*

## Channel/Parallel Fill

Use Channel/Parallel Fill to create a fill of parallel lines for an area. Four types are available:

-  Channel Fill Vertical
-  Channel Fill Horizontal
-  Channel Fill Diagonal Right
-  Channel Fill Diagonal Left

Click the Options button to set the properties for the fill. The Crosshatch Fill properties dialog box appears.

*See "Crosshatch Fill" on page 435.*

## Diamond/Square/Crosshatch Fill

Use Diamond/Square/Crosshatch Fill to create a crosshatched fill for an area. Four types are available:

-  Diamond Fill
-  Square Fill
-  Crosshatch Fill



## Curved Crosshatch Fill

Click the Options button to set the properties for the fill. The Crosshatch Fill or Curved Crosshatch Fill Properties dialog box appears.

See “Crosshatch Fill” on page 435 or “Curved Crosshatch Fill” on page 437.

## Motif Fill

Use Motif Fill  to create a motif fill for an area.

Click the Options button to set the properties for the motif fill. The Motif Fill properties dialog box appears.

See “Motif Fill” on page 431.

## Echo Fill

Use Echo Fill  to place echo lines within an area.

Click the Options button to set the properties for the echo fill. The Echo Fill properties dialog box appears.

See “Echo Fill” on page 444.

## Contour Fill

Use Contour Fill  to create a contour fill for an area.

Click the Options button to set the properties for the contour fill. The Contour Fill properties dialog box appears.

See “Contour Fill” on page 454.

## Shape Fill

Use Shape Fill to create a shape fill for an area. Two types are available:



Shape Fill



Shape Fill with Motifs

Click the Options button to set the properties for the shape fill. The Shape Fill properties dialog box appears.

See “Shape Fill” on page 446.

## Design Information

The design information boxes show the dimensions (Width  and Height ) , Stitch Count  , and number of colors  for the embroidery. The design information may change when the embroidery is exported, depending on the Optimize for Sewing Options.

## Back

Return to the Adjust Embroidery, Select Shape, or Select Size page.

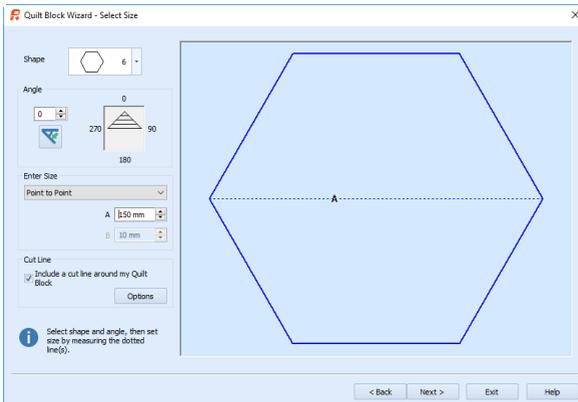
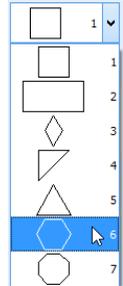
## Finish

Click Finish to close the Wizard.

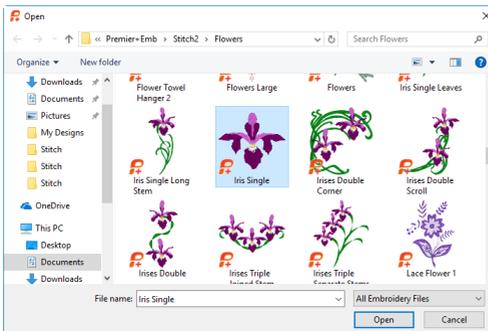
# Quilt Block Wizard Examples

## Surround an Embroidery in a Quilt Block with an Echo Fill

- 1 In the Wizards tab, click Quilt Block . The Select Quilt Block Style page appears.
- 2 Select Filled Quilt Block; Inner Embroidery . *This will create a filled quilt block with an embroidery in the center.*
- 3 Click Next. The Select Size page appears.
- 4 Click the drop-down arrow to the right of the Shape list. There are nine shapes to select from.  
*All of these quilt block shapes can be tessellated — they will fill an area if tiled individually or combined with another shape, with no overlaps or gaps.*
- 5 In the Shape drop-down list select Shape 6, a hexagon.
- 6 In Enter Size, click the arrow on the drop-down menu. For a hexagon you can select from Point to Point, Side, or Side to Side.
- 7 Ensure that Point to Point is selected in Enter Size.
- 8 Set measurement A to 150mm.
- 9 Ensure that "Include a cut line around my Quilt Block" is selected.



- 10 Click Next and the Load Embroidery page of the wizard will appear.
- 11 Click the Open Embroidery icon  and the Open dialog box appears.
- 12 In the Open dialog box, browse to the folder Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Stitch2\Flowers.
- 13 If required, scroll down to see more embroideries until you see the embroidery 'Iris Single'.



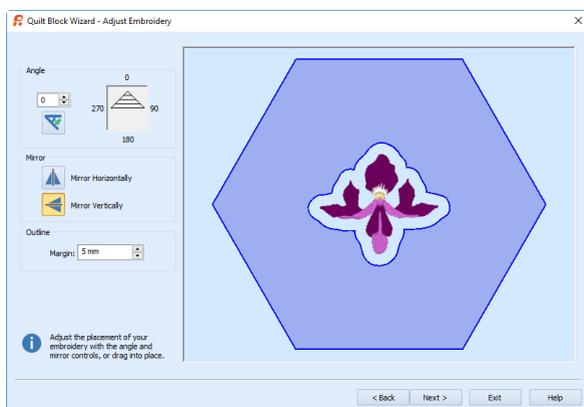
- 14 Click the 'Iris Single' embroidery to select it, then click Open and the embroidery will be loaded onto the preview area.



After choosing an embroidery you can select a different embroidery, but only the most recently chosen embroidery will be shown on the preview area. The dimensions, number of stitches, and thread colors used in the embroidery are shown below the preview pane.

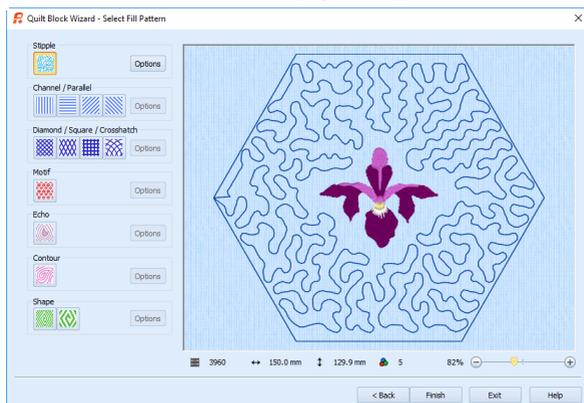
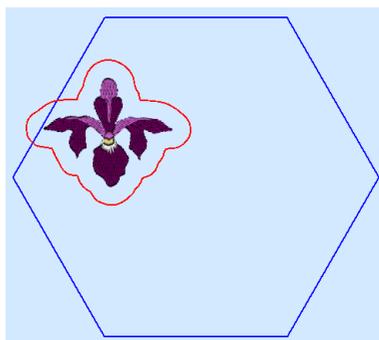
- 15 Click Next. The Adjust Embroidery page will appear. The embroidery is placed in the center of the quilt block shape, with a clear margin and blue fill area surrounding it.
- 16 Click Rotate 45  twice. The embroidery rotates clockwise by 90 degrees in the preview pane. You can use Angle and Rotate 45  to rotate the shape by 45 degrees, or an angle that you choose, in a clockwise direction.
- 17 Set the Angle numbers box to zero to return the embroidery to its original position.
- 18 Click Mirror Vertically  to reverse the embroidery.

Use Mirror Horizontally  to mirror the embroidery from top to bottom, or Mirror Vertically  to mirror the embroidery from left to right.

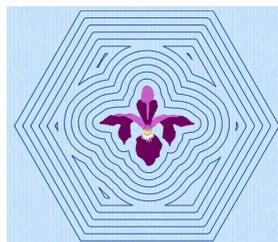


- 19 Click Mirror Vertically  again to set the embroidery back to the previous position.
- 20 Click the up arrow next to Margin to increase the margin by 2mm. The margin around the flower embroidery grows larger.

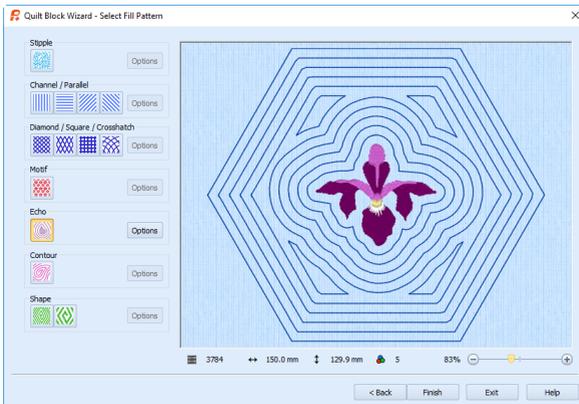
- 21 Click and drag the embroidery so that the margin lies outside the edge of the quilt block. The blue fill disappears, and the line showing the edge of the margin becomes red.  
*You could drag it back to its original position, but it is just as easy to reload the embroidery.*
- 22 Click Back. In the Load Embroidery page, click Open Embroidery to open the Open dialog box and load Iris Single again.
- 23 Click Next. In the Adjust Embroidery page the embroidery has returned to its original position and settings.  
*If you had clicked Next without loading the embroidery again, your changes would have been retained.*  
Click Next. The Select Fill Pattern page will appear.



- 24 The embroidery is surrounded by an unstitched margin, and the default fill, a Stipple Fill. The Options button is available to change the Stipple Fill settings.
- 25 Click Echo. The fill around the embroidery changes to an Echo Fill. The outer lines in the echo fill follow the outline of the quilt block, while the inner lines follow the outline of the embroidery.
- 26 Click the Options button for Echo Fill. The Echo Fill properties dialog box opens.
- 27 Set the Gap to 4.0mm, and ensure the Stitch length is 2mm. The Style is set to style 1, rounded corners. You can also use square (Style 2) or diagonal (Style 3) corners. These styles have more significant effects when using the Inner Shape quilt block options.
- 28 Click OK to view the effect of the changes.
- 29 The gap between the embroidery and the echo lines is greater than the gap between the lines themselves. Click Back to return to the Adjust Embroidery page.
- 30 Set the Margin to 4mm, then click Next to return to the Select Fill Pattern page. The first line in the echo fill now starts at the same distance from the embroidery as the other lines are from each other. There are several small 'islands' around the flower.
- 31 Under Echo, click Options and in the Echo Fill dialog box set the Gap to 4.2mm. Click OK.

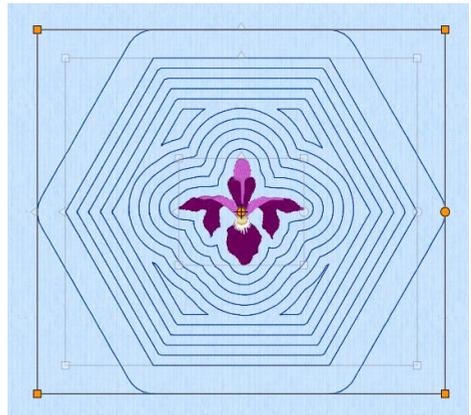


This increases the distance slightly between the lines of stitching, and removes the small islands, but is still similar to the margin.



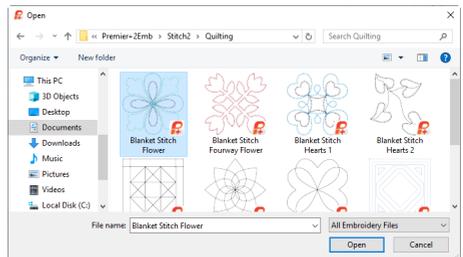
Adjust the Gap and Style, and the position of the embroidery to achieve your preferred results.

- 32 Click Finish to place the finished quilt block in the work area, as shown. Two rows of stitching around the quilt block show the lines at the edge of the block where the fabric should be cut and folded. Note the orange handles for the group created from the embroidery, the echo lines and the cut line.
- 33 In the Color Worksheet, select the colors for the echo lines and the cut line and change them to the dark purple used in the Iris petals in the embroidery. The color of the stitching in the fill now matches the main color in the embroidery.



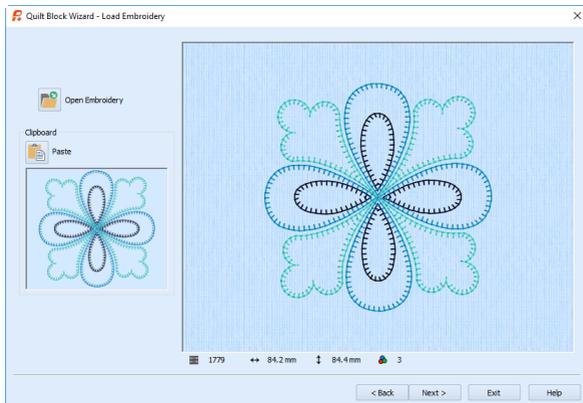
## Show an Echo Around an Embroidery

- 1 Click New , then in the Quick Access toolbar, click Insert Embroidery . The Open dialog box appears.
- 2 In the Open dialog box, browse to the folder Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Stitch2\Quilting.
- 3 Click the Blanket Stitch Flower embroidery to select it, then click Open. The flower design appears in the work area.
- 4 With the flower embroidery still selected, in the Home tab click Copy . The flower appears in the Clipboard.
- 5 In the Wizards tab, click Quilt Block . The Select Quilt Block Style page appears.
- 6 Select Filled Quilt Block; Inner Embroidery . This will create a filled quilt block with an embroidery in the center.
- 7 Click Next. The Select Size page appears.
- 8 Click the drop-down arrow to the right of the Shape list. There are nine shapes to select from.



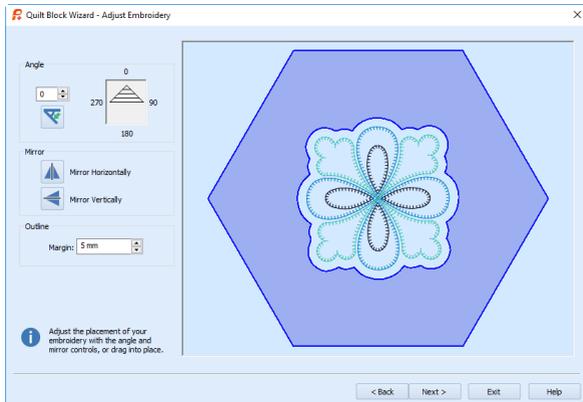
All of these quilt block shapes can be tessellated — they will fill an area if tiled individually or combined with another shape, with no overlaps or gaps.

- 9 In the Shape drop-down list select Shape 6, a hexagon.
- 10 Ensure that Point to Point is selected in Enter Size, and that "Include a cut line around my Quilt Block" is selected.
- 11 Set measurement A to 200mm.
- 12 Click Next and the Load Embroidery page of the wizard will appear. The Blanket Stitch Flower can be seen in the Clipboard Block in the dialog.
- 13 Click Paste . The blanket stitch flower is placed in the preview pane. Use Copy and Paste to use embroideries that you have created or loaded in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery in the Quilt Block Wizard.



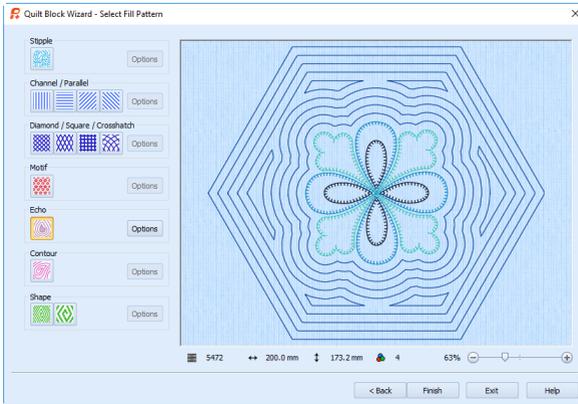
The dimensions, number of stitches, and thread colors used in the embroidery are shown below the preview pane.

- 14 Click Next. The Adjust Embroidery page will appear. The embroidery is placed in the center of the quilt block shape, with a clear margin and blue fill area surrounding it.



- 15 Click Next. The Select Fill Pattern page will appear. The embroidery is surrounded by an unstitched margin, and the default fill, a Stipple Fill. The Options button is available to change the Stipple Fill settings.
- 16 Click Echo . The fill around the embroidery changes to an Echo Fill, emphasizing the blanket flower.

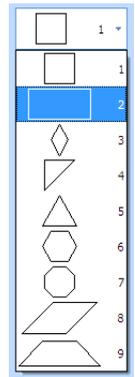
The outer lines in the echo fill follow the outline of the quilt block, while the inner lines follow the outline of the embroidery.



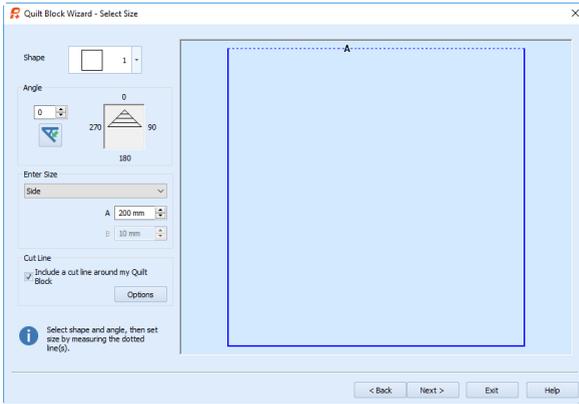
- 17 Click Finish to place the finished quilt block in the work area.

## Create a Quilt Block with a Central Filled Shape

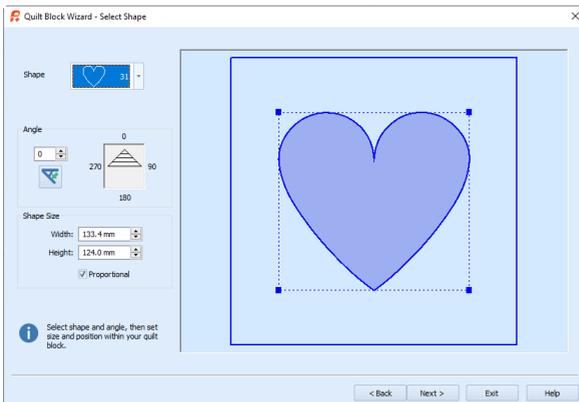
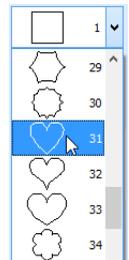
- 1 In the Wizards tab, click Quilt Block . The Select Quilt Block Style page appears.
- 2 Select Outline Quilt Block; Filled Inner Shape . This will create a block with a filled shape in the center.
- 3 Click Next. The Select Size page appears.
- 4 Click the drop-down arrow to the right of the Shape list. There are nine shapes to select from. All of these quilt block shapes can be tessellated — they will fill an area if tiled individually or combined with another shape, with no overlaps or gaps.
- 5 In the Shape drop-down list select Shape 2, a rectangle. In the preview area two sides of the rectangle are shown with a dotted line, sides A (the top) and B (the side).
- 6 In Enter Size, click the up and down arrows in boxes A and B. The rectangle changes shape. This enables you to set the rectangle shape and size.
- 7 In the Shape drop-down list select Shape 1, a square. Only one side, A, now has a dotted line as all sides are the same size. The box B is now unavailable (grayed out).
- 8 In Enter Size, click the drop-down arrow to the right of the box. You can select from Side and Diagonal, so you can enter the measurements according to the quilt pattern you are piecing. If you select Diagonal the dotted line 'A' will run diagonally across the center of the square.
- 9 Ensure that Side is selected in Enter Size.
- 10 Set side A to 150mm.
- 11 Position the arrow pointer over box A in Enter Size without clicking. A tooltip will show the measurement in inches, and the minimum and maximum size. Positioning the arrow pointer over a measurement box will show the alternative measurement. You may also enter the alternative measurement with units of mm or " and it will be automatically converted.
- 12 Set A to 200mm. The square is now 200mm wide and high.



- 13 Ensure that "Include a cut line around my Quilt Block" is selected.

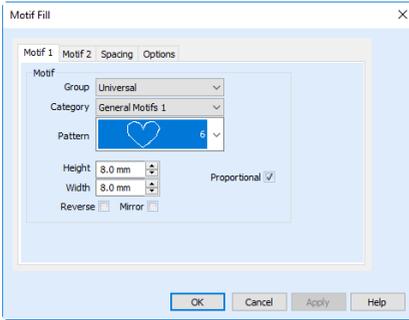


- 14 Click Next. The Select Shape page will appear.  
*Use this page to select the internal shape for the quilt block.*
- 15 Click the drop-down arrow to the right of the Shape list. There are 75 shapes to select from.
- 16 Scroll down the list and select Shape 31, a heart. In the preview pane the internal shape becomes a heart.  
*To resize the shape, use the handles on the corners of the box. The Width and Height boxes will show the new dimensions.*  
*To change the shape, deselect the Proportional checkbox, then move a corner handle or one of the dotted lines.*  
*To move the shape, click and drag within the box, and position the shape as desired.*

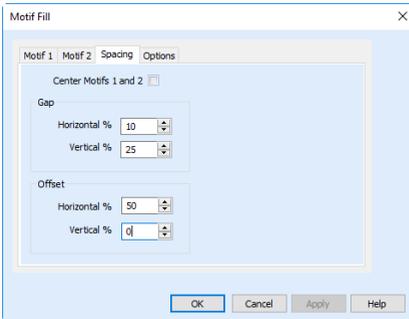


- 17 No adjustment of the shape is required, so click Next. The Select Fill Pattern page will appear. The heart shape is filled with the default stipple stitch.
- 18 Click Motif . The fill pattern changes to stars, and the Options button in the motif area becomes available.
- 19 Click the Options button for motifs. The Motif Fill Properties dialog box opens at the Motif 1 tab.
- 20 In Motif 1, set the Group to Universal and the Category to General Motifs 1.
- 21 Click the drop-down arrow for Pattern, scroll down the list and select Pattern 6, a heart.

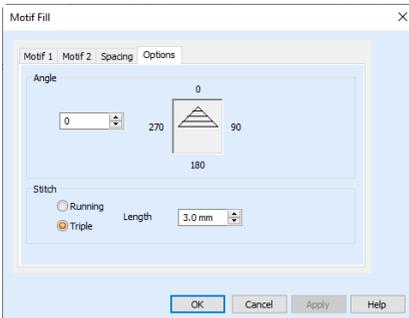
- 22 Ensure that the motif Height is set to the default value of 8mm.



- 23 Click the Spacing tab.  
24 In Gap, set Horizontal to 10% and set Vertical to 25%.  
*This will create more space between the hearts in the fill.*  
25 In Offset, set Horizontal to 50%.  
*This will alternate the positioning of the hearts.*

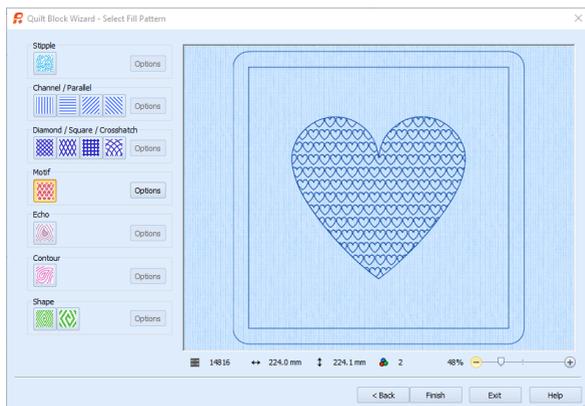


- 26 Click OK to return to the Select Fill Pattern page.  
*Use the preview on the Select Fill Pattern page to check your adjustments.*  
27 Click the Options button for motifs again.  
28 Click the Options tab.  
29 Change the Stitch type to Triple.

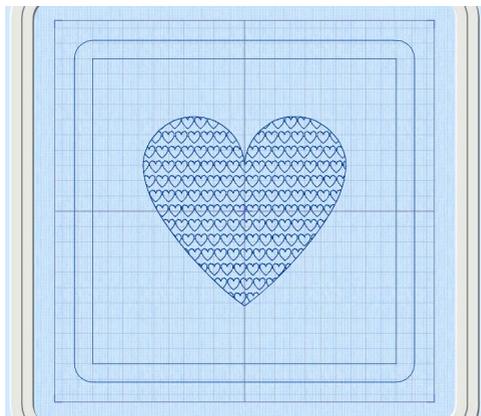


- 30 In the Spacing tab, set the Horizontal Gap to 10% and the Vertical Gap to 20%.

- 31 Click OK to return to the Select Fill Pattern page.



- 32 Click Finish. The quilt block is displayed in the design area.



*Two rows of stitching around the quilt block show the lines at the edge of the block where the fabric should be cut and folded.*

Load project backgrounds for use with PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra in the Background Wizard. Use the Background Wizard  to preview the embroideries you have designed on a garment, home decor item, fabric or quilt block, or other background.

You can also use the Background Wizard to create new backgrounds for your embroideries.

Use Realistic 3D  or Life View  to view embroideries and backgrounds in 3D without a grid, hoop or selection box.

Backgrounds and the Background Wizard are only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.

## Viewing Backgrounds

Use the Background slider bar to show the garment, quilt or fabric background as On, Off, or faded.



Background On  shows the picture in the background.



Click and drag the slider to fade the colors in the background picture (here by 50%).



Background Off  hides the picture.

Backgrounds are only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.

Use Move and Rotate Background  to move the garment, quilt or fabric background. Click and drag to move the background. Use the background or fabric handle  to rotate the background. Right-click to set the background in place and deselect the function.

The Background tools are only available after a Background has been selected or created in the Background Wizard.

## Fade Background

Use the Fade background slider to vary the brightness of the background garment, quilt or fabric. Background On  shows the background at full brightness, fade  the background to make it easier to see the embroidery, and use Background Off  to hide the background and see only the embroidery.



## Move and Rotate Background

Use Move and Rotate Background  to move the background that you have placed behind your embroideries.

Click the Move and Rotate Background icon  and the mouse pointer changes to a four-headed arrow . Click and drag to move the garment, quilt block or fabric background around the hoop or project area, and move the round handle  to rotate the background.

*Right-click to set the background in place and deselect the function.*

### Shortcuts

- View Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, V, M

## Remove Background

Use Remove Background  to remove the garment, quilt block or fabric background that you have placed behind your embroideries.

Click Remove Background  and the background will be removed from the work area.

### Shortcuts

- View Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, V, E

## Background Wizard

The Background Wizard  is started when you click Background Wizard. Use the Background Wizard to load an existing background or create a new background.

### Shortcuts

- View Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, V, W

# Load and Create Backgrounds

*The Background Wizard is only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*

There are three types of backgrounds used in the Background Wizard: Garment, Quilt Block and Fabric. There is a folder for each background type within the special Backgrounds folder.

## Garment

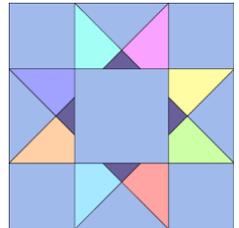
A garment is treated as a single item, so the garment is shown once on the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra screen. Use the garment setting for a background you want to show once, such as a blouse, a sweater, a tote bag or a pillowcase.

General garment categories are provided.



## Quilt Block

A quilt block is treated as a single item, so the quilt block is shown once on the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra screen. Use the quilt block setting to preview your embellishments to quilt blocks.



## Fabric

Fabric is treated as a swatch from a large area of fabric, so it is repeated to fill the work area. Use the fabric setting for a background that you want to have repeated, such as large home decorating projects (curtains, tablecloths or bed covers).

General fabric categories are provided.



*Examples of the garment, quilt block and fabric backgrounds are shown in the Backgrounds subfolder of the Sample Guides.*

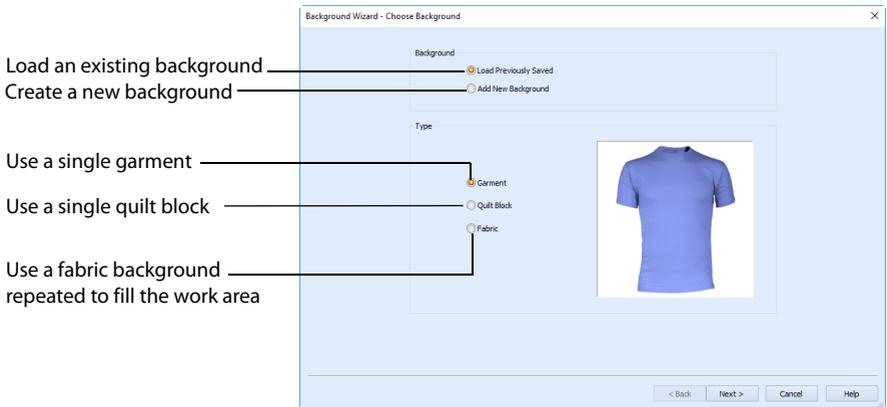
*Examples of backgrounds with placement guidelines for monograms are shown in the PREMIER+™ 2 Monogram Template Guide.pdf in the same subfolder.*

## Real Size Backgrounds

When you add a new background to your collection, you will need to provide a measurement so that it can be matched to the real size of embroideries. The garment, quilt block and fabric backgrounds supplied with PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery have already been set to real size.

# Choose Background

Use the Choose Background page of the Background Wizard to load an existing background or create a new background.



## Load Previously Saved

When you click Next, you may browse and select an existing background.

See “Load an Existing Background with the Background Wizard” on page 159.

## Add New Background

When you click Next, you can make a new background from a picture or a digital source such as a scanner or digital camera.

See “Make a New Background with the Background Wizard” on page 160.

## Type

The Type will affect the choices that are available in some pages of the Background Wizard.

### Garment

Load or create a garment. A garment is shown as a single item as a background for embroideries and decorations.

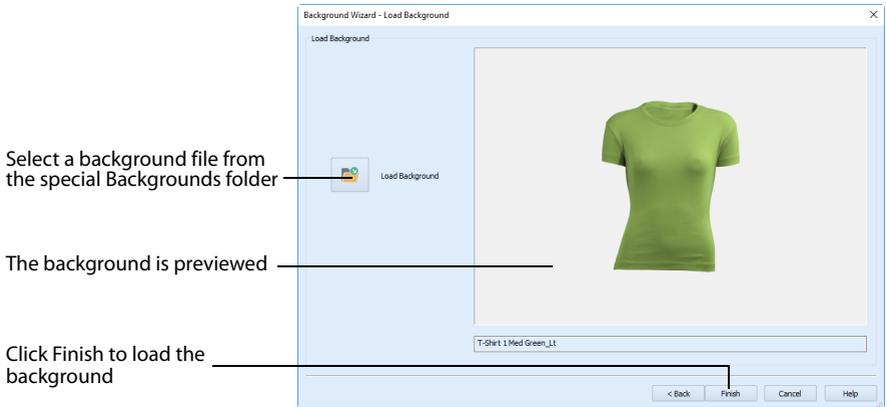
### Quilt Block

Load or create a quilt block. A quilt block is shown as a single item as a background for embroideries and decorations.

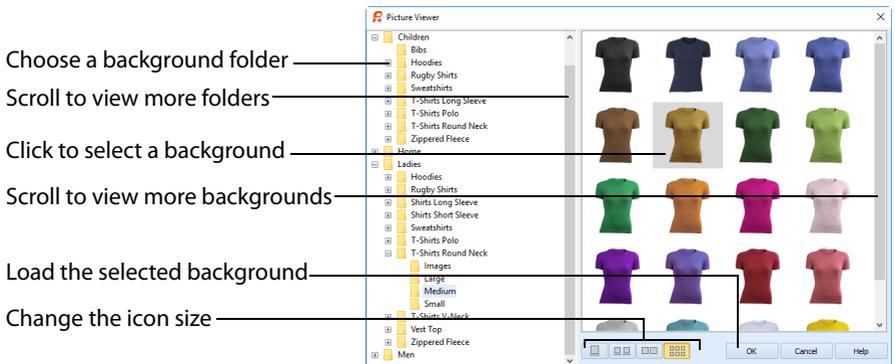
### Fabric

Load or create a fabric background. A fabric is repeated to fill the work area.

# Load an Existing Background with the Background Wizard



Use the Load Background page of the Background Wizard to select a previously saved garment, quilt block or fabric background. Click the Load Background icon  to select a garment, quilt block or fabric, as chosen under Type in the start page. Only backgrounds of the correct Type will be shown in the browser.



Open a folder, and scroll down and click a background to select it.

Click the thumbnail of the desired background and it will be shown on the Load Background page. The file name is shown in the box under the preview.

When the desired background is shown, click Finish to close the wizard and display the selected background in the work area.

# Make a New Background with the Background Wizard

Use the Background Wizard to create a new background from a picture of your garment, quilt block or fabric.

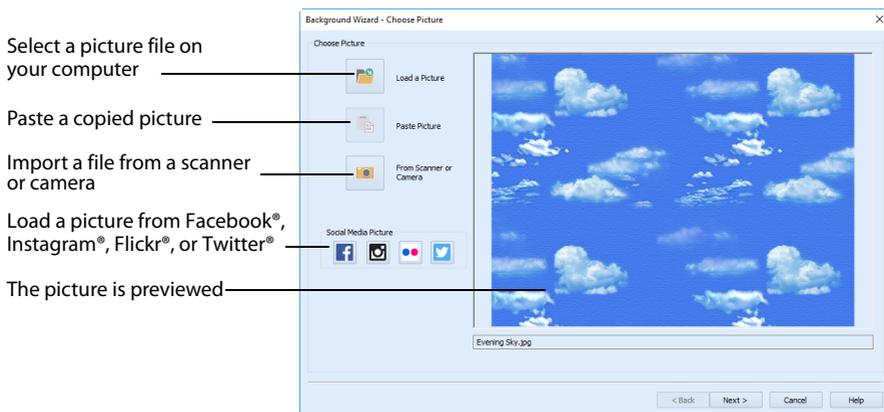
To make a new background, follow these steps:

- Choose Picture  
Select an existing picture or scan a new picture.
- Rotate and Crop Picture  
Adjust the picture angle if desired, and select the part of the picture you wish to use for the background.
- Set Size  
Enter a measurement so the background will be shown at its Real Size behind the embroidery.
- Set Background Name  
Specify a name and category for the background and save it.

Once these steps are complete, the Background Wizard is closed, and the background displayed in the work area.

## Choose Picture

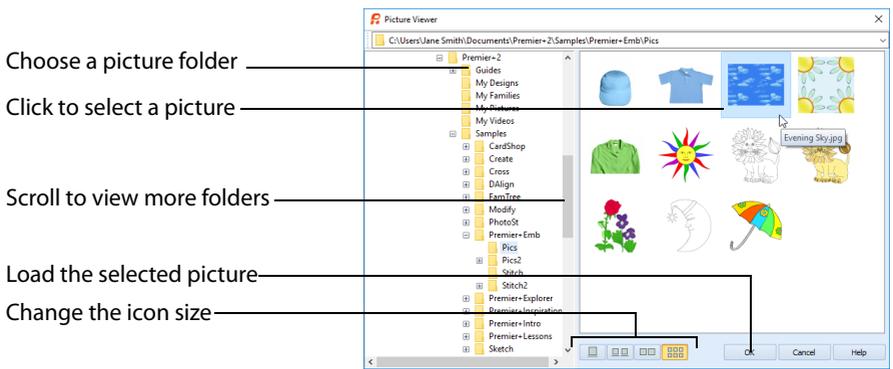
Use the Choose Picture page of the Background Wizard to select a picture for the new background.



*From Scanner or Camera will not be available if you do not have a Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) compliant scanner or digital camera attached to your computer.*

## Load a Picture

Click Load a Picture  to open a picture from clipart, or one you have previously saved, scanned or created in an image editor. After selecting a picture, the preview box will show the selected picture with its name underneath. Click OK to continue.



The following file formats may be loaded: Windows or OS2 Bitmap (.bmp), JPEG-JFIF Compliant (.jpg, .jif, .jpeg), Portable Network Graphics (.png), Tagged Image File Format uncompressed (.tiff, .tif), Windows Meta File (.wmf), Windows Enhanced Meta File (.emf) and Windows Icon (.ico).

## Load a Picture for a Background

- 1 Click Load a Picture  and the Picture Viewer dialog box appears.
- 2 Double-click to expand the folders until the desired folder is highlighted, for example: Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Pics
- 3 Click on a picture to select it.
- 4 Click OK to open the picture in the Choose Picture page.
- 5 Click Cancel to exit without selecting a picture.

## Paste Picture

Use Paste Picture  to load the picture in the Clipboard Block.

## From Scanner or Camera

Use From Scanner or Camera  to display the program that is used to acquire pictures from a scanner, a digital camera or another suitable device. Only devices that use WIA can be used to obtain pictures.

*WIA is a standard method for transferring pictures from the device's scanning or downloading program to another program. If the manufacturer provides the appropriate software components needed for WIA compliance, these should have been installed when the device was installed. Each scanner or digital camera has its own program that is used to scan or download pictures. Refer to the manual or online help provided with the program for instructions, if required. When the device and its software finish processing the picture, it will be shown in the Choose Picture page.*

Each scanner or digital camera has its own program that is used to scan or download pictures. Refer to the manual or online help provided with the program for instructions, if required. When the device and its software finish processing the Picture, it will be shown in the Choose Picture page.

## Social Media Picture

Load a picture from Facebook® , Instagram® , Flickr® , or Twitter® . Log in to the Social Media website to load the desired picture.

## Preview and Name

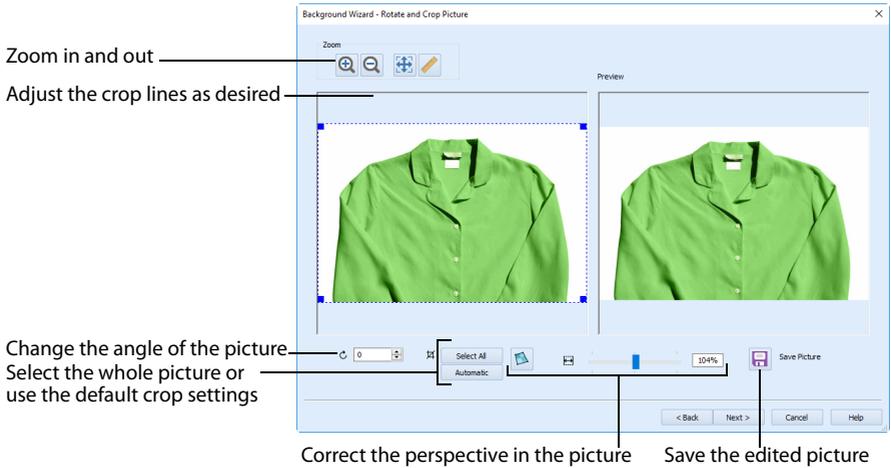
Under the preview pane is a box for the name of the chosen file. If the picture is a scanned image then the box will contain the words Scanned Picture.

## Rotate and Crop Picture

Use the Rotate and Crop Picture page to adjust the picture angle as desired by rotating the picture from 0 to 359 degrees, and to select the section of the picture that is to be used to create the background. The Rotate and Crop Picture page is the same for garments and quilt blocks, and different for fabrics. If required, adjust the crop lines to select the desired part of the picture.

# Rotate and Crop Picture for Garment or Quilt Block

Use the Rotate and Crop Picture page to select the section of the picture that is to be used to create the background. If required, adjust the crop lines to select the desired part of the picture.



## Rotate

Rotate  the picture from 0 to 359 degrees. Adjust the picture angle as desired. This is often necessary with scanned pictures.

Enter the desired Rotation angle  or use the up/down arrows to change the angle. The preview will show the effect.

When the picture is rotated between the 90 degree steps, the picture is made larger and white background is added.

## Crop

- To adjust the crop area, position the mouse over the crop boundary until a double-headed arrow  appears, then click and drag to move the boundary line.
- To move the crop area, position the mouse inside the crop boundary until a four-headed arrow  appears, then click and drag to move the whole rectangle.
- To redraw the crop area, click and drag outside the crop boundary to draw a new rectangle, which can then be adjusted as required.

Initially, the picture is automatically cropped to remove excess background color.

*Sometimes, the automatic crop area may not appear to remove as much background color as possible. This can happen when the background color appears to be a plain color, such as white, but actually has minor variations that are not immediately visible. For example, this often happens with the JPEG-JFIF Compliant (\*.jpg, .jif, .jpeg) picture format.*

## Select All and Automatic

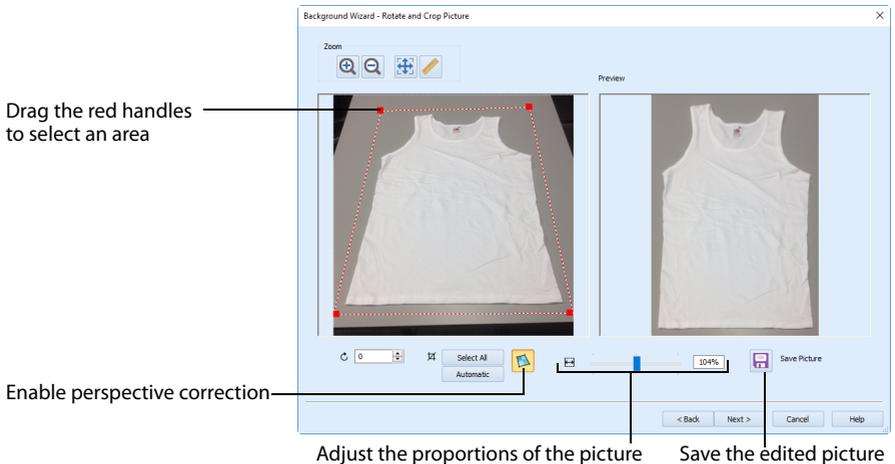
Use Select All to select the whole of the picture. Use Automatic to set the crop lines back to the default position for the current picture.

## Rotate and Crop a Picture

- 1 Drag the rotational slider to rotate the picture to the desired angle. Alternatively, enter a number in the rotation angle number box, or use the arrows to increase or decrease the angle of rotation.
- 2 Drag the blue handles on the crop area boundary line to select the desired part of the picture. *Hold the Ctrl key while dragging to resize the rectangle proportionally. Hold the Shift key while dragging to resize the rectangle without moving its center.*
- 3 Drag anywhere inside the crop box to move the crop box. *If you need to expand a crop box again, make sure it is not touching the edge of the frame, as this will stop it expanding.*
- 4 If desired, click Automatic to select the crop lines automatically, or click Select All to use the whole of the picture.

## Perspective Correction

To remove the effects of perspective in a picture, or to correct skew, select Perspective Correction . When using Perspective Correction, the crop handles are red.



Move the red handles so that the crop lines frame the picture. Use the Zoom tools to view the outline of the picture more clearly.

*When taking a picture, hold the phone or camera so as to avoid reflected light and shadow on your subject.*

## Stretch Picture

Drag the Stretch Picture  slider to make the picture in the Preview wider or narrower.

## Save Picture

Use Save Picture  to save your edited picture.

## Change the Perspective in a Picture

- 1 In the Rotate and Crop Picture page, ensure that Perspective Correction  is selected.
- 2 Move the pointer over one of the red crop handles in the corner. The pointer changes to a diagonal double-headed arrow .

- 3 Move the red corner handles so that the crop lines frame the picture. The angle of the adjoining crop lines changes.  
A version of the picture with the perspective corrected appears in the Preview area.  
*When taking a photo for a background, hold the phone or camera so as to avoid reflected light and shadow on your subject.*
- 4 Drag the Stretch Picture  slider to correct the proportions of the picture.
- 5 If desired, Save  the edited picture.

## Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the picture.

*The fabric preview on the right is not affected by zoom.*

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the picture to the preview area.

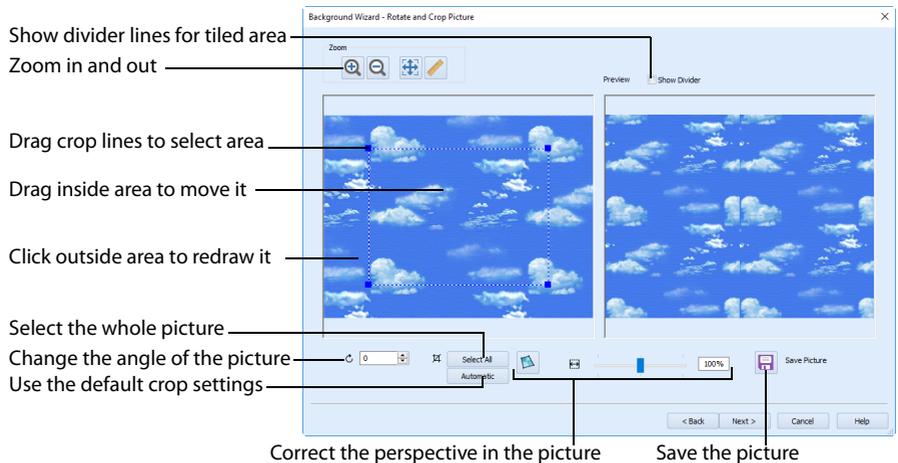
Click Real Size  to view the picture at its real size in pixels. This means that one pixel of the picture uses one pixel of the screen.

# Rotate and Crop Picture for Fabric

Use the Rotate and Crop Picture page to select the section of the picture that is to be used to create the background, and rotate the picture. If required, adjust the crop lines to select the desired part of the picture.

- To adjust the crop area, position the mouse over the crop boundary until a double-headed arrow  $\leftrightarrow$  appears, then click and drag to move the boundary line.
- To move the crop area, position the mouse inside the crop boundary until a four-headed arrow  $\boxplus$  appears, then click and drag to move the whole rectangle.
- To redraw the crop area, click and drag outside the crop boundary to draw a new rectangle, which can then be adjusted as required.

Initially, about half the area of the picture is selected from the middle of the picture, as shown by the dashed box in the picture on the left. The preview on the right shows four copies of the selected fabric area tiled together.



The tiled preview will change dynamically as you change the crop area.

To see where the four sections of the background are joined, select the Show Divider option. Dashed lines show where the tiled sections will be joined. This is useful for patterned fabric, to ensure the pattern repeats as desired.

When the desired area is selected, click Next.

## Rotate

Rotate  $\curvearrowright$  the picture from 0 to 359 degrees. Adjust the picture angle as desired. This is often necessary with scanned pictures.

Enter the desired Rotation angle  $\curvearrowright$  or use the up/down arrows to change the angle. The preview will show the effect.



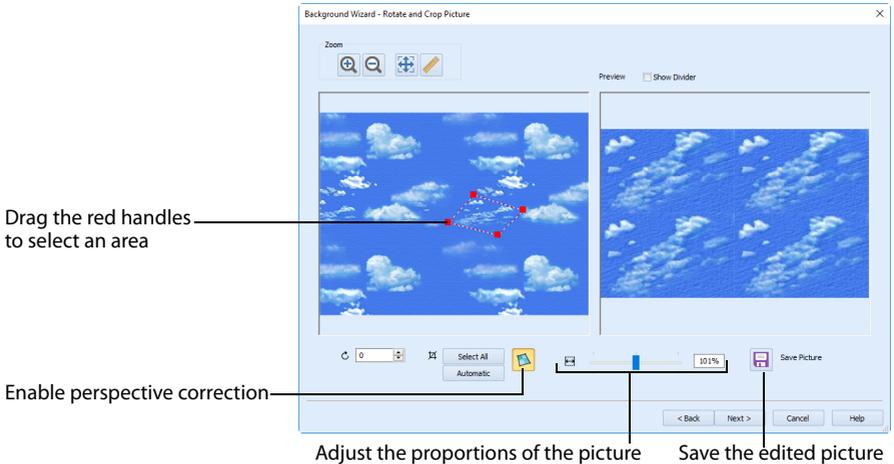
When the picture is rotated between the 90 degree steps, the picture is made larger and white background is added.

## Select All and Automatic

Use Select All to select the whole of the picture. Use Automatic to set the crop lines back to the default position for the current picture.

## Perspective Correction

To remove the effects of perspective in a picture, or to correct skew, select Perspective Correction . When using Perspective Correction, the crop handles are red.



Move the red handles so that the crop lines frame the picture. Use the Zoom tools to view the outline of the picture more clearly. Drag the Stretch Picture  slider to make the picture in the Preview wider or narrower. Use Save Picture  to save your edited picture.

## Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the picture.

*The fabric preview on the right is not affected by zoom.*

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

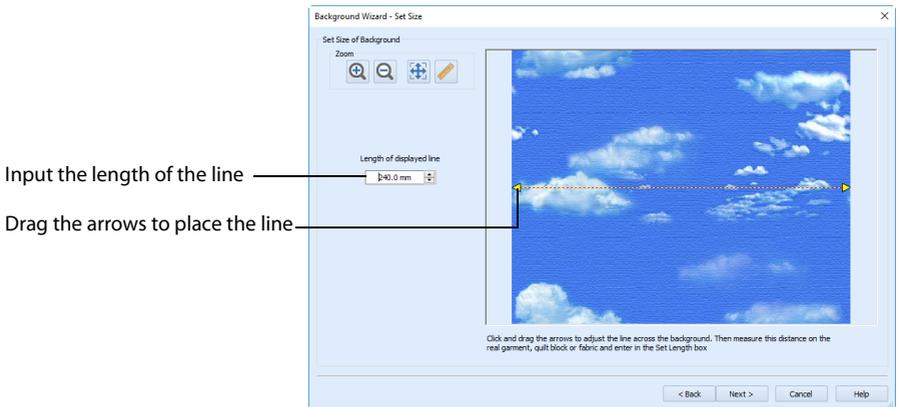
Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the picture to the preview area.

Click Real Size  to view the picture at its real size in pixels. This means that one pixel of the picture uses one pixel of the screen.

## Set Size

Use Set Size to enter a real measurement of the garment, quilt block or fabric so that it will be displayed at real size when it is used as the background or appliqué fabric. Fabric is measured differently than garments and quilt blocks.



The cropped section of fabric is shown in the preview. Click and drag the arrows at either end of the yellow line to place a line across the picture. This should match a measurement you have made across the same area of the real fabric.

Then enter the length of the line in the 'Length of displayed line' text box, or use the up/down arrows.

## Garments and Quilt Blocks

For garments and quilt blocks, the length can be from 1mm to 2000mm.

## Fabric

For fabric, the length can be from 1mm to 300mm. However, the fabric tile must not be larger than 300mm x 300mm, so if the line does not span the whole picture it must be shorter than 300mm.

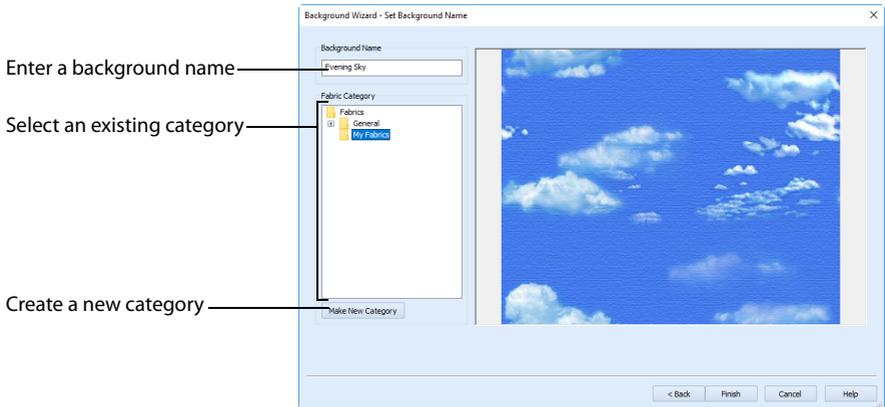
*If the length would make the fabric tile larger than 300mm in either dimension, a message will appear. Repeat the process so that the tile is smaller.*

Click OK and the measurement you entered will be shown next to the picture. Check that the line and the length matches the measurement you made of the real fabric. If desired, click and drag the arrows to place a new line and re-enter the line length.

When the line is measured correctly, click Next.

# Set Background Name

Use Set Background Name to save the finished background in a category and give it a name. The categories are the folder names you will see when browsing for existing backgrounds. Garment, quilt block or fabric categories are set separately.



## Background Name

If you started with an existing picture, the picture name will be shown by default as the name for the new background. If you scanned a new picture, it will not have a name so you will need to enter a name.

## Garment, Quilt Block or Fabric Category

There are three different groups of folders, one each for Garments, Quilt Blocks and Fabrics.

### Garments

- The default category is My Garments. To choose a different category, browse among the folders in Garments.

### Quilt Blocks

- The default category is My Quilt Blocks. To choose a different category, browse among the folders in Quilt Blocks.

### Fabrics

- The default category is My Fabrics. To choose a different category, browse among the folders in Fabrics.

Select from existing categories, or click Make New Category to provide the name of a new category.

## Make New Category

To make a new category, click Make New Category, and enter a new folder name. Click OK to create the category.

*The new category will be created as a subfolder for the currently selected type.*

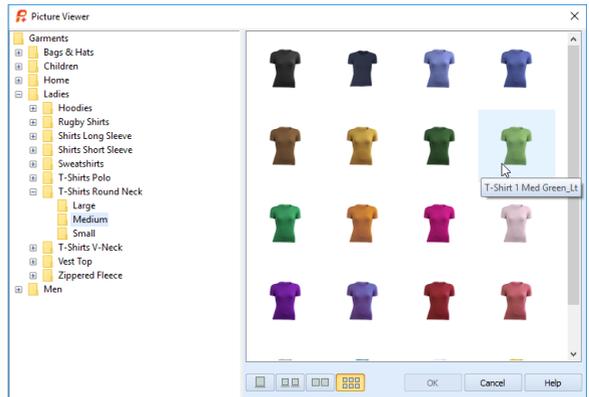
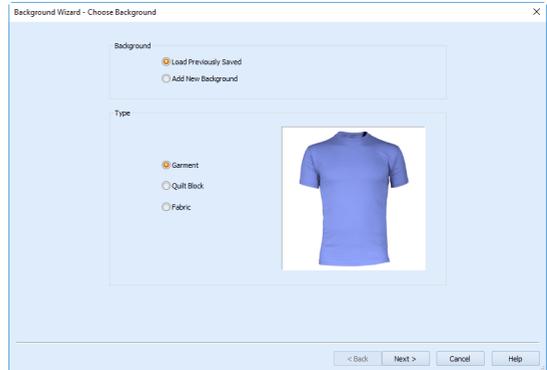
When make a new category, it will be available as a Fabric Category next time you use the Background Wizard.

## Finish

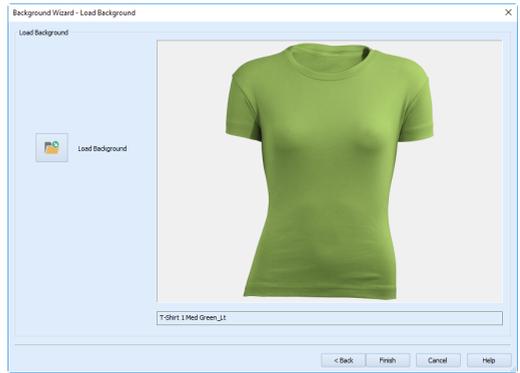
Click Finish to save the new background with the specified name in the specified Category and close the Background Wizard. The selected or new background will be displayed in the work area.

## Load a Garment in the Background Wizard

- 1 If required, click File, New Window, then click the View tab.
- 2 Click Change Hoop  and in the Hoop Selection dialog box select 260mm x 200mm - Universal Large Hoop 3.
- 3 Set Orientation to Natural and click OK.
- 4 Click Background Wizard . The Choose Background page of the Background Wizard appears. *The Background Wizard is only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*
- 5 Ensure the setting for Background is Load Previously Saved and for Type is Garment.
- 6 Click Next. The Load Background page of the Background Wizard will appear.
- 7 Click Load Background .
- 8 In the Picture Viewer dialog box, browse to the folder Garments\Ladies\T-Shirts Round Neck\Medium, and all the garments in the folder will be shown. *In some views, if you position the arrow pointer over a thumbnail without clicking, the name of the garment will be shown. The garment is called 'T-Shirt 1 Med Green\_Lt'.*
- 9 Click the light green t-shirt to highlight it.

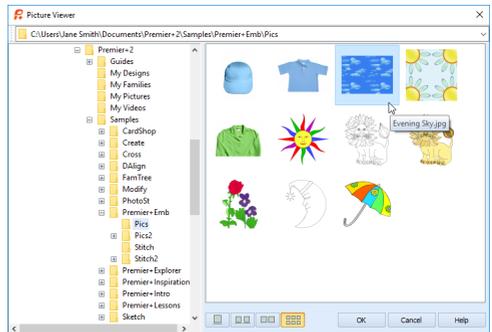


- 10 Click OK to load the t-shirt in the Load Background page of the wizard.
- 11 Click Finish and the t-shirt will be shown in the work area.
- 12 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Insert .
- 13 Browse to the folder Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Stitch.
- 14 Scroll down to the embroidery 'Sunshine Applique Large with Lettering'.
- 15 Click to highlight the embroidery, then click Open to load it into the work area on the t-shirt.
- 16 Click Move and Rotate Background .
- 17 Click and drag the background so that the embroidery is at the top of the t-shirt.
- 18 Click Realistic 3D  to view the embroidery on the t-shirt.

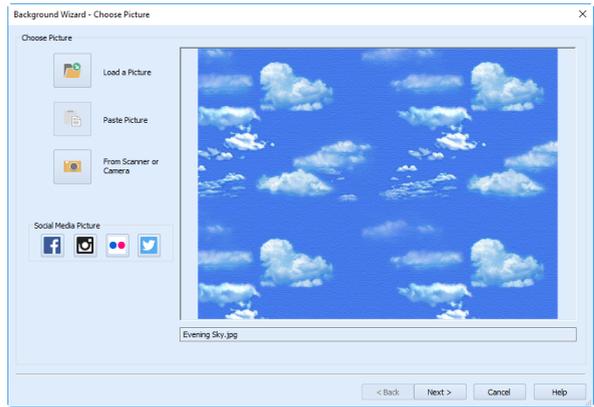


## Make a New Fabric with the Background Wizard

- 1 Click the View tab.
- 2 Click Background Wizard . The Choose Background page of the Background Wizard appears. *The Background Wizard is only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*
- 3 Select Add New Background under Background, and Fabric under Type.
- 4 Click Next and the Choose Picture page will appear.
- 5 Click Load a Picture  and the Picture Viewer will appear.
- 6 In the Picture Viewer browse to the folder Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2 Emb\Pics.



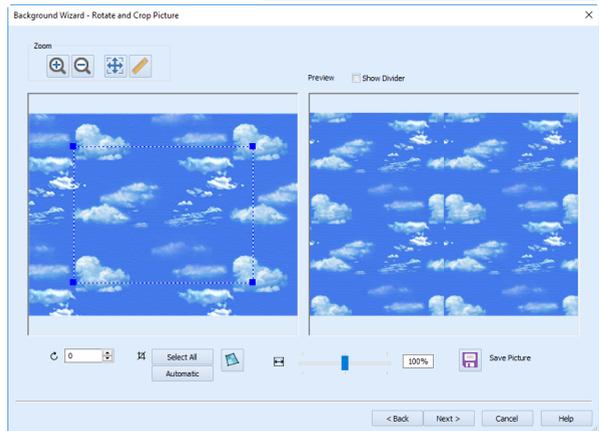
- 7 Click the picture of the sky with clouds to highlight it.
- 8 Click OK to load the picture into the Choose Picture page. The picture 'Evening Sky.jpg' is loaded onto the Choose Picture page, with its name shown below the preview area.
- 9 Click Next and the Rotate and Crop Picture page will appear.
- 10 The angle does not need to be changed, so do not rotate the picture.



- 11 The picture on the left has a dashed outline around the area of the picture that will be cropped. Move the mouse over the handle at the bottom left of the dashed crop box so that the pointer becomes a double-headed arrow.
- 12 Click and drag the handle a little to the right and notice that the preview to the right changes as you move the crop line. Move the handle until the blue squares on the left of the crop box are each in the center of a cloud.



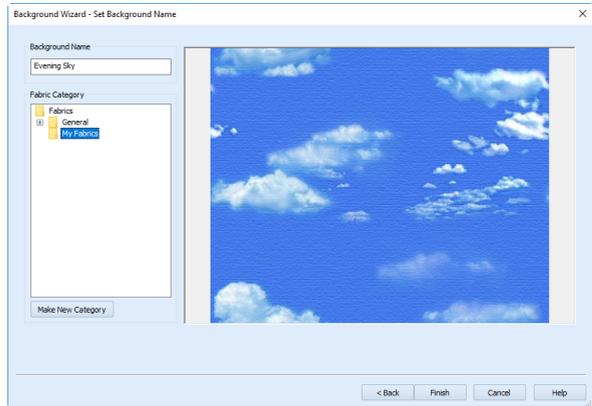
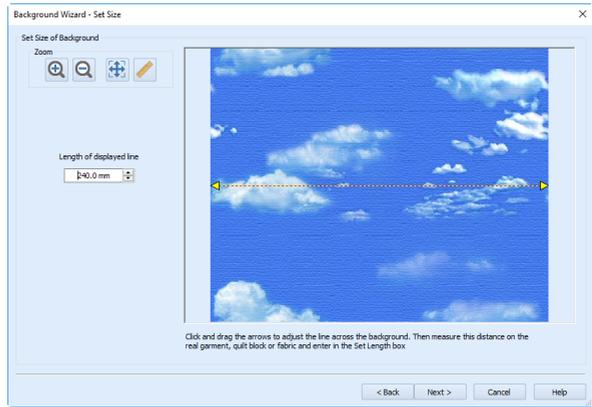
- 13 Also click and drag the top handles of the crop box down a little. The large clouds in the right-hand preview should be joined together as shown.
- 14 When you are happy that the clouds in the right-hand preview look correct, click Next. The Set Size page will appear, which is used to set a real-world size for the background.



- 15 Click and drag to adjust the arrows on the yellow measuring bar, so the line goes from the left edge of the background picture across to the right edge of the background picture. In the 'Length of displayed line' text box enter 240. The measurement and the measurement line are both shown.

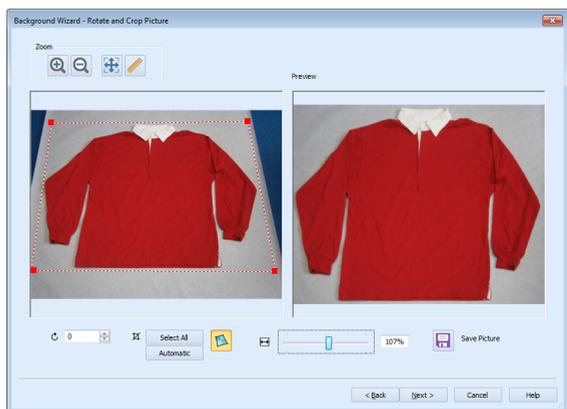
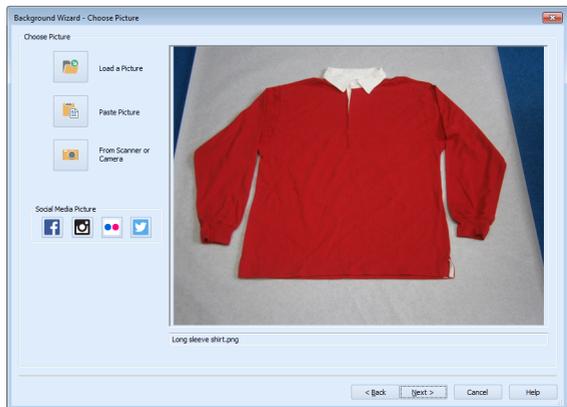
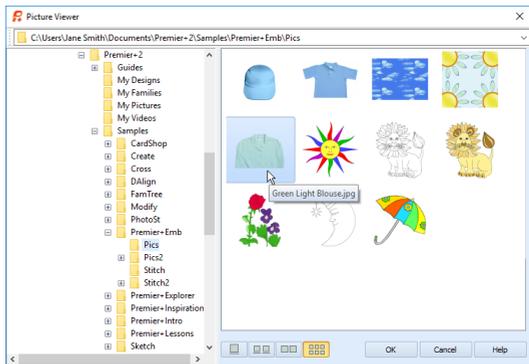
*Notice that if you position the arrow pointer over the box the length is shown in inches.*

- 16 Click Next and the Set Background Name page will appear.
- 17 In the Fabric Category box, ensure My Fabrics is the selected category.
- 18 Leave the Background Name as 'Evening Sky', which is the same as the picture you loaded.
- 19 Click Finish. Your new background is loaded into the work area.



## Create a new Garment in the Background Wizard

- 1 Click the View tab.
- 2 Click Background Wizard . The Choose Background page of the Background Wizard appears. *The Background Wizard is only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*
- 3 Select Add New Background under Background, and Garment under Type.
- 4 Click Next and the Choose Picture page will appear.
- 5 Click Load a Picture  and the Picture Viewer will appear.
- 6 In the Picture Viewer browse to the folder Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Pics.
- 7 Click the picture of the red long sleeve shirt to highlight it.
- 8 Click OK to load the picture into the Choose Picture page. The picture 'Long sleeve shirt.png' is loaded onto the Choose Picture page, with its name shown below the preview area.
- 9 Click Next and the Rotate and Crop Picture page will appear.
- 10 The angle does not need to be changed, so do not rotate the picture.
- 11 Click Perspective Correction  to remove the effects of perspective in this picture. The crop handles become red.
- 12 The picture on the left has a dashed outline around the area of the picture that will be cropped. Move the mouse over the handle at the bottom right of the dashed crop box so that the pointer becomes a double-headed arrow.
- 13 Drag both of the two bottom red handles so that the bottom crop line runs parallel to the bottom of the shirt. .  
*When you take a picture for a garment, hold the phone or camera so as to avoid reflected light and shadow on your subject.*
- 14 Drag the red handles at the top to remove the effects of perspective in the picture of the shirt in the Preview.
- 15 Use the Stretch Picture  slider to adjust the width of the picture in the Preview.
- 16 When you are happy with the appearance of the shirt in the Preview, click Next. The Set Size page appears, to set a size for the garment.



17 Click and drag to adjust the arrows on the yellow measuring bar, so the line goes from the left edge of the body of the shirt to the right edge.

18 In the 'Length of displayed line' text box enter 550mm. The measurement and the measurement line are both shown. *Notice that if you position the arrow pointer over the box the length is shown in inches.*

19 Click Next and the Set Background Name page will appear.

20 Click Make New Category, then enter the name "My Garments" for your new garment category.

21 Click OK.

22 In the Garment Category box, ensure that My Garments is the selected category.

23 Leave the Background Name as 'Long sleeve shirt', which is the same as the picture you loaded.

24 Click Finish. Your new background is loaded into the work area.

25 Drag the slider on the Zoom Bar at the bottom of the screen to the left so that you can see the whole shirt.

26 Click Move and Rotate Background .

27 Click and drag the background so that the hoop is at the top right of the shirt.

28 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Insert .

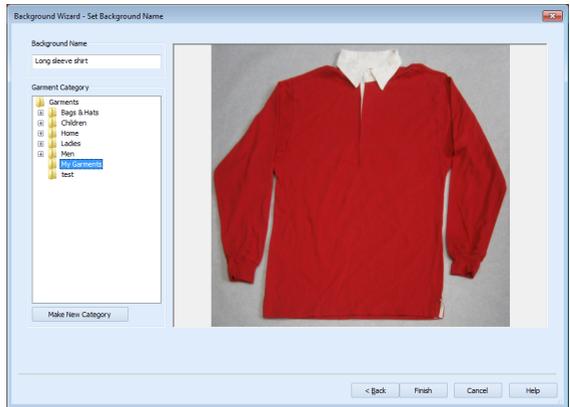
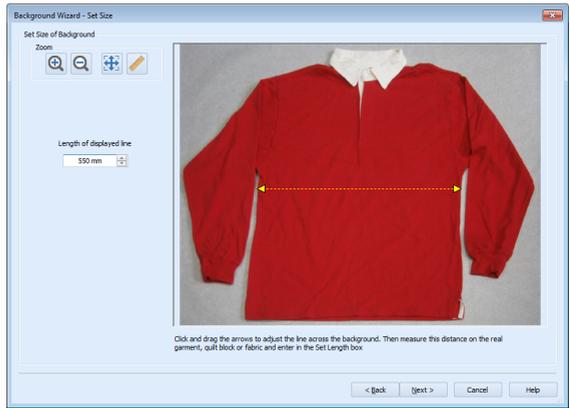
29 Browse to the folder Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Stitch.

30 Scroll down to the embroidery 'Champion Dad'. *Alternatively, use the embroidery that you created in "Create a Framed Badge: Champion Dad" on page 417.*

31 Click to highlight the embroidery, then click Open to load it into the work area on the shirt.

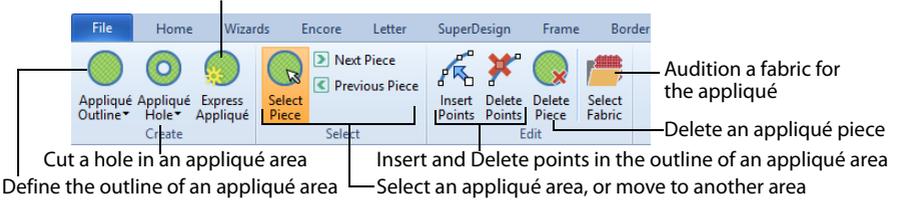
32 Drag the slider on the Zoom Bar at the bottom of the screen to the left again so that you can see most of the shirt.

33 Click Realistic 3D  to view the embroidery on the shirt.



## View and Adjust Appliqué Pieces

Find appliqué areas in an embroidery



Use the appliqué features to view and adjust appliqué pieces. The appliqué fabric is shown under the embroidery, as it would appear when stitched out. An unlimited number of appliqué areas may be added to the work area.

*The Appliqué tab is only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*

*The appliqué features show how a fabric would be placed. They do not alter the stitches. To create new appliqué designs, or add a border, use the ExpressDesign Wizard or PREMIER+™ 2 Create. To add extra stitches and stop commands to an existing embroidery, use the Modify tab or PREMIER+™ 2 Modify. To place appliqué fabrics at a precise command it may be easier to navigate through the design in PREMIER+™ 2 Modify.*

PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery includes many Fonts, SuperDesigns™ and Frames with appliqué fabric, stitches and Stop Commands. The fabric and some stitch types may be adjusted using the Context menu. To change the fabric pattern position, create holes or alter the outline, you must Fix as Stitches before using the features on the Appliqué tab.

*Any fabric background may be used as appliqué, and any number of different appliqué fabrics may be used, as desired.*

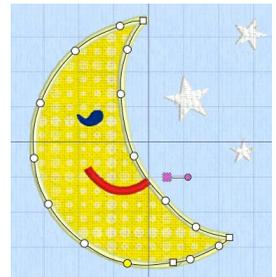
*Ensure that the correct design is selected before adding appliqué. Use the Tab key to step through the embroideries.*

## Appliqué Piece

Use the Appliqué Piece functions to add appliqué fabric to an existing design with appliqué areas, and to adjust appliqué areas within a design.

## Change the Fabric in an Appliqué Embroidery

- 1 Click Change Hoop . From the Universal Hoop Group, set the Hoop Size to 100mm x 100mm - Universal Square Hoop 1. Click OK.
- 2 Click File, New to open a new window.
- 3 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Insert .
- 4 In the folder Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Stitch load the embroidery 'Night Time\_applique'.
- 5 Click the Appliqué tab.
- 6 Click Next Piece . The points for the appliqué area for the moon are highlighted.  
*All of the appliqué functions are now available.*
- 7 Click and drag the square zigzag fabric handle . The fabric for the moon moves.



Use the fabric handle to move the origin point (center of design) of a tiled fabric.

This handle  is only available for fabric tiles; you cannot rotate quick Appliqué or Pictures.

- 8 Click and drag the round handle. The fabric for the moon rotates.  
*The fabric rotates around the fabric handle (the origin point of the fabric tile).*
- 9 Click Select Fabric  or choose that option in the Context menu. The Appliqué Selection dialog box opens.
- 10 To change the fabric, click Fabric in Appliqué Type, then click Load Previously Saved Fabric  and choose another fabric.
- 11 Click OK to close the Appliqué Selection dialog box.

*If there is more than one appliqué fabric in the design, click Next Piece  to view the second fabric*

## Appliqué Outline

Use the Appliqué Outline  functions to draw or place points to define a line of any shape to create an appliqué outline.

## Freehand Tablet Appliqué Outline

Use Freehand Tablet Appliqué Outline  to draw a line of any shape to create an appliqué outline.

Select a Color Command  or Stop Command  to start the appliqué piece from, then draw the outline. (When hovering over a Color Command you will see the stitching that follows it.) Release the mouse button to complete the line. Right-click, and the Appliqué Selection dialog box opens. Select a fabric, then click OK to place the Appliqué Piece.

*Hold down Ctrl to place a corner point when creating or editing a line.*

### Shortcuts

- Create, Appliqué Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, A, A, T

## Freehand Point Appliqué Outline

Use Freehand Point Appliqué Outline  to place points to define a line of any shape to create an appliqué outline.

Select a Color Command  or Stop Command  to start the appliqué piece from, then place points to draw the outline. (When hovering over a Color Command you will see the stitching that follows it.) Right-click to finish, and the Appliqué Selection dialog box opens. Select a fabric, then click OK to place the Appliqué Piece.

*Hold down Ctrl to place a corner point when creating or editing a line.*

### Shortcuts

- Create, Appliqué Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, A, A, P

## Appliqué Hole

Use the Appliqué Hole  functions to draw or place points to define a line of any shape to create a hole within the selected appliqué area. Select the desired Appliqué Piece so its points are displayed, then draw the hole.

## Freehand Tablet Appliqué Hole

Use Freehand Tablet Appliqué Hole  to draw a line of any shape to create a hole within the selected appliqué area.

Select the desired Appliqué Piece so its points are displayed, then draw a line to form the hole. Release the mouse button to complete the line. Right-click, and any appliqué fabric is removed from the hole.

*Hold down Ctrl to place a corner point when creating or editing a line. Click Delete to remove the last-placed point.*

### Shortcuts

- Create, Appliqué Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, A, H, T

## Freehand Point Appliqué Hole

Use Freehand Point Appliqué Hole  to place points to define a line of any shape to create a hole within the selected appliqué area.

Select the desired Appliqué Piece so its points are displayed, then place points to draw a hole. Right-click, and any appliqué fabric is removed from the hole.

*Hold down Ctrl to place a corner point when creating or editing a line. Click Delete to remove the last-placed point.*

### Shortcuts

- Create, Appliqué Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, A, H, P

## Express Appliqué

Use Express Appliqué  to automatically find appliqué stitches within an existing embroidery, and apply an appliqué fabric to them.

*Multiple appliqué areas can be detected in the same design. To add appliqué to part of a project, select the desired embroidery before using Express Appliqué.*

In the Appliqué window, select an appliqué embroidery with no fabric, click Express Appliqué , then add a fabric in the Appliqué Selection dialog box. Optionally, adjust the overlap margin with Appliqué Piece Margin.

*Express Appliqué detects the pattern of Stop and Color Change Commands used with appliqué placement stitches, and inserts appliqué fabric in that area. If an appliqué area is not detected automatically, use Freehand Tablet Appliqué Outline or Freehand Point Appliqué Outline to define it.*

### Shortcuts

- Create, Appliqué Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, A, Q

## Add Appliqué to a Sun Embroidery

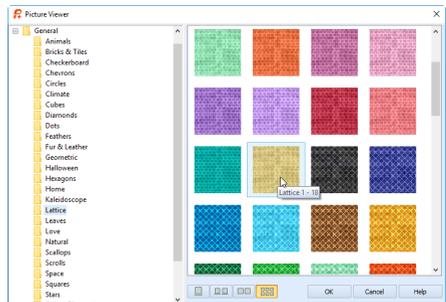
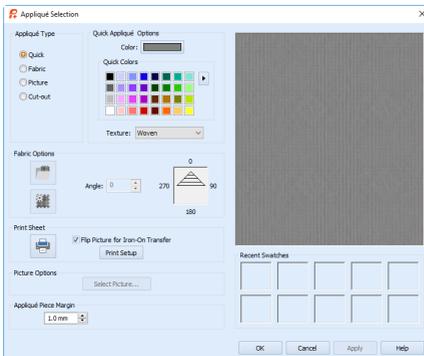
- 1 Click File, Open  to open an embroidery in a new window.
- 2 Browse to the folder Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Stitch and load the embroidery 'Sunshine Applique Large with Lettering'.

The embroidery is loaded as a multiple selection with the hoop included. If you use Insert , the initial hoop is retained, and the embroideries are inserted as a group.

- 3 Click the View tab, and use the Background Wizard  to load Garments\Ladies\T-Shirts Round Neck\Medium\T-shirt 1 Med Green\_Lt. Then use Move and Rotate Background  to move the T-shirt downwards.

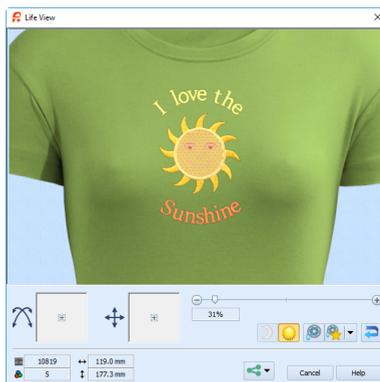


- 4 Click the Appliqué tab.
- 5 Click Express Appliqué . The Appliqué Selection dialog box opens so you can choose a fabric for your appliqué. *Express Appliqué detects the pattern of Stop and Color Change Commands used by appliqué placement stitches and inserts appliqué fabric in that area.*
- 6 In Appliqué Type, click Fabric.
- 7 Click Load Previously Saved Fabric  to load a fabric in the Picture Viewer.



- 8 Browse to the folder General\Lattice.
- 9 Click the fabric Lattice 1 - 18, then click OK. The Picture Viewer will close and the fabric will be shown in the Appliqué Selection dialog box. *If desired, adjust the Appliqué Piece Margin.*

- 10 Click OK to close the Appliqué Selection dialog box. The fabric is shown under the sun's face, as if you had stitched it down as an appliqué.
- 11 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Life View .
- 12 Move the Zoom Bar slider to the left so that you can see the t-shirt as well as the embroidery.  
*Note that the threads for the sun's face and lettering are white.*
- 13 Click Solar Reactive . The white threads turn yellow and orange.
- 14 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Save As  and save the embroidery with the appliqué and background as 'Sunshine Applique Large with Lettering and Background'.  
*The sun and lettering will be stored separately within this multipart embroidery, making further adjustment easier.*



## Select Piece

Use Select Piece  to select an Appliqué Piece to alter its shape and preview or adjust its fabric.

Click Select Piece , and then click the desired Appliqué Piece.

### Shortcuts

- Select, Appliqué Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, A, T

## Next Piece

Use Next Piece  to select the next Appliqué Piece in the stitchout order.

*Next Piece will select an appliqué piece even if no appliqué piece is currently selected.*

### Shortcuts

- Select, Appliqué Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, A, N

## Previous Piece

Use Previous Piece  to select the previous Appliqué Piece in the stitchout order.

*Previous Piece will select an appliqué piece even if no appliqué piece is currently selected.*

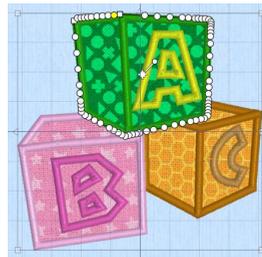
### Shortcuts

- Select, Appliqué Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, A, P

## Select Appliqué Pieces

- 1 Click Change Hoop . From the Universal Hoop Group, set the Hoop Size to 100mm x 100mm - Universal Square Hoop 1. Click OK.
- 2 Click File, New  to open a new window.
- 3 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Insert .
- 4 In the folder Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Stitch load the embroidery 'Blocks\_fixed'.

- 5 Click the Appliqué tab.  
Note that the Select Piece icon  is available. This indicates that there is at least one appliqué piece in the embroidery.
- 6 Click Select Piece , then click the A block. The points outlining the appliqué appear.
- 7 Click and drag one of the points to change the shape of the appliqué. Note that you can change the shape of the appliqué area, but this does not affect the satin border.
- 8 Click Undo  to return to the original shape.  
You can also use the Fabric Handle  to change the position and rotation of the fabric.
- 9 Click Next Piece . The letter C block is now selected.
- 10 Click Previous Piece  twice. First the A and then the B are selected.
- 11 Click Delete Piece . The appliqué fabric for the B block is removed, leaving the border lines for the brick.



## Insert Points

Use Insert Points  to add new points into the currently selected Appliqué Piece.

Select the desired appliqué piece, then click Insert Points . The pointer changes to the plus pointer . Click to add a point to the outline of the selected area. Right-click to finish adding points.

Hold down Ctrl to place a straight line or corner point. Click Undo  to remove the new point.

### Shortcuts

- Edit, Appliqué Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, A, I

## Delete Points

Use Delete Points  to delete points from the currently selected Appliqué Piece.

Select the desired appliqué piece, then click Delete Points . The pointer changes to the minus pointer . Click to remove a point from the outline of the selected area. Right-click to finish deleting points.

Click Undo  to replace a deleted point.

### Shortcuts

- Edit, Appliqué Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, A, D

## Delete Piece

Use Delete Piece  to delete the currently selected Appliqué Piece with its outline.

Select the desired appliqué piece, then click Delete Piece . The appliqué piece is removed from the design.

### Shortcuts

- Edit, Appliqué Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, A, X

## Select Fabric

Use Select Fabric  to audition a fabric for the selected appliqué piece in the Appliqué Selection dialog box.

Select the desired appliqué piece, then click Select Fabric  and the Appliqué Selection dialog box appears. See “Appliqué Selection” on page 185.

### Shortcuts

- Edit, Appliqué Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, A, F

## Add Appliqué to a Sun Embroidery

- 1 Click File, Open  to open an embroidery in a new window.
- 2 Browse to the folder Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Stitch and load the embroidery 'Sunshine Applique Large with Lettering'.

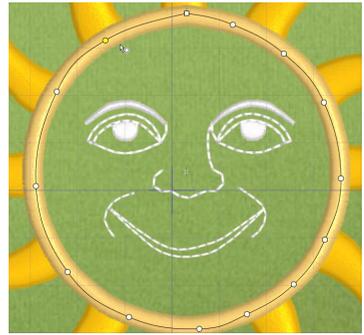
*The embroidery is loaded as a multiple selection with the hoop included. If you use Insert , the initial hoop is retained, and the embroideries are inserted as a group.*

- 3 Click the View tab, and use the Background Wizard  to load Garments\Ladies\T-Shirts Round Neck\Medium\T-shirt 1 Med Green\_Lt. Then use Move and Rotate Background  to move the T-shirt downwards.



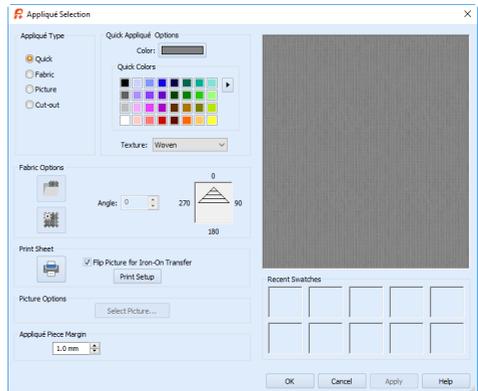
- 4 Click the Appliqué tab.
- 5 Click Zoom To Rectangle , then click and drag to zoom in on the sun's face.

- 6 Click Appliqué Outline  and in the drop-down menu select Freehand Point Appliqué Outline. *Appliqué is added by placing a series of points to mark the edge of the area where you want to show the appliqué fabric.*
- 7 Select the color command  to the left of the grid line. As you hover over it, the stitches of the satin ring are highlighted. This will be a good location for the fabric. *The red markers are Stop Command markers , and the blue markers are Color Change  markers.*
- 8 Click to place the first point of the area at the top point of the sun's face. A yellow round node appears, and the pointer changes to the Freehand Point pointer .
- 9 Click to place a second point, down and to the right of the first point, following the satin line around the sun's face. *As you place points a line is drawn. Make sure that this line is on the satin line, as this marks where the edge of your appliqué will be.*
- 10 Click to place a third point further around the circle. *As you click the third point on the line, the line becomes closed (it becomes a loop). As you place more points the line adjusts itself.*

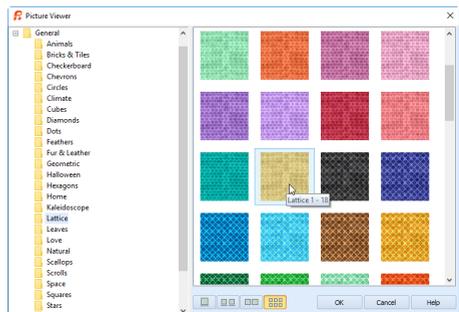


- 11 Move the pointer over one of the nodes on the line. The pointer changes to the Move Node pointer . Adjust the node as desired. *When the Move Node pointer is active you can adjust existing nodes. If you click while the Freehand Point pointer  is active, another point will be added to the line.*
- 12 Place points to complete the circle.
- 13 Right-click to finish marking out your appliqué area. The Appliqué Selection dialog box will appear, so you can choose a fabric for your appliqué. *If you made a mistake while placing the appliqué line, click Cancel in the Appliqué Selection dialog box without choosing a fabric and start again.*

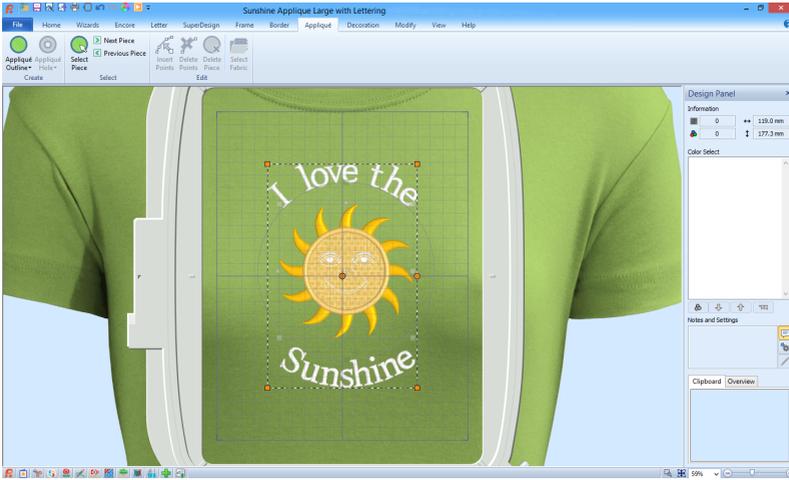
- 14 In Appliqué Type, click Fabric. 
- 15 Click Load Previously Saved Fabric  to load a fabric in the Picture Viewer.



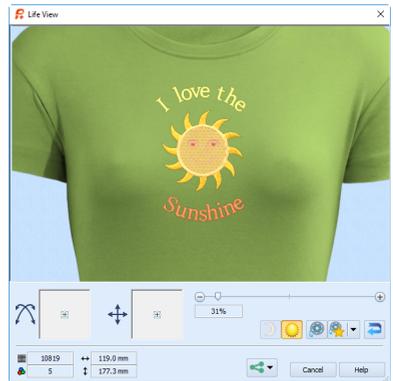
- 16 Browse to the folder General\Lattice.
- 17 Click the fabric Lattice 1 - 18, then click OK. The Picture Viewer will close and the fabric will be shown in the Appliqué Selection dialog box.
- 18 Click OK to close the Appliqué Selection dialog box. The fabric is shown under the sun's face, as if you had stitched it down as an appliqué. *If the fabric is on top of the embroidery, the wrong command marker, or the wrong embroidery was selected. Undo the appliqué and try again.*



## 19 Click Zoom To Fit .



- 20 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Life View .
- 21 Move the Zoom Bar slider to the left so that you can see the t-shirt as well as the embroidery.  
*Note that the threads for the sun's face and lettering are white.*
- 22 Click Solar Reactive . The white threads turn yellow and orange.
- 23 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Save As  and save the embroidery with the appliqué and background as 'Sunshine Applique Large with Lettering and Background'.  
*The sun and lettering will be stored separately within this multipart embroidery, making further adjustment easier.*

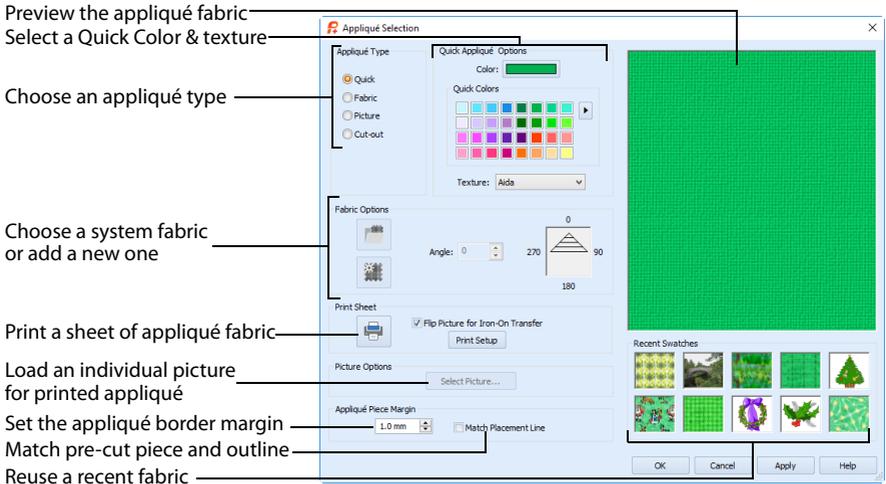


# Appliqué Selection

Use the Appliqué Selection dialog box to change and add appliqué fabrics.

*You can only change the pattern position of the appliqué pieces for fixed embroideries. To change the appliqué fabric pattern position for lettering, SuperDesigns and Frames, fix as an embroidery. To change the fabric or angle only, or the appliqué piece margin, use the context menu.*

Use the Appliqué Selection dialog box to select a fabric or picture to use for appliqué. Click OK to use the selected appliqué fabric.



## Appliqué Type

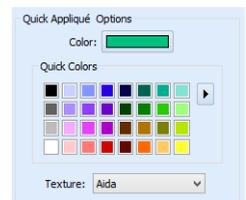
Choose an appliqué type (or simply select one of the recently used swatches). Select from:

- **Quick**  
Select a color and texture for your fabric. See “Quick Appliqué Options” on page 185.
- **Fabric**  
Select a background fabric, or add a new background fabric from a picture. Set the angle for the fabric. See “Fabric Options” on page 186.
- **Picture**  
Create an individual non-tiling appliqué from a picture. For instance, use a photo for a printed appliqué memory piece. See “Picture Options” on page 186.
- **Cut-out**  
Create an appliqué placement line as a guide to where the fabric should be cut to form a hole; for example, for reverse appliqué.

## Quick Appliqué Options

*The Quick Appliqué Options are available when Quick is selected in Appliqué Type. In the PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont Wizard only the Quick Appliqué options are available.*

Select a color and texture for your fabric.



## Color

Click the color sample to change the color in the Colors dialog box. See “Colors Dialog Box” on page 55.

## Quick Colors

Click one of the Quick Colors to select a color for the fabric. Use the drop-down menu to choose a different Quick Colors theme, or to create your own theme. See “Quick Color Themes” on page 52.

## Texture

Select the texture to use for the fabric. Click on the down arrow and choose the desired fabric type.

## Fabric Options

*The Fabric Options are available when Fabric is selected in Appliqué Type.*



### Load Previously Saved Fabric

Use Load Previously Saved Fabric  to load a sample fabric, or a fabric from My Fabrics, in the Background Picture Viewer. See “Background Picture Viewer” on page 188.

### Add New Background Fabric

Use Add New Background Fabric  to create a new fabric background in the Background Wizard. See “Background Wizard” on page 189.

## Angle

Use Angle to change the angle at which the pattern will be displayed.

*You may also change the angle and position of the fabric pattern directly by selecting the appliqué piece in the work area.*

Enter an Angle from 0 to 359 degrees. The initial setting is 0. Alter the Angle by entering a number in the box, or use the up and down arrows to change the number. Changes in Angle are visible in the preview pane.

## Print Sheet

Print a sheet of appliqué fabric from the selected Quick Appliqué or Fabric pattern. Flip the picture for an iron-on transfer, and select a printer and paper size in the Print Setup dialog box. See “Print Setup” on page 480.

## Picture Options

*The Picture Options are available when Picture is selected in Appliqué Type.*

Click Select Picture to create a picture background in the Load Picture Wizard. See “Load Picture Wizard” on page 195.

## Fabric Preview

The chosen fabric is previewed on the right.

## Recent Swatches

Select a recently used fabric to use again.

## Appliqué Piece Margin

Set the margin for appliqué placement relative to the drawn border shape from -10mm to 10mm. The initial value is 1.0mm.

*Use a positive value when trimming the appliqué fabric before the border is stitched, for example with Standard Appliqué and Pre-placed Appliqué. A negative value is recommended for cut-out and reverse appliqué.*

*Appliqué Piece Margin is only available when adjusting appliqué lettering, SuperDesigns and Frames using the Stitch Types options or context menu.*

*Use the Appliqué Piece Margin and Match Placement Line settings in Preferences to override the initial appliqué placement settings for lettering, SuperDesigns, Frames and Flourishes. See "Appliqué Piece Margin" on page 482.*

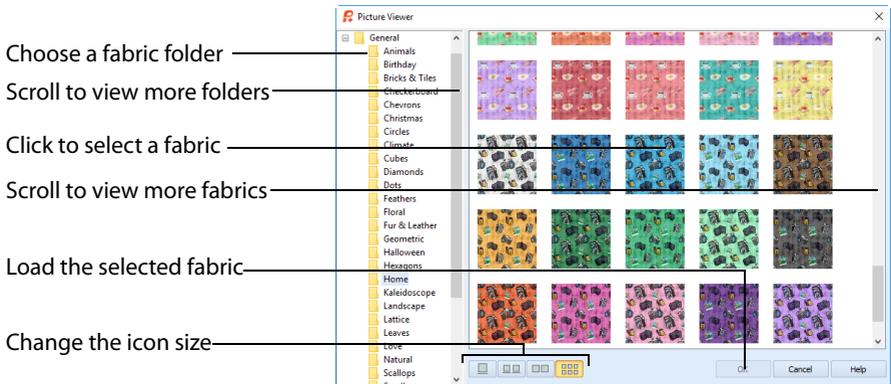
## Match Placement Line

Adjust the position of the first running stitch line for either Standard Appliqué or Pre-cut Piece so that it matches the outline of the appliqué piece after the Appliqué Piece Margin has been applied.

*This may be useful for precise positioning of appliqué pieces that have been pre-cut with an automated cutter, to ensure the placement line is visible.*

# Background Picture Viewer

Use the Picture Viewer to select a fabric from the system fabrics, or from the My Fabrics folder with fabric backgrounds you have added.



To open the Picture Viewer, in the Appliqué Selection dialog box select Fabric, then click Load Previously Saved Fabric .

Open a folder, and scroll down and click a fabric to select it. Click OK to load the fabric in the Appliqué Selection dialog box.

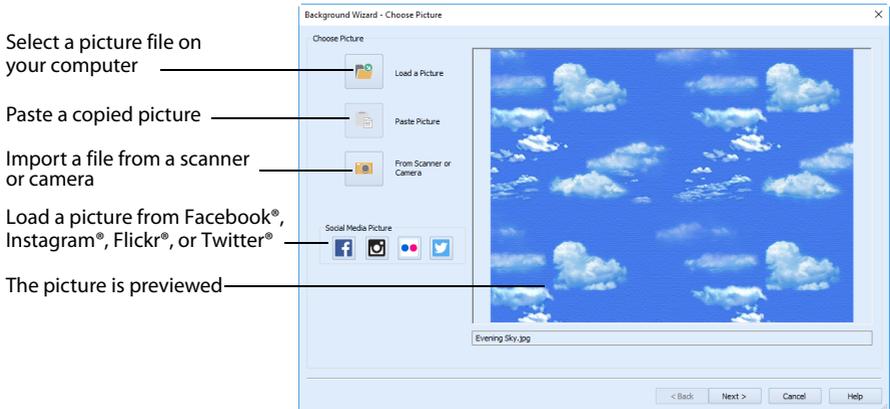
To create a new fabric in the Background Wizard, in the Appliqué Selection dialog box select Fabric, then click Add New Background Fabric . See "Background Wizard" on page 189.

# Background Wizard

Use the Background Wizard to create a new background or appliqué fabric from a picture.

## Choose Picture

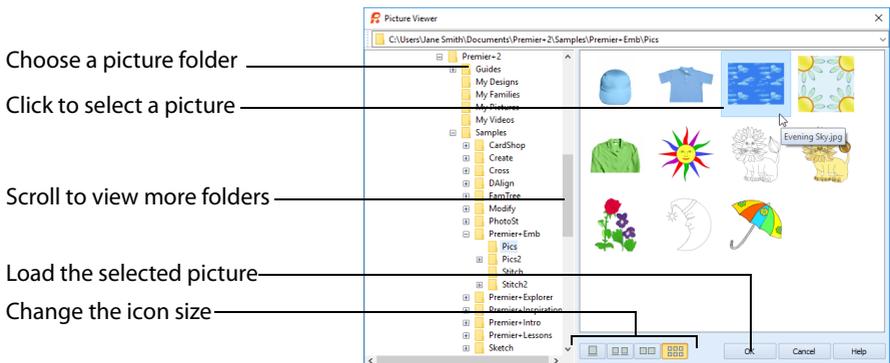
Use the Choose Picture page of the Background Wizard to select a picture for the new appliqué fabric.



*From Scanner or Camera will not be available if you do not have a Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) compliant scanner or digital camera attached to your computer.*

## Load a Picture

Click Load a Picture  to open a picture from clipart, or one you have previously saved, scanned or created in an image editor. After selecting a picture, the preview box will show the selected picture with its name underneath. Click OK to continue.



The following file formats may be loaded: Windows or OS2 Bitmap (.bmp), JPEG-JFIF Compliant (.jpg, .jif, .jpeg), Portable Network Graphics (.png), Tagged Image File Format uncompressed (.tiff, .tif), Windows Meta File (.wmf), Windows Enhanced Meta File (.emf) and Windows Icon (.ico).

## Load a Picture for a Background

- 1 Click Load a Picture  and the Picture Viewer dialog box appears.
- 2 Double-click to expand the folders until the desired folder is highlighted, for example: Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Pics
- 3 Click on a picture to select it.
- 4 Click OK to open the picture in the Choose Picture page.
- 5 Click Cancel to exit without selecting a picture.

### Paste Picture

Use Paste Picture  to load the picture in the Clipboard Block.

### From Scanner or Camera

Use From Scanner or Camera  to display the program that is used to acquire pictures from a scanner, a digital camera or another suitable device. Only devices that use WIA can be used to obtain pictures.

*WIA is a standard method for transferring pictures from the device's scanning or downloading program to another program. If the manufacturer provides the appropriate software components needed for WIA compliance, these should have been installed when the device was installed. Each scanner or digital camera has its own program that is used to scan or download pictures. Refer to the manual or online help provided with the program for instructions, if required. When the device and its software finish processing the picture, it will be shown in the Choose Picture page.*

Each scanner or digital camera has its own program that is used to scan or download pictures. Refer to the manual or online help provided with the program for instructions, if required. When the device and its software finish processing the Picture, it will be shown in the Choose Picture page.

### Social Media Picture

Load a picture from Facebook® , Instagram® , Flickr® , or Twitter® . Log in to the Social Media website to load the desired picture.

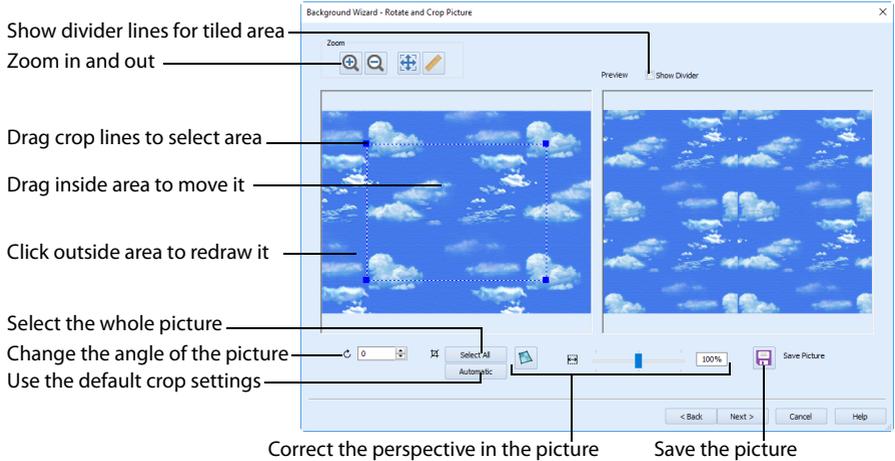
### Preview and Name

Under the preview pane is a box for the name of the chosen file. If the picture is a scanned image then the box will contain the words Scanned Picture.

# Rotate and Crop Picture

- To adjust the crop area, position the mouse over the crop boundary until a double-headed arrow ⇄ appears, then click and drag to move the boundary line.
- To move the crop area, position the mouse inside the crop boundary until a four-headed arrow ⛶ appears, then click and drag to move the whole rectangle.
- To redraw the crop area, click and drag outside the crop boundary to draw a new rectangle, which can then be adjusted as required.

Initially, about half the area of the picture is selected from the middle of the picture, as shown by the dashed box in the picture on the left. The preview on the right shows four copies of the selected fabric area tiled together.



The tiled preview will change dynamically as you change the crop area.

To see where the four sections of the background are joined, select the Show Divider option. Dashed lines show where the tiled sections will be joined. This is useful for patterned fabric, to ensure the pattern repeats as desired.

When the desired area is selected, click Next.

## Rotate

Rotate  the picture from 0 to 359 degrees. Adjust the picture angle as desired. This is often necessary with scanned pictures.

Enter the desired Rotation angle  or use the up/down arrows to change the angle. The preview will show the effect.

When the picture is rotated between the 90 degree steps, the picture is made larger and white background is added.

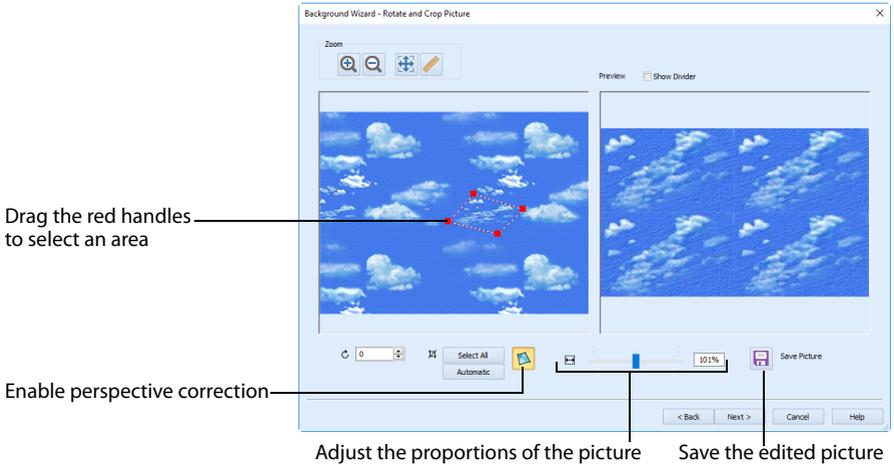


## Select All and Automatic

Use Select All to select the whole of the picture. Use Automatic to set the crop lines back to the default position for the current picture.

## Perspective Correction

To remove the effects of perspective in a picture, or to correct skew, select Perspective Correction . When using Perspective Correction, the crop handles are red.



Move the red handles so that the crop lines frame the picture. Use the Zoom tools to view the outline of the picture more clearly. Drag the Stretch Picture  slider to make the picture in the Preview wider or narrower. Use Save Picture  to save your edited picture.

## Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the picture.

*The fabric preview on the right is not affected by zoom.*

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

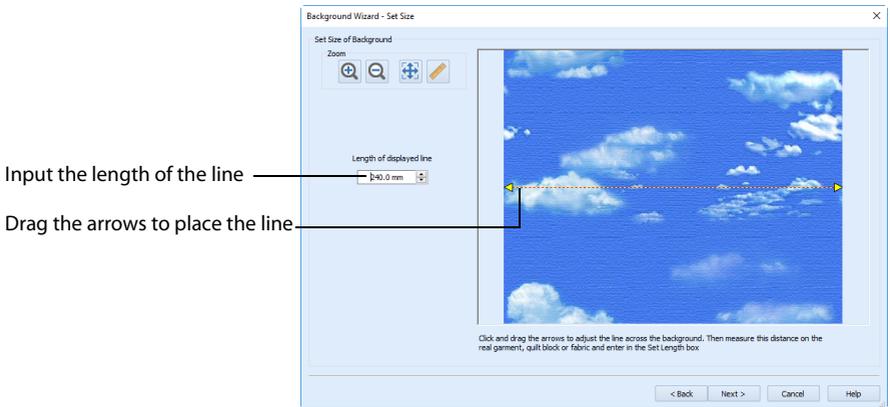
Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the picture to the preview area.

Click Real Size  to view the picture at its real size in pixels. This means that one pixel of the picture uses one pixel of the screen.

## Set Size

Use Set Size to enter a real measurement of the fabric so that it will be displayed at real size when it is used as the appliqué fabric.



The cropped section of fabric is shown in the preview. Click and drag the arrows at either end of the yellow line to place a line across the picture. This should match a measurement you have made across the same area of the real fabric.

Then enter the length of the line in the 'Length of displayed line' text box, or use the up/down arrows.

The length can be from 1mm to 300mm. However, the fabric tile must not be larger than 300mm x 300mm, so if the line does not span the whole picture it must be shorter than 300mm.

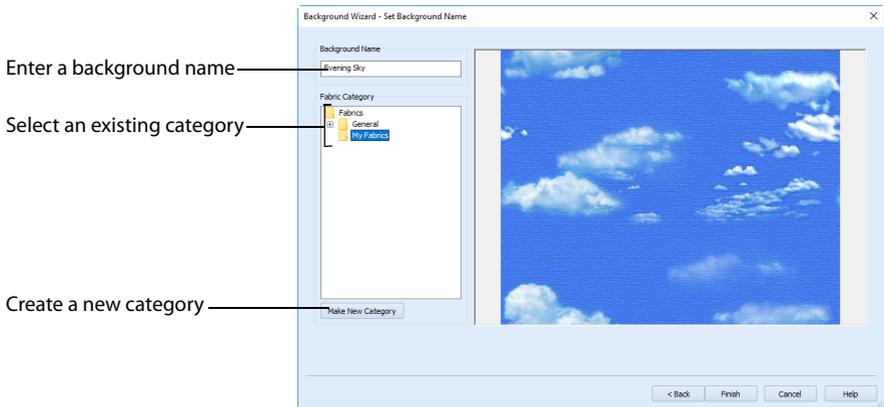
*If the length would make the fabric tile larger than 300mm in either dimension, a message will appear. Repeat the process so that the tile is smaller.*

Click OK and the measurement you entered will be shown next to the picture. Check that the line and the length matches the measurement you made of the real fabric. If desired, click and drag the arrows to place a new line and re-enter the line length.

When the line is measured correctly, click Next.

## Set Background Name

Use Set Background Name to save the finished appliqué fabric in a category and give it a name. The categories are the folder names you will see when browsing for existing backgrounds.



### Background Name

If you started with an existing picture, the picture name will be shown by default as the name for the new background. If you scanned a new picture, it will not have a name so you will need to enter a name.

### Fabric Category

The default category is My Fabrics. To choose a different category, browse among the folders in Fabrics.

Select from existing categories, or click Make New Category to provide the name of a new category.

### Make New Category

To make a new category, click Make New Category, and enter a new folder name. Click OK to create the category.

*The new category will be created as a subfolder for the currently selected type.*

When make a new category, it will be available as a Fabric Category next time you use the Background Wizard.

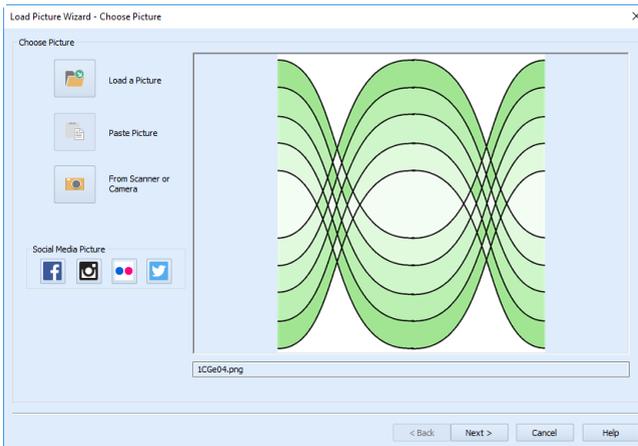
### Finish

Click Finish to save the new background with the specified name in the specified Fabric Category and close the Background Wizard. The selected or new background will be displayed in the work area.

# Load Picture Wizard

Use the Load Picture Wizard to use a picture as an individual non-tiled appliqué background, for example for a printed appliqué memory piece.

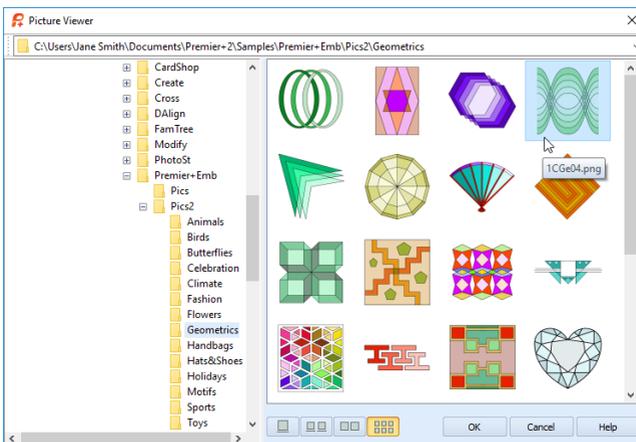
## Choose Picture



Use the Choose Picture page to select the picture you wish to use as a background.

## Load a Picture

Click Load a Picture  to open a picture from your My Pictures folder. Alternatively, browse to a folder elsewhere on your computer. After selecting a picture, the preview box will show the selected picture with its name underneath.



The following file formats may be loaded: Windows or OS2 Bitmap (.bmp), JPEG-JFIF Compliant (.jpg, .jif, .jpeg), PatternCAD (.4dq), Portable Network Graphics (.png), Tagged

Image File Format uncompressed (.tiff, tif), Windows Meta File (.wmf), Windows Enhanced Meta File (.emf) and Windows Icon (.ico).

## Load a Picture with the Viewer

- 1 Click Load a Picture  and the Picture Viewer dialog box appears.
- 2 Double-click to expand the folders until the desired folder is highlighted.
- 3 If desired, change the icon size to see more or fewer pictures.
- 4 Click on a picture to select it.
- 5 Click OK to open the picture with its name underneath.
- 6 Click Cancel to exit without selecting a picture.

## Paste Picture

Click Paste Picture  to load the picture in the Clipboard Block. The picture is shown in the preview area.

*Paste Picture is not available if the Clipboard Block is empty.*

## From Scanner or Camera

Use From Scanner or Camera  to display the program that is used to acquire pictures from a scanner, a digital camera or another suitable device. Only devices that use Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) can be used to obtain pictures.

*WIA is a standard method for transferring pictures from the device's scanning or downloading program to another program. If the manufacturer provides the appropriate software components needed for WIA compliance, these should have been installed when the device was installed.*

Each scanner or digital camera has its own program that is used to scan or download pictures. Refer to the manual or online help provided with the program for instructions, if required. When the device and its software finish processing the picture, it will be shown in the Choose Picture page.

## Social Media Picture

Load a picture from Facebook® , Instagram® , Flickr® , or Twitter® . Log in to the Social Media website to load the desired picture.

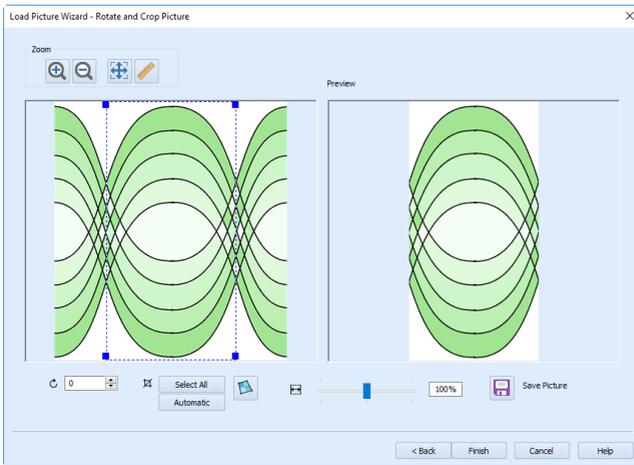
## Preview and Name

Under the preview pane is a box for the name of the chosen file. If the picture is a scanned image then the box will contain the words Scanned Picture.

## Next

Go to the Crop and Rotate Picture page.

# Rotate and Crop Picture



Use the Rotate and Crop Picture page to select the section of the picture that is to be used to create the appliqué background. If required, rotate the picture, and click and drag the boundary line of the crop area to select the desired part of the picture.

Click and drag anywhere inside the crop box to move the crop box.

*If you need to expand a crop box again, make sure it is not touching the edge of the frame, as this will stop it expanding.*

When the desired area is selected, click Finish.

## Rotate

Rotate  the picture from 0 to 359 degrees. Adjust the picture angle as desired. This is often necessary with scanned pictures.

Enter the desired Rotation angle  or use the up/down arrows to change the angle. The preview will show the effect.

When the picture is rotated between the 90 degree steps, the picture is made larger and white background is added.

## Select All and Automatic

Use Select All to select the whole of the picture. Use Automatic to set the crop lines back to the default position for the current picture.

## Perspective Correction

To remove the effects of perspective in a picture, or to correct skew, select Perspective Correction . When using Perspective Correction, the crop handles are red.

Move the red handles so that the crop lines frame the picture. Use the Zoom tools to view the outline of the picture more clearly. Drag the Stretch Picture  slider to make the picture in the Preview wider or narrower. Use Save Picture  to save your edited picture.

## Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the picture.

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the picture and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the picture to the preview area.

Click Real Size  to view the picture at its real size in pixels. This means that one pixel of the picture uses one pixel of the screen.

## Back

Return to the Choose Picture page.

## Finish

Use the selected image for the appliqué

## Export Appliqué

Use Export Appliqué Pieces  in the File menu to save or print appliqué outlines ready for cutting.

There are five export methods: save as SVG, DXF or FCM files for use in fabric cutters, save as VP4 or VP3 stitch files for use with INSPIRA™ Cutwork Needles, print as an outline template to cut around, print directly onto printable fabric or an iron-on transfer (this prints the image of the appliqué piece), or save as PNG files with the fabric image placed as the fill for each shape (for use with fully customized layouts).

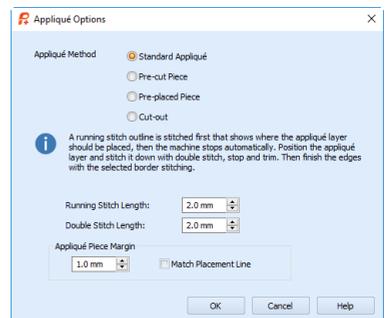
See “Export Appliqué Pieces” on page 25 for more information.

## Appliqué Options

Use the Appliqué Options dialog box to select an Appliqué Method for appliqué placement, and set the Appliqué Piece Margin, the Running Stitch Length, and the Double Stitch Length.

### Appliqué Placement

When appliqué is created from a border shape, additional stitches are added at the beginning of the embroidery for placing appliqué fabric. Use these options to determine how these stitches are added. The border used to finish the appliqué uses line options for the selected border stitch type.



## Appliqué Method

Choose the method for placing and securing the appliqué fabric.

- **Standard Appliqué**  
Stitch a running line to show where appliqué fabric should be placed, then stop to position the fabric. Stitch down the appliqué fabric with double stitch, then stop so the fabric may be trimmed. Finish the edges with the selected border stitching.
- **Pre-cut Piece**  
Use a pre-cut appliqué piece; created, for example, using an automatic cutter or cutwork needles.  
Stitch a running line to show where the pre-cut appliqué piece should be placed, then stop to position the appliqué piece. Stitch down the appliqué piece with double stitch, then finish the edges with the selected border stitching.
- **Pre-placed Piece**  
Place the appliqué fabric before stitching.  
Place the appliqué layer in position, then stitch down the appliqué fabric with double stitch. Stop so the fabric may be trimmed. Finish the edges with the selected border stitching.
- **Cut-out**  
Use the appliqué placement line as a guide to where the fabric should be cut; for example for reverse appliqué.  
Stitch a double stitch line. Stop so the fabric may be cut to form a hole defined by the stitched outline. Finish the edges with the selected border stitching.

## Appliqué Piece Margin

Set the margin for appliqué placement relative to the drawn border shape from -10mm to 10mm. The initial value is 1.0mm.

*Use a positive value when trimming the appliqué fabric before the border is stitched, for example with Standard Appliqué and Pre-placed Appliqué. A negative value is recommended for cut-out and reverse appliqué.*

## Match Placement Line

Adjust the position of the first running stitch line for either Standard Appliqué or Pre-cut Piece so that it matches the outline of the appliqué piece after the Appliqué Piece Margin has been applied.

*This may be useful for precise positioning of appliqué pieces that have been pre-cut with an automated cutter, to ensure the placement line is visible.*

## Running Stitch Length

Set the length of running stitch used for the placement outline in the first and second appliqué methods, from 1 to 12mm in 0.1mm steps. The initial setting is 2.0mm.

*If you position the arrow pointer over the box without clicking, the alternative units and range will be shown.*

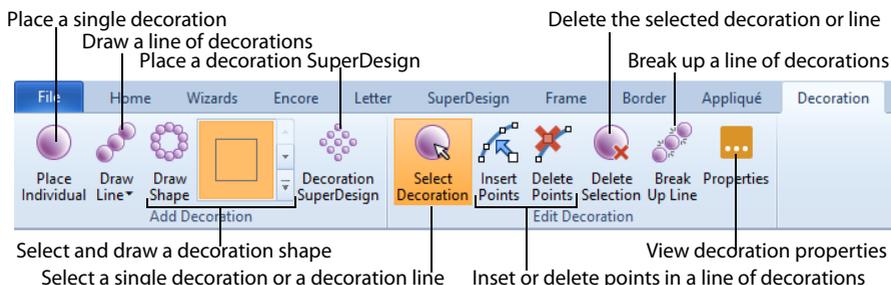
## Double Stitch Length

Set the length of double stitch used to stitch down the appliqué fabric, from 1 to 12mm in 0.1mm steps. The initial setting is 2.0mm.

*If you position the arrow pointer over the box without clicking, the alternative units and range will be shown.*

Decorate your chosen background and embroidery with beads, sequins, hotfix crystals or nailheads. Choose the desired embellishment in the Decoration Selection dialog, then click to place decorations one at a time, or in lines or shapes. Adjust the placing and type of decorations in your project using Select Decorations or the Context menu.

## Decoration



### Center or Line Placement

Center or Line placement stitches are created automatically for decorations according to the options set in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure, which may be altered when you export the embroidery. Alternatively, create a crystal transfer template (rhinestone template) for automated cutters for pressing hotfix crystals and nailheads directly on your work, using File, Export Decoration Template. See “Export Decoration Template” on page 27.

Center placement stitches are recommended when most decorations are individual and symmetrical. Line placement stitches are recommended when most decorations are individual and asymmetrical (such as bugle beads) or lines of closely spaced beads or sequins.

*Decorations are placed on top of the background, appliqué and embroidery.*

*The Decoration tab is only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*

## Adding Decorations

Add beads, sequins, crystals or nailheads to your project as individual decorations with Place Individual , or as lines of decorations with Draw Line  or Draw Shape . Insert a special SuperDesign with decorations using Decoration SuperDesign .

Decorations are added as a decoration subdesign or to an existing decoration subdesign if one is selected.

*Use Select Decoration  and Properties  or the Context menu to make changes to the line of decorations. See “Select Decoration” on page 205.*

# Place Individual

Use Place Individual  to place decorations individually on your project.

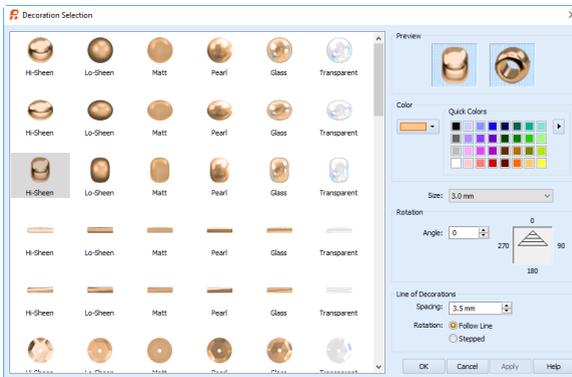
Click Place Individual  and select a decoration type, material, color, size and angle in the Decoration Selection dialog. Then click to place decorations. See "Decoration Selection" on page 208.

## Shortcuts

- Add Decoration, Decoration Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, D, P

## Place Individual Beads on an Embroidery

- 1 Load the desired background and embroideries.
- 2 Position the embroideries as desired.
- 3 Click the Place Individual icon . The Decoration Selection dialog box will appear.



- 4 Click to select the desired bead type and material.
- 5 Click the Color drop-down menu and use the Colors dialog box to select a color, or choose a color in the Quick Colors.
- 6 In Size, select the desired bead size.
- 7 Choose the angle of rotation of the bead in Angle.
- 8 Click OK to close the Decoration Selection dialog box.  
*The cursor changes to the Insert cursor  to show that you may place beads.*
- 9 Click in the work area to place the bead. Each click will place one bead.  
*Click and drag will have no effect while placing beads. Use Undo to remove the last bead.*
- 10 When you have placed all the beads as desired, right-click and select "Finish placing individual" in the Context menu to end.
- 11 Repeat the process to place more beads as desired.
- 12 Use File, Export Decoration Template  to create a crystal transfer template (or rhinestone template) for pressing hotfix crystals and nailheads directly onto your work. See "Export Decoration Template" on page 27.

## Draw Line

Use Draw Line  to place lines of decorations on your project. Select a bead, sequin, crystal or nailhead using your preferred material, size and color in the Decoration Selection dialog, and then draw your line.

Select the angle of Rotation, and choose whether the line of decorations will follow the line drawn (Follow Line), or if they will use the angle set in rotation (Stepped).

## Freehand Tablet Line

Use Freehand Tablet Line  to click and drag to draw a line of decorations.

Click Freehand Tablet Line  and select a decoration type in the Decoration Selection dialog (see "Decoration Selection" on page 208). Then click and drag to draw a line. When you release the mouse the line is drawn automatically. Right-click and select "Finish placing line" in the Context menu to end.

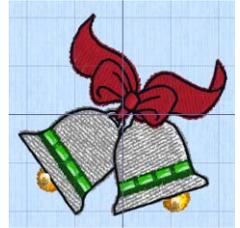
Use Select Decoration  and Properties  or the Context menu to make changes to the line of decorations. See "Select Decoration" on page 205.

### Shortcuts

- Draw Line Drop-Down, Add Decoration, Decoration Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, D, L, T

## Draw a Line of Decorations

- 1 In the Draw Line  drop-down menu, choose Freehand Tablet Line . The Decoration Selection dialog box will appear.
- 2 Scroll down and select a decoration type, material, color, size and spacing, then click OK to close the Decoration Selection dialog box. The pointer changes to the pen pointer .
- 3 Draw a line for the beads.
- 4 Right-click when you have placed the beads and select "Finish placing line" from the Context menu.



## Freehand Point Line

Use Freehand Point Line  to place points to draw a line of decorations.

*Freehand Point Line may be easier to use than Freehand Tablet Line for precise drawing.*

Click Freehand Point Line  and select a decoration type in the Decoration Selection dialog (see "Decoration Selection" on page 208). Then click a series of points to create a line of decorations. Right-click to finish the line. Right-click and select "Finish placing line" in the Context menu to deselect.

Use Select Decoration  and Properties  or the Context menu to make changes to the line of decorations. See "Select Decoration" on page 205.

### Shortcuts

- Draw Line Drop-Down, Add Decoration, Decoration Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, D, L, P

## Place Points for a Line of Decorations

- 1 In the Draw Line  drop-down menu, choose Freehand Point Line . The Decoration Selection dialog box will appear.
- 2 Scroll down and select a decoration type, material, color, size and spacing, then click OK to close the Decoration Selection dialog box. The pointer changes to the Freehand Point pointer .

- 3 Click to place points for a line for the beads.
- 4 Right-click when you have placed the beads and select "Finish placing line" from the Context menu.

## Draw Shape

Use Draw Shape  to draw a shaped line of decorations on your project, using the shape currently selected in the gallery of preset shapes.

Once placed, a decoration shape is treated as a line of decorations. Click the drop-down arrow to the right of the shapes gallery, and scroll to select the desired shape in the list. Click Draw Shape , and select a decoration type in the Decoration Selection dialog (see "Decoration Selection" on page 208), then click OK.



The shape is shown as a red and cyan line, with handles to resize, flip and rotate the shape. To move the shape, click and drag inside the shape.

Resize the shape with the resize handles on the corners. Hold down Ctrl as you click and drag to retain the current proportions of the shape. Hold down Shift to resize from the center. Rotate the shape with the circular rotate handle on the right. Mirror the shape horizontally or vertically with the triangular flip handles on the left and top.



For best results when resizing shapes with sharp points, it is recommended to hold down Ctrl so that the shape is perfectly in proportion.

When the shape is sized and positioned as desired, right-click and select "Finish placing shape" in the Context menu to create the shape.

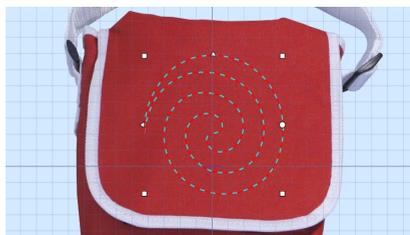
Use Select Decoration  and Properties  or the Context menu to make changes to the line of decorations. See "Select Decoration" on page 205.

### Shortcuts

- Add Decoration, Decoration Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, D, S

## Draw a Decoration Shape

- 1 Click the drop-down arrow to the right of the shapes gallery and select a shape from the list.
- 2 Click Draw Shape . The Decoration Selection dialog box will appear.
- 3 Scroll down and select a decoration type, material, color, size and spacing, then click OK to close the Decoration Selection dialog box. The shape is shown as a red and cyan line in a selection box.
- 4 Click and drag on one of the corner handles to enlarge or shrink the shape.



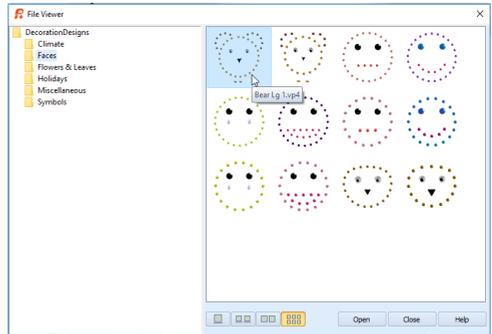
Hold down Ctrl to retain the original proportions. Hold down Shift to resize from the center.

- 5 Move the pointer over the shape. The pointer changes to the move pointer .
- 6 Click and drag the shape to the desired position.
- 7 Right-click and select "Finish placing shape" from the Context menu. The shape will appear on the work area.

## Decoration SuperDesign

Use Decoration SuperDesign  to insert a Decoration SuperDesign into your current project. Change the size, color and decoration type to complement your project.

Click Decoration SuperDesign  and in the File Viewer dialog box, scroll down and click to highlight the desired design. Click Open to load the decoration design.



Use Select Decoration  and Properties  or the Context menu to change the size, color and style of individual decorations in the design.

### Shortcuts

- Add Decoration, Decoration Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, D, D

## Editing Decorations

Use Select Decoration  to select single decorations positioned with Place Individual , or lines placed with Draw Line  or Draw Shape . You can adjust or delete individual decorations, and insert or delete points along lines of decorations, or break up or delete complete lines of decorations.

*Alternatively, for a quick and easy way to change decorations, right-click a decoration subdesign and select all decorations of a specific type from the Context menu. The Decoration Selection dialog box opens. Use the Context menu to change decorations when in other PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery tabs.*

### Select Decoration

Use Select Decoration  to select individual decorations, or lines of decorations for editing or deleting.

Click Select Decoration , then click the desired decoration. The decoration or line of decorations will be selected. Adjust or remove the selected item as desired. To change color, size or material, click Properties  after selecting decorations.

*When a line or shape is enlarged, the number of decorations increases. It decreases as the line or shape is made smaller.*

Use Ctrl and click to select a number of individual decorations, for instance to change the color for some beads in a Super Design.

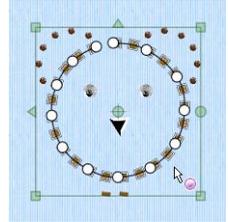
*Use the arrow keys on the keyboard to nudge a decoration. Use Ctrl + the right arrow key to rotate clockwise, and Ctrl + the left arrow key to rotate counterclockwise.*

## Shortcuts

- Edit Decoration, Decoration Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, D, C

## Resizing and Reshaping Decorations and Lines

- 1 Click Decoration SuperDesign  and in the File Viewer select 'Bear Lg 1' in the Faces folder. Click Open to load it in the work area, then close the File Viewer.
- 2 Click Select Decoration , then click one of the beads in the bear's ears. This selects a single bead, as the bead has been placed individually. *Select Decoration enables you to change individual beads and lines in a Decoration SuperDesign or other subdesign.*
- 3 Click one of the beads in the outline of the bear's face. This bead is part of a line of beads.
- 4 Right-click, and select "Finish selection decoration" in the Context menu.
- 5 Click and drag one of the green corner handles for the Decoration SuperDesign to make it larger.



The beads placed individually become more widely spaced. If desired, place individual additional decorations, or adjust the size. The line forming the outline of the bear's face shows an increased number of beads as the circle enlarges.

*When a line or shape is enlarged, the number of decorations increases. It decreases as the line or shape is made smaller.*

## Insert Points

Use Insert Points  to add new points to the currently selected line of decorations.

Select the desired line of decorations, then click Insert Points . The pointer changes to the plus pointer . Click to add a point to the line. Right-click to finish adding points.

*Hold down Ctrl to place a straight line or corner point. Click Undo  to remove the new point.*

## Shortcuts

- Edit Decoration, Decoration Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, D, R

## Delete Points

Use Delete Points  to delete points from the currently selected Line of Decorations.

Select the desired line of decorations, then click Delete Points . The pointer changes to the minus pointer . Click to remove a point from the line. Right-click to finish deleting points.

*Click Undo  to replace a deleted point.*

## Shortcuts

- Edit Decoration, Decoration Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, D, E

## Delete Selection

Use Delete Selection  to delete the currently selected individual decoration, or line of decorations.

Select the desired individual decoration or line of decorations, then click Delete Selection . The selected item is removed from the work area.

## Shortcuts

- Edit Decoration, Decoration Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, D, Y

## Break Up Line

Use Break Up Line  to break up the currently selected line of decorations into individual decorations for independent editing.

Select the desired line of decorations, then click Break Up Line . The selected line of decorations now consists of individual decorations which can be changed separately.

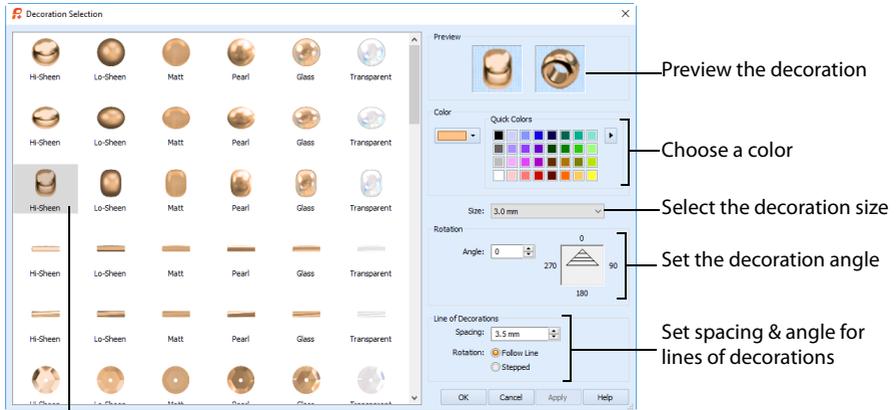
*Use Break Up Line to create a line or shape with alternating colors. Once the line or shape has been broken into individual decorations, use Ctrl and click to select alternate decorations, then right-click the selected decorations and select Properties in the Context menu to change their color.*

## Shortcuts

- Edit Decoration, Decoration Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, D, K

# Decoration Selection

Use the Decoration Selection dialog box to choose beads and sequins.



Choose a decoration shape and material

## Decorations

Select a decoration shape and material. Scroll down for other shapes.

*All decorations are available in the following materials: Hi-Sheen, Lo-Sheen, Matt, Pearl, Glass and Transparent.*

## Preview

Preview the selected decoration from above, and in perspective.

## Color

Choose a color in the Colors dialog, or select a color and theme from the Quick Colors.

Click the drop-down color menu to choose a color in the Colors dialog, or pick a Quick Color. Click the drop-down menu to the right of the Quick Colors to see other Quick Color themes, or to create a new theme.

*See "Colors Dialog Box" on page 55 and "Quick Color Themes" on page 52.*

## Size

Select the decoration size from the drop-down menu.

*The available sizes are different for each type of decoration. See "Decorations" on page 209.*

## Rotation

Use the up and down arrows or enter an angle  from 0 to 359 degrees in the Angle box. The preview shows the selected angle.

## Line of Decorations

Set the Spacing between the decorations in the line or shape, and select whether the decorations will follow the line drawn, or if they will use the angle set in rotation (Stepped).

# Decorations

The following types of decorations are available, in a variety of colors, materials and sizes:

Shape	Size (in mm)	Shape	Size (in mm)
 Round	4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10	 Crystal Rectangular	3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10
 Oval	4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10	 Crystal Round	1.0, 1.5, 2.0, 2.5, 3.0, 3.5, 4.0, 4.5, 5.0, 6.0, 7.0, 8.0, 9.0, 10.0, 12.0
 Seed	1.0, 1.5, 2.0, 2.5, 3.0	 Crystal Square	3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10
 Bugle	4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10	 Crystal Triangle	3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10
 Bugle Twisted	4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10	 Nailhead Diamond	3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10
 Sequin Cup	2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10	 Nailhead Heart	3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10
 Sequin Flat	2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20	 Nailhead Petal	3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10
 Sequin Flower	2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20	 Nailhead Rectangular	3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10
 Sequin Heart	2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20	 Nailhead Round	1.0, 1.5, 2.0, 2.5, 3.0, 3.5, 4.0, 4.5, 5.0, 6.0, 7.0, 8.0, 9.0, 10.0, 12.0
 Sequin Snowflake	2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20	 Nailhead Star	3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10
 Sequin 5-Point Star	2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20	 Nailhead Teardrop	3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10
 Sequin 6-Point Star	2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 15, 20	 Nailhead Triangle	3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10
 Crystal Oval	3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10		

The Preview shows the decorations in two orientations so you can visualize their placement accurately.

## Sizes for Crystal Round and Nailhead Round Decorations

1.0, 1.5 (SS 3-4, PP 7-10), 2.0 (SS 5-6, PP 11-15), 2.5 (SS 7-9, PP 16-20), 3.0 (SS 10-12, PP 21-24), 3.5 (SS 13-14, PP 25-28), 4.0 (SS 15-17, PP 29-32), 4.5, 5.0 (SS 18-22), 6.0 (SS 23-28), 7.0 (SS 29-33), 8.0 (SS 34-38), 9.0 (SS 39-42), 10.0 (SS 43-45), 12.0 (SS 46-50)

When purchasing round crystals, nailheads or rhinestones, manufacturers' sizes may use the term SS (stone size) or PP (pearl plate).

# Exporting Decorations

Use File, Export Decoration Template  to save a template for all your decorations in a format for your cutter. This can be used to create a Crystal Transfer Template (Rhinestone Template) for pressing hotfix crystals and nailheads directly onto your work.

See "Export Decoration Template" on page 27.

## Center or Line Placement

Center or Line placement stitches are created automatically for decorations according to the options set in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure, which may be altered when you export the embroidery. Alternatively, create a crystal transfer template (rhinestone template) for automated cutters for pressing hotfix crystals and nailheads directly on your work with File, Export Decoration Template.

Center placement stitches are recommended when most decorations are individual and symmetrical. Line placement stitches are recommended when most decorations are individual and asymmetrical (such as bugle beads) or lines of closely spaced beads or sequins.

# Using and Adjusting Decorations

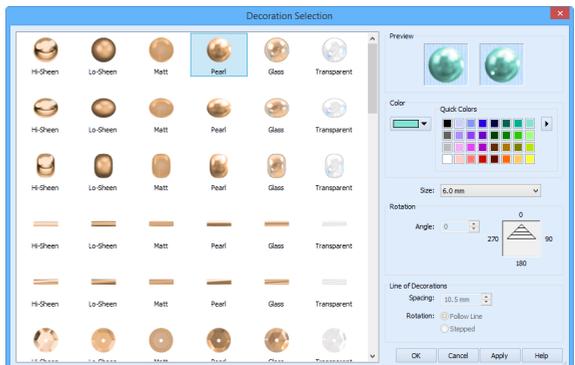
## Sequin Snow

- 1 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Change Hoop . In the Hoop Selection dialog box select 170mm x 100mm - Universal Midsize Hoop 1.
- 2 Set Orientation to Natural and click OK.
- 3 In the Quick Access toolbar at the top of the screen, click Insert .
- 4 Browse to Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Stitch2\Holidays.
- 5 Scroll down until you see "Snowman".
- 6 Click Open to load the embroidery into the work area.
- 7 Click the Decoration tab.
- 8 Click Place Individual . The Decoration Selection dialog box appears.
- 9 At the top, select the Pearl Round decoration.



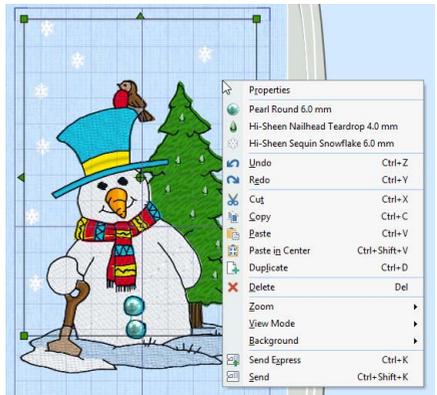
Place the pointer over the decorations to see the names. The other Round bead materials are Hi-Sheen, Lo-Sheen, Matt, Glass and Transparent.

- 10 In the drop-down menu to the right of the Quick Colors, ensure that the theme Standard is selected.
- 11 Click the turquoise in row 1, column 8 to select it.
- 12 In the Size drop-down menu, select 6.0mm.  
*In Rotation, ensure that Angle is set to zero. The settings for Line are not relevant as you will be placing beads individually.*
- 13 Click OK to select the turquoise round bead, and the Decoration Selection dialog box will close.



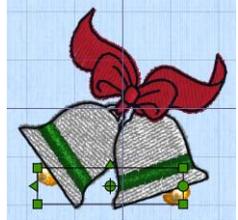
The pointer changes to the Insert pointer  to show that you may place decorations.

- 14 Click in the center of the lower button on the snowman's coat. A large bead is placed for the button.
- 15 Click to place a bead on the top button.  
*If you place a bead in the wrong position, use Undo to remove the last decoration in the current sequence.*
- 16 When you have placed the two beads, click Place Individual . The Decoration Selection dialog box will appear again.
- 17 Scroll down to the Nailhead Teardrop decorations and select Hi-Sheen Nailhead Teardrop.
- 18 In the Quick Colors, click the deep green in row 2, column 6.
- 19 In the Size drop-down menu, select 4.0mm.
- 20 Click OK to close the Decoration Selection dialog box.
- 21 Click to place several green teardrops on the tree, like melting snow.
- 22 Click Place Individual  to open the Decoration Selection dialog box again.
- 23 Scroll up to the Sequin Snowflake decorations, and select Hi-Sheen Sequin Snowflake.
- 24 In the Quick Colors, click white in row 4, column 1.
- 25 In the Size drop-down menu, select 6.0mm, and click OK to close the Decoration Selection dialog box.
- 26 Click to place snowflakes around and above the snowman.
- 27 Right-click when you have placed the snowflakes and select "Finish placing individual" from the Context menu.
- 28 Click outside the embroidery and decorations. There is no selection box.
- 29 Click on the snowman. The snowman embroidery is surrounded by a box with white handles. This is the selection box for the embroidery.
- 30 Click on one of the snowflakes well above the snowman.
- 31 The decorations are surrounded by their own selection box with green handles. This shows the current decoration subdesign.  
*If you deselected Place Individual and started again, you may have two or more decoration subdesigns.*
- 32 Right-click the decoration subdesign. A Context menu appears.
- 33 Select Hi-Sheen Nailhead Teardrop in the Context menu.  
The Decoration Selection dialog box appears, with this decoration type selected.
- 34 Click the Hi-Sheen Nailhead Star above the teardrop, then click OK to close the dialog. All of the teardrops have been replaced by stars.  
*You could also change the decorations using Select Decorations and Properties, but you would have to use Ctrl to Multiple Select the individual teardrops. The Context menu is a quick way to change all of a specific type of decoration in the subdesign.*
- 35 Click Undo . The teardrops return.
- 36 In the Quick Access toolbar click Save As .
- 37 In the Save As dialog box, save the snowman as Decorated Snowman. The snowman embroidery and the decoration subdesign are saved as the .vp4 file Decorated Snowman.  
*When you next open the file the decorations will be present.*
- 38 Click Life View  to see the embroidery and decorations without a grid or hoop.

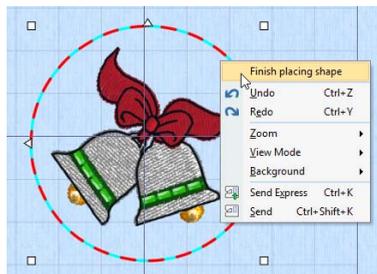
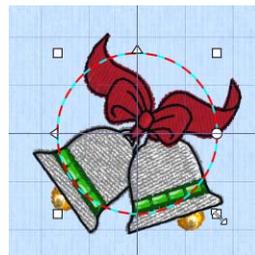


## Decorated Bells

- 1 In the Quick Access toolbar at the top of the screen, click Change Hoop . In the Hoop Selection dialog box select 100mm x 100mm - Universal Square Hoop 1 and click OK.
- 2 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Insert .
- 3 Browse to Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Stitch and select the embroidery 'Bells'.
- 4 Click Open to load the embroidery into the work area.
- 5 Click the Decoration tab.
- 6 Click Place Individual . The Decoration Selection dialog box will appear.
- 7 In the third row, select the Pearl Seed decoration.
- 8 In the drop-down menu to the right of the Quick Colors, ensure that the theme Standard is selected.
- 9 Click the orange in row 4, column 7 to select it.
- 10 In the Size drop-down menu, select 3.0mm, and ensure that the Angle is set to 0.
- 11 Click OK to select the pearl seed bead, and the Decoration Selection dialog box will close.  
*The pointer changes to the Insert pointer  to show that you may place decorations.*
- 12 Click on top of the clapper in the bell on the left. A seed bead is placed over the gold clapper.
- 13 Click on the clapper for the bell on the right to place a bead there as well.
- 14 Right-click when you have placed the beads and select "Finish placing individual" from the Context menu.  
The two individually placed beads form a subdesign in the work area.
- 15 Click outside the subdesign.
- 16 In the Draw Line  drop-down menu, choose Freehand Tablet Line . The Decoration Selection dialog box will appear.
- 17 Scroll down and select the Glass Nailhead Rectangular decoration.
- 18 Click the green in row 2, column 7 to select it.
- 19 In the Size drop-down menu, select 3.0mm.
- 20 In the Spacing drop-down in Line of Decorations, select 3.0mm, and ensure that Follow Line is selected.
- 21 Click OK to close the Decoration Selection dialog box. The pointer is the pen pointer .
- 22 Draw a line along the green ribbon of the bell on the left.
- 23 Right-click when you have placed the beads and select "Finish placing line" from the Context menu.
- 24 In the Draw Line  drop-down menu, choose Freehand Point Line . The Decoration Selection dialog box will appear.
- 25 You will use the same beads for the second ribbon as for the first, so click OK to close the dialog box. The pointer is the Freehand Point pointer .
- 26 Click three points in a line along the green ribbon of the bell on the right, then right-click to finish the line.  
Another line of green rectangular beads appears.
- 27 Right-click again and select "Finish placing line" from the Context menu.  
*If desired, use Select Decoration  to select the ribbon lines for adjustment. See "Select Decoration" on page 205.*
- 28 Click outside the embroidery and decorations.  
*This will start a new decoration subdesign.*
- 29 Click the drop-down arrow to the right of the Shapes gallery and select shape 2, a circle, in the list.
- 30 Click Draw Shape . The Decoration Selection dialog box will appear.

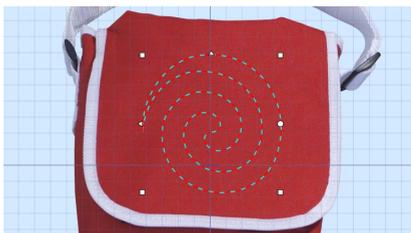


- 31 In the third row, select the Hi-Sheen Seed decoration.
- 32 In the Quick Colors, click the orange in row 4, column 7 to select it.
- 33 In the Size drop-down menu, select 2.0mm.
- 34 In the Spacing drop-down in Line of Decorations, select 2.0mm, and ensure that Follow Line is selected.
- 35 Click OK to close the Decoration Selection dialog box. The circle is shown as a red and cyan line in a selection box.
- 36 Hold down Ctrl and Shift, then click and drag on one of the corner handles to enlarge the circle proportionally and from the center so that it will fit around the design.
- 37 Move the pointer over the circle. The pointer changes to the move pointer .
- 38 Click and drag the circle so that it fits neatly around the embroidery.
- 39 Right-click and select "Finish placing shape" from the Context menu. A circle of beads surrounds the design. *The circle is inside a selection box with green handles.*
- 40 Press the Tab key slowly several times. The selection boxes for the embroidery and the other decoration subdesigns are shown in turn.
- 41 With the bead circle highlighted, right-click. The Hi-Sheen Seed beads are listed in the Context menu. *The Context menu only shows the decorations within the selected subdesign.*
- 42 In the Quick Access toolbar click Save As .
- 43 In the Save As dialog box, save the bells as Decorated Bells. The bells embroidery and the decoration subdesigns are saved as the .vp4 file Decorated Bells. *When you next open the file the decorations will be present.*
- 44 Click Life View  to see the embroidery and decorations without a grid or hoop. *You could display the design on a fabric with the Background Wizard. See "Background Wizard" on page 156.*



## Edit a Bead Swirl

- 1 In the Quick Access toolbar at the top of the screen, click Change Hoop . In the Hoop Selection dialog box select 260mm x 200mm - Universal Large Hoop 3, set Orientation to Rotated, and click OK.
- 2 In the View tab, start the Background Wizard .
- 3 In Garments select Bags & Hats, Mini Reporter Bags, Red\_Dk as your background.
- 4 Click the Decoration tab.
- 5 Click the drop-down arrow to the right of the shapes gallery and select the swirl shape (68) shape from the list.
- 6 Click Draw Shape . The Decoration Selection dialog box will appear.
- 7 Scroll down and select the Hi-Sheen Seed bead, using the orange in row 4, column 7 of the Quick Colors, 3mm in size, with a spacing of 3.5mm.
- 8 In Line of Decorations, select (check) Follow Line.
- 9 Click OK to close the Decoration Selection dialog box. The swirl is shown as a red and cyan line in a selection box.



- 10 Hold down Ctrl, then click and drag on one of the corner handles to enlarge the swirl to suit the size of the front of the bag.

*Hold down Ctrl to retain the original proportions.*

- 11 Move the pointer over the swirl. The pointer changes to the move pointer .

- 12 Click and drag the swirl to the desired position.

- 13 Right-click and select "Finish placing shape" from the Context menu. The swirl will appear on the work area.

*The swirl is inside a selection box with green handles.*

The beads at the point on the left overlap. The design can be adjusted to prevent this.

- 14 Click Select Decoration , then click the swirl. The shape is shown as a curved line with points showing the curve, and with each decoration in its own box.

- 15 Click the round point at the far left of the swirl.

- 16 Drag to move this point slightly. The shape becomes a line with two ends.

*All of the decoration shapes are closed lines (a line where the two ends are closed to form a shape).*

- 17 Click Delete Points .

- 18 Move the pointer towards the point that you dragged.

*As the pointer approaches the point it becomes the minus pointer .*

- 19 Click the point. That point, and the beads between it and the next point are removed.

*Use Delete Points to remove some of the points defining a line of decorations. You can use Insert Points to add points to a line.*

- 20 Some of the beads still overlap, so click the next point. Another section of the line is removed.

*There is still a one bead overlap. It would be better to adjust this bead than to delete the whole of the next section.*

- 21 Right-click and in the Context menu select "Finish deleting points".

- 22 Click and drag the end point so that the beads no longer overlap.

- 23 Click outside the shape to view the beads. There is a gap where the two ends of the line meet.

*This gap could be minimized if you could change the position of the beads individually.*

- 24 Click the line of beads so that it is selected.

- 25 Click Undo  until you can see the original shape again.

- 26 Click Break Up Line . Every bead is now an individual decoration, forming part of a subdesign.

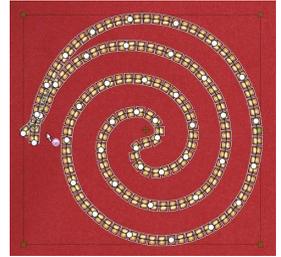
*While the whole subdesign is still selected it can be moved as one unit.*

- 27 Click outside the selection box, then click one of the overlapping beads.

*The beads can now be moved or deleted independently.*

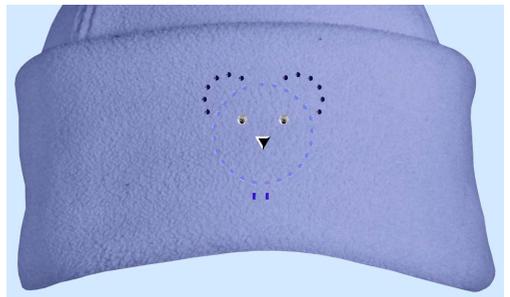
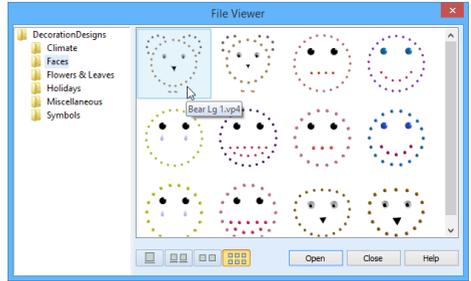
- 28 Click Delete Selection . The bead is removed from the work area.

- 29 Delete and move beads until you have a smooth line.



## Bear on Beanie Hat

- 1 In the Quick Access toolbar at the top of the screen, click Change Hoop . In the Hoop Selection dialog box select 260mm x 200mm - Universal Large Hoop 3, set Orientation to Rotated, and click OK.
- 2 In the View tab, start the Background Wizard .
- 3 In Garments select Bags & Hats\Beanie Hat\Medium\Beanie Hat 1 Med Gold as your background.
- 4 If needed, use the Zoom bar to zoom out, and use Move and Rotate Background to drag the brim of the hat to the center of the screen.
- 5 Click the Decoration tab.
- 6 Click Decoration SuperDesign , and in DecorationDesigns\Faces select Bear Lg 1.
- 7 Click Open to place the bear design in the work area, then close the File Viewer.
- 8 Click the View tab.
- 9 Click Realistic 3D . The bear design can be seen on the brim of the hat.  
*The brown crystals and sequins go well with this gold colored hat, but what if the hat was blue?*
- 10 Start the Background Wizard , and in Garments select Bags & Hats\Beanie Hat\Medium\Beanie Hat 1 Med Blue\_Lt.
- 11 Use Move and Rotate Background to drag the brim of the hat to the center of the screen.
- 12 Use the Zoom Bar to zoom in on the Decoration SuperDesign.
- 13 Click to select, then right-click the design. Near the top of the Context menu several decoration types are listed.
- 14 A medium brown round crystal is used for the outline of the bear's head. Select Matt Crystal Round 3.0 mm at the top of the Context menu. The Decoration Selection dialog box opens.
- 15 In the Quick Colors, click the medium blue in row 1 column 3, then click Apply. The outline of the bear's head is now blue. Click OK.
- 16 Right-click the design again, and select Matt Crystal Rectangular 4.0 mm. These crystals form the bear's neck.
- 17 Change these beads to the medium blue in the Quick Colors, row 1, column 4, then click OK.
- 18 Right-click again and select the dark brown Matt Crystal Round 3.0 mm decorations.
- 19 Change these to the dark blue in row 1 column 5, then click OK.  
*The colors of the other decorations will go well with the blue hat.*
- 20 Zoom out to view the hat.
- 21 You can change individual elements of the Decoration SuperDesign. Click 3D View , then click the Decoration tab.
- 22 Click Select Decoration , then click the outline of the bear's head. This is a line of beads.
- 23 Click one of the beads in the bear's ears. These are individual beads.  
*Decoration SuperDesigns are a single subdesign containing lines of decorations and individual decorations. Adjust decorations using Select Decoration and Properties or the Context menu.*



Use the Split Project Wizard  to split a large embroidery project into sections for stitching out.

*The Split Project Wizard is only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*

## Split Project Wizard

Select Split Project on the Wizards tab to split a large embroidery project into sections for stitching out.

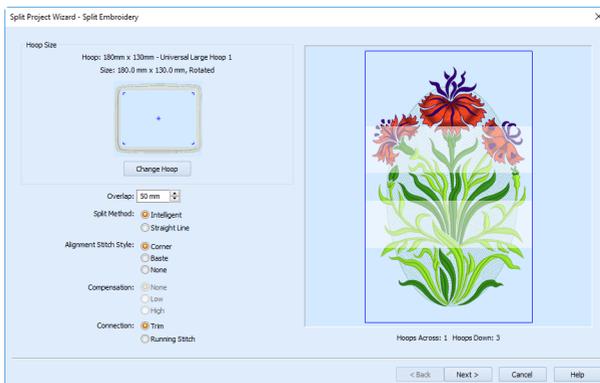
Select a hoop, then preview the embroidery, before splitting and saving or stitching it.

### Shortcuts

- Wizards Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, W, S

## Using the Split Project Wizard

- 1 With a large project open, click Split Project  on the Wizards Tab. The Split Embroidery page opens.
- 2 Click Change Hoop to select your desired hoop (here, 240mmx150mm - Universal Large Hoop 2).
- 3 Select a Hoop Group, a Hoop Size, and the Orientation. *To minimize the number of hoopings when stitching out, select the largest single-part hoop for your embroidery machine.*
- 4 In many circumstances, the initial setting for the other options on this page will work best, so make an initial split using these settings. If important features in the embroidery are split, click Back and adjust your settings.
- 5 Adjust your settings on the Split Embroidery page, testing the results, until you are satisfied with the split lines. Use the preview when adjusting the hoop and Overlap. *Increase or decrease Overlap to fit your embroideries within the hoop.*  
*For Connection, use Running Stitch, not Trim if you have to split large stitch areas.*  
*Use Corner alignment stitches if lightly embroidered areas are split, and Baste if heavily embroidered areas are split. Some machines have special positioning features which do not require alignment stitches.*



- 6 Click Next. The Save Embroidery page appears.
- 7 Use the View Previous ◀ and Next ▶ buttons to preview the splitting of the embroidery and, if necessary, go back to the Split Embroidery page to adjust your settings.

- 8 Click Export All Sections  to save the split embroidery. Browse to your My Designs folder, and name the project. The split sections will be numbered automatically.

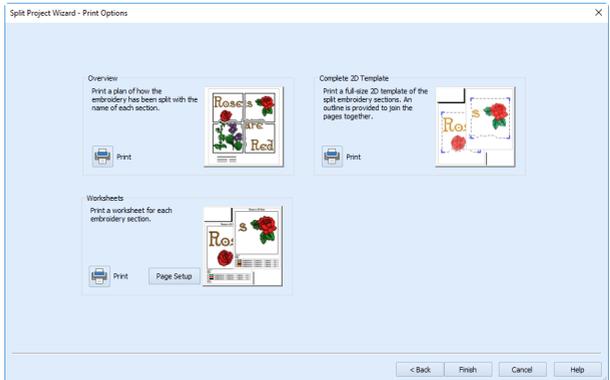
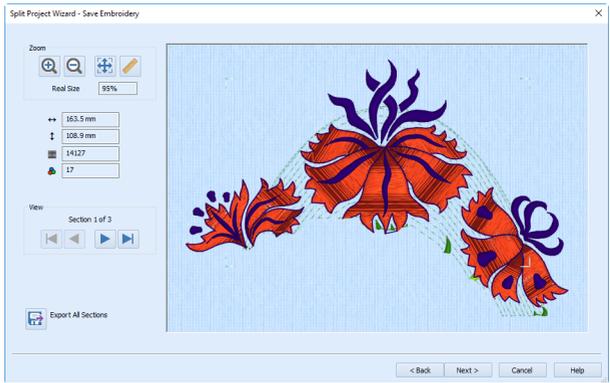
- 9 Click Next. The Print Options page appears.

- 10 Print a plan and worksheets for your project:
- Overview prints a plan of the split sections, with section names.
  - Complete 2D Template prints a full size 2D template of the split embroidery sections, with an outline around each section to indicate how to join them together.

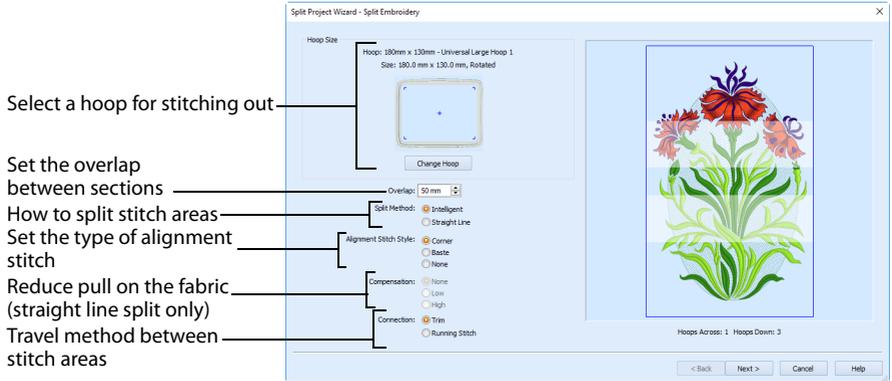
- Worksheets prints a worksheet for each section. The worksheet gives the dimensions of the design, the total number of stitches, a full list of the threads used, and the number of stitches for each thread.

*The Overview and Complete 2D Template may only be printed from the Split Project Wizard.*

- 11 Click Finish to close the wizard.



# Split Embroidery



The Split Embroidery page is displayed when the Split Project Wizard opens. Use the Split Embroidery page to select the desired hoop size, the splitting method, the overlap between hoop areas, what type of alignment stitch to use, the level of compensation, and the type of connection for your project.

*Experiment with the embroidery splitting options. This will give you the best possible split.*

*To define split lines with complete control, use PREMIER+™ 2 Design Aligner, if owned.*

*Multipart hoops are not available for the Split Project Wizard. Use the largest single-part hoop for your embroidery machine.*

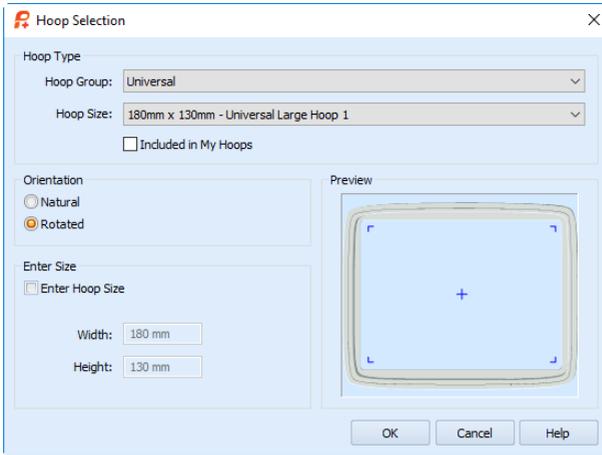
## Hoop Size

The currently selected hoop, and its size and orientation, are shown here. Set the hoop size according to the size of your project or the hoop you wish to use for stitching out, or enter any other desired size.

Generally, you should choose the largest single-part hoop size for your machine. This will reduce the number of split sections. This then reduces the number of split lines to be adjusted, the number of times you will need to hoop your fabric, and the number of color changes. The minimum recommended hoop size is 100mm x 100mm.

## Change Hoop

Click Change Hoop to choose the size of the hoop you wish to use for splitting the embroidery project. Select any available hoop in the Hoop Selection dialog box.



## Hoop Group

The drop-down list of Hoop Groups shows all the machine Hoop Groups, and the My Hoops group, if used.

## Hoop Size

The drop-down Hoop Size list shows the hoops in the chosen Hoop Group. Select the desired hoop size and a picture of the hoop will be shown in the Preview.

## Included in My Hoops

Select (check) Included in My Hoops to add the selected hoop to the My Hoops list. Use the My Hoops list to create a list of your favorite hoops.

*The selected hoops will be displayed in the My Hoops group in the order that they were selected.*

## Orientation

Select Natural or Rotated orientation according to the shape of the embroidery that is to fit in the hoop. Natural orientation is similar to the way the hoop would appear when you sit in front of your machine; note the position of the bracket.

*It is recommended to use natural hoop orientation for designs with Twin Needle colors.*

## Enter Size

To enter a hoop size that is not listed in any of the Hoop Groups, click the Enter Hoop Size box so that it is selected (checked). The Width and Height boxes will become available. You can enter any size from 10mm to 4000mm. The preview shows the shape of the hoop you enter.

*If you position the arrow pointer over the box without clicking, the alternative units and range will be shown.*

# Split Method

To split automatically, use Intelligent or Straight Line Split.

## Intelligent Split

Where possible, use Intelligent Split. This automatically calculates a split line that is routed through gaps or across jumps, cuts across the minimum number of stitches, and minimizes cuts through solid sections of embroidery. For example, a large embroidery will be split at a narrow section, and an embroidery that fits in one stitch area of the hoop will be left in one piece.

## Straight Line Split

Straight Line Split cuts the embroidery straight across the center line of the overlap zone. Straight Line Split will only split an individual embroidery if it does not fit entirely into one stitch area of the hoop.

Lettering will be split straight down the middle. This may cut through characters rather than gaps and spaces. In such cases, it is recommended to use Intelligent Split instead.

## Overlap

Set the desired overlap between each hoop area. The minimum overlap is 9mm. The maximum overlap is half the shortest side of the chosen hoop. This means that hoops may not overlap more than 50%. This is so that adjacent horizontal split lines or adjacent vertical split lines may not cross each other.

It is recommended to make the overlap as large as is practical so that you have maximum flexibility for adjusting the split lines. However, increasing the overlap may add unnecessary extra hoop sections, so a balanced choice is needed.

## Alignment Stitch Style

Select the type of alignment stitch that you wish to use to help with lining up the split sections of the embroidery.

### None

When None is selected, no alignment stitches are added to the split sections.

Select None if you wish to use a hoop template to align the split sections, or you have fabric that you do not wish to mark with the alignment stitches. This is also appropriate when you can split an embroidery project without cutting through any design elements.

*Some machines have special positioning features which do not require alignment stitches.*

### Corner

When Corner is selected, trims are added at the beginning and small L-shaped corners of three long loose stitches are added at the end of each split section. The alignment stitches go to the corners, halfway across the overlap between the hoop areas.

Use the trims at the beginning to align to previously stitched sections. The alignment points for subsequent sections are the corners of each L.

Corner is useful for lightly stitched embroideries, and where there are only a few splits within design elements.

## Baste

When Baste is selected, trims are added at the beginning and a box of long single stitches is added at the end of each split section. The alignment stitches go to the corners, half way across the overlap between the hoop areas.

Use the trims at the beginning to align to previously stitched sections. The alignment points for subsequent sections are the corners of the box of basting stitches.

Baste is useful for a heavily stitched embroidery that may be difficult to line up owing to pull on the fabric.

## Compensation

Use Compensation in conjunction with Straight Line Split. Compensation adds overlapping stitches along the edges where the embroidery is split. This compensates for pull on the fabric.

Compensation is initially set to None.

### None

Use None if you can split an embroidery without cutting through any of the design elements.

### Low

Use Low when cutting through a lightly stitched embroidery or when the split lines go through only a few stitch areas.

### High

Use High when the embroidery is dense, when the split lines make long splits through stitch areas, or when stitching onto materials such as knitted or stretchy fabric.

## Connection

Choose how to connect separate areas of the same color along the edges of the split sections. The initial setting is Trim.

### Trim

Use movement stitches to travel along the edges of the split sections. This option is the most suitable choice when an embroidery project can be split without cutting through large stitch areas.

## Running Stitch

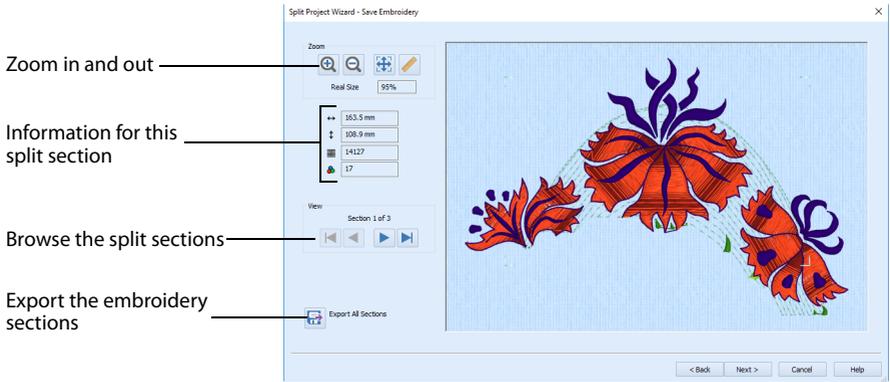
Use Running Stitch when the split lines cross large stitch areas.

## Next

Go to the Save Embroidery page.

*The Design Separator animation plays while the embroidery is split.*

# Save Embroidery



Use the Save Embroidery page to preview the split sections, and to export the split embroidery sections automatically.

*The Design Separator and ColorSort animations play while the design is split.*

## Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the embroidery.

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the embroidery and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the embroidery and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the embroidery to the preview area.

Click Real Size  to view the embroidery at a magnification as close as possible to the Real Size setting you chose in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

## Information

The information on the left shows the zoom level compared to Real Size, the stitch count , dimensions (height  and width ) and number of color changes  in the current section.

## View

The number of the section, and the total number of sections, is shown to the left of the preview.

Click the navigation icons to browse through the split sections.

Use Previous  and Next  to step through the split sections one at a time.

Use First  to jump to the first split section.

Use Last  to jump to the last split section.

## Export All Sections

Click the Export All Sections  button to export all the split embroidery project sections, as shown in the Save Embroidery preview pane, as a .vp4 file or in an alternative embroidery format.

The Split Project Wizard displays the Export dialog so you can select the embroidery format, then the Save or Save As dialog box so you can name your design. For more information on using Export, see “Export” on page 20.

Export in any of the following embroidery file formats: Brother/Baby Lock/Bernina PEC (.pec), Brother/Baby Lock/Bernina PES (.pes version 2 - 10), Compucon/Singer PSW (.xxx), Husqvarna Viking / Pfaff (.vp4, .vp3 and .vip), Husqvarna (.hus, .shv), Janome (.jef and .sew), Melco (.exp), Pfaff (.pcs), Tajima (.dst) and Toyota (.10\*).

*Note: The preferred file format for saving embroideries is .vp4, as this will preserve thread color information and notes.*

## File Name

When you save a split embroidery, you provide a single name which is used for all parts of the split embroidery. The split parts are distinguished by a two digit suffix that is automatically added to the file name.

## Suffixes for Multi-Hoop Splits

For a multi-hoop split, the split parts are suffixed with two digit numbers. The numbers start at 01 for the top left hoop, then increase across and down, for example Three Flowers Exported\_01 to Three Flowers Exported\_03. The numbers are used only to distinguish the individual sections. You can stitch out the sections in any order, as required.

## Back

Return to the Split Embroidery page.

## Next

Go to the Print Options page.

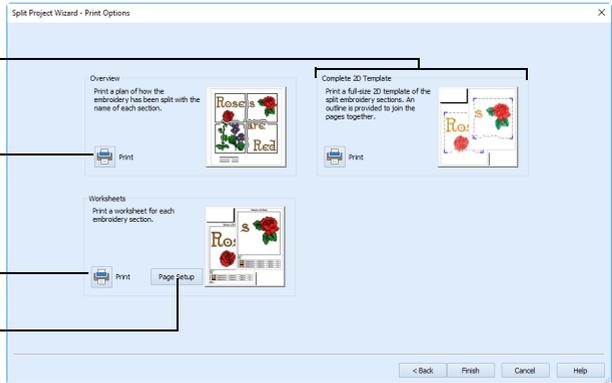
# Print Options

Full-size template for each section

Print a plan of the split sections

Print a worksheet for each section

Information used in worksheet



Use the Print Options page to print information on stitching and aligning your project.

## Back

Return to the Save Embroidery page.

## Finish

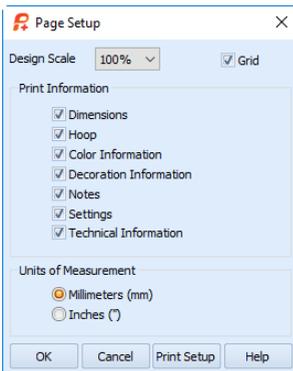
Accept the final embroidery project layout and close the Split Project Wizard.

## Worksheets

Print a worksheet for each embroidery section.

The worksheets illustrate the embroidery section, and list the threads to be used, and the quantity of each thread.

## Page Setup



Select the information to be printed with the embroidery, such as the Dimensions, Color Information and Technical Information. In addition, the scale may be altered and a grid turned on or off. Set the Units of Measurement for the Dimensions and Technical Information to millimeters or inches, as desired.

## Print Setup

Use Print Setup to select the destination printer and its connection. See “Print Setup” on page 480.

## Print

The Print dialog box appears, where you may specify number of copies, the destination printer, and other printer setup options. See “Print Setup” on page 480.

## Overview

Print a plan of the splitting of the embroidery, with the name of each section, and the number of stitches in each.

## Print

The Print dialog box appears, where you may specify number of copies, the destination printer, and other printer setup options. See “Print Setup” on page 480.

## Complete 2D Template

Print a full size 2D template of the split embroidery sections, with an outline around each section to indicate how to join them together.

See “Using the 2D Template” on page 226.

## Print

The Print dialog box appears, where you may specify number of copies, the destination printer, and other printer setup options. See “Print Setup” on page 480.

# Stitch Out and Align Split Project Sections

## Deciding the Stitchout Order

Generally, the split sections should be stitched out from the center. However, if the embroidery project only uses a few hoop areas, stitch out the section with the heaviest stitching first, as this will be the section which pulls the fabric the most.

As with all projects, it is best to try some test stitchouts before stitching the final version. It is particularly important to make test stitchouts of some adjacent sections if you think they may be difficult to align. For example, it may be difficult to align sections if the split line across a fully stitched area is very irregular, or when one of the sections has very heavy stitching.

## General Alignment Considerations

Some designs will require less precise alignment than others. If you have split an embroidery so that the split lines go between all the stitch areas, (for example, if no connectors were used), it is unlikely that you will need to have perfect alignment between sections. The main consideration would be to ensure the fabric is straight each time it is re-hooped.

However, when any stitch areas are split, alignment is crucial to achieving a good stitchout. Using alignment stitches and compensation of Low or High will help to align sections and eliminate gaps between them.

*The alignment stitches are created in a medium gray color.*

There are also various alignment aids including:

- The printed full size 2D template
- Worksheets for each section, optionally printed on transparency paper
- The hoop template supplied with the hoop for your machine
- Light sensitive pens that can be used to mark fabric, and other temporary fabric marks
- Fabric stiffening aids and stabilizers that combat pull and make alignment easier
- The needle and embroidery positioning controls on your embroidery machine

## Using the 2D Template

This is the most useful alignment aid. The 2D template shows the whole embroidery at the size it will be stitched out. Each hoop area is marked by corners and a large + in the center.

The hoop area corners show the extreme points of the stitchable area within the hoop. If you have a hoop template supplied with your hoop, this corresponds to the stitchable area shown on the hoop template, usually marked as a grid.

The template starts in the top left corner and works across and down to the bottom right corner. When cutting out and joining the pages together, you may find it easier to leave the first page uncut, then cut the dashed edge of the next page before aligning it to the first page and taping it in place. Continue like this until all the pages are joined together.

*You can also use the template as a guide to the size of your piece of fabric. The template shows the overall stitchable area that will be hooped, but you will need to allow extra fabric around the edges for physically hooping up the fabric.*

Use the template to mark hoop centers on the fabric. Use a pin to punch a hole through the template at each hoop center. Pin the template to the fabric and mark the fabric through each hole. If the point that is marked will be stitched over and hidden, use a pencil or a pen to mark the center point. If the point will be on open fabric, use a light-reactive fading pen.

## Using Other Alignment Aids

### Fabric Choice, Stiffeners and Stabilizers

In general, stiffer fabrics will resist pull and distortion better.

Fabric stiffening aids and stabilizers will combat pull and make alignment easier. In particular, iron-on backing helps to resist fabric distortion. You may wish to apply this to the fabric before marking the hoop centers or making any other alignment marks.

### Hoop Templates and Printed Worksheets

When hooping up each section, align the center marked on the fabric against the hoop template to guide the position of the fabric in the hoop. If you do not have a hoop template, use the printed worksheet at 100% scale for the section. You could also print the worksheet on transparency paper.

### Center Lines

You may also wish to mark lines between the hoop center points so you can line up the fabric to the center marks on the frame of the hoop. This is especially helpful if you do not have a hoop template. Use a light-reactive fading pen to mark temporary lines just before you hoop the fabric. An alternative is to iron creases into the fabric as lines between the center points.

## Stitching Out the First Section

First, ensure the fabric is straight in the hoop, according to the marked positions of the hoop centers. After selecting the embroidery on the machine, use the machine controls to position the needle over the center point marked on the fabric.

*If you are unable to do this on the machine, this means that you have not hooped up your fabric with sufficient accuracy. You will need to move the fabric in the hoop and try again.*

If you did not generate alignment stitches, simply start stitching out.

If you have alignment stitches in your split embroidery sections, each section starts with a sequence of movement stitches. These movement stitches jump to the corner of a rectangle within the stitchable area of the hoop, that is half way across the overlap between the hoop areas. For the first section, skip past these movement stitches and then start stitching out.

## Aligning a Section to Previous Sections

First, ensure the fabric is straight in the hoop, according to the marked positions of the hoop centers. After selecting the embroidery on the machine, use the machine controls to position the needle over the center point marked on the fabric.

### Aligning With No Alignment Stitches

Use the 2D template or full size worksheet to confirm that the embroidery will connect correctly to previous sections. This is easier to do if you have printed the template or worksheet on transparency paper. If you created test stitchouts, this will help you judge the positioning according to the effect of the fabric properties.

### Aligning With Corner or Baste Alignment Stitches

The previous sections will have placed alignment stitches that mark the corner positions, either as a small set of corner stitches or lines of basting stitch that meet at the corner. Use the machine controls to step through the sequence of movement stitches that should match up to the corners.

Adjust the machine so that the needle is over the appropriate corner for each movement stitch position. If there are no split stitch areas around the edges of the section that need joining to previous sections, your alignment should now be accurate enough to start stitching.

*As the number of sections that must be stitched out increases, the type of fabric and embroidery become even more relevant for obtaining a good stitchout. Accurately hooped fabric and the alignment aids will help, but test stitchouts are also important.*

If the section must join to stitch areas in previous sections, use the 2D template or full size worksheet to confirm that the embroidery will connect correctly. This is easier to do if you have printed the template or worksheet on transparency paper. If the alignment is too far out, it may be necessary to hoop up your fabric again.

Before starting to stitch, check the alignment stitches of the previous sections, and trim any that may be overlapped by the section you are about to stitch out. New alignment stitches will be added at the end of this section, to replace any that you trim.

# Split Project Wizard Examples

Use the Split Project Wizard to split very large projects, or use it to split smaller projects that are still too large to fit into your largest hoop.

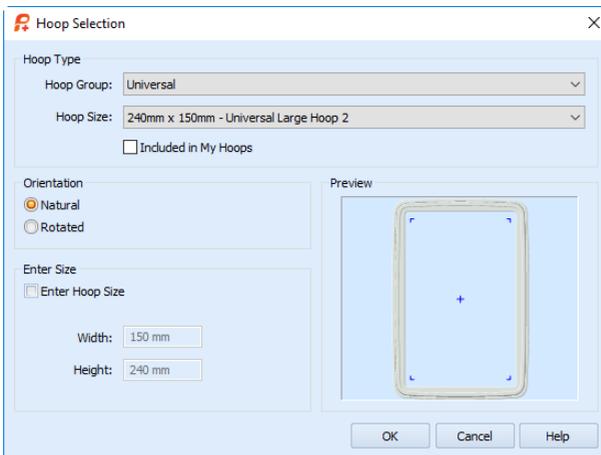
## Split a Flower Embroidery

*The Split Project Wizard is only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*

- 1 Click File, Open .  
*The hoop size shows the whole project, not the actual hoop size which will be selected before stitching out.*
- 2 Browse to the folder Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+Inspiration\Floral\Stitch and select the file Three Flowers.
- 3 Click the Wizards tab.
- 4 Click Split Project . The Split Embroidery page of the Split Project Wizard will appear.
- 5 Click Change Hoop to select the hoop and its orientation. The Hoop Selection dialog box will appear.
- 6 In the Hoop Selection dialog box select Universal from the Hoop Group drop-down list.
- 7 From the Hoop Size drop-down list, select 240 x 150mm - Universal Large Hoop 2.



*It is not necessary to choose the hoop orientation, as this will be set automatically to create the least number of hoopings. However, the split lines may be more pleasing in one orientation, so it is worth checking the results with both orientations.*



*For a large embroidery that is to be split into several sections, use the largest single-part hoop available for your machine.*

- 8 Click OK.

9 Now select the settings for splitting the embroidery. *When splitting your project, settings can be adjusted to minimize cutting the embroidery. Use the preview when selecting the hoop and Overlap.*

10 Check that the Intelligent Split Method is selected. *Intelligent Split calculates a split line that cuts through the minimum number of stitches. When Intelligent Split is in use, the Compensation settings are unavailable (grayed out).*

11 For Alignment Stitch Style, select None.

*Depending on your machine, you may prefer to choose no Alignment stitches (many machines with this hoop type have special positioning features; for example HUSQVARNA VIKING® Designer Diamond Royale or PFAFF® creative sensation Pro).*

*For other machines, use Corner alignment, as these are lightly stitched embroideries, and there are few splits within design elements.*

12 Check that Connection is set to Trim, as the split lines will not cross large stitch areas.

13 Leave Overlap at the default of 50mm.

14 Click Next. The Save Embroidery page appears.

15 Use the View Next ► and View Previous ◀ buttons to step through the sections and check the split lines for the whole design.

16 The split line has cut through the middle flower. Click Back to change the overlap.

17 Set the Overlap to 57mm, then click Next. The split line no longer cuts through the red petals of the flower.

*You can adjust the Overlap to avoid splitting an area. Increasing or decreasing overlap may make it easier for Intelligent Split to fit all of an embroidery into one section, or to cut the embroidery in an inconspicuous place.*

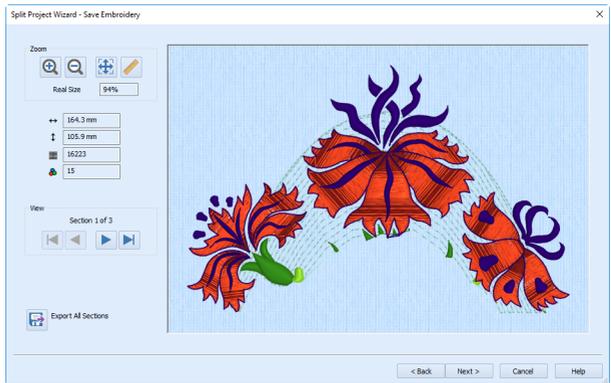
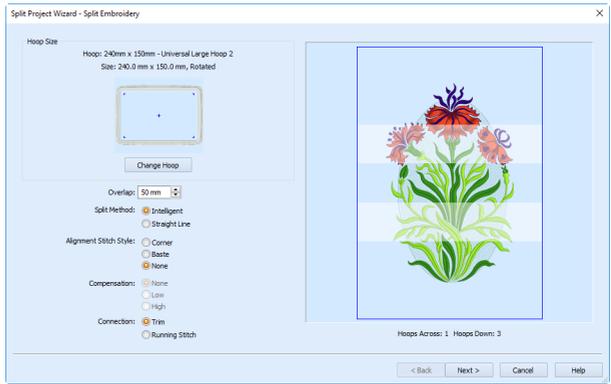
18 Click Export All Sections  to save the project as numbered sections. The Export dialog box will appear.

19 In File Format, ensure that .vp4 is selected, then click OK. The Save As dialog box will appear.

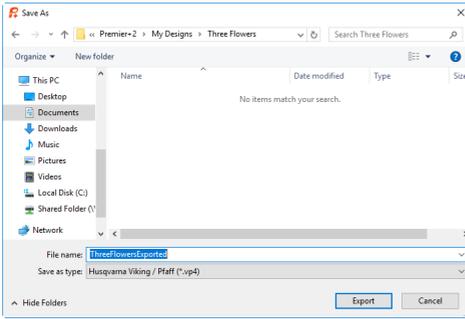
*The preferred file format for saving embroideries is .vp4, as this will preserve thread color information and Notes.*

20 In the Save In box, browse to the folder Documents\Premier+2\My Designs.

21 Click "New Folder", and name the new folder Three Flowers. Then browse to the new folder.



- 22 In the File Name box, enter the name 'Three FlowersExported', then click Export.



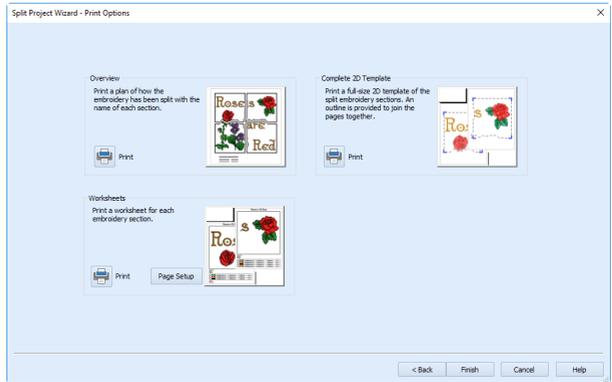
The files will be saved as the files *Three Flowers\_Exported\_01* to *Three Flowers\_Exported\_03*. Creating a new folder makes it easier to find all the sections.

- 23 Click Next. The Print Options page will appear.  
If you have not saved the files a warning message will be displayed.

- 24 In the Overview area, click Print .

- 25 To print, in the Print dialog box click OK. An overview of how the embroidery has been split will be printed.

The Overview shows how the embroidery has been split, how each split section has been named, and the number of stitches involved. Use this to determine the order which you think is best for stitching out the split sections.



- 26 In the Complete 2D Template area click Print, and then OK. (If necessary, use Properties to change printing to single side.) A full-size 2D template of the split embroidery sections is printed, with an outline around each section to indicate how to join them together.

Cut out the 2D template and attach the sections as a guide for positioning fabric within the hoop.

- 27 In the Worksheets area, click Page Setup.

- 28 In the Page Setup dialog box, set Design Scale to 50%, and click OK.

- 29 Click Print and then OK to print the worksheets.

The worksheets give the dimensions of the section, the number of stitches, information on the thread colors used and the Notes and Settings for the embroidery.

- 30 Click Finish to close the Split Project Wizard.

Use the PhotoStitch Wizard  to create new embroidered PhotoStitch portraits automatically from photos, including photos from social media sites. Also browse to a photo on your computer, or acquire pictures from a digital camera or scanner.

Create a color, sepia, monochrome or color tile embroidery, or a linear embroidery using a single thread. Remove the picture background to enhance the subject.

After creating a PhotoStitch embroidery, use the Frame and Border features to surround the whole embroidery.

*The PhotoStitch Wizard is available only if you own PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*

*The Color PhotoStitch, Sepia PhotoStitch, Monochrome PhotoStitch and Color Tile PhotoStitch options in the PhotoStitch Wizard are available only if you own PREMIER+™ 2 ULTRA. Further information can be found in the PREMIER+™ 2 PhotoStitch Reference Guide. The full PREMIER+™ 2 PhotoStitch module is available only if you own PREMIER+™ 2 ULTRA.*

## Color PhotoStitch Embroidery

Create a PhotoStitch embroidery from a color photo, generating a randomized pattern of stitches, using multiple threads for a full color result.

Color PhotoStitch works best when using pictures with a good color range, and a well defined, differently colored or transparent, background.



## Sepia PhotoStitch Embroidery

Create a sepia embroidery from an old sepia or black and white picture, or create a sepia effect embroidery from a color picture, to give a heritage look, similar to old photos. PhotoStitch generates a randomized pattern of stitches, using sepia colored threads.

Sepia PhotoStitch works best when using pictures with good contrast, and a well defined or transparent background.



## Monochrome PhotoStitch Embroidery

Create a PhotoStitch embroidery from a black and white photo, generating a randomized pattern of stitches, using threads in grayscale color ways.

Monochrome PhotoStitch works best when using pictures with good contrast, and a well defined or transparent background.



## Color Tile PhotoStitch Embroidery

Create a PhotoStitch embroidery from a color photo, generating small blocks of stitches in varying shapes with a tiled effect, using multiple threads for a full color result. PhotoStitch automatically generates tiled blocks of stitching in the selected colors. Select from diamond, square or hexagon shaped blocks.



The color tile method is ideal for achieving artistic, impressionistic embroideries. Color Tile PhotoStitch Embroidery works best when using pictures with good contrast, and a well defined or transparent background.

## Linear PhotoStitch Embroidery

Create a PhotoStitch embroidery from a color or monochrome photo, generating a linear pattern of stitches, or a Maze or Spiral artistic effect, using one thread for a single color result. There are six effects available.



Linear PhotoStitch works best when using a photo with good contrast on the face, and without areas of deep shadow. If the background is transparent, parallel scan lines will be created.

## PhotoStitch Wizard

Select the PhotoStitch Wizard in the Wizards tab to create an embroidery from a photo. The Choose Embroidery Type page of the PhotoStitch Wizard will appear.

### PhotoStitch Into Hoop

Use the PhotoStitch Into Hoop  option to create a new embroidery in the PhotoStitch Wizard that is a best-fit to the currently selected hoop.

*If desired, click Change Hoop  and choose a different hoop size before using PhotoStitch Into Hoop.*

Click PhotoStitch Into Hoop  and the Choose Embroidery Type page of the PhotoStitch Wizard will appear. Choose the desired design type, then choose a picture and step through the rest of the PhotoStitch Wizard. When you Finish, the new embroidery will be placed in the center of the hoop. Depending on its shape, it will fit in the hoop vertically and/or horizontally. Use Save  to keep the new embroidery in multipart .vp4 format, together with any other embroideries in the work area, and use Export  to save in other formats, and optimized for stitching.

### Shortcuts

- Wizards Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, W, P, H

## PhotoStitch Into Rectangle

Use the PhotoStitch Into Rectangle  option to create a new embroidery in the PhotoStitch Wizard that is a best-fit to a rectangular area you draw.

Click PhotoStitch Into Rectangle  and the mouse pointer will change to the draw rectangle pointer . Click and drag on the work area to draw a rectangle of the desired size. When you release the mouse button, the Choose Embroidery Type page of the PhotoStitch Wizard will appear.

*If the rectangle is wrong and you wish to try again, click Cancel when the PhotoStitch Wizard appears. Then click PhotoStitch Into Rectangle again.*

Choose the desired design type, then choose a picture and step through the rest of the PhotoStitch Wizard. When you Finish, the new embroidery will be placed where you drew the rectangle, and will fit the rectangle proportionally, depending on the picture shape. Use Save  to keep the new embroidery in multipart .vp4 format, together with any other embroideries in the work area, and use Export  to save in other formats, and optimized for stitching.

### Shortcuts

- Wizards Tab, PhotoStitch Wizard Drop-Down: 
- Keys: Alt, W, P R

## Selecting and Editing Pictures

In many cases the cropping, background removal, autolevel, red eye, color saturation, and detail enhancement features included in the PhotoStitch Wizard will be all that you need when editing photos to make embroideries.

It is recommended to keep your original picture in case you wish to adjust it again with different options. Also, save the adjusted picture, particularly if you have spent some time removing the background.

*Additional effects and tools are available in PREMIER+™ 2 PhotoStitch, if owned.*

## General Considerations

The PhotoStitch Wizard is most easily used with photos in which the person's face is well defined, and the background color contrasts well with the face and hair.

For PhotoStitch, best results may be obtained where the background is almost completely removed. Removing the heavily contrasting background colors may bring out subtle color variations in the person's features.

*Try removing the background in PREMIER+™ 2 PhotoStitch, if owned, or picture editing software. Save the picture before making the PhotoStitch.*

Removing the background can not only remove objects that draw attention from the subject of the picture, but can also enable Autolevel to enhance the color.



Before tidying: there are unwanted items in the background of the picture



After tidying: the building is now the main point of focus

*This photo was first cropped, then Flood Fill and the Erasers used to remove the background. Autolevel adjusted the color, brightening the picture.*

## Cropping Pictures

The Rotate and Crop Picture page of the PhotoStitch Wizard can be used to crop the picture to the desired proportions.

*To obtain more detail on an individual's face it is often helpful to crop so that only the head and part of the shoulders are shown.*

## Keeping and Removing Parts of the Picture

Use Flood Fill  to remove an evenly colored background. If the photo has a graduated background, such as a cloudy sky, use Flood Fill repeatedly, followed by cleaning with the Large Eraser  to remove remaining specks. Very detailed backgrounds with varied coloring, such as a street scene, are best removed with the Large , Medium  and Small  Erasers.

If the face or hair are the same color as the background, Flood Fill may remove them as well. To prevent this, break the area into two parts with the Small Eraser , then remove the part that you don't want.



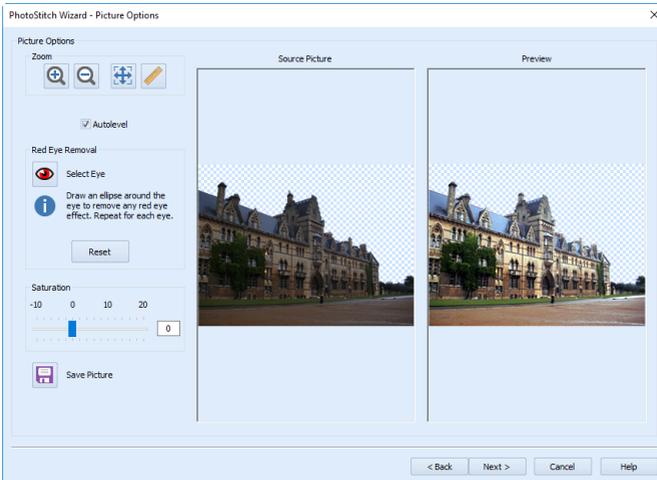
The face is the same color as the background, so Flood Fill removes part of it



Two short lines drawn with the Eraser separate the face from the background, so it will no longer be removed

# Improving Contrast and Color

Autolevel improves brightness and contrast in most photos, and can be used to bring out the color in underexposed pictures.



Autolevel does not make new adjustments each time a picture is loaded.

*Occasionally Autolevel does not improve the appearance of a picture, and may need to be switched off. Use Red Eye Removal  to reverse the red eye effect caused when flash is reflected back by the retina of the eye.*

*Click the Select Eye button  and draw an ellipse round the affected area.*

*Increasing saturation enhances the intensity of colors, for instance to make pale skin tones appear 'warmer'.*

## Enhancing Details

The significance of details in a picture is dependant on the overall size of the picture after it is cropped. Cropping the picture may bring out the required detail, as may increasing the size of the embroidery.

Even so, very small details in a picture may sometimes be ignored. To enhance these details, select Enhance Detail in the PhotoStitch Embroidery Options page of the PhotoStitch Wizard.

*The effect of Enhance Detail varies with each picture, and it is always off by default.*

## Photos for Color PhotoStitch

A wide range of picture types are suitable for creating a Color PhotoStitch. The primary factor, however, is to use photos where the face is well defined, especially the eyes, and the color is good.

*An imperfect photo can still make a very good embroidery. Red eye can be removed, and the color in underexposed photos brought out by Autolevel. Slight overexposure and cold lighting can be improved by adjusting saturation.*

A plain, well contrasted background will be easy to remove, for example a picture taken against a blue sky, or a brightly painted wall. If the picture was taken against a patterned background, the background color may blend in with the person's hair. This type of background may take a little longer to remove.

## Photos for Sepia and Monochrome PhotoStitch

When using old sepia or monochrome pictures for a sepia or monochrome PhotoStitch, choose a photo with good contrast and detail. A plain and well defined background will be easier to remove.

*To improve definition and contrast on old photos, temporarily remove the photo from its frame, and use a high resolution when scanning it. Where possible, avoid grainy prints. A scan from the negative may work better.*

When using color photos for a sepia or monochrome PhotoStitch, choose a photo with good contrast and a well defined background, or one that can be easily removed.

*A picture with good contrast, but poor color, may work well as a sepia or monochrome PhotoStitch.*

## Photos for Color Tile PhotoStitch

Use a strong image with contrasting color areas for a Color Tile PhotoStitch Embroidery, as fine details and color changes will probably not show. Use a well defined photograph with varied areas of color.

The color tile method is ideal for achieving artistic, impressionistic embroideries.

*A slightly blurred picture with good color areas may make a good tile embroidery.*

## Photos for Linear PhotoStitch

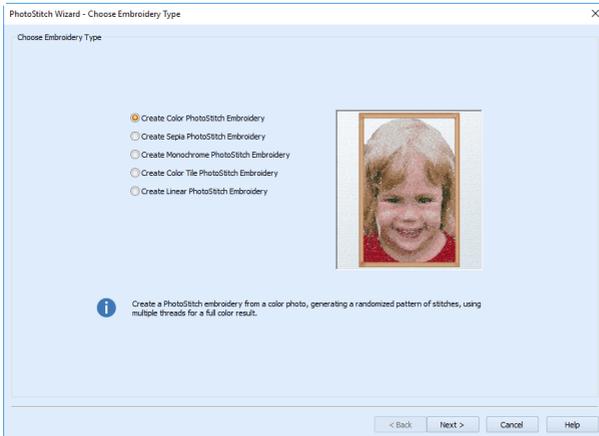
Pictures for Linear, and Linear Artistic, PhotoStitch work best when they have strong contrast on the facial features, and no areas of shadow on the face.

*Photos with face to camera tend to work better than those taken from the side, as the other side of the face is in shadow.*

*A pale background is often better than a dark background. Try removing the background in PREMIER+™ 2 PhotoStitch, if owned, or picture editing software. Save the picture before making the PhotoStitch.*

# Using the PhotoStitch Wizard

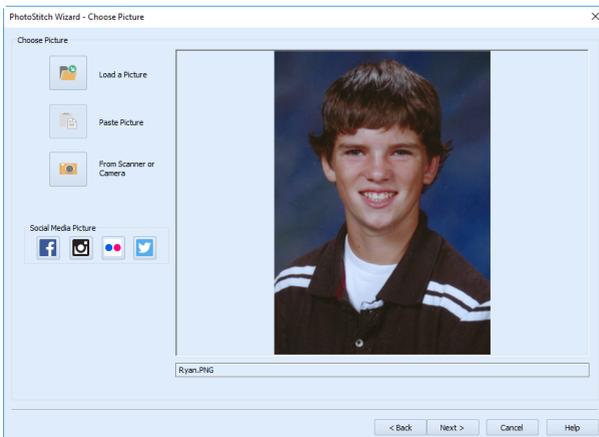
- 1 Start the Wizard. It opens at the Choose Embroidery Type page.



- 2 Click the desired option. Choose from:
  - Create Color PhotoStitch Embroidery
  - Create Sepia PhotoStitch Embroidery
  - Create Monochrome PhotoStitch Embroidery
  - Create Color Tile PhotoStitch Embroidery
  - Create Linear PhotoStitch Embroidery.

*Color PhotoStitch, Sepia PhotoStitch, Monochrome PhotoStitch and Color Tile PhotoStitch options are available only if you own PREMIER+™ 2 ULTRA.*

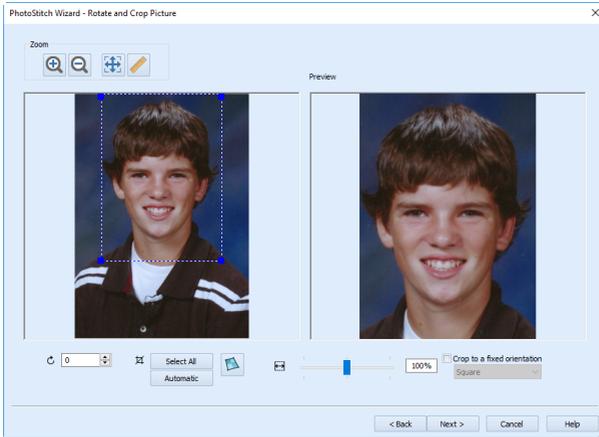
- 3 Click Next. The Choose Picture page appears.



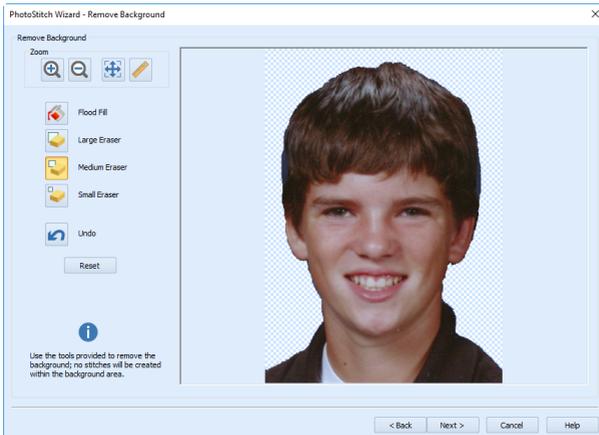
- 4 Click the desired option from:
  - Load a Picture , to select an existing picture file.
  - Paste Picture  to load the picture in the Clipboard Block.
  - From Scanner or Camera  to obtain a picture directly from a scanner or digital camera.

• Social Media Picture to load a picture from Facebook® , Instagram® , Flickr®  ● ● ●, or Twitter® .

- 5 Select your picture. The picture will appear in the preview pane.
- 6 Click Next. The Rotate and Crop Picture page appears.
- 7 If required, rotate the picture to any angle from 0 to 359 degrees. This can be useful when straightening scanned pictures.
- 8 If required, adjust the crop lines to select the desired area of the picture, or use Perspective Correction. Click Automatic to start again. Click and drag anywhere inside the crop box to move it. *The dotted lines show the crop size.* Alternatively, crop to a fixed orientation, selecting from square, portrait and landscape.

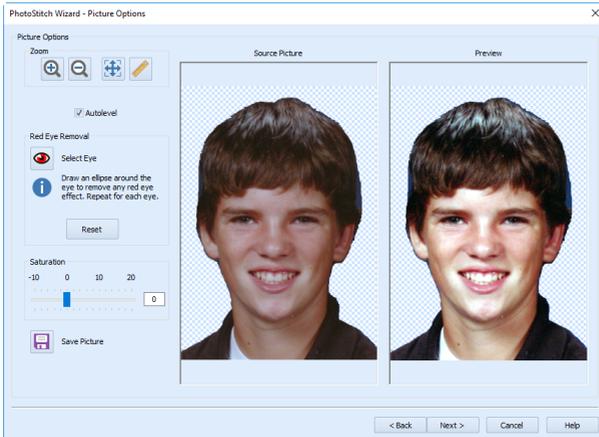


- 9 Click Next. The Remove Background page appears.
- 10 Use Flood Fill  to remove adjacent areas with a similar color. Use the Large , Medium  and Small  Erasers to 'wipe out' background areas. Use Undo  to reverse the last action, and Reset to go back to the original picture.



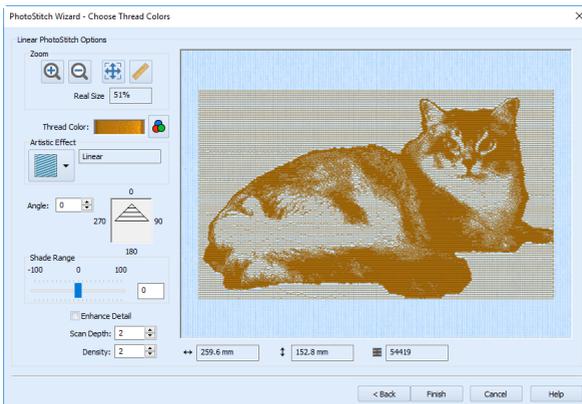
*For a linear PhotoStitch it is unimportant if a few small specks of background remain, as the background stitch lines will be unaffected. When making a color PhotoStitch it is best to remove all specks of background as they may lead to 'stray stitches'.*

- 11 Click Next. The Picture Options page appears.
- 12 Autolevel is initially enabled. It adjusts brightness and contrast automatically. Deselect it if the colors appear distorted.
- 13 To remove the red eye effect caused by flash photography, select Red Eye Removal  and draw an ellipse around the affected area.
- 14 Increase saturation to make colors more intense, for example to make pale skin tones appear 'warmer'.



*Save the picture if desired, in order to adjust the project later.*

- 15 Click Next. The Design Size page appears. Set the size for the embroidery, using Height or Width. The picture proportions are kept as you resize.
- 16 Click Next. If Linear PhotoStitch Embroidery was selected in the Choose Embroidery Type page, the Choose Thread Colors page for Linear PhotoStitch will appear.
- 17 To change the thread color, click Thread Color , then select a new color in the Color Selection dialog box.
- 18 Select an artistic effect from the drop-down list. The available options are Linear, Spiral and four Maze effects.



- 19 Use the Shade Range slider to adjust the range of light and dark in the picture. *This page also displays the number of stitches in the embroidery, its height, width, and the total number of color changes.*
- 20 Select Enhance Detail to bring out detail in the picture, for example in a photo where the face is clear, but the contrast is poor.

*Scan Depth refers to the distance between the lines that produce an embroidery from a picture. The lower the Scan Depth figure, the finer the detail in the embroidery, and the more stitches produced. Density changes the density of the stitching along each line, where 1 is the standard default density and 40 is the most open, with the fewest stitches.*

- 21 Click Finish to close the wizard.

## Creating a Color PhotoStitch

*If you own PREMIER+™ 2 ULTRA, the extra options Color PhotoStitch, Sepia PhotoStitch, Monochrome PhotoStitch and Color Tile PhotoStitch will be available in the Choose Embroidery Type page.*

- 22 In the Choose Embroidery Type page, select an option and click Next.

- 23 Progress through the following pages, setting options as desired and clicking Next:

- Choose Picture
- Rotate and Crop Picture
- Remove Background
- Picture Options
- Design Size

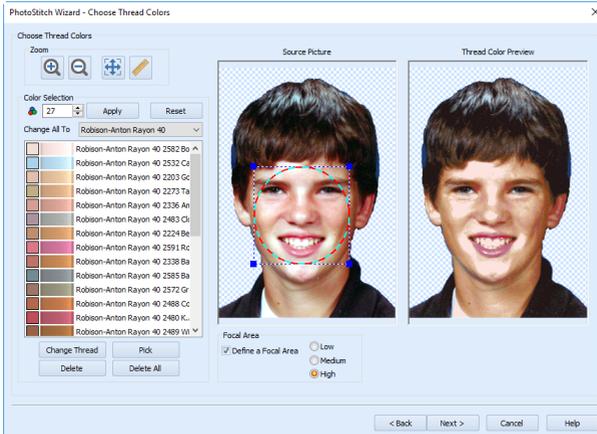
- 24 The Choose Thread Colors page appears.

- 25 Adjust the number of colors with the arrows in the Color Selection box, or type in the required number of colors.

*If desired, Focal Area can be used to concentrate on the flesh tones in a face, rather than the color of the hair or clothes.*

- 26 To change a particular thread color, select the color, click Change Thread, then select a new color in the Color Selection dialog box.

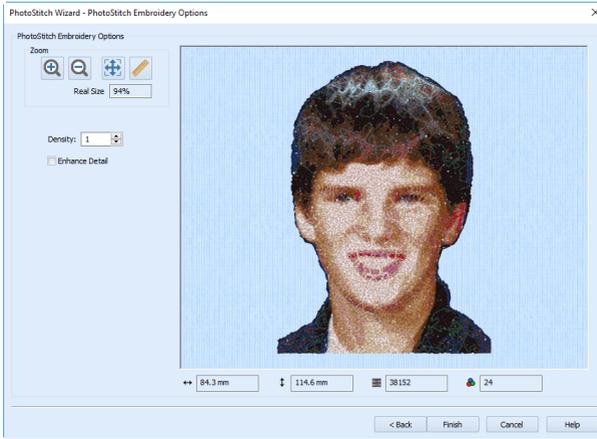
*Remove the selected color from the list with Delete, or all colors in the list with Delete All. Go back to the original color list with Reset.*



*Delete All enables you to control the exact colors used. Delete all of the colors, then choose new colors with Pick.*

- 27 Click Next. The PhotoStitch Embroidery Options page appears.

- 28 Select Enhance Detail to bring out detail in the picture, for example in a photo where the face is clear, but the contrast is poor.



*Enhance Detail does not change the colors used, it affects the way that those colors are used.*

*Density changes the density of the stitching where 1 is the standard default density and 9 is the most open, with the fewest stitches.*

*This page also displays the number of stitches in the embroidery, its height, width, and the total number of color changes.*

- 29 Click Finish to close the wizard.

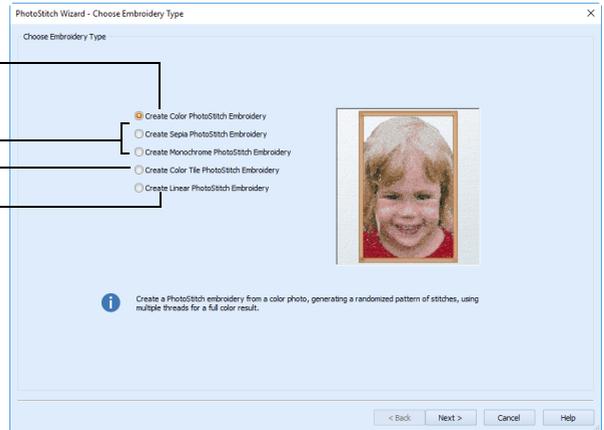
# Choose Embroidery Type

Create a full color embroidery

Use monochrome or sepia

Use a color tile effect

Use a single thread to create a single color embroidery



*The Color PhotoStitch, Sepia PhotoStitch, Monochrome PhotoStitch and Color Tile PhotoStitch options are available only if you own PREMIER+™ 2 ULTRA.*

## Create Color PhotoStitch Embroidery

Create a PhotoStitch embroidery from a color photo, generating a randomized pattern of stitches, using multiple threads for a full color result.

Color PhotoStitch works best when using pictures with a good color range, and a well defined, differently colored or transparent, background.



## Create Sepia PhotoStitch Embroidery

Create a sepia embroidery from an old sepia or black and white picture, or create a sepia effect embroidery from a color picture, to give a heritage look, similar to old photos. PhotoStitch generates a randomized pattern of stitches, using sepia colored threads.

Sepia PhotoStitch works best when using pictures with good contrast, and a well defined or transparent background.



## Create Monochrome PhotoStitch Embroidery

Create a PhotoStitch embroidery from a black and white photo, generating a randomized pattern of stitches, using threads in grayscale color ways.

Monochrome PhotoStitch works best when using pictures with good contrast, and a well defined or transparent background.



## Create Color Tile PhotoStitch Embroidery

Create a PhotoStitch embroidery from a color photo, generating small blocks of stitches in varying shapes with a tiled effect, using multiple threads for a full color result. PhotoStitch automatically generates tiled blocks of stitching in the selected colors.

Select from diamond, square or hexagon shaped blocks.

The color tile method is ideal for achieving artistic, impressionistic embroideries.

Color Tile PhotoStitch Embroidery works best when using pictures with good contrast, and a well defined or transparent background.



## Create Linear PhotoStitch Embroidery

Create a PhotoStitch embroidery from a color or monochrome photo, generating a linear pattern of stitches, or a Maze or Spiral effect, using one thread for a single color result. There are six effects available.

Linear PhotoStitch works best when using a picture with good contrast on the face, and without areas of deep shadow. If the background is transparent, parallel scan lines will be created.



## Next

Go to the Choose Picture page.

## Choose Picture

Select a picture file on your computer

Paste a copied picture

Import a file from a scanner or camera

Load a picture from Facebook®, Instagram®, Flickr®, or Twitter®

The picture is previewed

PhotoStitch Wizard - Choose Picture

Choose Picture

Load a Picture

Paste Picture

From Scanner or Camera

Social Media Picture

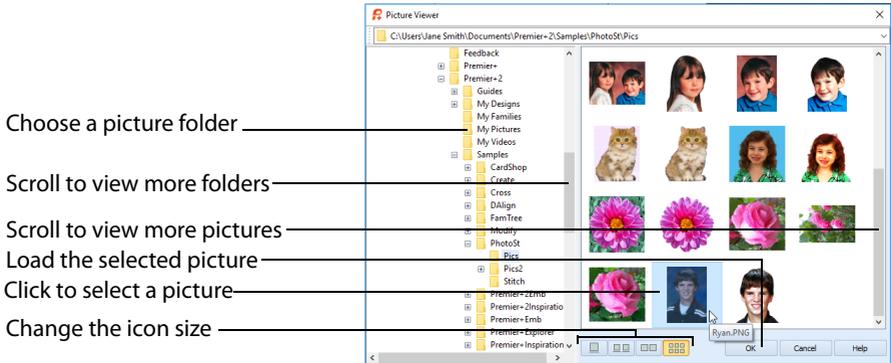
Ryan.PNG

< Back Next > Cancel Help

Use the Choose Picture page to select the picture you wish to convert to a PhotoStitch.

## Load a Picture

Click Load a Picture  to open a picture from your My Pictures folder. Alternatively, browse to a folder elsewhere on your computer. After selecting a picture, the preview box will show the selected picture with its name underneath.



The following file formats may be loaded: Windows or OS2 Bitmap (.bmp), JPEG-JFIF Compliant (.jpg, .jif, .jpeg), PatternCAD (.4dq), Portable Network Graphics (.png), Tagged Image File Format uncompressed (.tiff, .tif), Windows Meta File (.wmf), Windows Enhanced Meta File (.emf) and Windows Icon (.ico).

## Load a Picture with the Viewer

- 1 Click Load a Picture  and the Picture Viewer dialog box appears.
- 2 Double-click to expand the folders until the desired folder is highlighted.
- 3 If desired, change the icon size to see more or fewer pictures.
- 4 Click on a picture to select it.
- 5 Click OK to open the picture with its name underneath.
- 6 Click Cancel to exit without selecting a picture.

## Paste Picture

Click Paste Picture  to load the picture in the Clipboard Block. The picture is shown in the preview area.

*Paste Picture is not available if the Clipboard Block is empty.*

## From Scanner or Camera

Use From Scanner or Camera  to display the program that is used to acquire pictures from a scanner, a digital camera or another suitable device. Only devices that use Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) can be used to obtain pictures.

*WIA is a standard method for transferring pictures from the device's scanning or downloading program to another program. If the manufacturer provides the appropriate software components needed for WIA compliance, these should have been installed when the device was installed.*

Each scanner or digital camera has its own program that is used to scan or download pictures. Refer to the manual or online help provided with the program for instructions, if required. When the device and its software finish processing the picture, it will be shown in the Choose Picture page.

## Social Media Picture

Load a picture from Facebook® , Instagram® , Flickr® , or Twitter® . Log in to the Social Media website to load the desired picture.

## Preview and Name

Under the preview pane is a box for the name of the chosen file. If the picture is a scanned image then the box will contain the words Scanned Picture.

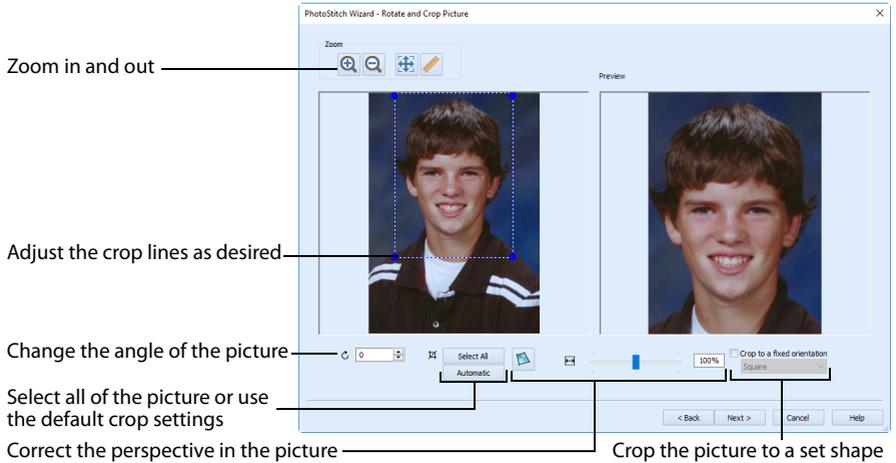
## Back

Return to the Choose Embroidery Type page.

## Next

Go to the Rotate and Crop Picture page.

# Rotate and Crop Picture



If required, rotate the picture to any angle from 0 to 359 degrees. This can be useful when straightening scanned pictures.

Use the Crop lines to select the section of the picture that is to be used to create the PhotoStitch. If required, click and drag the handles on the boundary line of the crop area to select the desired part of the picture. Use Perspective Correction to adjust for perspective or skew.

*To obtain more detail on an individual's face it is often helpful to crop so that only the head and part of the shoulders are shown.*

*Sometimes, the automatic crop area may not appear to remove as much background color as possible. This can happen when the background color appears to be a plain color, such as white, but actually has minor variations that are not immediately visible. For example, this often happens with the JPEG-JFIF Compliant (\*.jpg, .jif, .jpeg) picture format.*

Click and drag anywhere inside the crop box to move the crop box.

*If you need to expand a crop box again, make sure it is not touching the edge of the frame, as this will stop it expanding.*

## Select All

Click the Select All button to select the whole picture. Alternatively, double-click the picture to select the whole picture.

## Automatic

Click Automatic to set the crop lines back to the default position for the current picture.

## Orientation

Use Orientation to crop the picture to a fixed orientation. Choose from: Square, Portrait and Landscape.

## Perspective Correction

To remove the effects of perspective in a picture, or to correct skew, select Perspective Correction . When using Perspective Correction, the crop handles are red.

Move the red handles so that the crop lines frame the picture. Use the Zoom tools to view the outline of the picture more clearly. Drag the Stretch Picture  slider to make the picture in the Preview wider or narrower.

## Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the picture or embroidery.

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the picture or embroidery and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the picture or embroidery and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the picture or embroidery to the preview area.

Click Real Size  to view the picture at its real size in pixels. This means that one pixel of the picture uses one pixel of the screen. Alternatively, view the embroidery at a magnification as close as possible to the Real Size setting you chose in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

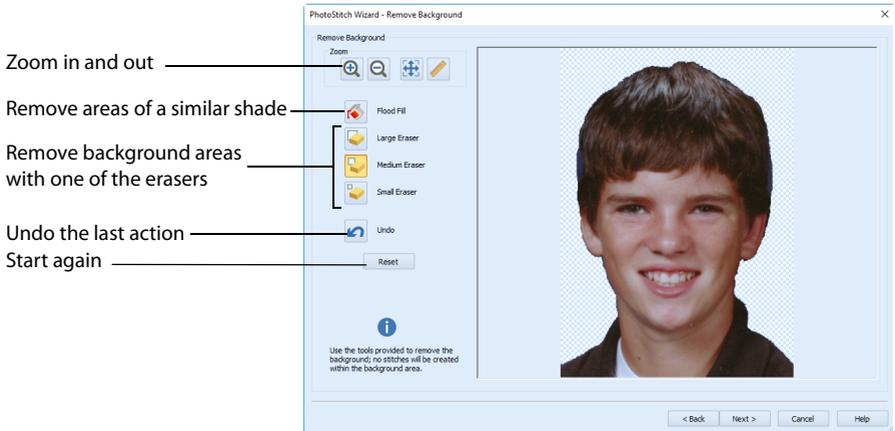
## Back

Return to the Choose Picture page.

## Next

Go to the Remove Background page.

# Remove Background



Use the Remove Background page to remove the background from the photo, so as to emphasize the person's face, or other subject.

*Best results may be obtained if the background is completely removed, leaving only the face itself. Removing heavily contrasting colors in the background brings out the subtle color variations in the person's features.*

*For a Linear PhotoStitch it is unimportant if a few small specks of background remain, as the background stitch lines will be unaffected. When making a color PhotoStitch it is best to remove all specks of background as they may lead to 'stray stitches.'*

## Flood Fill

Select Flood Fill  to remove sections of similarly colored background automatically.

Flood Fill looks for areas with a similar color shade, and replaces them with a transparent background.

*Use Flood Fill in conjunction with Undo on varied backgrounds such as a cloudy sky. A small change in the position of the click may remove desired parts of the picture along with the background.*

Flood Fill works best on relatively evenly colored areas. Areas with gradations of colors can be removed in several pieces, but patterned areas may be easier to remove with the Large Eraser.

*Some backgrounds may be a similar color to the hair or skin of the person in the foreground. Draw a line around the person with the Small Eraser, then remove the background with Flood Fill.*

*When Flood Fill is used to remove a very brightly colored background, for example a bright blue sky, there may be a colored edge around the subject of the picture. This can affect the final embroidery. Use the Small Eraser to carefully remove the colored edge.*

## Eraser

The Eraser removes any part of the image that it is used on, leaving a transparent background. Three sizes are available.

*Lift the mouse button or graphics tablet pen frequently when using one of the erasers. Then if you make a mistake, and need to Undo, you will not lose much work.*

## Large Eraser

Use the Large Eraser  to remove large areas of background, and to clean remaining fragments of background from a picture.

*Patterned backgrounds often contain pixels of widely varying colors, and a few of these may remain when the area has been cleaned with Flood Fill. Remove these with the Large Eraser.*

## Medium Eraser

Use the Medium Eraser  to clean relatively detailed areas.

## Small Eraser

Use the Small Eraser  to remove fine details, or to draw a line to separate a desired area from an unwanted one.

## Defining Areas with the Small Eraser

Open your chosen picture in the Remove Background page of the ExpressDesign Wizard, and start removing the background with Flood Fill.



If a desired area of the picture is removed, click Undo.

Select the Small Eraser .



Draw a line to separate the background area from the picture. *You may need to do this in more than one place.*



Select Flood Fill again. Continue removing the background area with Flood Fill. *Use Undo if required parts of the picture are removed.*

Repeat this process where other parts of the picture are the same color as the adjoining background.

## Undo

Use Undo  to reverse the last action.

## Reset

Use Reset to reverse all changes made to the picture on the current wizard page. Changes made on previous pages are retained.

## Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the picture or embroidery.

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the picture or embroidery and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the picture or embroidery and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the picture or embroidery to the preview area.

Click Real Size  to view the picture at its real size in pixels. This means that one pixel of the picture uses one pixel of the screen. Alternatively, view the embroidery at a magnification as close as possible to the Real Size setting you chose in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

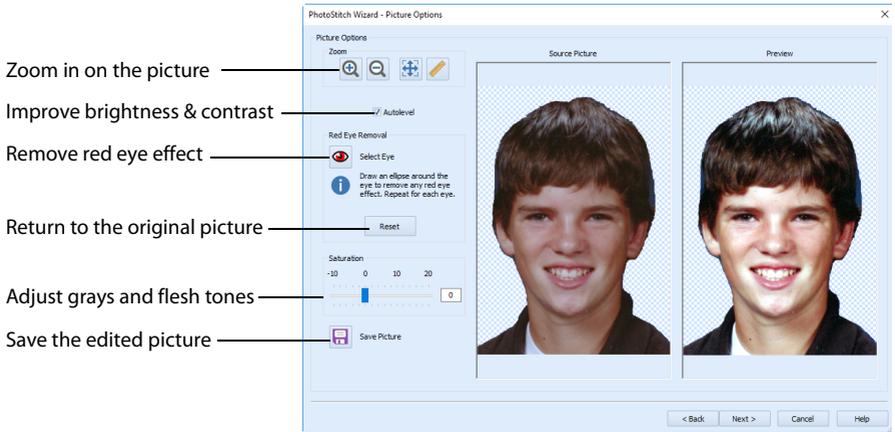
## Back

Return to the Rotate and Crop Picture page.

## Next

Go to the Picture Options page.

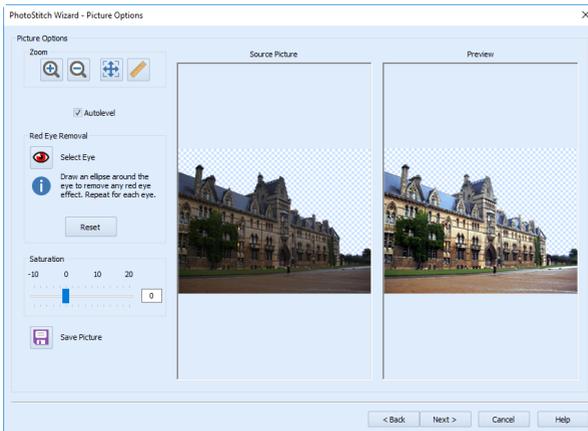
# Picture Options



Use the Picture Options page to remove Red Eye from your picture, and to adjust saturation and contrast in the picture.

## Autolevel

Autolevel improves brightness and contrast in most photos, and can be used to bring out the color in underexposed pictures.



By default Autolevel is enabled.

Autolevel does not make new adjustments each time a picture is loaded.

*Occasionally Autolevel does not improve the appearance of a picture, and may need to be switched off.*

## Red Eye Removal

Use Red Eye Removal  to reverse the red eye effect caused when flash is reflected back by the retina of the eye.

*Red Eye Removal can also be used to remove other intrusive reds, such as red lights.*

## Select Eye

Use Select Eye  to select Red Eye removal.

## Remove Red Eye Effect from a Picture

- 1 Click Select Eye .
- 2 Use Zoom In  to magnify the affected area.
- 3 Draw an ellipse around the affected eye in the Source Picture panel. Any bright red in that part of the picture has a blue cast added to it, to counteract the red effect.  
*If you make a mistake, use Reset to reverse red eye removal, then try again.*
- 4 Check the result in the Preview panel.
- 5 Remove any other examples of red eye in the picture.

## Reset

Use Reset to reverse the effects of red eye removal.

## Saturation

Adjust saturation to change the amount of gray in your picture.

*Saturation is best used on Color PhotoStitch and Color Tile PhotoStitch embroideries.*

Move the Saturation slider bar to the desired setting, or enter a value directly in the box.

Adjust Saturation between -10 and 20 by typing in a number, clicking on the left or right of the slider bar or by clicking and dragging the slider bar. To make the image more gray, move the slider to the left or type a lower number in the box. To make the image warmer, move the slider to the right or type a higher number in the box.

The initial value for Saturation is 0.

*To reverse changes to Saturation, set the value back to 0.*

## Save Picture

Use Save Picture  to save changes to a picture you have edited. The Save Picture dialog box appears.

The following file formats may be saved: Windows or OS2 Bitmap (.bmp), JPEG Low Quality (.jpg), JPEG High Quality (.jpg), Tagged Image File Format uncompressed (.tif) and Portable Network Graphics (.png).

*Portable Network Graphics (.png) is recommended as it is relatively compact, yet preserves the colors of the photo.*

## Source Picture

The panel on the left shows the original picture.

## Preview

The preview picture on the right shows the result of applying Autolevel, Red Eye Removal, and adjusting saturation.

## Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the picture or embroidery.

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the picture or embroidery and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to

zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the picture or embroidery and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the picture or embroidery to the preview area.

Click Real Size  to view the picture at its real size in pixels. This means that one pixel of the picture uses one pixel of the screen. Alternatively, view the embroidery at a magnification as close as possible to the Real Size setting you chose in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

## Back

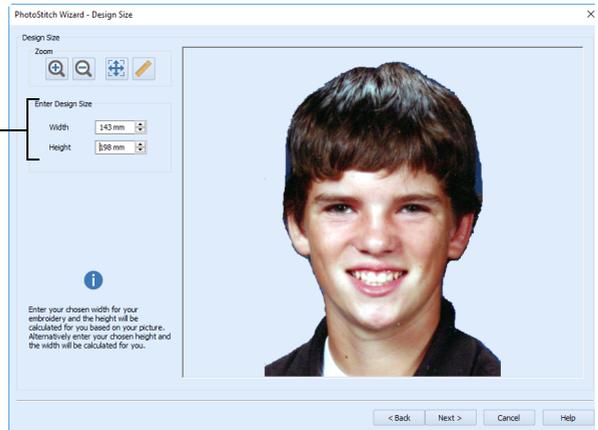
Return to the Remove Background page.

## Next

Go to the Design Size page.

# Design Size

Set the height or width of the embroidery



Use the Design Size page to set the height or width of your embroidery, with the other dimension calculated from the picture.

## Enter Design Size

Set the height or width of your embroidery, with the other dimension calculated from the picture.

## Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the picture or embroidery.

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the picture or embroidery and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the picture or embroidery and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the picture or embroidery to the preview area.

Click Real Size  to view the picture at its real size in pixels. This means that one pixel of the picture uses one pixel of the screen. Alternatively, view the embroidery at a magnification as close as possible to the Real Size setting you chose in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

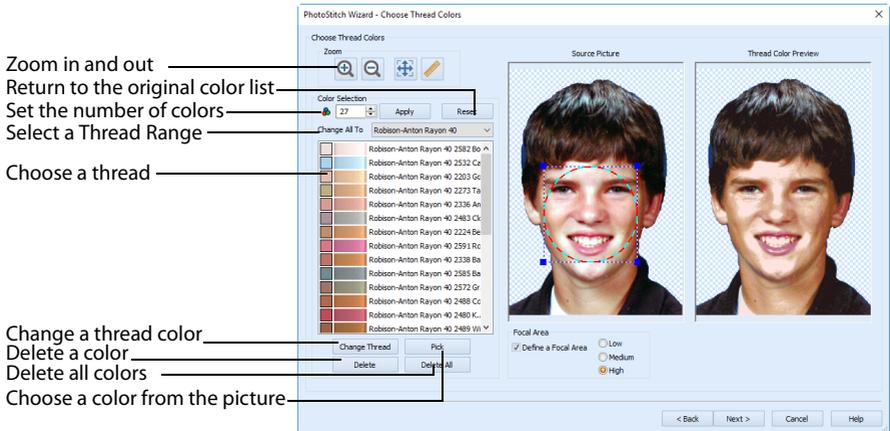
## Back

Return to the Picture Options page.

## Next

Go to the Choose Thread Colors page.

# Choose Thread Colors



The Choose Thread Colors page of the PhotoStitch Wizard only appears when you are creating a color, sepia, monochrome or color tile PhotoStitch.

*A different version of this page appears when creating a linear embroidery, see "Choose Thread Colors (Linear PhotoStitch)" on page 260.*

Use the Choose Thread Colors page to set the number of colors, and to match thread colors to colors in the picture. Thread color effects are available for frames and borders, but not for the PhotoStitch embroidery.

## Color Selection

### Number of Colors

The Number of Colors is initially set to the recommended number of colors. When this number is changed, the list of thread colors and the preview are updated.

The maximum Number of Colors is 256.

*With Sepia an initial palette of 7 colors is provided, and with Monochrome an initial palette of 11 colors is provided.*

*It is not necessary to match the Reduced Colors Preview exactly to the source picture, as long as the effect is pleasing. The color PhotoStitch effect provides an impression of a photo. Use the Number of Colors and the Thread Color Options on the following page to achieve a good effect with a reasonable number of threads.*

### Apply

When the number of colors has been changed, click Apply to adjust the threads and the preview.

### Reset

Use Reset to return the color list to the initial set of picture colors. The picture colors will be matched to thread colors from the thread range shown in the Change All To box. Any custom thread matches that are required must be re-selected with Change Thread.

## Change All To

Click the drop-down arrow to choose a different thread range. When a thread range is chosen, each picture color in the list will be assigned the nearest matching thread color from the chosen thread range.

*When a new thread range is chosen, all custom thread matches set by Change Thread will be lost.*

## Picture and Thread Color List

The list shows a sample of each color currently selected from the picture. The colors are shown with each picture color automatically matched to a thread color from the thread range shown in Change All To.

The same thread color may be matched to two or more colors in the picture. Each thread color can be individually changed with Change Thread. When thread colors are changed in the list, the Thread Color Preview is updated.

*When more than one color in the picture is matched to the same thread color, the number of color changes in the final embroidery is reduced.*

## Change Thread

Click a color in the list, then click the Change Thread button. The Color Selection dialog box will appear so that a different thread color can be chosen. Alternatively, double-click a color in the list and the Color Selection dialog box will appear. See “Change an Existing Thread Color” on page 45.

*It is recommended only to use Change Thread after the main thread range has been selected.*

## Pick

Click Pick to add thread colors to the list by clicking the desired colors in the Source Picture.

When Pick is selected, the pointer changes to an eyedropper  over the source picture. Click the picture to pick up the color under the tip of the eyedropper, and the nearest matching thread color from the selected Thread Range will be automatically selected and added to the thread color list. Because the PhotoStitch effects use a color blending process, the colors are recalculated.

*The thread color is picked for the clicked color according to the RGB (red, green, blue) value at the point clicked. If there is already a thread color assigned to that exact RGB value, it will be highlighted in the list instead of adding a thread color to the list.*

## Delete

Delete the picture color currently highlighted in the list. Because the PhotoStitch effects use a color blending process, the colors are recalculated. The Thread Color Preview is displayed again, with the reduced set of thread colors.

## Delete All

Click Delete All to remove all the thread colors from the list if you wish to use Pick Color to choose colors from the Source Picture.

## Focal Area

The Focal Area allows you to focus on the area of the picture that you want used when the color palette is selected.

*Focal Area can be used to concentrate on the flesh tones in a face, rather than the color of the hair or clothes.*

### Define a Focal Area

Use this option to enable the selection of a Focal Area. Then click and drag to select the area. By default this option is not selected.

#### Low

Color palette influenced by the Focal Area.

#### Medium

Color palette heavily influenced by the Focal Area.

#### High

Color palette taken mainly from the Focal Area.

## Previews

### Source Picture

This shows the original picture, after being rotated and cropped, in full color.

### Thread Color Preview

This shows how the thread colors have been chosen to replace colors in the picture. This gives an approximate indication of where thread blocks will be in the final design.

*If variegated threads have been selected, only the first color is shown in the preview.*

## Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the picture or embroidery.

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the picture or embroidery and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the picture or embroidery and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the picture or embroidery to the preview area.

Click Real Size  to view the picture at its real size in pixels. This means that one pixel of the picture uses one pixel of the screen. Alternatively, view the embroidery at a magnification as close as possible to the Real Size setting you chose in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

## Back

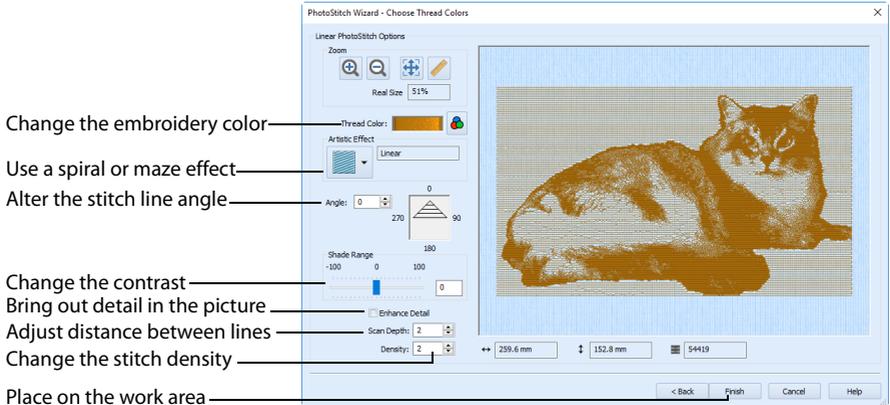
Return to the Design Size page.

## Next

Create a PhotoStitch embroidery and show it on the PhotoStitch Embroidery Options page, or the Color Tile Options page.

*The Create Stitches animation plays while the embroidery is created.*

# Choose Thread Colors (Linear PhotoStitch)



The Linear PhotoStitch version of the Choose Thread Colors page of the PhotoStitch Wizard only appears when you are creating a linear embroidery.

Use the Choose Thread Colors page to choose the color for the embroidery. Optionally, select an artistic stitch effect, choose whether or not to change the angle of the stitching, and enhance detail and contrast in the picture.

## Thread Color

Thread Color enables you to select the color used for stitching the linear embroidery.

Click the Thread Color icon  to open the Color Selection dialog box.

See "Thread Colors" on page 45.

## Artistic Effect

Select an artistic effect from the drop-down list. The available options are Linear, Spiral and four Maze effects.

## Monochrome Linear

Use Monochrome Linear  to use straight lines of thread for the basic stitch pattern. The lines are smooth for light areas of the picture. Zigzag stitches on either side of the lines emphasize the detail of the picture.

## Monochrome Spiral

Use Monochrome Spiral  to use circular lines of thread for the basic stitch pattern. The lines are smooth for light areas of the picture. Zigzag stitches on either side of the lines emphasize the detail of the picture.

## Monochrome Maze

Use the Monochrome Maze    and  modes to use one of four patterns to build up the picture. The stitching is sparse for light areas of the picture, which also reveals the basic shape used by the Maze mode you have chosen. Increased density of stitching emphasizes the detail of the picture.

## Angle

Use Angle to change the angle at which the stitches are created for the embroidery.

Enter an Angle from 0 to 359 degrees. The initial setting is 0.

*Alter the Angle by typing a number in the box, or use the up and down arrows to change the number. The computer will recalculate how to stitch the picture.*

Changes in Angle are visible in the preview pane.

## Shade Range

Change the contrast in the picture. Negative values make the picture darker, and positive values make the picture lighter.

## Enhance Detail

Enhance Detail makes details in the picture more prominent. For example, it can be used to improve definition in a photo with good detail, but little contrast.

## Scan Depth

Scan Depth refers to the distance between the lines that produce an embroidery from a picture. The lower the Scan Depth figure, the finer the detail shown in the embroidery, and the more stitches produced. Scan Depth may be altered from 1 to 20 (recommended setting 2). The default setting is 2.

Changes in Scan Depth are visible in the preview pane.

## Density

Density of stitching along each line may be set from 1 to 40. The lower the number, the closer together the stitches and the more stitches are produced.

Depending on the fabric and machine used, a lower number may produce more detail in the embroidery. However, the recommended (and default) setting is 2.

Changes in Density are visible in the preview pane.

## Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the picture or embroidery.

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the picture or embroidery and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the picture or embroidery and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the picture or embroidery to the preview area.

Click Real Size  to view the picture at its real size in pixels. This means that one pixel of the picture uses one pixel of the screen. Alternatively, view the embroidery at a magnification as close as possible to the Real Size setting you chose in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

## Design Information

The design information boxes show the dimensions (Width  and Height ) and Stitch Count  for the embroidery. The design information may change when the embroidery is exported, depending on the Optimize for Sewing Options.

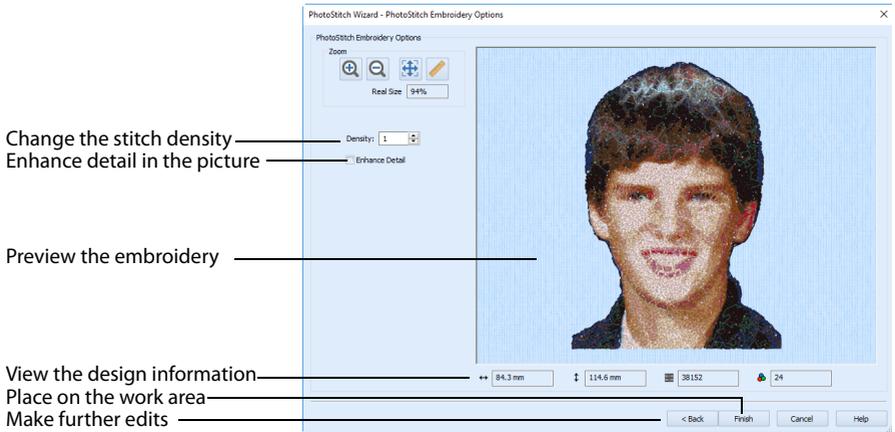
### Back

If desired, use the Back button to go back through the PhotoStitch Wizard and modify settings before previewing the design again.

### Finish

Accept the final design and close the PhotoStitch Wizard.

# PhotoStitch Embroidery Options



The PhotoStitch Embroidery Options page allows you to view and check the final design in 3D before closing the PhotoStitch Wizard. Optionally, choose whether or not to enhance detail in the picture.

After creating a PhotoStitch embroidery, use the Frame or Border tabs to complete your project. Add lettering too, if you wish.

## Stitch Options

Select Enhance Detail to bring out the detail in the picture or Density to change the number of stitches.

### Enhance Detail

Enhance Detail makes details in the picture more prominent. For example, it can be used to improve definition in a photo with good detail, but little contrast.

*Enhance Detail does not change the colors used, it affects the way that those colors are used.*

### Density

Select the density of the stitching. 1 is the standard default density, 9 is the most open.

## Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the picture or embroidery.

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the picture or embroidery and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the picture or embroidery and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the picture or embroidery to the preview area.

Click Real Size  to view the picture at its real size in pixels. This means that one pixel of the picture uses one pixel of the screen. Alternatively, view the embroidery at a magnification as close as possible to the Real Size setting you chose in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

## Design Information

The design information boxes show the dimensions (Width  and Height ), Stitch Count , and number of colors  for the embroidery. The design information may change when the embroidery is exported, depending on the Optimize for Sewing Options.

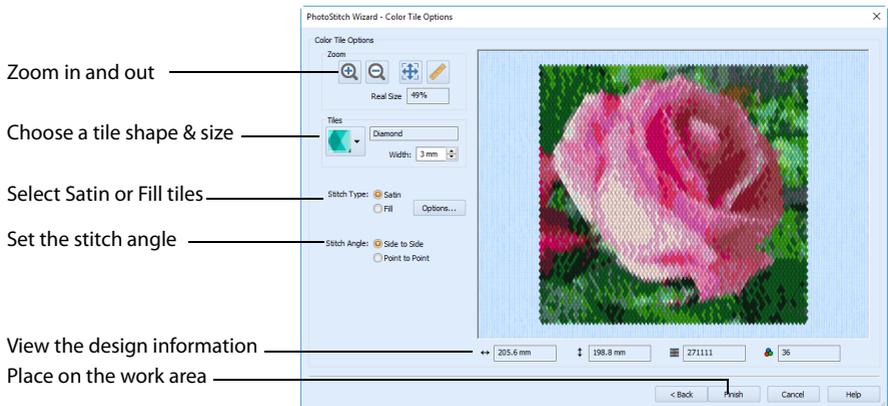
## Back

If desired, use the Back button to go back through the PhotoStitch Wizard and modify settings before previewing the design again.

## Finish

Accept the final design and close the PhotoStitch Wizard.

# Color Tile Options



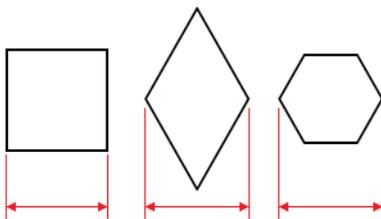
The Color Tile Options page of the PhotoStitch Wizard only appears when you are creating a color tile embroidery. Use the Color Tile Options page to select tiles, and set the stitch options for them.

## Tiles

Select a tile shape from the drop-down list. The available shapes are:

- Diamond
- Square
- Hexagon

The default tile shape is Diamond.



The tile size is based on the width of the tile at its widest point.

## Width

Select the width of the tiles from 2mm to 5mm in steps of 1mm.

The default tile size is 3mm.

## Stitch Options

*The stitch options selected here are retained until the wizard for a different embroidery type is chosen, or a new picture is loaded.*

## Satin

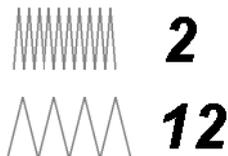
Use Satin stitch for the tiles. Select Satin, and click the Options button, to see the Density options.

### Satin Density



Set Density from 2 to 12. The lower the number, the closer together the stitches and the more stitches are produced.

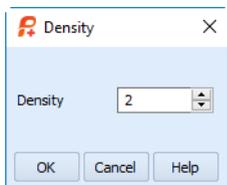
The initial setting is 4.



## Fill

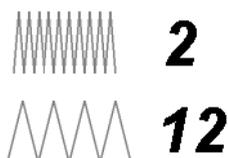
Use Fill for the tiles. Select Fill, and click the Options button, to see the Density options.

### Fill Density



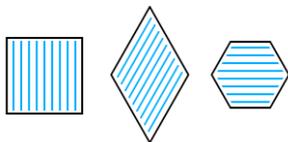
Set Density from 2 to 12. The lower the number, the closer together the stitches and the more stitches are produced.

The initial setting is 2.

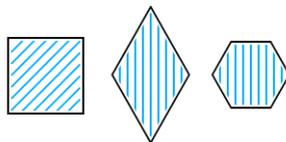


## Stitch Angle

Select from Side to Side, where the stitches are parallel to the sides of the shape, and Point to Point, where the stitches are from corner to corner of the shape.



Side to Side



Point to Point

The default setting is Side to Side.

## Design Information

The design information boxes show the dimensions (Width  and Height ) , Stitch Count , and number of colors  for the embroidery. The design information may change when the embroidery is exported, depending on the Optimize for Sewing Options.

## Zoom

Use the Zoom functions to change the view of the picture or embroidery.

Use Zoom In  to magnify the view. Move the pointer over the picture or embroidery and the pointer changes to the zoom in pointer . Then either click a point you want to zoom in towards, or click and drag a rectangle around the area you want to zoom in to and release the mouse button to zoom. When zoomed in, use the scroll bars to move around.

Use Zoom Out  to shrink the view. Move the pointer over the picture or embroidery and the pointer changes to the zoom out pointer . Then click a point you want to zoom out from.

Click Zoom To Fit  to fit the picture or embroidery to the preview area.

Click Real Size  to view the picture at its real size in pixels. This means that one pixel of the picture uses one pixel of the screen. Alternatively, view the embroidery at a magnification as close as possible to the Real Size setting you chose in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

## Back

If desired, use the Back button to go back through the PhotoStitch Wizard and modify settings before previewing the design again.

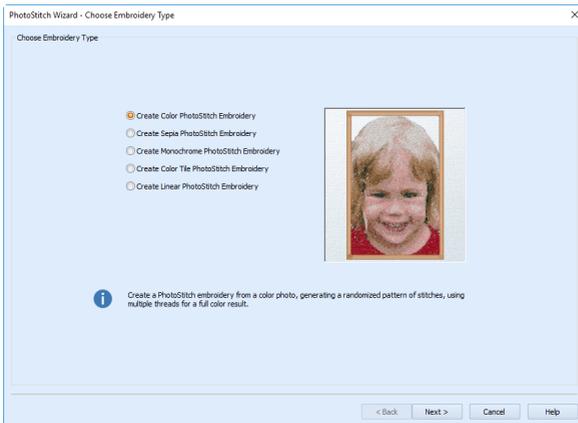
## Finish

Accept the final design and close the PhotoStitch Wizard.

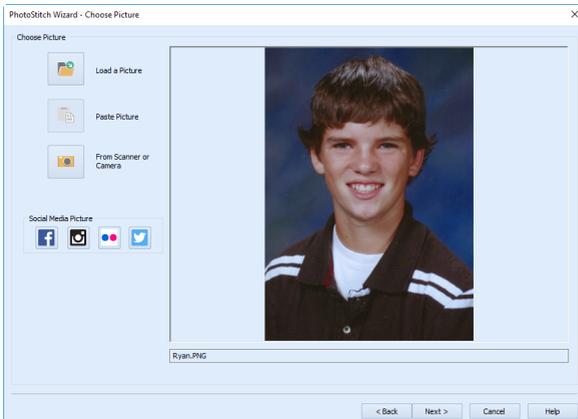
# Using the PhotoStitch Wizard

## Ryan - Using the PhotoStitch Wizard

- 1 Click the Wizards tab.
- 2 Click the drop-down arrow beneath the PhotoStitch Wizard icon , then click PhotoStitch into Hoop. The Choose Embroidery Type page of the PhotoStitch Wizard appears.

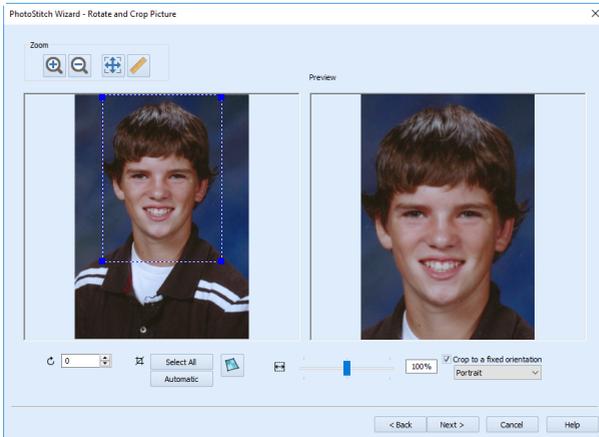


- 3 Select Create Color PhotoStitch Embroidery and click Next. The Choose Picture page appears.
- 4 Click Load a Picture , to select an existing picture file. The Picture Viewer appears.
- 5 Browse to Documents\Premier+2\Samples\PhotoSt\Pics.
- 6 Scroll to Ryan.PNG.
- 7 Click the 'Ryan.png' thumbnail, then click OK. The photo is loaded onto the Choose Picture page, with its name shown below the preview area.



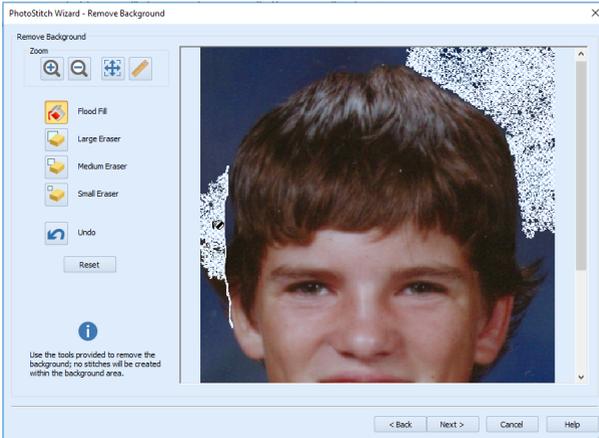
- 8 Click Next and the Rotate and Crop Picture page will appear.
- 9 Select "Crop to a fixed orientation", and then select Portrait.
- 10 Move the handles on the corner of the crop box on the left so that the crop frame encloses Ryan's head and chin, showing a little of his shoulders.
- 11 Move the pointer over the crop box so that the arrow pointer changes to a four-arrow pointer. Drag the box so that it is centered over the face.

- 12** Take care to leave enough space at the top of the picture for a balanced portrait. A slightly larger selection would be needed for a square PhotoStitch, compared with this rectangular one.  
*If necessary at any time while cropping, click Automatic and start again.*

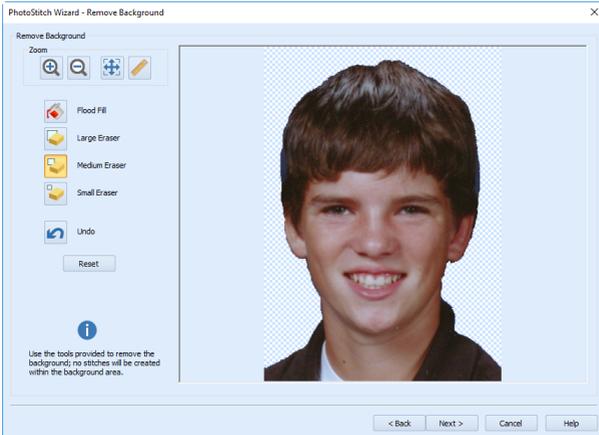


- 13** Click Next. The Remove Background page will appear.  
*It is recommended to use a graphics tablet and pen, if available, for the Remove Background functions.*
- 14** Click Flood Fill .
- The pointer changes to the Flood Fill bucket pointer  while positioned over the picture.*
- 15** Click the blue background to the top right of Ryan's head. The blue background is replaced by a check pattern, to show where there will be no stitches. Small differently colored areas are left behind.  
*Flood Fill removes a particular color, and very similar colors.*
- 16** Continue using Flood Fill  to roughly remove the dark blue background on the right.  
*If you make a mistake, click Undo to reverse your last action. If necessary, use Reset to start again. Undo reverses the last action, while Reset returns to the original version of the picture.*
- 17** Click the dark area to the left, close to Ryan's head.
- 18** The line of the hair above the ear will affect the appearance of the embroidery. Click Undo.
- 19** Click Zoom In .
- 20** Click and drag to draw a rectangle around the area to the left of Ryan's head, then release the mouse button.
- 21** Select the Small Eraser  and draw a smooth line to the left of Ryan's head.
- 22** Remove the curl of hair by the ear, and leave a small amount of the background color near the hair above.
- 23** Click Zoom to Fit  to see the full picture again.
- 24** Use Flood Fill  to remove the hair by the ear.  
*Lift the mouse button or graphics tablet pen frequently. Then if you make a mistake, and need to Undo, you will not lose much work.*
- 25** Use Zoom In  to magnify the area to the right of Ryan's head.
- 26** Use the Small Eraser  to draw a line to remove the curl by the right ear.
- 27** Remove the area with Flood Fill .

28 Click Zoom to Fit  to view.

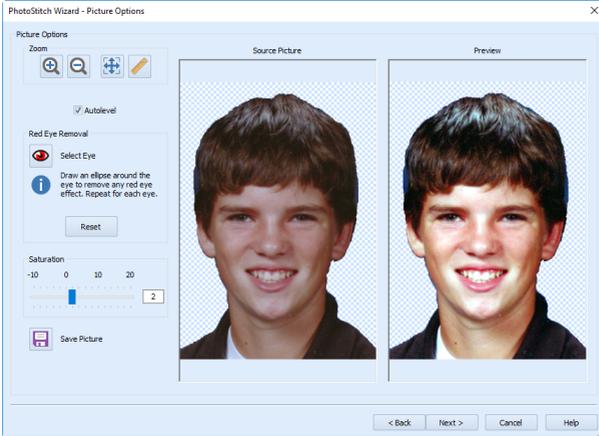


- 29 Use Zoom In  to magnify the areas of the face where the skin is adjacent to the blue background.
- 30 Then use the Small  or Medium  Eraser to remove the blue edge.  
*It does not matter if you go a little into the skin tones as a slightly rough outline will not affect the final embroidery.*
- 31 Click the Large Eraser , and try to clean all remaining specks from the background. The Medium Eraser is better for cleaning areas close to Ryan's head.  
*It is best to remove all specks of background as they may lead to 'stray stitches'.*
- 32 Use Zoom In  and Zoom to Fit  when tidying up the outline and background.

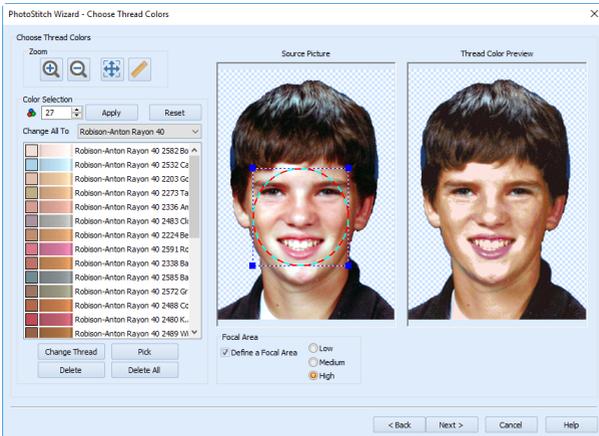


- 33 Click Next. The Picture Options page will appear.
- 34 Leave Autolevel on. There is no red eye to correct in this picture.  
*Autolevel adjusts brightness and contrast automatically. This improves results for most pictures.*

- 35** Set Saturation to 2, to enhance the tones of the lips and cheeks. *Increasing saturation enhances the intensity of colors, for instance to make pale skin tones appear 'warmer'. If desired, use Save Picture  to save a copy of your edited picture.*



- 36** Click Next and the Design Size page will appear.  
**37** Set Height to 119mm.  
**38** Click Next. The Choose Thread Colors page will appear.  
**39** Note the number in the Color Selection box. This gives the number of colors in the picture. In this example it is 28.  
 If you use a photo that you edited the number will vary, depending on exactly how you cropped and edited the photo.  
*Each time you run the PhotoStitch Wizard on the same picture, the results may differ. A slight change in cropping a picture, or in removing the background, will affect the balance of colors, and the type and number of threads used.*
- 40** To emphasize the eyes and mouth in the selection of colors, click Define a Focal Area.



- 41** Ensure that High is selected in Focal Area. (The default is Low.)  
**42** Move the handles on the corner of the crop box, and the crop box itself, so that the circle encloses the eyes and mouth.  
 To reposition the crop box, move the arrow pointer so that it changes to a four-arrow pointer, then move the box. The number of colors changes as you move and resize the Focal Area crop box.  
**43** Make a note of the new number. (In this example it is 27.)

You can often slightly reduce the number of colors with little visible effect, but a further reduction will badly affect the color quality.

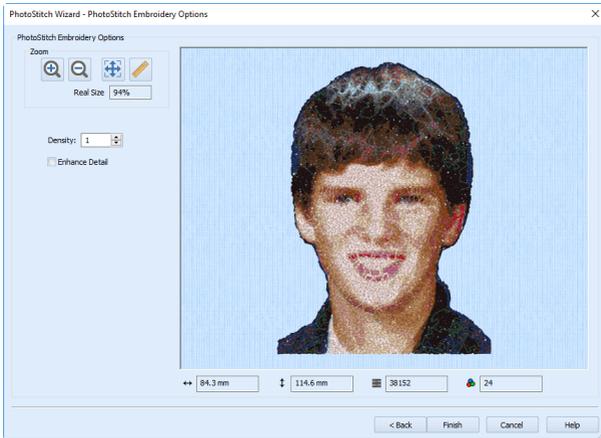
- 44 Scroll down the list of threads. If there is more than one deep blue in the thread color list on the left, select and delete one of the shades of blue and check the result.

The computer will recalculate how to stitch the picture, based on the reduced thread list, and the number of stitches will be reduced.

*The small amount of deep blue in the picture mainly comes from remaining traces of the background color. The number of shades can be safely reduced.*

*Similarly, you can change a thread color. The computer will recalculate the stitches, based on the threads now in use.*

- 45 Click Next. The PhotoStitch Embroidery Options page will appear.



Use Enhance Detail to bring out detail in the picture. Enhance Detail does not change the colors used, it affects the way that those colors are used. A higher number for Density will produce looser stitching and fewer stitches than the standard setting of 1.

Leave Enhance Detail unchecked and Density at 1 for this PhotoStitch.

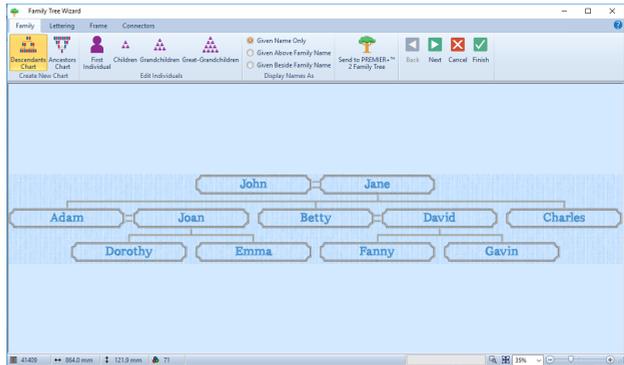
- 46 Click Finish to close the wizard. The PhotoStitch embroidery appears in the work area.

Use the Family Tree Wizard  to create an embroidered family chart of up to three generations of ancestors or descendants for an individual.

*The Family Tree Wizard is only available in PREMIER+™ 2 ULTRA.*

Enter the names and relationships of other family members, and select lettering, a frame and connectors to use for the family chart.

Send the tree with the chosen theme to adjust in PREMIER+™ 2 Family Tree. It is also saved as a .ged file. On the work area use Save or Save As to save the family tree embroidery as a grouped .vp4 file for later use.



*The most recently created family tree is stored by the wizard. It is reopened the next time the wizard is used.* For more information on the Family Tree Wizard, see the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Reference Guide, and for information on PREMIER+™ 2 Family Tree, see the PREMIER+™ 2 Family Tree Reference Guide.

## Family Tree Wizard

Select the Family Tree Wizard  in the Wizards tab to create a family tree for an individual. The Family page of the Family Tree Wizard will appear.

Enter the family members for a Descendants Chart or for an Ancestors Chart, and choose how the names will be presented. Select a font style, thread color, shape and size. Surround the names with a frame or flourish. Choose Connectors to link the partners in the chart.

Progress through the pages using Next  and Back  to alter each setting, or click Finish  at any time. Click Cancel  to close the wizard without creating a family tree.

*Any existing family tree will be retained in the work area.*

### Shortcuts

- Wizards Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, W, F

### Overview

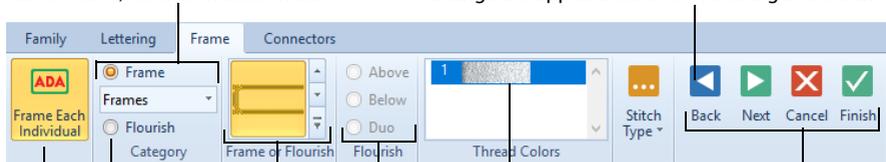
- 1 In the Wizards tab, click Family Tree  to start the Family Tree Wizard.
- 2 In the Family page, choose whether to start a Descendants Chart , or an Ancestors Chart .



- 13** In the Frame page choose whether to use frames, and select a frame, corners, side pieces or a flourish for each individual. Change the color and stitch options for the frame.

Use a Frame, Corners or Side Pieces

Change the appearance of the stitching in the frame



Use flourishes

Select a frame

Change the thread color for the frame

Place a frame around each name

Choose the flourish position

Adjust other settings or finish

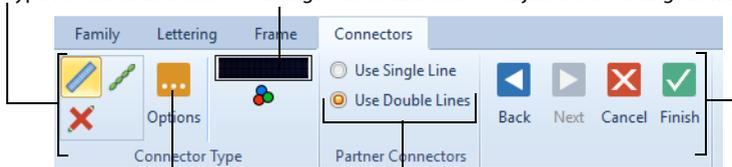
- 14** Click Next  to change the connectors used between partners in the family tree.

- 15** In the Connectors page select satin line or a running stitch line for connectors, or use no connectors.

Choose a line type for the connectors

Change the thread color

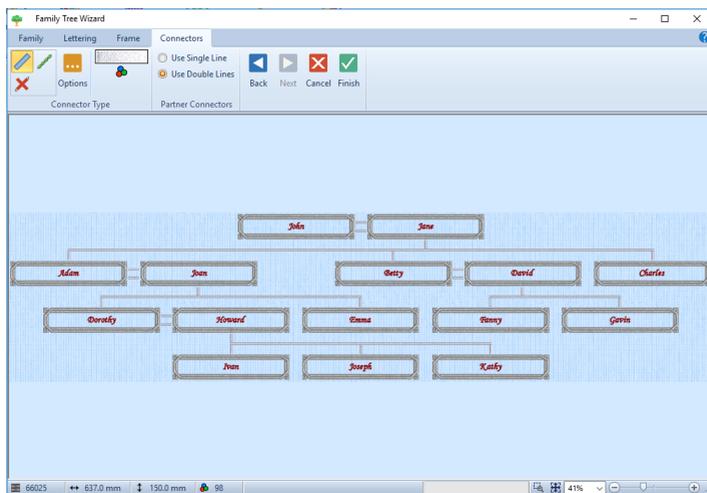
Adjust other settings or finish



Change the settings for the connectors

Use double stitch lines to indicate a partnership

- 16** Choose a single or double line connector for partners. Change the thread color used for connectors.

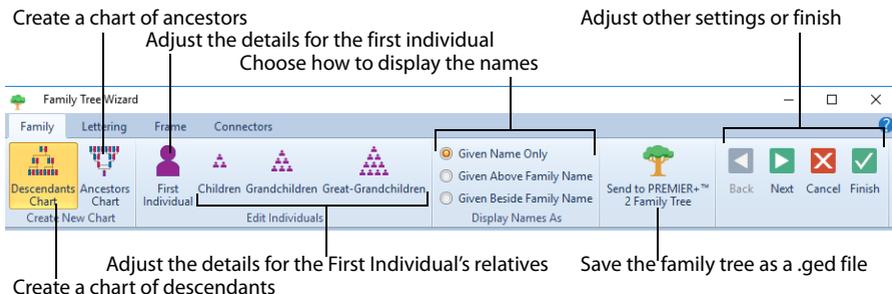


- 17** Check your work by clicking the wizard tabs or by using Next  and Back  to view the Family Tree Wizard pages. Adjust your settings as desired.

- 18** Click Finish  to place the family tree chart in the work area as a grouped .vp4 file with fixed lettering and frames.

# Family

In the Family page, choose a Descendants or Ancestors Chart, and then add and adjust the details for a First Individual, and for other family members. Choose whether just Given Names, or Given and Family names will be displayed, and how they will be placed. If desired, save the family tree as a .ged file for use in PREMIER+™ 2 Family Tree.



## Create New Chart

Choose from Descendants Chart  and Ancestors Chart . Click to select the desired option. The First Individual dialog box opens. See “First Individual” on page 278.

- A Descendants Chart shows the partner, children, grandchildren and great-grandchildren of the selected individual.
- An Ancestors Chart shows the father and mother, grandparents, and great-grandparents of the selected individual.

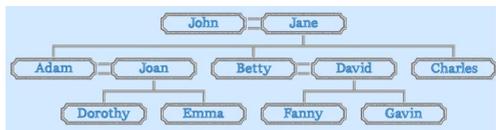
## Edit Individuals

After creating a family tree, use the Edit Individuals options to change the details for family members. The options for the Descendants Chart and the Ancestors Chart are different.

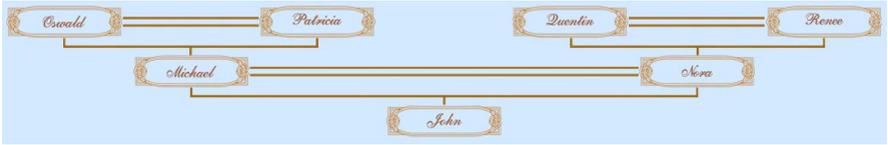
- First Individual  opens the First Individual dialog box (the box for the key person in the family tree). See “First Individual” on page 278.

## Descendants Chart

- Children  opens the Children dialog box (the box for the partner of the first individual, and any of their children). See “Children” on page 278.
- Grandchildren  opens the Grandchildren dialog box for the first entered child (the box for the partner of the first child, and any of their children). See “Grandchildren” on page 279. *Click Next to view the Grandchildren dialog boxes for the other children.*
- Great-Grandchildren  opens the Great-Grandchildren dialog box for the first entered grandchild (the box for the partner of the first grandchild, and any of their children). See “Great-Grandchildren” on page 279. *Click Next to view the Great-Grandchildren dialog boxes for the other children.*



## Ancestors Chart



- Parents  opens the Parents dialog box for the first individual). See “Parents” on page 280.
- Grandparents  opens the Grandparents dialog box for the father’s father for the first individual, and their partner. See “Grandparents” on page 280.  
*Click Next to view the Grandparents dialog boxes for the other parents.*
- Great-Grandparents  opens the Great-Grandparents dialog box for the great-grandfather on the father’s side. See “Great-Grandparents” on page 281.  
*Click Next to view the Great-Grandparents dialog boxes for the other great-grandparents.*

## Display Names As

Select how to display the names of the individuals in the family tree.

- Given Name Only shows only the first name for the family members.
- Given Above Family Name shows the first name above the family name.
- Given Beside Family Name shows the first name alongside the family name.



## Send to PREMIER+™ 2 Family Tree

Save the family tree as a GEDCOM (.ged) file for use with PREMIER+™ 2 Family Tree. The Save As dialog box opens for you to save the family tree. The family tree is saved using the name of the First Individual in the folder Documents\Premier+2\My Families.

*If desired, you can change the file name and browse to a different folder.*

### Next

Go to the Lettering page.

*Alternatively, click the Lettering tab.*

### Finish

Accept the final family tree and close the Family Tree Wizard.

### Cancel

Close the Family Tree Wizard without creating a family tree.

# First Individual

Use the First Individual dialog box to enter the names for the First Individual, and indicate their gender.

## Given Name

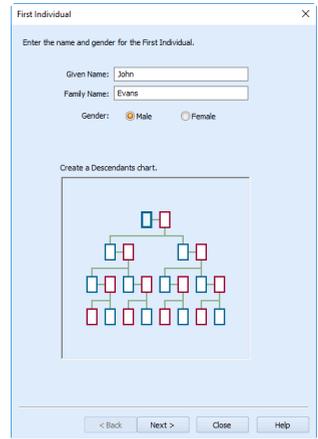
Enter the Given Name (first name) for the First Individual.

## Family Name

Enter the Family Name (surname) for the First Individual.

## Gender

Select Male or Female for the gender of the First Individual.



# Descendants Chart

Use a Descendants Chart to show the partner, children, grandchildren and great-grandchildren of the first individual.

## Children

Use the Children dialog to enter the names of the partner and children of the First Individual. Use Enter Another Partner to add a second partner and their children.

## Partner

Enter the Given Name and the Family Name for the First Individual's partner.

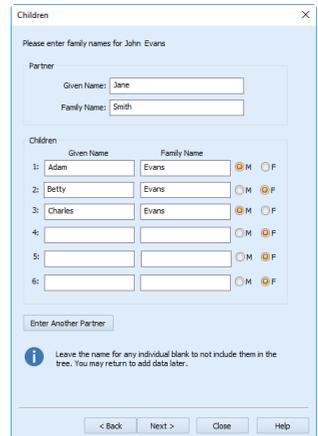
## Children

Enter the Given Name and Family Name for each of the family's children, and indicate their gender.

*Enter the names of the children in order of age, with the oldest first.*

## Enter Another Partner

Click the Enter Another Partner button to open a second Children dialog box. Enter the details for a second family here.



# Grandchildren

Use the Grandchildren dialog to enter the names of the partner and children of a child of the First Individual. Use Enter Another Partner to add a second partner and their children.

*The children of the First Individual are displayed in the order in which they were entered. So, if the oldest was entered first, they will be displayed first. Click Next to view the details for the other children.*

## Partner

Enter the Given Name and the Family Name for the child's partner.

## Children

Enter the Given Name and Family Name for each of the family's children, and indicate their gender.

*Enter the names of the children in order of age, with the oldest first.*

## Enter Another Partner

Click the Enter Another Partner button to open a second Grandchildren dialog box. Enter the details for a second family here.

The screenshot shows the 'Grandchildren' dialog box for Adam Evans. It has a title bar with a close button. The main text says 'Please enter family names for Adam Evans'. There are two input fields for the partner: 'Given Name' with 'Joan' and 'Family Name' with 'Green'. Below is a table for children with columns for 'Given Name', 'Family Name', and gender (M/F). The first child is Dorothy Green (M), and the second is Emma Green (F). There are three more empty rows. At the bottom, there is an 'Enter Another Partner' button, an information icon with a note: 'Leave the name for any individual blank to not include them in the tree. You may return to add data later.', and navigation buttons: '< Back', 'Next >', 'Close', and 'Help'.

# Great-Grandchildren

Use the Great-Grandchildren dialog to enter the names of the partner and children of a grandchild of the First Individual. Use Enter Another Partner to add a second partner and their children.

*The grandchildren of the First Individual are displayed in the order in which they were entered. So, if the oldest was entered first, they will be displayed first. Click Next to view the details for the other grandchildren.*

## Partner

Enter the Given Name and the Family Name for the grandchild's partner.

## Children

Enter the Given Name and Family Name for each of the family's children, and indicate their gender.

*Enter the names of the children in order of age, with the oldest first.*

## Enter Another Partner

Click the Enter Another Partner button to open a second Great-Grandchildren dialog box. Enter the details for a second family here.

The screenshot shows the 'Great-Grandchildren' dialog box for Dorothy Smith. It has a title bar with a close button. The main text says 'Please enter family names for Dorothy Smith'. There are two input fields for the partner: 'Given Name' with 'Howard' and 'Family Name' with 'Jones'. Below is a table for children with columns for 'Given Name', 'Family Name', and gender (M/F). The first child is Ivan Jones (M), the second is Joseph Jones (M), and the third is Kathy Jones (F). There are three more empty rows. At the bottom, there is an 'Enter Another Partner' button, an information icon with a note: 'Leave the name for any individual blank to not include them in the tree. You may return to add data later.', and navigation buttons: '< Back', 'Next >', 'Close', and 'Help'.

# Ancestors Chart

Use an Ancestors Chart to show the father and mother, grandparents, and great-grandparents of the first individual.

## Parents

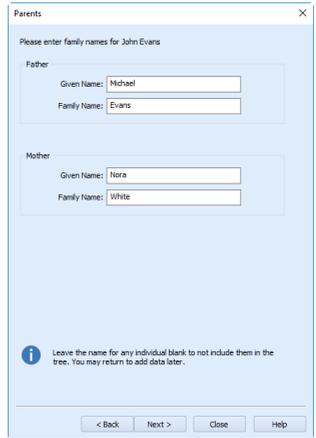
Use the Parents dialog to enter the names of the parents of the First Individual.

### Father

Enter the Given Name and the Family Name for the First Individual's father.

### Mother

Enter the Given Name and the Family Name for the First Individual's mother.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Parents" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The main text reads "Please enter family names for John Evans". There are two sections: "Father" and "Mother". The "Father" section has two input fields: "Given Name" with the value "Michael" and "Family Name" with the value "Evans". The "Mother" section has two input fields: "Given Name" with the value "Nora" and "Family Name" with the value "White". At the bottom, there is an information icon (i) with the text: "Leave the name for any individual blank to not include them in the tree. You may return to add data later." Below this is a row of four buttons: "< Back", "Next >", "Close", and "Help".

## Grandparents

Use the Grandparents dialog to enter the names of the grandparents of the First Individual.

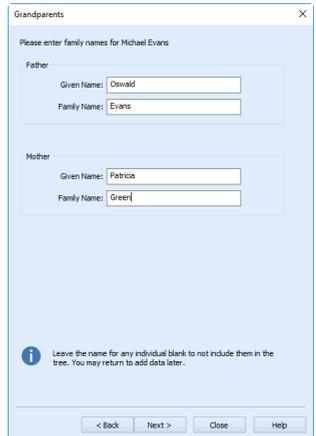
*The father's parents are displayed first. Click Next to view the mother's parents.*

### Father

Enter the Given Name and the Family Name for the First Individual's grandfather.

### Mother

Enter the Given Name and the Family Name for the First Individual's grandmother.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Grandparents" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The main text reads "Please enter family names for Michael Evans". There are two sections: "Father" and "Mother". The "Father" section has two input fields: "Given Name" with the value "Oswald" and "Family Name" with the value "Evans". The "Mother" section has two input fields: "Given Name" with the value "Patricia" and "Family Name" with the value "Green". At the bottom, there is an information icon (i) with the text: "Leave the name for any individual blank to not include them in the tree. You may return to add data later." Below this is a row of four buttons: "< Back", "Next >", "Close", and "Help".

# Great-Grandparents

Use the Great-Grandparents dialog to enter the names of the great-grandparents of the First Individual.

*The father's father's parents are displayed first. Click Next to view the other grandparents in the order father, mother, father, mother.*

## Father

Enter the Given Name and the Family Name for the First Individual's great-grandfather.

## Mother

Enter the Given Name and the Family Name for the First Individual's great-grandmother.

Great-Grandparents

Please enter family names for Oswald Evans

Father

Given Name:

Family Name:

Mother

Given Name:

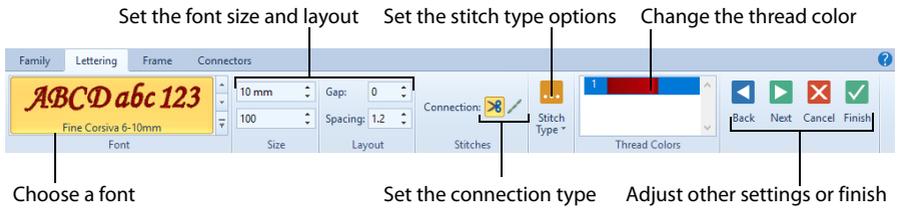
Family Name:

**i** Leave the name for any individual blank to not include them in the tree. You may return to add data later.

< Back   Next >   Close   Help

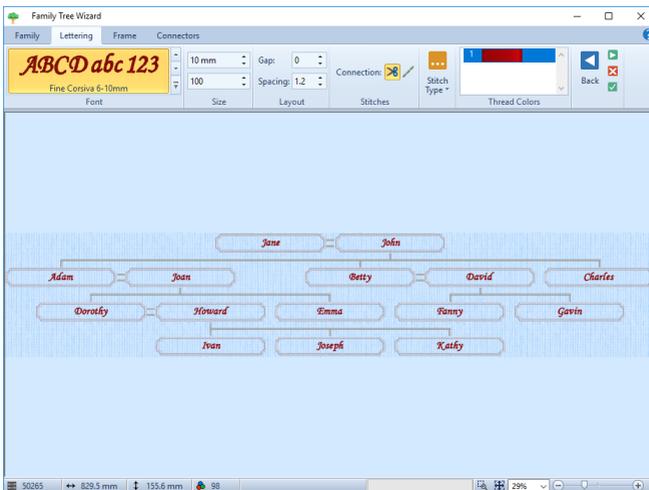
# Lettering

Use the Lettering page to select the style for the text in the family tree. Choose the font, size, color, spacing and stitch type options for the names.



Lettering is created from the fonts available in the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System. Set lettering styles in the Lettering page of the Family Tree Wizard. Font means lettering style. The current font is shown in the Font gallery.

As the lettering is changed, the preview below reflects the changes made.



## Change the Appearance of Lettering

Follow these steps to change the appearance of the lettering in a family tree:

For more on lettering, see "Creating Lettering" on page 326.

## Select a Font

- 1 Click the arrow to the right of the font drop-down menu and the font gallery appears.
- 2 Scroll up or down to select a font from one of the 18 themed font categories.  
Alternatively, use the up and down arrows on the Font section of the Lettering page to see fonts one at a time.  
*The font name specifies the recommended size range for each font. For example, Rian 10-30mm has a recommended size range of 10mm to 30mm. Font names with UC are uppercase only fonts (that is, they have no lowercase characters), and with LC are lowercase only.*



For more information on fonts, see “Font Selection” on page 329.

## Set the Size and Layout

- 3 Set the font Size  $\updownarrow$  in millimeters or inches as desired, from 3mm to 200mm.  
*This sets the height of the 'A' character in the font. All other characters and symbols are sized relative to the height of 'A'. The size is initially set to the minimum recommended size for the chosen font. Fonts appear best when using the recommended size range. See “Font Size” on page 330.*
- 4 If desired, change the proportions of the lettering in the percentage Width  $\square$  box. Change the width from one quarter to four times the default setting. See “Height and Width” on page 330.
- 5 If desired, change the Gap from -99 to 99. Negative values move characters closer together, and positive values move them farther apart. See “Gap” on page 331.  
*Lowercase characters in Script fonts are not affected by the Gap setting.*
- 6 To change the distance between multiple lines of text, adjust Spacing from 1.0 to 5.0.  
*Spacing is relative to the height of the 'A' character. The default spacing is 1.2.*

## Choose a Connection Method

- 7 To choose the connection method, click Trim  $\text{✂}$  (joined by movement stitches that are automatically trimmed by compatible machines) or Running Stitch  $\text{✂}$  (joined with small stitches), as desired. See “Connection” on page 331.  
*Trim is recommended for most fonts. Running Stitch is recommended for very small text using Nearest Point fonts.*

## Change Letter Properties and Color

- 8 Select a line or fill type from the Stitch Type drop-down list. The properties dialog box for the stitch type will appear. See “Choosing Stitch Properties” on page 424.
- 9 Use the properties dialog box to change the lettering properties, for example the density, and the stitch length, angle and pattern.  
*If the Stitch Type area is grayed out (unavailable), this means that the font was designed with properties that cannot be edited. This is usually because the properties are not the same throughout the font. For instance, different letters may use different fill patterns.  
For example, in the Modern category, Bremen UC 10 -25mm has Satin Column stitches, therefore the Satin Column drop-down is available. Bremen UC 15-60mm has Pattern Fill stitches, therefore the Pattern Fill option is available. In the Monogram category, Athletic Square 2C UC 30-80mm has both Satin Column and Pattern Fill stitches, therefore both options are available. In the Floral category Acorn 6C UC 35-60mm uses more than one type of Pattern Fill. Therefore the Stitch Type area is unavailable.*
- 10 Set the Thread Color to use when embroidering the text. Click one of the thread color blocks to open the Color Selection dialog box. See “Changing Colors” on page 45.  
*Scroll down to see the other font colors.*

## Back $\square$

Go to the Family page.

*Alternatively, click the Family tab.*

**Next** ▶

Go to the Frame page.

**Finish** ✓

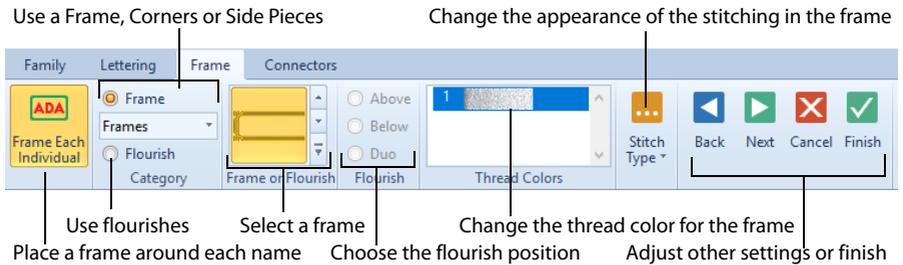
Accept the final family tree and close the Family Tree Wizard.

**Cancel** ✕

Close the Family Tree Wizard without creating a family tree.

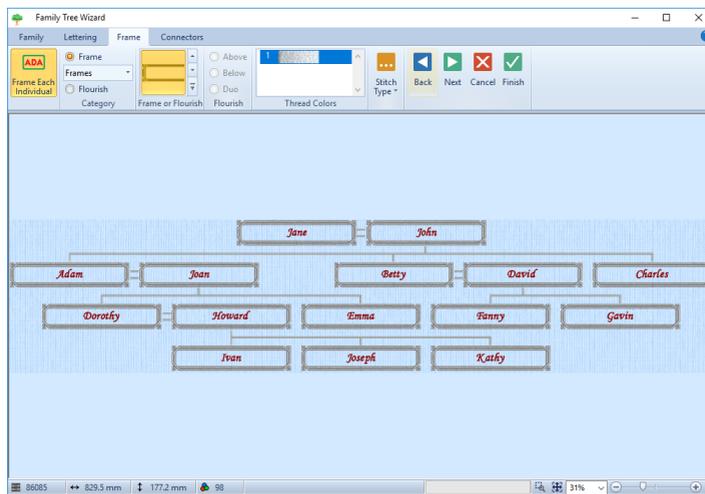
# Frame

Use the Frame page to choose whether to use frames, and to select a frame, corners, side pieces or a flourish for each individual. Change the color and stitch options for the frame.



Choose from the categories of corners, frames and side pieces. Then choose a frame set, and select a design. Alternatively, select Flourish and choose a flourish to be placed above, below or as a duo above and below the selected name.

*In the text below corners, flourishes, frames and side pieces are referred to collectively as frames.*  
As the frames are changed, the preview below reflects the changes made.



## Frame Each Individual

Choose whether to use a frame, corners, side pieces, or a flourish for each individual's name, or to use the name alone.

*Frames and flourishes are placed at a size to suit the names.*

## Category

Frames, corners, flourishes or side pieces are placed around the names. Click Frame and select one of corners, frames or side pieces from the Category drop-down list, or click Flourish.

## Frame or Flourish

Select a frame or flourish from one of the sets in the drop-down gallery.

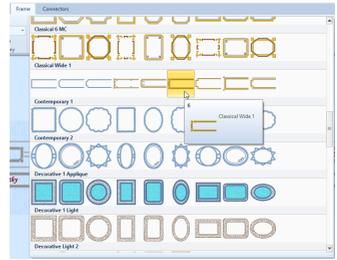
## Flourish

Choose a position for the Flourish:

**Above:** Place the flourish above the name.

**Below:** Place the flourish below the name.

**Duo:** Place vertically mirrored flourishes above and below the name.



## Thread Colors

Set the Thread Color to use when embroidering the frame. Click one of the thread color blocks to open the Color Selection dialog box. See “Changing Colors” on page 45.

## Stitch Type

Use Stitch Type  to alter the appearance of the stitching used in the frame.

*Changes made to the stitch properties for a frame set are retained until a new frame set is selected.*

To change the Stitch Type, select a stitch type from the drop-down menu to open the properties dialog for the stitch type. See “Choosing Stitch Properties” on page 424.

## Back

Go to the Lettering page.

*Alternatively, click the Lettering tab.*

## Next

Go to the Connectors page.

## Finish

Accept the final family tree and close the Family Tree Wizard.

## Cancel

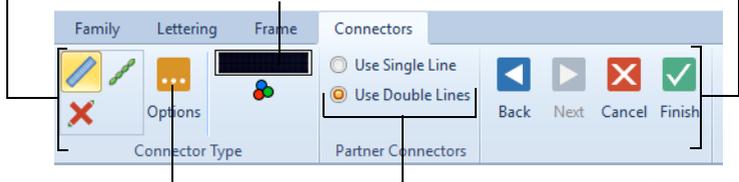
Close the Family Tree Wizard without creating a family tree.

# Connectors

Use the Connectors page to choose the line type and color for connectors between family members, or to use no connectors; and use single or double line connectors for partners.

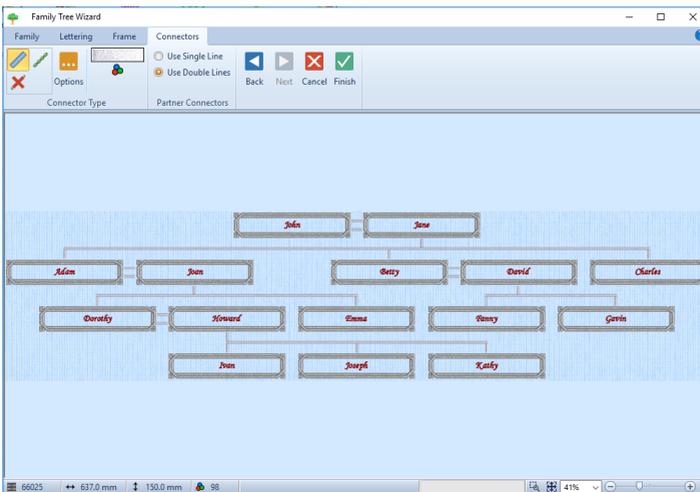
*A single running stitch line is used between partners when No Line is selected.*

Choose a line type for the connectors    Change the thread color    Adjust other settings or finish



Change the settings for the connectors    Use double stitch lines to indicate a partnership

Select a satin line or running stitch line for connectors between family members, or use no connectors. Choose the thread color used for all connectors. Choose a single or double line connector for partners.



## Connector Type

Choose Satin Line  or Running Line  for connectors between family members, or choose No Line  to place connectors only between partners.

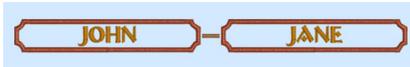
*If No Line is selected for connectors between family members, a single running stitch line will be placed between partners.*

Click Options  to set the stitch properties for the family connector lines. The properties dialog box for the stitch type opens. See “Satin Line” on page 468 and “Running Stitch” on page 464.

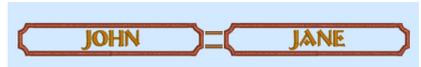
Click Thread Color  to set the color for all connectors in the Color Selection dialog box. See “Changing Colors” on page 45.

## Partner Connectors

Choose Use Single Line to place a single line connector between partners, and choose Use Double Lines to place a double line connector between partners.



Use Single Line



Use Double Lines

### Back

Go to the Frame page.

*Alternatively, click the Frame tab.*

### Finish

Accept the final family tree and close the Family Tree Wizard.

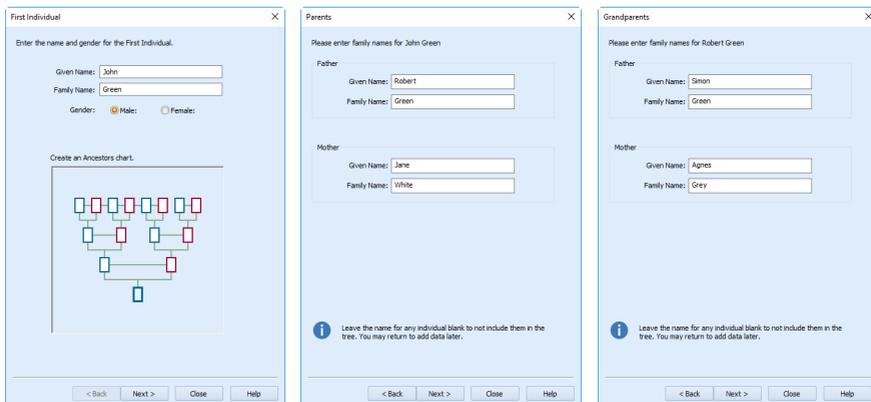
### Cancel

Close the Family Tree Wizard without creating a family tree.

# Create a Family Tree Embroidery

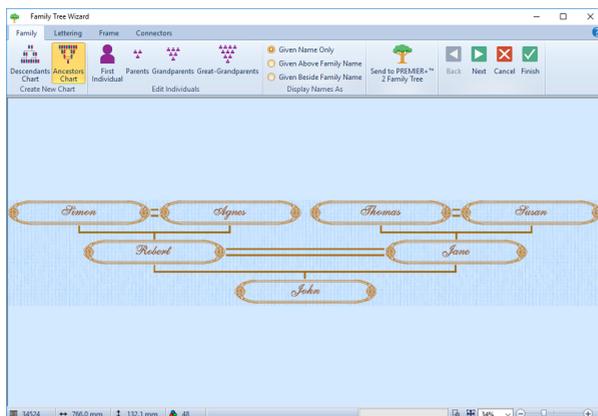
Before you start, run *Reset All Modules in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure*  to use the initial settings for the fonts, frames and connectors in the family tree embroidery.

- 1 In the Wizards tab, click Family Tree  to start the Family Tree Wizard.
- 2 In the Family page, click Ancestors Chart . The First Individual dialog box opens.
- 3 In Given Name, enter "John", and in Family Name enter "Green".
- 4 Ensure that Gender is set to Male and click Next.



The image shows three sequential dialog boxes for entering family member names. The first is 'First Individual' with fields for Given Name (John), Family Name (Green), and Gender (Male selected). The second is 'Parents' with fields for Father (Given Name: Robert, Family Name: Green) and Mother (Given Name: Jane, Family Name: White). The third is 'Grandparents' with fields for Father (Given Name: Simon, Family Name: Green) and Mother (Given Name: Agnes, Family Name: Grey). Each dialog includes a 'Create an Ancestors chart' section with a tree diagram and a 'Back Next > Close Help' button.

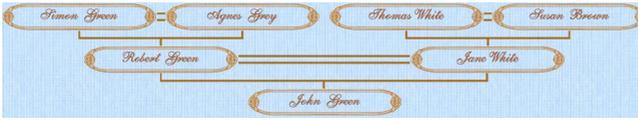
- 5 In the Parents dialog box, enter "Robert" as the Given Name for Father.
- 6 For Mother, enter "Jane" as the Given Name and "White" as the Family Name. Click Next.
- 7 In the Grandparents dialog box for Robert Green, enter "Simon" as the Given Name for Father, and "Agnes" and "Grey" as the Given Name and Family Name for Mother. Click Next.
- 8 In the Grandparents dialog box for Jane White, enter "Thomas" as the Given Name for Father, and "Susan" and "Black" as the Given Name and Family Name for Mother.
- 9 Click Close to finish entering names for the family tree.



When you click Close the family tree is saved. If you shut down PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, and then reopen it and the Family Tree Wizard, the family tree you entered will be displayed.

- 10 Click to select Given Beside Family Name. The family names are now also displayed. At the bottom of the Family Tree Wizard window the number of stitches and the design dimensions change. Use this information to check whether the design will fit in the desired hoop.

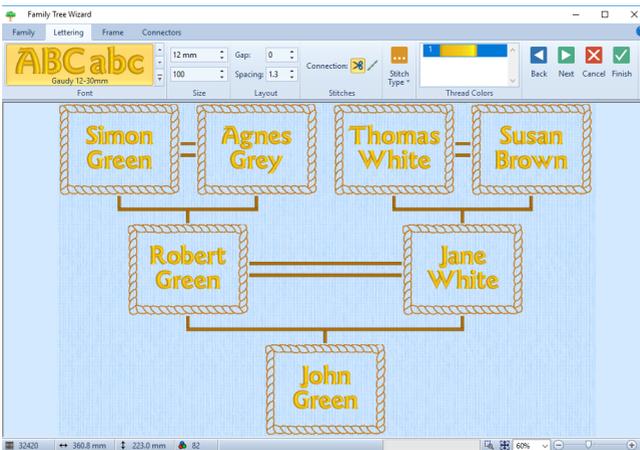
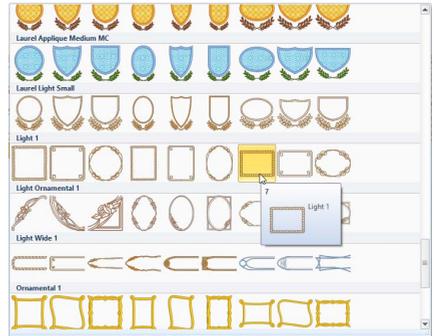
- 11 Click Grandparents . The Grandparents dialog box for Robert Green is opened.
- 12 Click Next to view the other Grandparents dialog box.
- 13 In the Family Name field for Mother, change "Black" to "Brown". The family tree design behind the dialog box is updated with the name Susan Brown.  
*You can correct mistakes and add information to the family tree after creation.*
- 14 Click Close.



If desired, click Send to PREMIER+™ 2 Family Tree to create a design with both ancestors and descendants, and to add PhotoStitch designs for individuals in the family.

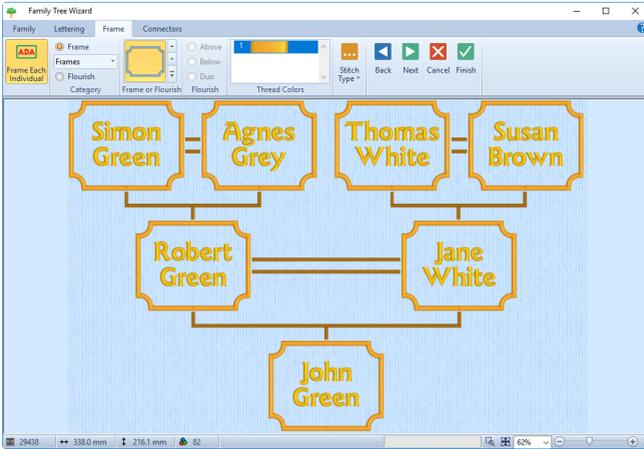
The family tree design is rather wide. To use the design on a cushion or in a frame, a taller format would look better.

- 15 Click Given Name Above Family Name. The design is now even wider! These frames were better suited to the side by side format.
- 16 Click the Frame tab.
- 17 Click the drop-down arrow in the Frame or Flourish area to view the Frames gallery.
- 18 In the Light 1 category, select the rectangular horizontal frame 7 to change the design proportions.
- 19 Click the Lettering tab to change the font used. *Note that the Adina font used in the wizard theme is brown rather than the standard pink, and is used at Size 12mm.*
- 20 For a more contemporary look, click the drop-down arrow for fonts, and scroll up to the Modern Category and select Gaudy 12 - 30mm.
- 21 The top and bottom lines of lettering touch with some names. Click the up arrow for Spacing once, to set it to 1.3.

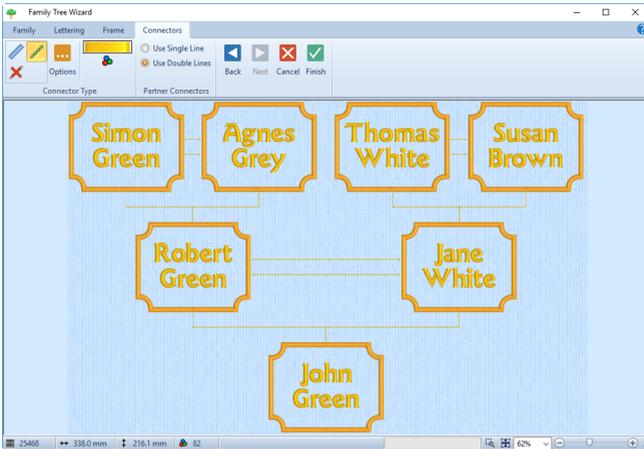


- 22 Click the Frame tab again to select a satin frame to go with the lettering.
- 23 Click the drop-down arrow in the Frame or Flourish area, and in the Frames gallery scroll up to the Classical 1 category.

- 24 Click to select frame 9.
- 25 Click the blue thread color, and in the Color Selection dialog box enter the number 2216 to select Robison-Anton Yellow 40, 2216 Marigold. Click OK.



- 26 Click the Connectors tab.
- 27 The connectors are too prominent. Click Thread Color and in the Color Selection dialog box enter the number 2408 to select Robison-Anton Rayon 40, 2408 Star Gold. (This is the color used by the lettering.) Click OK.
- 28 In Connector Type, select Running Stitch.



Alternatively, you could have changed the width and density of the satin line connectors with Options ...

- 29 Click Finish to place the family tree chart in the work area as a grouped .vp4 file with fixed lettering and frames.
- 30 Click Change Hoop, and in the Enter Size area of the Hoop Selection dialog box deselect Enter Hoop Size.
- 31 In the Universal Hoop Group, set the Hoop Size to 360mm x 260mm - Universal Large Hoop 5, Rotated orientation. Click OK.

You could also use the Split Project Wizard to split the design for a smaller hoop.

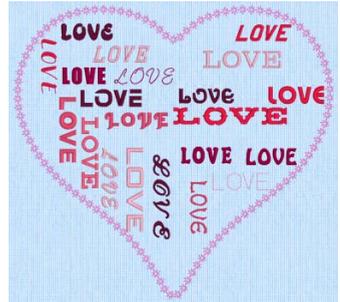
When you next open PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, your family tree will be available for further editing, or to create a completely different embroidery design.

## Overview

Use the Word Sculpt Wizard  to create a word design automatically using your choice of outline, words, and fonts.

*The Word Sculpt Wizard is only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*

*The initial size is set by the hoop. The most recently used values are kept within a session. Information about the outline, words and font used is stored in the settings of the embroidery that is created.*



## Word Sculpt Wizard

Use the Word Sculpt Wizard to create a word design automatically. The Word Sculpt Wizard opens at the Select Outline page.

### Shortcuts

- Wizards Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, W, W

## Select Outline

Use the Select Outline page to select a shape for your word design, set its size and angle, choose a stitch type for the outline and adjust its settings.

Select one of over 300 shapes

Set the design size

Set the design angle

Mirror the design outline

Choose & adjust a stitch type

View the design information

### Shape

Select one of over 300 shapes from the drop-down list.

### Select Size

Enter the desired size for your design.

The default dimensions will depend upon the shape selected, and the current hoop. The minimum size for a design is 20mm and the maximum size is 2000m.

## Angle

Use Angle to change the angle at which the outline shape is created and displayed.

Enter an Angle from 0 to 359 degrees. The initial setting is 0.

Alter the Angle by typing a number in the box, or use the up and down arrows to change the number. Changes in Angle are visible in the preview pane.

## Mirror

Select the Mirror checkbox to reflect the design from left to right.

## Stitch Type

Select the type of outline to create around the word design from one of the following:

- Satin Line : see "Satin Line" on page 468.
- Motif Line : see "Motif Line" on page 469.
- Running Stitch : see "Running Stitch" on page 464.
- Triple Stitch : see "Triple Stitch" on page 467.

## Stitch Options

After selecting the type of outline, click the Stitch Options button to show the properties for that outline type. If desired, adjust the properties and click OK.

## Preview

A preview of the design, and its stitch count , width , height  and number of color blocks  is displayed.

## Zoom Bar

Use the zoom bar at the bottom of the screen to zoom in or out from the center of the design.

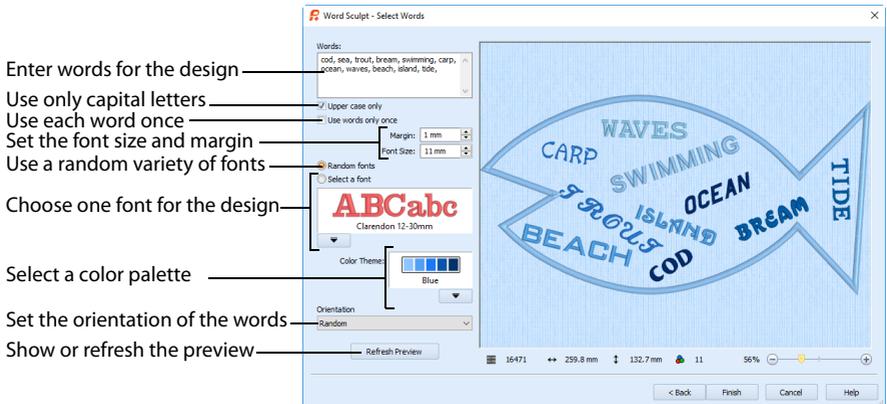
Use the slider to zoom in or out of the design, or click on the Zoom Out  or Zoom In  icons. The current magnification is displayed to the left of the zoom bar.

Click the marker in the center of the zoom bar (100%) to view the design at a magnification as close as possible to the Real Size setting you chose in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

## Next

Go to the Select Words page.

# Select Words



The Select Words page enables you to enter words, and place them inside the outline you selected. Enter the words, select the case and if they will be used more than once. Choose a font or random fonts, select a color theme, and select the orientation of the words in the design. Use Refresh Preview to view changes in the preview area.

## Words

Enter the words or phrases to use in the design, separated by a comma. The words are used in a random order.

*Either enter the words in the text box, or copy and paste them in from a text editor.*

### Upper Case Only

Select this option to use only capital letters for your words.

*If a lower case font is selected, the words will use lower case.*

### Use Words Only Once

Use each word entered only once.

*If a particular word is entered more than once, it will be used more than once.*

## Margin

Set the margin between the words in the design from 0mm to 20mm in steps of 1mm. The initial margin is 1mm.

## Font Size

Set the size of the font to be used in the design. The initial setting is 12mm.

The fonts that are used will be within their recommended size range. View your fonts in Font Manager  to check the recommended size range.

*If a large Font Size and Margin are selected, no words may appear within the design outline, as there may be insufficient space.*

## Random Fonts

Select the Random Fonts option to use a varying selection of fonts that are available to use at the selected Font Size.

*By default the random size range used will be from 3mm (the lower end of the recommended size range for fonts) to 12mm (the initial size for a Word Sculpt Wizard font). Any font within this range may be used at the selected Font Size.*

## Select a Font

Use the Select a Font option to choose a font from the font Gallery.

*For best results, use a font whose recommended size range includes the Font Size you selected above.*

## Color Theme

Use Color Theme to select the colors for your word sculpture. The Original setting will use the default colors for the design outline and the selected fonts. If you select another theme, the fonts and outline will use the colors in that theme.

The default Color Theme is Original.

*The available themes are: Original, Rose, Red, Orange, Yellow, Green, Teal, Light Blue, Blue, Purple, Pink, Gray, Cold, Warm, Grass, Earth, Lipstick, Primary, Complementary 1, Complementary 2 and Complementary 3.*

## Orientation

Use Orientation to select the positioning of the words in your sculpture. Choose from:

- Random
- Horizontal
- Vertical
- Horizontal and vertical
- Diagonal
- Horizontal, vertical and diagonal

The default setting is Random.

## Refresh Preview

Click Refresh Preview to update your design using any new settings, and to change the random distribution of the words in the sculpture.

*Click Refresh Preview repeatedly to view different arrangements of the words in the design.*

## Design Information

The design information boxes show the dimensions (Width  and Height ) , Stitch Count , and number of colors  for the embroidery. The design information may change when the embroidery is exported, depending on the Optimize for Sewing Options.

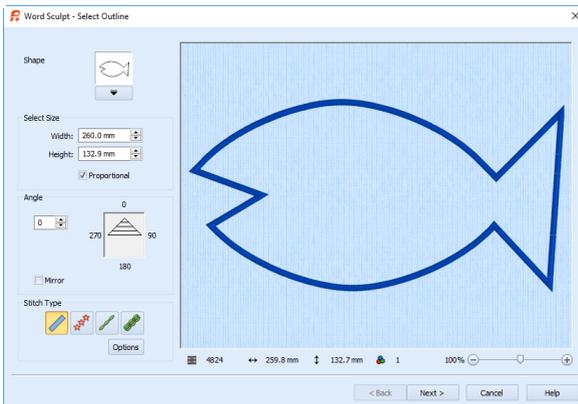
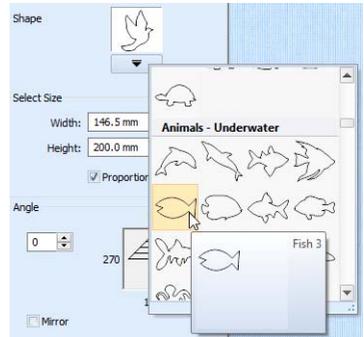
## Finish

Click Finish to close the Wizard.

# Word Sculpt Wizard Examples

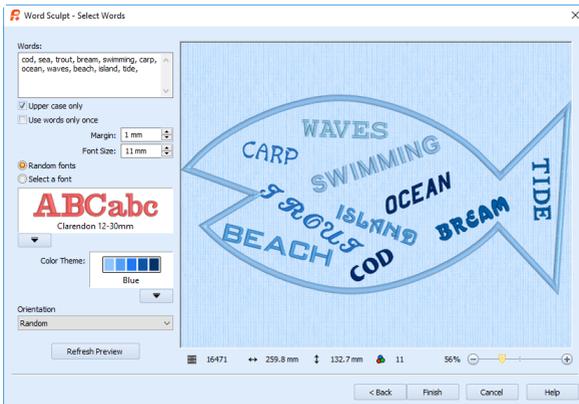
## Create a Fish Word Sculpt Design

- 1 In the Wizards tab, click Word Sculpt . The Select Outline page of the Word Sculpt Wizard appears. *A large hoop is best when creating a word sculpture.*
- 2 Click the drop-down arrow for the Shape list. There are over 300 shapes to select from.
- 3 In the Shape drop-down list scroll down to the Animals - Underwater category, and select the shape Fish 3. *The size of the design is set by the currently selected hoop. There is no need to change the settings in Select Size for this design.*
- 4 Ensure that Angle is set to 0, and that Mirror is not selected. *Use Angle and Mirror to adjust the position of the outline.*
- 5 In Stitch Type ensure that Satin Line  is selected. *For a different effect, you can select Motif Line , and click Options to choose a different motif and its settings.*

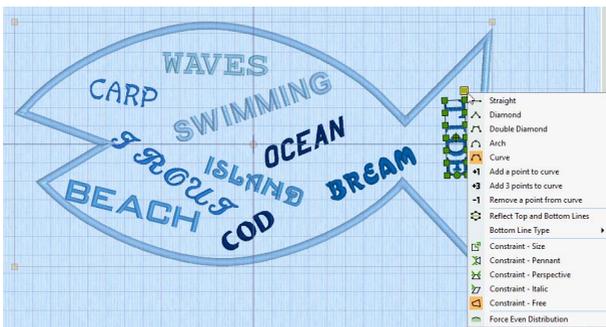


- 6 Click Next and the Select Words page of the wizard will appear.
- 7 In the Words text box, enter the words or phrases to use in your design, separated by a comma. *Not all of your words may be used. Use a word twice in your list if you want it to be frequent in the design. You may find it easier to create the list in a text editor and paste it in.*  
If desired, deselect Upper case only to use upper and lower case letters, and select Use words once only if you do not want words repeated.
- 8 Set Margin to 1mm to place the words close to each other.
- 9 Reduce Font Size to 11mm to enable more words to fit into the fish outline.
- 10 Ensure that Random fonts is selected. *Random fonts will use a variety of fonts recommended for the selected Font Size. For example, both Antonia 10-20mm and Arial 08-14mm may be used when the Font Size is set to 11mm.*
- 11 In Color Theme, select Blue from the drop-down menu. The outline and words now use various shades of blue.
- 12 In Orientation ensure that Random is selected. *For a different effect, choose Horizontal and Vertical or one of the other options.*
- 13 Click Refresh Preview to use your updated settings.
- 14 Click Refresh Preview again. The arrangement of the words and the number of words used changes.

- 15 Change the settings and use Refresh Preview until you are happy with the results.



- 16 Click Finish to place the design in the work area. Save  this original version, if desired. The design is loaded as a Group, and each word is a lettering Block with Curve line types at Top and Bottom, and Constraint set to Free. You can mould each Block to almost any shape you wish.
- 17 Click Restrict Groups , then click the yellow handle on one of the lettering Blocks. You can see the settings for the Block.



For more information on adjusting lettering Blocks, see *Creating Lettering in the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Reference Guide* or *Help*.

- 18 Click and drag the handles on the block to mould it to the desired shape.
- Use Previous Design  and Next Design  to move between the designs in the Group.

- 19 To change the font in a lettering Block, right-click the Block and select Properties in the Context menu.

If you want to mould a lettering Block to a larger size, a different font may look better. Check the size range before changing.

- 20 To add a word to the design, Copy  then Paste  one of the words, and move it to the desired position.

- 21 Right-click the new word, and in the Letter Properties dialog box change the text and font. Click OK.

- 22 In the Color Select area on the Design Panel, click the thread color and set it to match the theme.

- 23 Mould the new word to shape.

- 24 Add words to your design and mould them to shape, then Save  your finished design.



## Overview

Use the Project-in-the-Hoop Wizard 🌟 to create an in-the-hoop design using your choice of project type, style and dimensions. Follow the PDF instructions to stitch out your project.

*The Project-in-the-Hoop Wizard is only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.*

## Project-in-the-Hoop Wizard

Use the Project-in-the-Hoop Wizard to create an in-the-hoop design using your choice of project type, style and dimensions.

### Shortcuts

- Wizards Tab: 🌟
- Keys: Alt, W, I

## Using the Project-in-the-Hoop Wizard

Select a design Category and a Style, then enter the Dimensions of your project. Click the View PDF Instructions button to view and print a copy of the PDF stitchout instructions.

The screenshot shows the 'Project-in-the-Hoop Wizard' dialog box with the following elements and callouts:

- Category:** Phone Case (dropdown menu)
- Preview the project type:** Image of a phone case with a floral design.
- Style:** Multiwave (dropdown menu)
- Preview the project design:** Image of a phone case with a red diamond-shaped design.
- Dimensions:** Enter the dimensions of your phone or device.
  - Width: 90.1 mm
  - Height: 164.9 mm
  - Thickness: 9.0 mm
- View PDF Instructions:** Button to view and print the PDF stitchout instructions.
- Buttons:** OK, Cancel, Help

After you click OK to select the project, read the instructions in the PDF, view how the project is constructed in the Design Player , and then make any customizations to the main design in the work area.

*Ensure that you change only the decorative embroidery, and not the construction stitching. Preserve the order of the sections of the project.*

*Use the Previous Design  and Next Design  buttons on the Home tab to step between the sections of the project.*

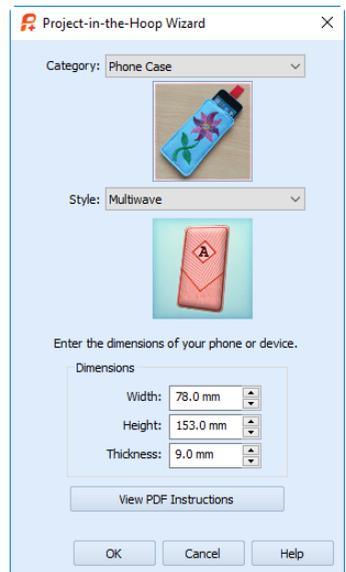
*Change the color of the construction stitching, and the decoration, to suit your fabric.*

*Save  your project, and then stitch it out in a suitable hoop, following the instructions.*



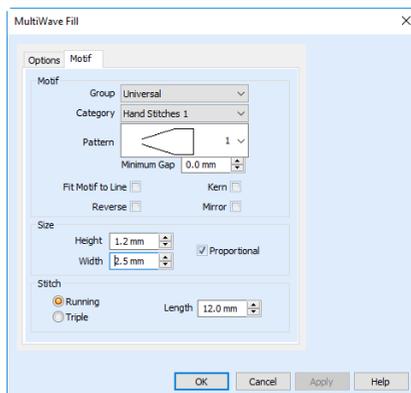
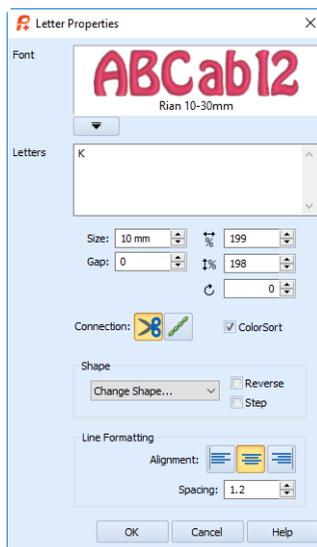
## Create a Phone Case Project

- 1 If required, click File, New Window, then click Change Hoop  in the Quick Access toolbar.
- 2 Set the hoop size to 260mm x 200mm - Universal Large Hoop 3, and set Orientation to Natural. Click OK.
- 3 Click the Wizards tab.
- 4 In the Wizards tab, click Project-in-the-Hoop . The Wizard opens.
- 5 In the Category drop-down menu, choose Phone Case.
- 6 In the Style drop-down menu, choose Multiwave. The phone case style is displayed.
- 7 Click the View PDF Instructions button. A PDF of the instructions is displayed.
- 8 Scroll down to view the instructions, and if desired print or save a copy.  
*To view the instructions again later, reopen the Wizard, select the same Category, and click View PDF Instructions.*
- 9 Measure the phone, then enter the Width, Height and Thickness of the phone in the text boxes.
- 10 Click OK to load the project into the work area.  
*The hoop is considerably larger than the design. You can use a smaller hoop.*
- 11 In the Quick Access toolbar click Change Hoop , and set the hoop size to 240mm x 150mm - Universal Large Hoop 2, with Orientation set to Natural.
- 12 Click the Home tab, then click Restrict Groups . The handles on the project become green.  
*The project is created as a Group. Use Restrict Groups to customize part of it.*
- 13 Click Next Design  until the letter A embroidery is selected.  
*The thread colors in the Color Select panel indicate whether a gray structural section, or a red decorative section is selected.*
- 14 Right-click the A embroidery, and choose Properties in the context menu. The Letter Properties dialog box is displayed.
- 15 In the Letters text box, change the initial to that of the phone's owner.
- 16 Click the drop-down arrow below Font, and in the font gallery scroll up to the Modern Category.
- 17 Select the font Rian 10-30mm.  
*To squeeze more letters into the space, choose a smaller font, and adjust the lettering shape with the Handles menu.*



- 18 Click OK to close the Letter Properties dialog box.  
*The pink for the letter is too similar to the color of the other stitching. A darker color would work better.*
- 19 In the Design Panel, double-click the pink for the letter. The Color Selection dialog box opens.
- 20 Select a stronger color in the Quick Colors, and choose a final color among those near to the color that you selected.
- 21 Click OK to view the changed color.
- 22 Click Next Design  again until the red MultiWave Fill stitching is selected in the Color Select area.
- 23 Right-click the stitching, and in the context menu select MultiWave Fill, and MultiWave Fill 1.  
*This is the fill for the bottom part of the phone case.*
- 24 In the MultiWave Fill properties dialog box, select (check) Use Motifs, then click the Motif tab.
- 25 Select a motif Category and Pattern.
- 26 Reduce the size of the motif to suit the small size of the phone case., then click OK to view your changes.
- 27 Right-click the stitching, and in the context menu select MultiWave Fill, and MultiWave Fill 2.  
*This is the fill for the top part of the phone case.*
- 28 In the MultiWave Fill properties dialog box, select (check) Use Motifs, then click the Motif tab.
- 29 Select a motif Category and Pattern, and set the size as desired. Click OK.
- 30 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Design Player .
- 31 Play through the design to see how it will be stitched out.  
*You can also print a worksheet to view the structure of the project.*

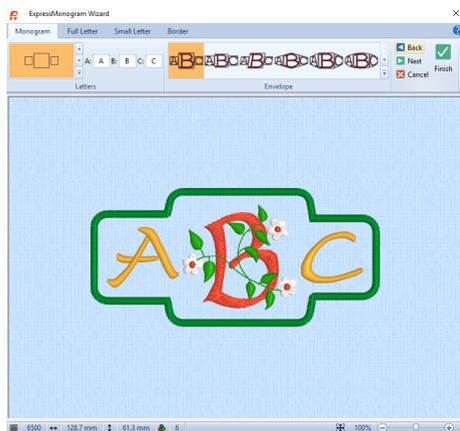
Click Save  to save your project, Export  it for your embroidery machine, then stitch it out.



Use the ExpressMonogram Wizard  to create a monogram of up to three letters. Select a font style, thread color, shape and size. Surround the monogram with a border. Alternatively, create a monogram with no border, then add a Frame or Flourish using the Frame tab, or a motif underline using the Border tab.

*On the work area, use Save or Save As to save the monogram in a .vp4 file for later use.*

Unless the monogram has been fixed as Embroidery Stitches, right-click at any time and choose Properties from the Context menu to return to the ExpressMonogram Wizard for adjustments.



*If you resize the monogram it will be fixed as a group of embroideries.*

## ExpressMonogram Wizard

Select the ExpressMonogram Wizard  to create a monogram from a set of initials. The Monogram page of the ExpressMonogram Wizard will appear.

Select a font style, thread color, shape and size. Surround the monogram with a border. Alternatively, create a monogram with no border, then add a Frame or Flourish using the Frame tab, or a motif underline using the Border tab.

Progress through the pages using Next  and Back  to alter each setting, or click Finish  at any time.

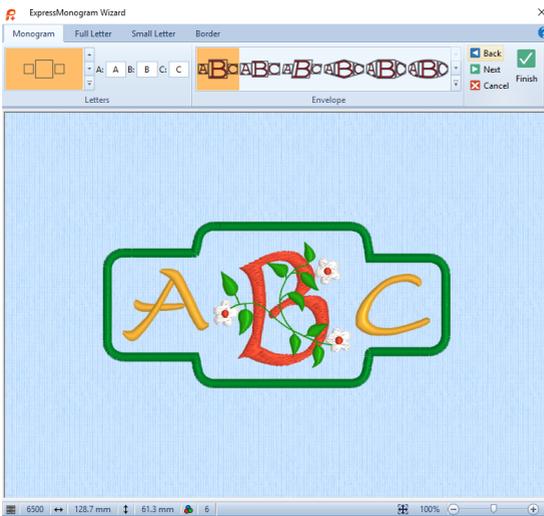
*Any existing monogram will be retained in the work area.*

### Shortcuts

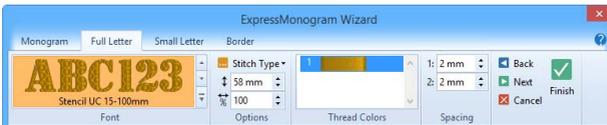
- Wizards Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, W, M

# Overview

- 1 In the Wizard tab, click ExpressMonogram Wizard  to start the Monogram Wizard.
- 2 In the Monogram page, select a monogram type for an embroidery. Enter the initial letters for the monogram, and select Full, Small or a combination of both from the letters gallery, then choose an envelope.



- 3 Use the Full Letter and Small Letter pages to select the style for the letters in the monogram. Choose the font, size, color, spacing and stitch options for the letters.

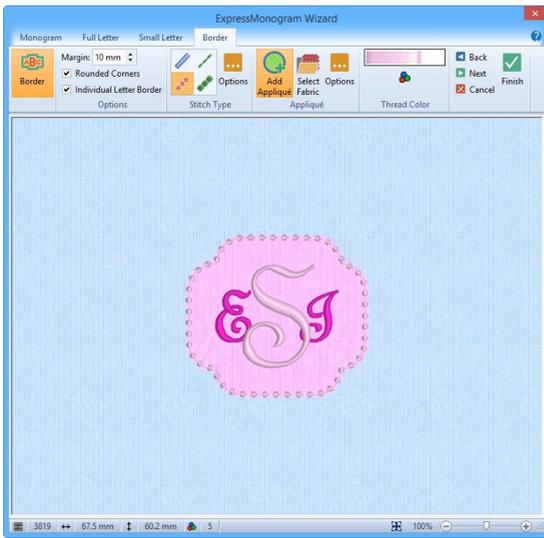


*The Monogram fonts are recommended for use with the Classic envelopes that use SFS (small, full, small characters), as they are designed with mainly even width characters.*

*Check the size in the status bar as you progress, to ensure the embroidery will fit in the desired location.*

- 4 Create a border automatically from the envelope. The border can have rounded or square corners, and if the spacing is large enough, letters can be bordered individually. The available border types are satin or motif line, and running or triple stitch. Optionally, add appliqué fabric and placement lines.

You can set the properties for each, and select the thread color for stitching it.

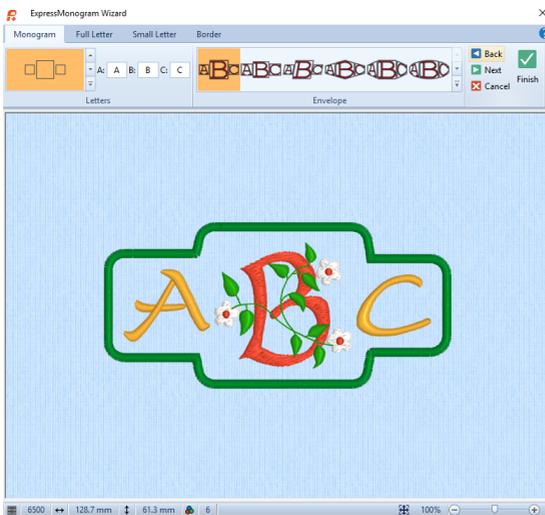


- 5 Click Finish  to place the monogram in the work area. Its selection box will have pale green handles.
- 6 If desired, right-click at any time and choose Properties from the Context menu to return to the ExpressMonogram Wizard for adjustments.

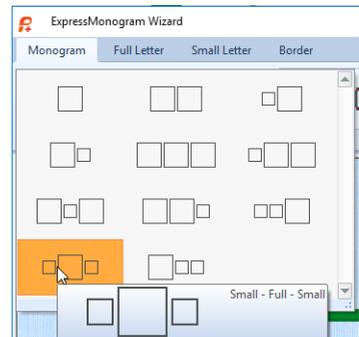
*On the work area, use Save or Save As to save the monogram in a .vp4 file for later use.*

# Create a Monogram

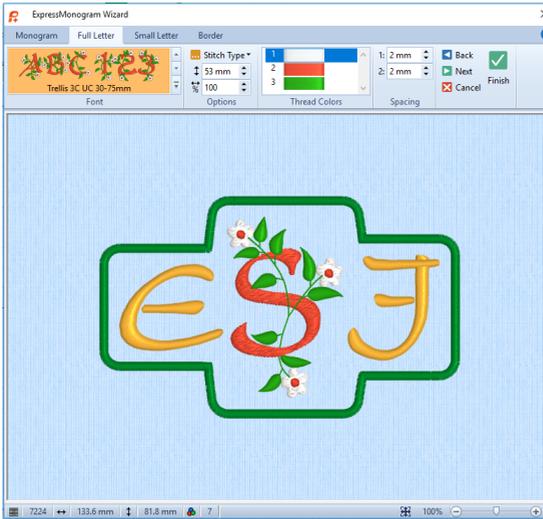
- 1 Start the ExpressMonogram Wizard . The Monogram page opens.



- 2 Choose a monogram type from the gallery on the left. Select how many letters to use, and whether they are Full or Small.  
*The size of a Small letter is proportional to the Full monogram letter. You can use different fonts and colors for Small letters.*
- 3 Enter the letters for your monogram in the boxes A, B and C.  
*For traditional monograms, letters are used in the order of given name, family name, middle name. If the box for the letter is blank, a question mark will be inserted instead.*
- 4 Select a monogram Envelope category and type from the gallery.  
*All the envelopes available use the number of Full and Small letters that you have chosen. Choose an Envelope that uses the desired size ratio for your Full and Small letters. You can return to this page later if you want to adjust the choices you made.*



- 5 Click Next . The Full Letter page appears.



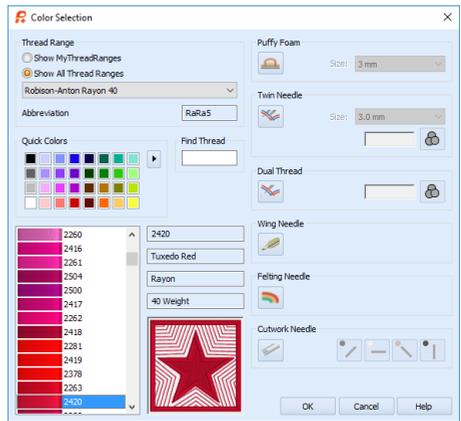
In this page you can adjust the style and size of the large letters in the monogram, and the space between all letters.

- 6 In Font, select a font category and an individual font from the gallery. For example, select the font Curly UC 25-50mm in the Monogram category in the displayed list of fonts.



- 7 Select a Height  for the letter(s).  
For best results, choose a size within the recommended range shown in the font name. The size is initially set to the middle of this range.
- 8 Change Width  to make the letters wider or narrower.  
The Width setting is a proportion of the overall size.
- 9 You can click the Stitch Type drop-down list and change the properties for the stitching in the font. The drop-down list may be grayed out (unavailable), depending on which stitch types are present in the font.

- 10 Click on a thread color to display the Color Selection dialog box. Here you can select another shade by clicking on it, or by entering the thread number in the Find Thread text box. Optionally, add a thread or needle effect to the selected color block. Click OK to close.

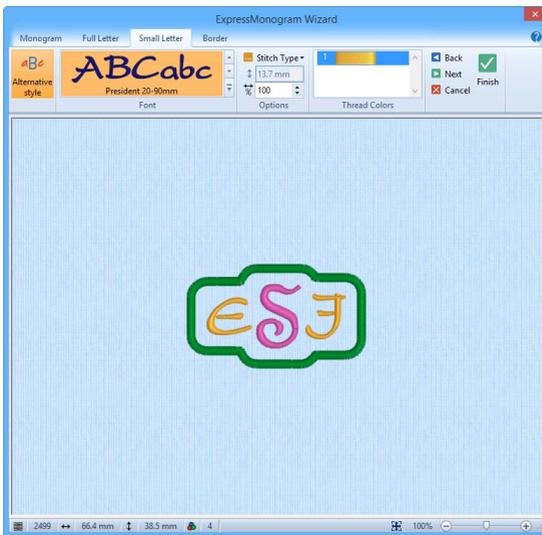


- 11 Use Spacing 1 and Spacing 2 to adjust the amount of space in millimeters between the letters. Use negative values to interlock letters, if desired.

*You may need to adjust the spacing after selecting the font for the small letters.*

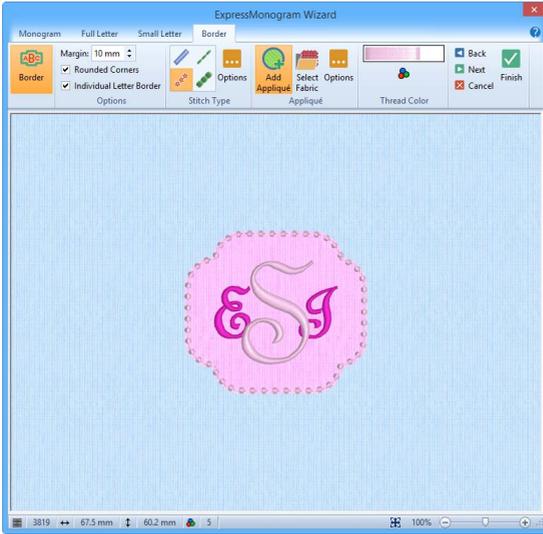
*Spacing will affect whether individual borders are created around the letters in the monogram.*

- 12 Click Next . If you selected a monogram that included small letters, as well as large ones, the Small Letter page will appear. Otherwise the Border page will appear.



- 13 In this page, adjust the style and color of the small letters in the monogram. *Deselect 'Alternative style' to use the same font, color and thread as for the Full letters.*
- 14 Make any desired changes to the font and color of the small letters. *To match the color of a Small letter to a Full letter, click the Full Letter tab, or Back , to return to the Full Letter page, place the arrow pointer over the desired thread color and note its number. Then return to the Small Letter page, click the thread color to be changed, enter the color number for the other color in the Find Thread box, and click OK. The colors will now match.*
- 15 Click Next . The Border page appears.
- 16 Increase Margin to give more room around the letters (the amount of space around letters is also affected by the Spacing settings in the Full Letter page).
- 17 Choose whether to use rounded corners and individual letter borders for the monogram letters. *The individual borders will only show if there is enough space between the letters.*
- 18 Select a Stitch Type, and use Options  to set its properties.

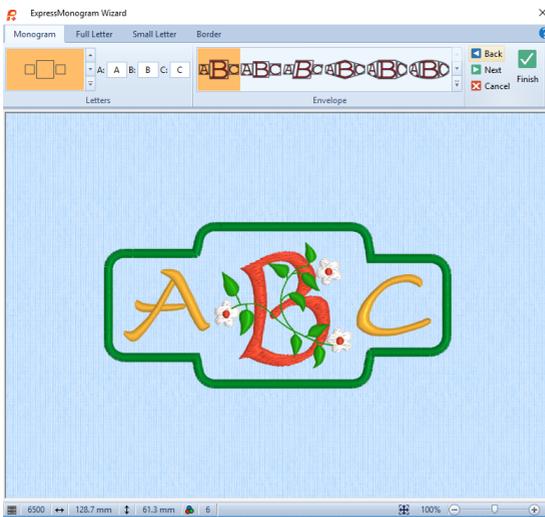
- 19 Add Appliqué  if desired and select an appliqué fabric and style.



*You can also change the border thread color.*

- 20 Click Finish  to close the wizard and place the embroidery in the work area.
- 21 The monogram on the work area has pale green handles. Click Save As  to save it as a .vp4 file.
- 22 To edit the placed monogram, right-click it and select Properties from the Context menu. The ExpressMonogram Wizard reopens.  
*If you resize the monogram it will be fixed as a group of embroideries.*

# Monogram



In the Monogram page, select the number and size of letters for the monogram embroidery. Enter the letters for those initials, and select an envelope category and type.

*A preview of the Monogram is shown at the bottom of the screen.*

## Letters

Select the number of letters, and whether they are to be small or full. Then enter the letters for the monogram.

*For traditional monograms, letters are used in the order of given name, family name, middle name. If you use a Monogram font, only upper case letters will be used in the embroidery, even if you entered lower case letters.*

## Envelope

Select an envelope category and type from the gallery.

*The envelope that you choose affects the relative size of the full and small letters. For example, the small letters in the Small, Full, Small (SFS) Straight1 category are relatively smaller than those in the SFS Straight2 category.*

## Preview

A preview of the embroidered monogram, and its stitch count , width , height  and number of color blocks  is displayed.

## Zoom Bar

Use the Zoom Bar at the bottom of the screen to zoom in or out from the center of the monogram.



Use the slider to zoom in or out of the monogram, or click on the Zoom Out  or Zoom In  icons.

## Back

Go to the Border page.

## Next

Go to the Full Letter page.

*Alternatively, click the Full Letter tab.*

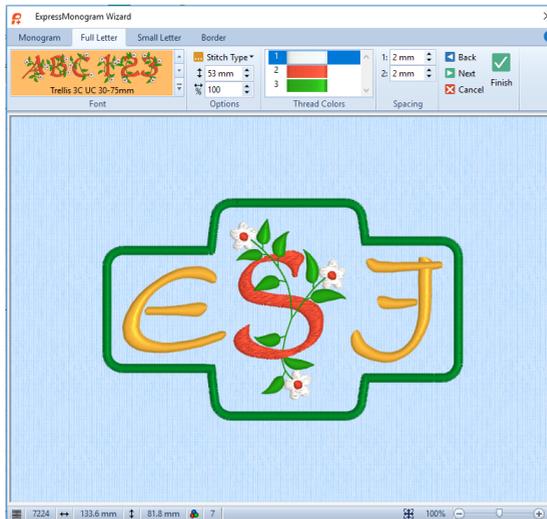
## Finish

Accept the final design and close the ExpressMonogram Wizard.

## Cancel

Close the ExpressMonogram Wizard without creating a monogram.

# Full Letter



Use the Full Letter page to select how the large letters in the monogram are to be displayed.

Choose the font, size, stitch type, thread color and spacing of the letters.

## Font

Select a font category, and an individual font, from the gallery. The font name specifies the recommended size range for each font.

*The initial font size for Full letters is in the middle of the recommended range.*

*The Monogram fonts are recommended for use with the Classic envelopes that use SFS (small, full, small characters), as they are designed with mainly even width characters.*

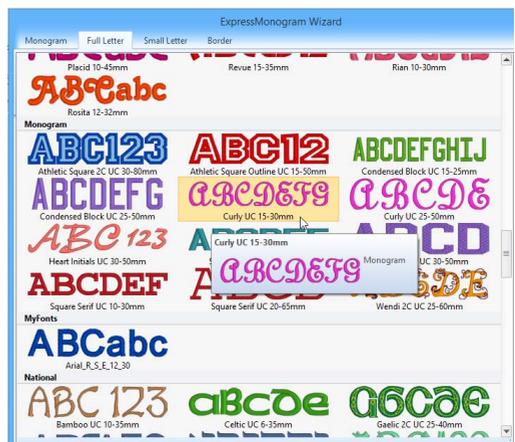
## Height

Set the Height  $\updownarrow$  in millimeters as desired, from 3mm to 200mm.

*This sets the height of the 'A' character in the font. All other characters and symbols are sized relative to the height of 'A'. The size is initially set to a medium size for the chosen font.*

## Width

If desired, change the Width percentage  $\leftrightarrow$  of the Full letters. Change the width from 25% to 400% of the default setting.



## Stitch Type

Select one of the stitch types  for the font from the drop-down list. The properties dialog for the stitch type appears. Use the properties dialog box to change the border and fill for the lettering. See “Choosing Stitch Properties” on page 424.

When you have finished, click OK to apply your changes to the lettering.

*The Stitch Type drop-down will only be available if the font contains at least one stitch type with editable properties.*

## Thread Colors

Thread Colors enables you to select the color used when embroidering the letters. Click the thread to open the Color Selection dialog box. Optionally, add a thread or needle effect to the selected color block.

*For information on changing thread colors, see “Change an Existing Thread Color” on page 45.*

## Spacing

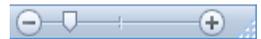
Use Spacing to set the distance in millimeters between the letters in the monogram. Use negative values to interlock letters, if desired.

*Spacing will affect whether individual borders are created around the monogram letters when a border is used.*

The minimum is -51.0mm and the maximum is 51.0mm. The initial setting is 2.0mm.

## Zoom Bar

Use the Zoom Bar at the bottom of the screen to zoom in or out from the center of the monogram.



Use the slider to zoom in or out of the monogram, or click on the Zoom Out  or Zoom In  icons.

## Preview

A preview of the embroidered monogram, and its stitch count , width , height  and number of color blocks  is displayed.

## Back

Return to the Monogram page.

## Next

Go to the Small Letter page if you are also using small letters, otherwise go to the Border page.

## Finish

Accept the final design and close the ExpressMonogram Wizard.

## Cancel

Close the ExpressMonogram Wizard without creating a monogram.



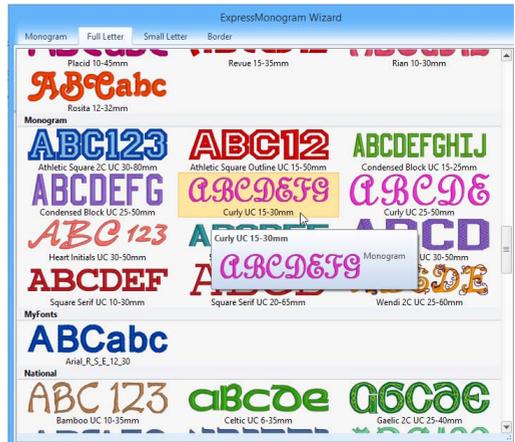
## Font

Select a font category, and an individual font, from the gallery. The font name specifies the recommended size range for each font.

## Height

Use Height  to view the height of the small letters in millimeters.

*This shows the height of the 'A' character in the font, as calculated from the Full Letter size and the selected envelope. All other characters and symbols are sized relative to the height of 'A'*



## Width

If desired, change the Width percentage  of the small letters. Change the width from 25% to 400% of the default setting.

## Thread Color

Thread Color enables you to select the color used when embroidering the letters. Click the thread to open the Color Selection dialog box. Optionally, add a thread or needle effect to the selected color block.

*For information on changing thread colors, see "Change an Existing Thread Color" on page 45.*

## Stitch Type

Select one of the stitch types  for the font from the drop-down list. The properties dialog for the stitch type appears. Use the properties dialog box to change the border and fill for the lettering. See "Choosing Stitch Properties" on page 424.

When you have finished, click OK to apply your changes to the lettering.

*The Stitch Type drop-down will only be available if the font contains at least one stitch type with editable properties.*

## Zoom Bar

Use the Zoom Bar at the bottom of the screen to zoom in or out from the center of the monogram.



Use the slider to zoom in or out of the monogram, or click on the Zoom Out  or Zoom In  icons.

## Preview

A preview of the embroidered monogram, and its stitch count , width , height  and number of color blocks  is displayed.

**Back** 

Return to the Full Letter page.

**Next** 

Go to the Border page.

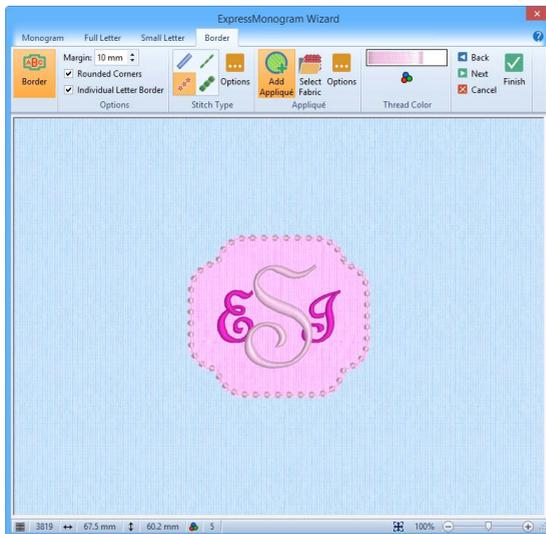
**Finish** 

Accept the final design and close the ExpressMonogram Wizard.

**Cancel** 

Close the ExpressMonogram Wizard without creating a monogram.

# Border



Use the Border page of the ExpressMonogram Wizard to place a border around a monogram, to select the thread color, and to add appliqué fabric to the monogram.

The border can have rounded or square corners, and letters can be bordered individually. The available border types are satin border, running stitch, triple stitch and motif line. Optionally, add appliqué fabric and placement lines. Click Options  to set the properties for each.

## Margin

Use Margin to leave space between the monogram and the border around it.

The minimum Margin is zero. The maximum Margin is 20mm. The initial setting is 6mm.

## Rounded Corners

Select this option to smooth the corners of the border around the monogram.

By default, this option is selected.

## Individual Letter Border

Select this option to place a border between the individual letters in the monogram.

*Borders will not appear between the letters in the monogram if they are too close together.*

*To make the individual letter borders visible, select the Full Letter tab, and click Back until you reach the Full Letter page, and increase Spacing 1 and Spacing 2. Click the Border tab to return to the Border page.*



## Stitch Types

The stitch types available for automatically created borders are:

- Satin Line: see “Satin Line” on page 468.
- Motif Line: see “Motif Line” on page 469.
- Running Stitch: see “Running Stitch” on page 464.
- Triple Stitch: see “Triple Stitch” on page 467.

Click Options  to set the properties for each.

## Appliqué

Click Add Appliqué  to use an appliqué piece for the monogram. Use Select Fabric  to choose the fabric for the monogram, and click Options  to select the appliqué type.

See “Appliqué Selection” on page 185 and “Appliqué Options” on page 198.

## Thread Color

Thread Color enables you to select the color used for the border.

Click the Thread Color icon  to open the Color Selection dialog box. Optionally, add a thread or needle effect to the selected color block.

*For information on changing thread colors, see “Change an Existing Thread Color” on page 45.*

## Zoom Bar

Use the Zoom Bar at the bottom of the screen to zoom in or out from the center of the monogram.



Use the slider to zoom in or out of the monogram, or click on the Zoom Out  or Zoom In  icons.

## Preview

A preview of the embroidered monogram, and its stitch count , width , height  and number of color blocks  is displayed. The design information may change when the embroidery is exported, depending on the Optimize for Sewing Options.

## Back

Return to the Small Letter or Full Letter page.

## Next

Go to the Monogram page.

## Finish

Accept the final design and close the ExpressMonogram Wizard.

## Cancel

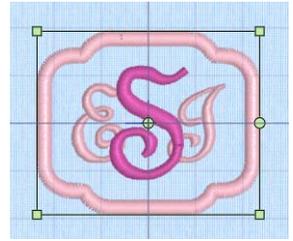
Close the ExpressMonogram Wizard without creating a monogram.

## Adjusting Monograms

When a monogram is placed on the work area it has pale green handles. These indicate that it can still be adjusted in the ExpressMonogram Wizard.

To open a monogram in the ExpressMonogram Wizard, right-click it and select Properties in the Context menu.

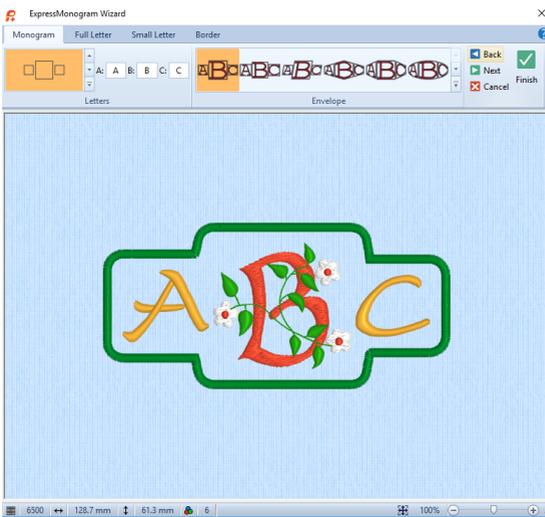
A monogram can be saved, rotated and copied in its original form. However if it is resized, it will be fixed as a group of embroideries, and the lettering properties cannot be changed. After resizing a group, the percentage size change from the original cannot be seen in the Modify Design dialog box.



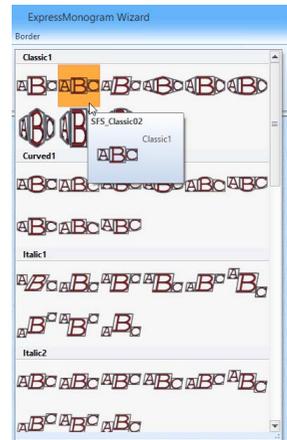
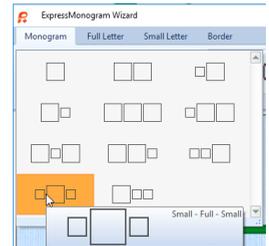
*A monogram saved as part of a group can be selected using Restrict Groups and reopened in the ExpressMonogram Wizard. When a monogram is exported it is fixed as stitches and uses the Combine and ColorSort settings in the Export dialog box.*

# Create a Monogram with a Border

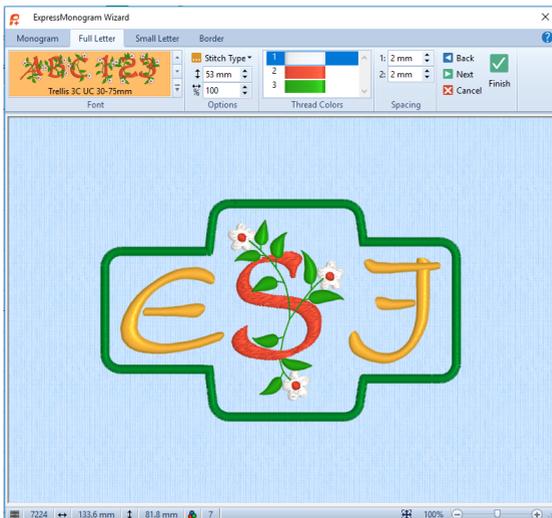
- 1 Click New , then click the Hoop icon  in the Quick Access toolbar. From the Universal Hoop Group, set the Hoop Size to 100mm x 100mm - Universal Square Hoop 1. Click OK.
- 2 In the Wizards tab, click ExpressMonogram . The Monogram page of the ExpressMonogram Wizard will appear.



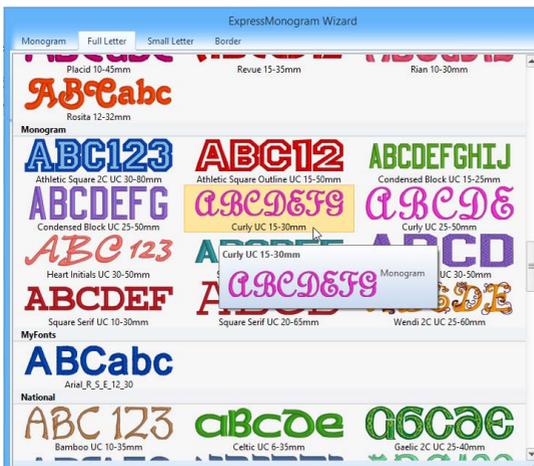
- 3 In the gallery at the top left, select the Small - Full - Small layout. This will produce a monogram with characters sized proportionally: small, full, small (SFS).
- 4 Enter the letters 'E', 'S' and 'J' in boxes A, B and C.  
*E, S and J represent the name Elizabeth Jane Smith, using traditional monogram style where letters are used in the order of given name, family name, middle name. If the letters were all full size, EJS could be used as an alternative.*
- 5 In the Envelopes gallery, select the second envelope in the Classic 1 category. Its name is SFS\_Classic02.  
*If you position the arrow pointer over a thumbnail without clicking, the name of the envelope will be shown.*  
*The name stands for Small-Full-Small, using the second envelope in the Classic1 category.*  
*In this envelope the small characters are relatively larger than those in the envelope to the left, proportions which are well suited to the curly initials to be used.*



- 6 Click Next , or click the Full Letter tab. The Full Letter page will appear.

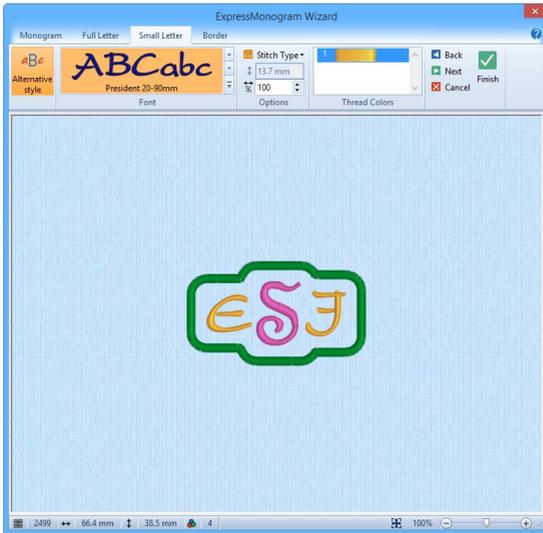


- 7 Click to open the Font gallery at the top left.
- 8 Click and drag the scroll bar on the side of the font list to see all the fonts in the Monogram category. *This category includes fonts that are recommended for the Classic envelopes using SFS (small, full, small characters).*
- 9 Click to select the font Curly UC 15-30mm.



- 10 Leave the font size at 23mm. *The initial size of a font is in the middle of the recommended font size range. Notice the Height  and Width  measurements at the bottom of the window have changed. Use these as a guide to the size of your final monogram as you try different options. If you have a desired final size you may need to alter the font size.*

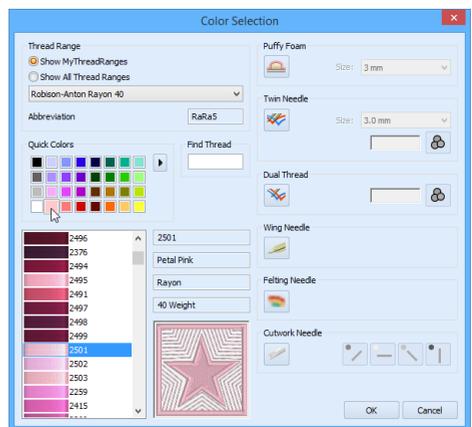
- 11 Move the arrow pointer over the pink thread in the Thread Colors box and a popup description appears.
- 12 Click the pink thread color, and in the Thread Range drop-down list select Robison-Anton Rayon 40. The thread will change to Floral Pink, number 2415. Click OK.  
*This only affects the letter S as it is the only 'Full' letter.*
- 13 Click Next , or click the Small Letter tab, and the Small Letter page will appear.



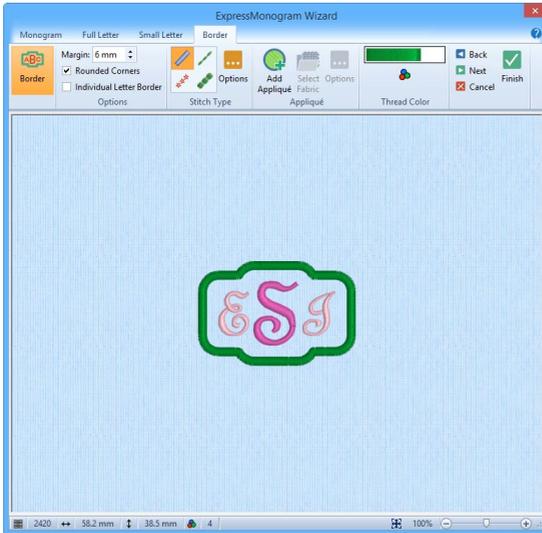
- 14 Ensure that 'Alternative style' is selected.  
*If Alternative style is not selected, the same font will be used for small letters as for the full letters.*

- 15 In the Font gallery, select Curly UC 15-30mm in the Monogram category for the small letters.  
*Notice the Height  $\updownarrow$  measurement at the top of the window has changed. This is the height of the letter 'A' for the small letter font. It should be within the recommended size range for the font (as mentioned in the font name). If the height is outside the recommended range, you may need to return to the Monogram page and change the envelope, or use the Full Letter page to change the full letter size.*

- 16 Click the pink color and the Color Selection dialog box appears.
- 17 In the Thread Range drop-down list select Robison-Anton Rayon 40.
- 18 Click pale pink in the Quick Colors (the second color square in the bottom row) and 2501 (Petal Pink) will be selected.
- 19 Click OK. The smaller letters are now a pale pink.



20 Click Next , or click the Border tab, and the Border page will appear.



You can use a Motif Line , a Satin Line , or a Running Stitch  or Triple Stitch  line. The default border is a green satin line.

21 Select Motif Line . The solid green border is replaced by a line of stars.

22 Select Satin Line  and the satin stitches appear again.

23 Click the Thread Color icon  to display the Color Selection dialog box.

Ensure that 'Robison-Anton Rayon 40' is selected.

25 Click pale pink in the Quick Colors (the second color square in the bottom row) and 2501 (Petal Pink) will be selected.

26 Click OK to close the Color Selection box. The satin border of the monogram is now pink.

27 Click Add Appliqué . A gray fabric is placed behind the letters in the monogram. A matching fabric would enhance the embroidery.

28 Click Select Fabric  to open the Appliqué Selection dialog box.

29 Click the Color button above the Quick Colors palette. The Colors dialog box appears, with the Standard tab selected.

30 In the hexagonal matrix, click the medium pink hexagon sixth from the right (just to the right of the central white hexagon), then click OK. The new color is shown on the Color button and in the fabric preview.

31 Click OK to select the new fabric color.

Use Quick Fabric colors to preview your embroideries on a color similar to the fabric that you will use. Alternatively, select a patterned fabric.

32 Click the 'Individual Letter Border' checkbox to place lines between the letters in the monogram.

Although 'Individual Letter Border' is now checked, The borders do not appear between the letters as they are relatively closely spaced.

33 To see individual letter borders in the monogram, the spacing must be increased. Click the Full Letter tab to return to the Full Letter page.

34 Click the up arrow next to 1 in the Spacing section (the distance between the first and second letters) to increase it to 15mm.

35 Click the up arrow next to 2 in Spacing (the distance between the second and third letters) to increase it to 15mm. The letters now have individual borders.



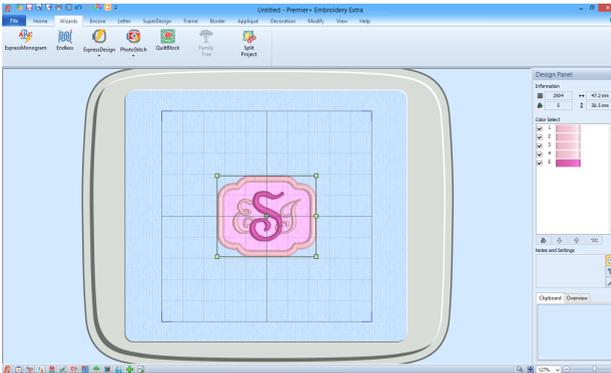
Colors:



*This format may be desired when embroidering badges.*

*Notice that if you position the arrow pointer over a measurement box without clicking, the alternative measurement will be shown. You may also enter the alternative measurement with units of mm or " (including fractions) and it will be automatically converted.*

- 36** For a traditional monogram effect, the letters may interlock. In the Full Letter page, set Spacing 1 to -3 mm, and set Spacing 2 to -4 mm.  
*The new positions of the letters can be seen in the Preview pane below. The border adjusts to fit.*
- 37** Click Finish  to close the wizard. The monogram is then displayed in the work area.



- 38** In the Notes and Settings box, click Settings .

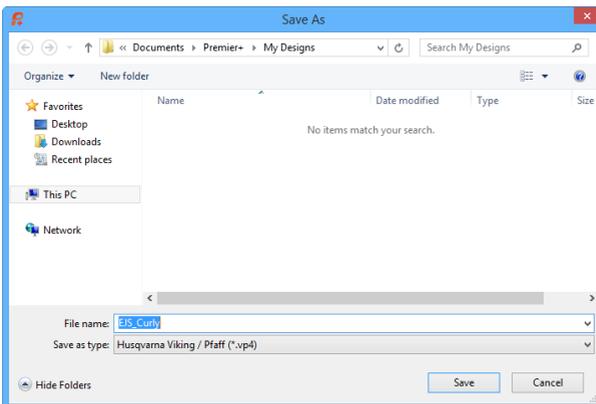
*If you cannot see all the text, click Edit .*

*The Settings give information on the letters, dimensions and font used in the monogram, including the font size for the large letter, and any patterns and fills used. This information can be used to recreate the monogram later, if it becomes fixed as embroidery.*

*Click the Edit button if you wish to edit these notes. The Settings dialog box is displayed. Amend the Settings as desired, then click OK to save your edits.*

- 39** Click Save As  to save the monogram in an adjustable form.

- 40** In the Save As dialog box, browse to Documents\Premier+2\My Designs, and save it as EJS\_Curly.



*When you reopen this .vp4 file, right-click the monogram and select Properties in the Context menu to open the ExpressMonogram Wizard.*

- 41** Click Export  to export the monogram according to the desired Optimize for Sewing Options, for example to ColorSort the monogram to use the minimum number of thread changes.
- 42** In the Export dialog box, ensure that .vp4 is selected and click OK.

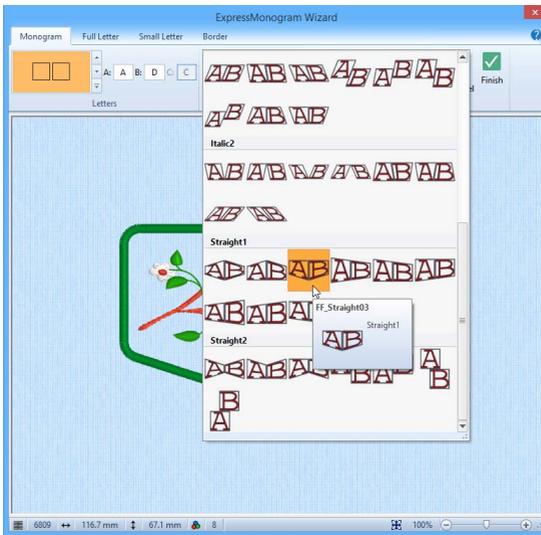
- 43 In the Save As dialog box, browse to Documents\Premier+2\My Designs, and save the embroidery as EJS\_Curly\_exported.

*When a monogram is exported it is fixed as an embroidery, and can no longer be adjusted in the ExpressMonogram Wizard.*

*You could use the Background Wizard to preview the use of this monogram on a blouse or towel. See "Backgrounds" on page 155".*

## Create a Two Letter Monogram

- 1 Click New , then click the Hoop icon . From the Universal Hoop Group, set the Hoop Size to 150mm x 150mm - Universal Square Hoop 2. Click OK.
- 2 In the Wizards tab, click ExpressMonogram Wizard . The Monogram page of the ExpressMonogram Wizard will appear.
- 3 In the gallery at the top left, select the Full - Full layout. This will produce a monogram with two equal sized characters: full, full (FF).
- 4 Enter the letters 'A' and 'D' in boxes A and B.
- 5 In the Envelope gallery, scroll down to the third envelope in the Straight1 category. Its name is FF\_Straight03.

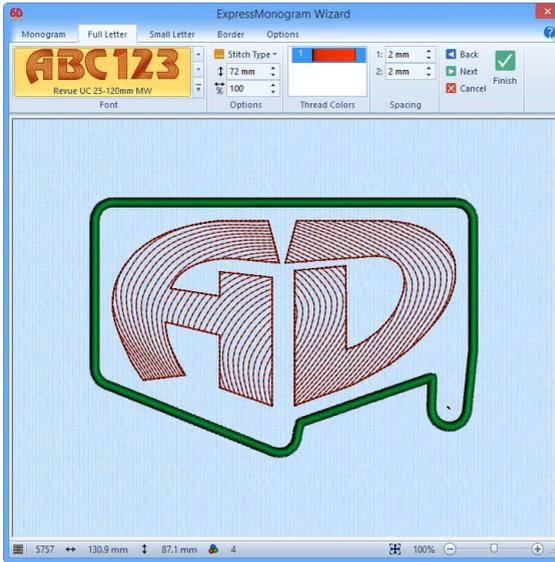


*This is for Full-Full, using the third envelope in the Straight1 category.*

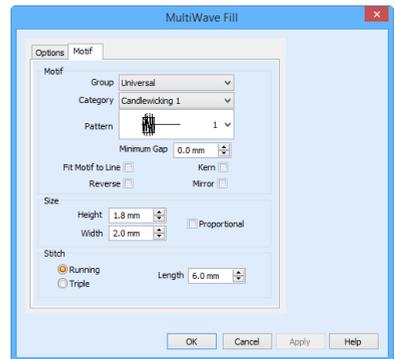
- 6 Click Next , or click the Full Letter tab. The Full Letter page appears.
- 7 Click to open the Font gallery at the top left.
- 8 Click and drag the scroll bar on the side of the font list to see all the fonts in the Display category.
- 9 Click to select the font Revue UC 25-120mm MW.

*The MW suffix indicates that this font uses a MultiWave Fill.*

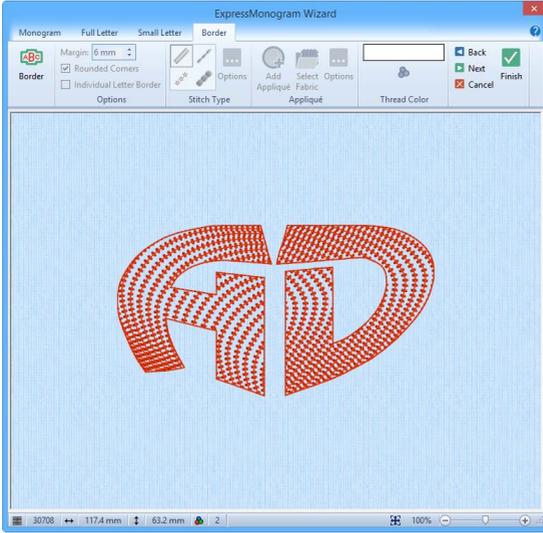
- 10 Leave the font size at 73mm.



- 11 Click the **Stitch Type**  drop-down list and select **MultiWave Fill**. The **MultiWave Fill options dialog** appears.  
*The MultiWave Fill options dialog box enables you to edit the properties of the fill for this font.*
- 12 Select the **Use Motifs** checkbox.
- 13 Click the **Motif** tab. The motif properties appear, with the motif set to a star.
- 14 Set the **Group** to **Universal** and the **Category** to **Candlewicking 1**.
- 15 In the **Pattern** drop-down list, ensure that **Pattern 1** is selected.
- 16 Ensure that **Proportional** is deselected, and set the **Height** to **1.8mm**.
- 17 Set the **Width** to **2.0mm**.
- 18 Click **OK** to close the **MultiWave Fill options dialog box**.  
*The fill now has a striking candlewick pattern.*
- 19 Ensure that **Spacing 1** and **Spacing 2** are both set to **2mm**.
- 20 Click **Next** . The **Border** page appears.  
*As there are no small letters, the **Small Letter page** is not displayed.*

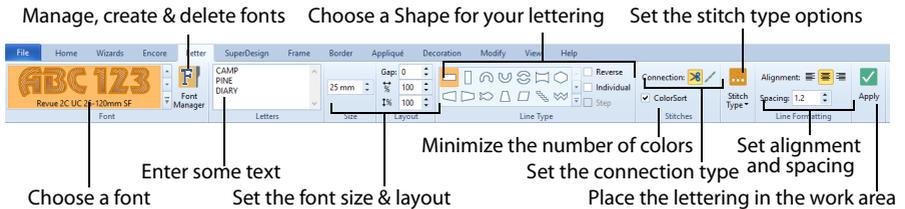


- 21 Click Border  to remove the border around the monogram.



- 22 Click Finish  to close the wizard. The monogram is displayed in the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery work area.
- 23 Click Save As  to save the monogram in an adjustable form.
- 24 In the Save As dialog box, browse to Documents\Premier+2\My Designs, and save the embroidery as AD.
- You can now add a frame to the monogram in the Frame tab.*

You can create lettering to personalize your embroidery project using single or multicolor fonts (lettering styles) and fonts of special characters in the Letter tab.



Choose the font, line format, size, stitch type and thread color. Display the lettering as if ColorSorted, or vary the colors of some characters. Place lettering around your embroidery, or anywhere on the work area. Lettering can be altered, including the font, resized with constant stitch density, and the stitch properties adjusted, even after saving until it is fixed as embroidery.

*Font means lettering style. The current font and the category where it is stored are shown in the Font section of the Letter tab.*

Lettering is created using the settings on the Letter tab from the fonts available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery. Alternatively use the ExpressMonogram Wizard .

Use Font Manager  to search for fonts by name or size, and to create, rename, duplicate and delete user generated fonts. Use the QuickFont Wizard  to create new fonts for PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery from any TrueType® or OpenType® font on your computer. Import embroidered letters to create a font with Import Font From Embroideries . Additional fonts may be created using the optional PREMIER+™ 2 Font Create module.

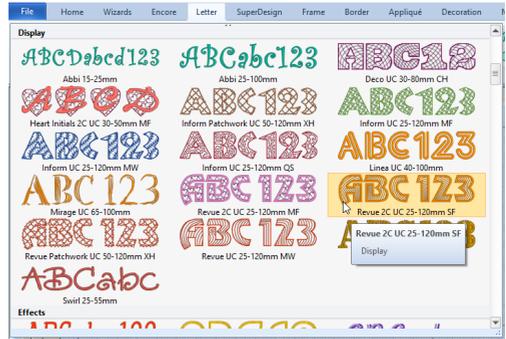
*When first starting PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, Georgia 20-40mm in the Traditional category is selected. If you have used the Letter tab previously, the last font is remembered.*

*For more information on the Line, Satin and Fill properties for fonts and SuperDesigns, see “Choosing Stitch Properties” on page 424.*

*If you own PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery or PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra, not all fonts are available.*

## Create Lettering

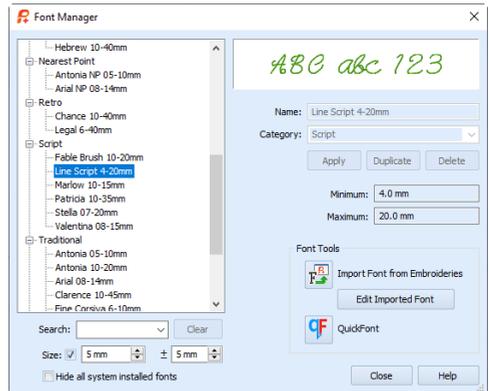
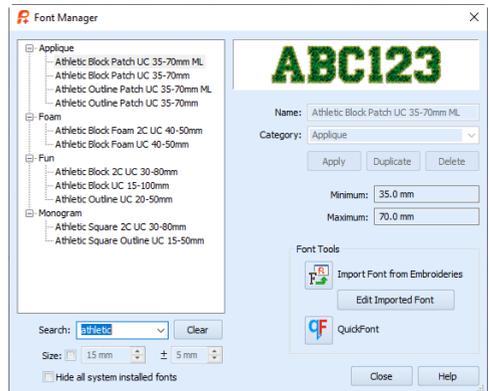
- 1 Click File, Preferences  and ensure Check Spelling is selected and the language is set to English US.
- 2 Click the Letter tab.
- 3 Click the arrow to the right of the font, and the font gallery appears.
- 4 Scroll up or down to select a font from one of the font categories.  
*Alternatively, use the up and down arrows on the Font section of the Letter tab to see fonts one at a time.*  
For more information on fonts, see “Font Selection” on page 329.
- 5 Set the Size in millimeters as desired, from 3mm to 200mm.  
*This sets the height of the 'A' character in the font. Other characters and symbols are sized accordingly. See “Font Size” on page 330.*
- 6 Click in the Letters text box and the pointer changes to the I-bar pointer.  
If needed, click and drag to highlight any existing text and overwrite it.
- 7 Enter your desired text, pressing Enter to create more than one line of text.  
*Right-click to view alternatives for words underlined in red by the spelling checker.*  
*Some Lettering Shapes can only use one line of text. See “Lettering Shapes” on page 335.*
- 8 Adjust Gap to change the spacing between the letters. Click the arrows, or enter a value.  
*Negative values move letters closer together, and positive values move them farther apart.*
- 9 Click the arrows for percent Width  and Height  to change the proportions of the lettering from 25% to 400%. Alternatively, enter a size in the number box.
- 10 Choose a Lettering Shape. See “Lettering Shapes” on page 335.  
You can reverse the order of letters, position (or kern) letters individually, or use Step to rotate the letters at a different angle from the line. See “Fit Lettering to a Line” on page 338.
- 11 Select Trim  or Running Stitch  as the connection method.  
*Use Running Stitch connection for small single-color lettering with Nearest Point fonts.*
- 12 Ensure that ColorSort is selected, to display the lettering as if ColorSorted, with the minimum number of color blocks.  
*Only deselect ColorSort if you want to change the color for some letters.*
- 13 Choose a line or fill type from the Stitch Type  drop-down menu, and the properties dialog box for the stitch type opens. See “Choosing Stitch Properties” on page 424.
- 14 Change the stitch properties for the lettering in the properties dialog box, for example the density, pattern, angle or stitch length. Click OK to close the dialog.
- 15 Select the alignment of the line of lettering. Click Left , Center  or Right , as desired.
- 16 Click the arrows for Line Spacing to set the distance between multiple lines of text.  
Alternatively, enter a size in the number box.
- 17 Click Apply . The lettering appears in the work area, leaving any existing lettering unchanged.  
*New lettering is added to the work area each time you click Apply. Any previous lettering is left unchanged.*  
*The circular Lettering Shapes are centered around the selected embroidery(ies) or group when they are added to the work area. Other Lettering Shapes are placed below the selected embroidery(ies) or group.*
- 18 Right-click the lettering and choose Properties to adjust the lettering properties. See “Letter Properties” on page 349.  
*To change lettering after you have clicked Apply, use the Letter Properties dialog box. See “Letter Properties” on page 349.*
- 19 Drag the handles on the lettering to resize the lettering, or adjust the proportions for the lettering. Hold the Ctrl key for most lettering shapes to keep the proportions as you resize. Hold the Shift key for most lettering shapes to resize from the center. See “Lettering Shapes” on page 335.



Alternatively, use the ExpressMonogram Wizard  to create a one, two or three letter monogram, and add a border automatically.

## Searching for Lettering

- 1 Click File, Preferences  and ensure Check Spelling is selected and the language is set to English US.
- 2 Click the Letter tab.
- 3 Click Font Manager .
- 4 To search for a font by name, at the bottom of the Font Manager dialog in the Search box, enter the name of the font or font category that you want to find.  
*Part of the name will narrow the list of fonts displayed, so a search for 'Athletic' will display fonts from the Applique, Foam, Fun and Monogram Categories.*
- 5 Click Clear to remove the text from the search box.
- 6 To search for a font by size, select (check) the Size checkbox to enable searching by size.
- 7 Enter the desired Size for the font in the Size number box.
- 8 To choose a size range, adjust the number in the Range  $\pm$  box. The list of displayed fonts will change.  
*For example, set Size to 5mm, and the Range to 5mm, to select a small font for a quilt label. You could also set an exact size (Range 0mm) to find an imported embroidery font.*



# Font Selection

Font means lettering style. The font currently selected is displayed in the box in the Font section of the Letter tab. While PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery remains open, the most recently used font is remembered.

Samples are shown in the Font Guides, together with keys for alternative alphabets used in some fonts in the National category. The Font Guides also indicate the underlay (packing) used by each font.

*The category called MyFonts is the default category for fonts you create. It is initially empty until you create new fonts with the QuickFont Wizard .*

## Font Category

Click the drop-down arrow on the right of the font gallery and scroll through the list of fonts by category. There are 18 themed font categories, in addition to My Fonts:

Appliqué	Fonts for use with appliqué fabrics.
Children	Child-themed and "cute" fonts such as fonts similar to children's writing and animal fonts.
Display	Decorative fonts using specialty and pattern fills, often used in large sizes.
Effects	Fonts using special thread colors and needles such as needle felting, twin needle and wing needle.
Elegant	Stylish fonts with a heritage feeling, such as gothic and illuminated alphabets.
Floral	Fonts with leaves and flowers decorating the letters.
Foam	Fonts for use with puffy foam for a raised 3D effect.
Fun	Informal fonts, such as athletic or party fonts.
Future	Informal fonts with a hi-tech theme.
Modern	Fonts with 'clean' designs in modern styles.
Monogram	These fonts have most characters of equal width, designed for use in monograms. They are all uppercase only.
My Fonts	My Fonts is the default category for fonts you create.
National	Fonts associated with particular cultures, or alternative alphabets such as Greek and Hebrew.
Nearest Point	Nearest point fonts use special logic to determine the best way to join characters together. There are four versions of each character to enable the special joining method. Nearest Point fonts are ideally used with Running Stitch connection.
Retro	Classic Art Nouveau and Art Deco style fonts.
Scary	Informal fonts with a spooky or horror theme.
Script	Script fonts have a special joining method where all adjacent lowercase characters are directly joined together and are not affected by the Gap setting. This is used to give an appearance of handwriting in different styles.
Traditional	Old-fashioned fonts.
Wild West	Informal fonts with a cowboy theme.

### Shortcut

- Font Gallery - Keys: Alt, L, F

## Font Name

Font names include information in addition to the name of the lettering style. All font names include the recommended size range, and other information is often included.

## Font Type

2C	The font uses two colors (also 3C etc.)	NP	Nearest Point font
LC	Lowercase only font	UC	Uppercase only font

## Recommended Font Size

A recommended font size is included in the name. For instance, 25-120mm indicates the font is recommended for use at sizes from 25mm to 120mm.

## SuperFonts

For SuperFonts provided in different stitch type variations, a stitch type abbreviation is also present at the end of the name, for example SF for Spiral Fill.

CF	Contour Fill	MW	MultiWave Fill	SF	Spiral Fill
EF	Echo Fill	QS	QuiltStipple Fill	SH	Shape Fill
MF	Motif Fill	RF	Radial Fill	XH	Crosshatch Fill

## Examples

- Revue 2C UC 25-120mm SF in the Display category: this font uses two colors (2C), is uppercase only, has a recommended size range of 25mm to 120mm, and uses Spiral Fill.
- Antonia NP 05-10mm in the Nearest Point category: this font is a Nearest Point font and has a recommended size range of 5mm to 10mm.

## Font Size

Font size can be set from 3mm to 200mm. This is the height of the uppercase 'A' character in the font, and all other characters are sized relative to the height of 'A'. Fonts are initially set at the minimum recommended size for the font.

The recommended font size forms part of the name. For instance, Corinthian 15-35mm should be used with Size set from 15mm to 35mm.

In the National fonts using alternative alphabets, the character in the 'A' is used as the basis for sizing the characters.

If you set a satin font to a very large size, use Satin Properties to choose a pattern which will prevent loose stitching that may catch and pull easily. See "Satin Column" on page 456.

Once lettering has been fixed (converted to an embroidery) it can only be scaled and resized in the same way as any other embroidery. If further adjustments are required, place the text again as new lettering.

## Height and Width

Use percentage Width  and Height  to adjust the proportions of new lettering. For example, to make characters taller without increasing the width, increase the Height.

Set percentage Width  and Height  from 25% to 400%, in steps of 1%. The settings stay the same until you change them or PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery is closed. Both Width and Height are set to 100% each time PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery is started.

*Use Letter Properties to adjust Height and Width for individual blocks of lettering. See “Letter Properties” on page 349.*

## Gap

Use Gap to change the spacing between characters in a line of lettering. A negative value brings the letters closer together and a positive value moves them farther apart.

*Lowercase characters in Script fonts are not affected by the Gap setting.*

Set the Gap from -99 to +99. Type in numbers, or use the arrows to increase or decrease the Gap. Click Apply  to see the effect on lettering. If you have used the Letter tab previously the last setting is remembered. The Gap may be adjusted for individual blocks of lettering in Letter Properties.

The Gap is initially set to 0 each time PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery is started.

*Increasing the Gap setting is recommended for Perspective lettering.*

## Automatic Kerning

Characters are spaced by automatic kerning according to the way that adjacent pairs of characters fit together. For example, the letters 'AV' need less space between them than 'AB' because of the shape of the characters. The Gap setting then increases or decreases the spacing set by automatic kerning.

*Script fonts have a special joining method where all adjacent lowercase characters are directly joined together and are not affected by the Gap setting.*

The Gap is based on the width of the A character. A Gap of 1.0 is equal to 6% of the width of the A character.

To set the spacing between specific letters, set the letters to Individual in the Letter window. See “Individual Letter Monogram” on page 365.

## Connection

The connection method selects how the characters are joined together. Choose Trim  or Running Stitch , as desired.

*Running Stitch connection is recommended for small lettering using Nearest Point fonts.*

## Shortcut

Keys: Alt, L, C

### Trim

When Trim  connection is selected, the letters are joined with movement stitches.

### Running Stitch

When Running Stitch  connection is selected, the letters are joined with small stitches. Use Running Stitch connection for small lettering with Nearest Point fonts.

## ColorSort

Use ColorSort to display the lettering with the minimum number of color blocks. By default ColorSort is selected.

*Ensure that ColorSort is selected unless you want to vary the color of specific characters in the lettering.*

### Shortcut

Keys: Alt, L, O

## Stitch Type

Use Stitch Type to alter the appearance of the stitching used in the lettering.

If desired, select a line or fill type from the Stitch Type  drop-down menu to open the properties dialog box for the stitch type. Use the properties dialog box to alter the appearance of stitching in the lettering. See “Choosing Stitch Properties” on page 424.

If there is more than one stitch area of a particular type in the font, the drop-down menu will show that stitch type in a numbered list; for example, Pattern Fill 1, Pattern Fill 2.

*If the Stitch Type area is grayed out (unavailable), this means that the font was designed with properties that cannot be edited. This occurs with Foam fonts, that have special settings to ensure the embroidery foam is cut. It also occurs with a few very complex fonts that have many different fill patterns in different letters, or multigradient and multicolor fills, such as Acorn 6C UC 35-60mm in the Floral category.*

### Shortcut

Keys: Alt, L, I

## Line Formatting

Use line formatting to control how multiple lines of text are arranged relative to each other.

### Alignment

All text is initially created with center  alignment. Use the Alignment buttons to alternatively select left  or right  alignment.

*The Alignment setting does not affect circular lettering shapes.*

### Shortcuts

	Left	Keys: Alt, L, LL
	Center	Keys: Alt, L, LC
	Right	Keys: Alt, L, LR

### Spacing

Use Spacing to change the distance between multiple lines of text. The default spacing is 1.2, and can be adjusted from 1.0 to 5.0.

*The Spacing is based on the height of the A character. Spacing of 1.0 is equal to the height of the A character, plus 6%. If you have lower case lettering with descenders (the tails below the baseline on the g, p, q and y characters), you may wish to increase the Spacing to 1.5.*

## Shortcut

Keys: Alt, L, LS

## Apply

Use Apply  to place the lettering in the work area.

## Shortcut

Keys: Alt, L, A

## Appliqué, Effects and Foam Fonts

For appliqué fonts, SuperDesigns and Frames, the fabric can be changed as well as some of the border settings. For example, in Stitch Type  select Appliqué Fabric, and in the Appliqué Selection dialog change the fabric, angle and margin. See “Appliqué Selection” on page 185. The appliqué placement stitching cannot be edited, but the position of the placement line may be adjusted to match the appliqué piece margin.

*The position of the pattern in an appliqué fabric may only be changed after fixing as stitches, if PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra is owned.*

For Foam fonts and frames, only the color can be changed. The Stitch Type area is unavailable, and no properties can be selected in the Context menu.

Special instructions are displayed for stitching out appliqué or foam fonts, SuperDesigns and frames. The instructions can be previewed in the Design Player.

For Effects such as Felting Needle, Twin Needle and Wing Needle you can change the stitch properties in Stitch Type  or in the Context menu after creation. Change the Felting Needle color from the color select area in the Design Panel. Change to the appropriate needle before stitching.

### Stitching out Appliqué Lettering

Appliqué font characters are designed to be stitched out in a particular sequence. They are created with the standard appliqué options, to trim on the machine. Preview the two stops in the Design Player, with instructions to place the fabric and to trim it. These instructions are also present on the printed worksheet.

*If you are using pre-cut pieces (with outlines created in Export Appliqué Pieces for a fabric cutter or INSPIRA® Cutwork Needles), the second stop can be ignored as there is no need to trim. It may also be useful to match the placement line to the appliqué piece margin, to ensure the placement line is visible.*

When stitching out an appliqué embroidery, do as follows:

- 1 Begin embroidering. A running line will show where to position the appliqué fabric.
- 2 A stop then allows you to place the fabric. The message "Place the appliqué fabric now" is displayed.
- 3 Stitch down the appliqué fabric with double stitch.
- 4 The machine stops again, and the message "Cut around the appliqué" is displayed. Trim the fabric.
- 5 Finally, finish the edges with the satin or motif line.

*When stitching an appliqué frame, the placement section in the appliqué is the same color as the first color in the frame, so it doesn't show under the appliqué fabric. If desired, change in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery to the first color for the embroidery.*

## Stitching out Foam Lettering

### Stitching Out Foam Lettering

Foam characters are designed to be stitched out in a particular sequence. Preview the two stops in the Design Player, with instructions to place the foam and to remove any excess foam. These instructions are also present on the printed worksheet.

When stitching out a puffy foam character, do as follows:

- 1 Begin embroidering. A running line will show where to position the puffy foam.
- 2 A stop then allows you to place the foam. The message "Place the puffy foam on the fabric now" is displayed.
- 3 Stitch down the foam with satin stitching.
- 4 The machine stops again, and the message "Remove any excess puffy foam" is displayed. Remove the excess foam.

### Stitching out with Twin Needles

Twin Needles only work horizontally, i.e. the needles are side by side as you look at the machine. If the hoop orientation or the exported design is rotated, this will affect the stitchout of the design.

### Stitching out with Wing Needles

A wing needle creates holes in the fabric, for hemstitch and other heirloom techniques. Use a very fine thread and a stabilizer to create evenly placed durable holes.

### Stitching out with Felting Needles

Use a felting needle, optionally with a contrasting roving fiber, for the felting color chosen in the Color Selection dialog box. In projects without a roving fiber, choose a felting needle color similar to the back of the fabric.

*When Exporting an embroidery with a Felting Needle effect, the option "Flip design for felting or reverse embroidery" is initially selected in the Export dialog box. See "Export" on page 20.*

## Entering Letters

Click in the Letters box and enter the desired characters. The text in the Letters box will remain the same until you enter new text or close PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery.

*To change existing lettering that has already been placed, including the font if desired, select the lettering then right-click within the lettering for Letter Properties. Letter Properties is available even after saving, but not after lettering has been fixed (converted to embroidery).*

*In an uppercase (UC) font any lowercase letters entered appear as uppercase, and in a lowercase (LC) font uppercase letters appear as lowercase.*

*If you type special characters that are not available in the font, they will not appear on the work area when you apply the lettering.*

### Multi-Line Lettering

To start a new line of text, or break an existing line of text into two lines, use Enter on the keyboard. Use the arrow keys on the keyboard to move around the lines of text in the Letters box.

## Check Spelling

If Check Spelling is selected in Preferences, unrecognized words in the Letters box will be underlined in red. You can select alternatives from the Context menu.

## Check Your Spelling

- 1 Click File, Preferences  and ensure Check Spelling is selected and the language is set to English US.
- 2 Click the Letter tab.
- 3 Click in the Letters text box and enter the words "Roses are red, viles are blue". The word "vilets" is underlined in red.
- 4 Right-click to select the word. A Context menu appears.
- 5 Click Suggestions. A list of suggested alternatives appears.
- 6 Choose the word "violets" from the Context menu. The word is replaced in the Letters text box. You can also use Add in the Context menu to add words to the dictionary, for example your name, or use Ignore to ignore the suggestion, and Undo if you chose the wrong suggestion.

## Alternative Alphabets

To enter characters in other alphabets from the National font category, such as Greek and Hebrew, refer to the Character Sets section in the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Reference Guide or help for the keys used. The Character Sets section shows the key to press to obtain the desired character.

## Lettering Shapes

There are three categories of lettering shapes: Block, Line and Vertical Block.

- Block  
Starting from a template, mould the block of letters as desired. See "Block" on page 339.
- Line  
Place letters along a straight, curved or wavy line. See "Line" on page 335.
- Vertical Block  
Place lettering in a straight vertical line. See "Vertical Block" on page 339.

## Using Lettering Shapes

If you have used the Letter tab previously in that session of PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, the last setting is remembered. You can adjust lettering with the handles (green squares) until it is fixed as stitches, for example when it is Combined.

**Reverse:** When the Reverse checkbox is selected, the lettering is mirrored. Reverse is available for all lettering shapes.

*Monograms created with the ExpressMonogram Wizard have light green handles; select Properties from the Context menu to adjust the Monogram settings. See "ExpressMonogram Wizard" on page 301.*

## Line

Place letters along a straight, curved or wavy line. Use the handles to adjust the position of the letters and the shape of the line.

- You cannot resize these lettering shapes with the handles. Right-click to open the Letter Properties dialog box, and use the Size and/or the Height and Width settings.
- Flip handles are not available. To mirror, fix the lettering as stitches first.

- These lettering shapes can only use one line of text, or two for Full Circle. Additional lines are combined with the first line, or the second line for Full Circle.

## Circle Shapes

Place characters along a curved line. Circle lettering shapes always use Center alignment.

### Circle Clockwise

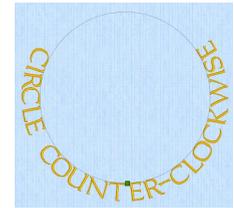
Use Circle Clockwise  to place lettering clockwise around a circle. Click and drag the square green handle to adjust the radius of the circle and the position of the lettering. Multiple lines of text are placed in the same line. Hold down Ctrl, then click and drag the handle to move the lettering around the circle without changing the size of the circle.



Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 

### Circle Counter-Clockwise

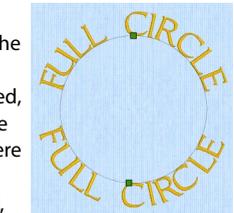
Use Circle Counter-Clockwise  to place lettering counter-clockwise around a circle. Click and drag the square green handle to adjust the radius of the circle and the position of the lettering. Hold down Ctrl, then click and drag the handle to move the lettering around the circle without changing the size of the circle.



Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 

### Full Circle

Use Full Circle  to place two sections of text on opposite sides of a circle. When entering characters in the Letters box, press Enter to make a new line where you want to split the text. When the lettering is initially placed, the text on the first line is at the top of the circle and the text on the second line is at the bottom of the circle. There will be two square green handles. Click and drag either handle to adjust the radius of the circle. Hold down Ctrl, then click and drag either handle to move the attached lettering around the circle without changing the size of the circle.



*If more than two lines of text are entered, Full Circle places all additional lines in the second line.*

Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 

- Rotate handles are not available for the Circle lettering shapes. To rotate, fix the lettering as stitches first.

## Using Circular Lettering Shapes

The handles for circular lettering shapes adjust the positioning of the lettering, not the size.

- 1 Enter a short line of text in the Letter window. See “Create Lettering” on page 327.
- 2 In the Lettering Shape area, click Circle Clockwise.
- 3 Click Apply . The lettering appears in a line over the top of a circle.
- 4 Click and drag the square green handle at the top of the circle of lettering downwards. The pointer changes to the circle size pointer .

*If the lettering is outside the chosen hoop, the handle will be round, not square.*

The circle becomes smaller, but the size of the letters is unaffected.

*You cannot resize circular lettering shapes with the handles. Right-click and use the Size and/or the height and width settings in Letter Properties. See “Changing Letter Properties” on page 351.*

- 5 Undo  your change. The circle returns to its original size.
- 6 Hold down the Ctrl key and drag the green handle at the top of the circle to the right of the circle. The line of lettering moves to the right side of the circle.  
*The alignment setting does not affect circular lettering shapes.*  
*Rotate and flip handles are not available. To rotate or mirror, fix the lettering as stitches first.*

## Fit to Straight and Wavy Lines

Use these line types to place lettering along a straight or wavy line.

**Step:** When the Step checkbox is selected, the letters can be rotated to any angle. Step is available for Fit to Straight Line and Fit to Wavy Line. See “Fit Lettering to a Line” on page 338.

### Fit To Straight Line

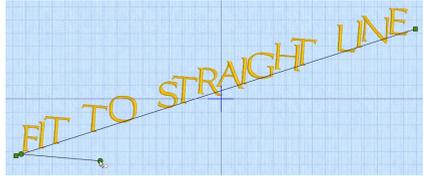
Use Fit To Straight Line  to place lettering along a line. Click and drag the square end handles to rotate the line to any angle and to extend the line. Click and drag the round green handle to move the text along the line.

The text may also be rotated independently of the position of the line. Select the Step option, then click Apply . There will be an additional round green handle at the end of another line. Click and drag this handle to rotate the letters to any angle.

*You cannot resize Fit To Straight Line lettering with the handles. Use the Size and/or the Height and Width settings in Letter Properties. Fit to Straight Line places multiple lines of text onto the same line.*

*Flip handles are not available. To mirror, fix the lettering as stitches first.*

Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 



### Fit To Wavy Line

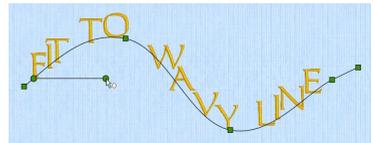
Use Fit To Wavy Line  to place lettering along a curved line. Click and drag the square green handles to change the curve to any shape. Click and drag the round green handle to move the text along the line.

The text may also be rotated independently of the position of the line. Select the Step option, then click Apply . There is an additional round green handle at the end of another line. Click and drag this handle to rotate the letters to any angle.

*You cannot resize Fit To Wavy Line lettering with the handles. Use the Size and/or the Height and Width settings in Letter Properties. Fit to Wavy Line places multiple lines of text onto the same line.*

*Flip handles are not available. To mirror, fix the lettering as stitches first.*

Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 



## Fit Lettering to a Line

- 1 Enter a short line of text in the Letter tab. See “Create Lettering” on page 327.
- 2 In the Lettering Shape area, click Fit to Straight Line.
- 3 Click Apply. The lettering appears along a sloping line.
- 4 Drag the square green handle on the right upwards. The angle on the line changes, but the size of the lettering, and the space between the letters does not.
- 5 Undo your change.

- 6 Drag the circular control along the line and to the right. The first letter of the lettering moves to the position of the circular control.
- 7 Delete the lettering.
- 8 In the Letter window, select the checkbox labeled "Step".
- 9 Click Apply . There is now a green circular control at the end of a line below the lettering.
- 10 Drag the green control downwards. The letters in the line rotate.
- 11 Delete the lettering.
- 12 In the Lettering Shape area, click Fit to Wavy Line.
- 13 Click Apply . The lettering is now on a wavy line with four square green handles, and two green circular controls.
- 14 Adjust the controls to change the position of the letters.

## Vertical Block

**Vertical Block** Use Vertical Block  to place lettering in a straight vertical line with an outline box that has four square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering.  
*Hold down Ctrl as you click and drag to resize proportionally, and Shift to resize from the center.*

Lettering is created with Center alignment by default. For Vertical Block, this changes the alignment of characters in each column of lettering.

Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 



## Block

There are 29 Block templates available. Any Block type can be changed into any other Block type using the Handles menu, by adjusting the Top and Bottom line types, and by setting different Constraints.

**Individual:** When the Individual checkbox is selected, the letters can be moved and resized individually. Individual is available for all block types. Only one line of lettering can be made when Individual is selected. See "Individual Letter Monogram" on page 365.

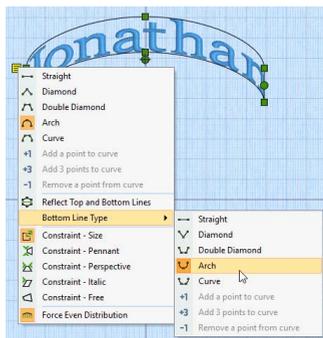
*Flip handles are not available. To mirror, fix the lettering as stitches first.*

## Handles Menu

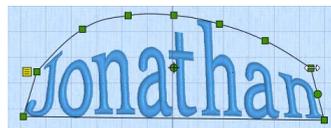
Use the Handles menu to adjust the settings for the selected block of lettering. Click the Handles menu icon  and change the block settings.

### Change Template Settings in the Block Menu

- 1 Enter the text "Jonathan" in the Letter window. See "Create Lettering" on page 327.
- 2 In the Lettering Shape area, click Arch Over , then click Apply . The lettering appears in the work area. *The top and bottom lines of the lettering use the Arch  line type, with a single handle in the middle.*
- 3 Click and drag the lettering to the top of the work area.
- 4 Click and drag the two middle handles (top and bottom) upwards, to raise the height of the arch.
- 5 Click the Handles menu  icon, and the handles menu opens. *Note that the line type for the top line is Arch .*
- 6 Click to deselect Match Top and Bottom Lines , then click to open the Bottom Line Type submenu. The line type for the bottom line is also Arch .



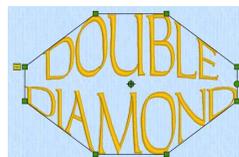
- 7 In the submenu, change the bottom line to Straight .  
*The bottom of the lettering is now a straight line with a handle at each end.*
- 8 Open the Handles menu  again, and change the top line to Diamond .  
*The top line forms a point, instead of a curve. The Double Diamond  option forms a straight line with two peaks.*
- 9 Open the Handles menu  again, and change the top line to Curve . The top line now has a curve with two handles.
- 10 Move the two middle handles on the top line separately.
- 11 Open the Handles menu  again, and select Add 3 points to curve . Three more handles are added to the top of the block.  
*The add and remove points options are only available when the line type is a Curve.*
- 12 Adjust the top line as desired.  
While you can adjust the top and bottom as desired, the sides are still parallel straight lines, and if you move the handle at the top of one side, the handle at the top of the other side moves with it. This is Constraint - Size .  
*If you hold the Ctrl key while dragging, the proportions of the shape are locked. With Shift the shape is resized from the center.*
- 13 In the Handles menu, select Constraint - Pennant .
- 14 Click and drag the handle at the top right upwards. The handle below it moves in the opposite direction.  
*With a rectangular block, this would create a shape like a pennant.*  
*Hold down the Ctrl key to create a skewed rectangle effect.*
- 15 In the Handles menu, select Constraint - Perspective .
- 16 Click and drag the handle at the top right to the left. The lines on the side of the block now form a slope.
- 17 In the Handles menu, select Constraint - Free . You can now move any of the corner handles in any direction you like.  
*Note that you can only drag the middle handles in the curve up and down.*
- 18 In the Handles menu, deselect Force Even Distribution .
- 19 Drag one of the middle handles on the curve sideways. The letters move with the handle.  
The functions in the Handles menu enable you to sculpt a block of lettering into almost any shape you like.



## Top and Bottom Line Types

Select a line type for the top and bottom of the block to choose how the lettering is displayed.

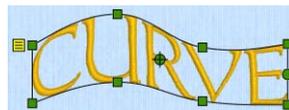
- |                |  |
|----------------|--|
| Straight       | Use Straight  to create a lettering block with a straight line for the top and / or bottom, and with a handle at each end.  |
| Diamond        | Use Diamond  (top) and  (bottom) to create a lettering block with a point at the top and / or bottom. Click and drag the central handle to change the angle of the slope.  |
| Double Diamond | Use Double Diamond  (top) and  (bottom) to create a lettering block with straight lines between the four handles at the top and / or bottom. Click and drag the central handles to change the angle of the straight lines. |



Arch Use Arch  (top) and  (bottom) to create a lettering block with a curve at the top and / or bottom. Click and drag the central handle to change the angle of the curve.



Curve Use Curve  (top) and  (bottom) to create a lettering block with curved lines between the four handles at the top and / or bottom. Click and drag the central handles to change the curves between the handles.



*You can add and remove extra points (handles) in a Curve.*

## Add and Remove Points

Use the Add and Remove points functions to change the number of points in a Curve. The points are added or removed at the right end of the selected curve.

- Add a point to curve  adds a single point to the right end of the selected curve.
- Add 3 points to curve  adds three points to the right end of the selected curve.
- Remove a point from curve  deletes a single point from the right end of the selected curve.

*The minimum number of points in a Curve is four.*

## Match Top and Bottom Lines

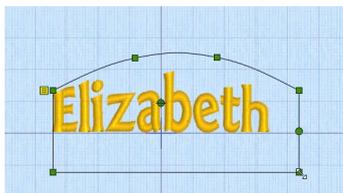
Use Match Top and Bottom Lines  to use the same line type for the top and bottom lines in a block.

*If Match Top and Bottom Lines  is selected, the Bottom Line Type submenu is not available.*

## Constraints

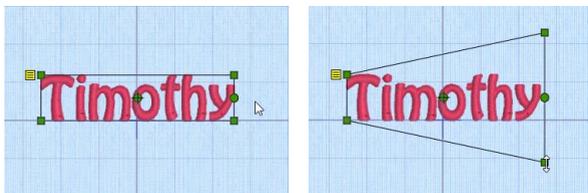
Constraints affect how the corner handles on a block behave.

Size When Constraint - Size  is used, the two corners adjacent to the corner that is dragged move the same distance, in the same direction. The corner diagonally opposite does not move. The handles on the straight or curved lines between the corners move in proportion. This preserves the shape of the block, while the size changes.



*If you hold the Ctrl key while dragging, the proportions of the shape are locked. With Shift the shape is resized from the center.*

**Pennant** When Constraint - Pennant  is used, the corner above or below the corner that is dragged moves the same distance towards or away from the dragged corner vertically. The other two corners do not move. This forms a pennant shape.



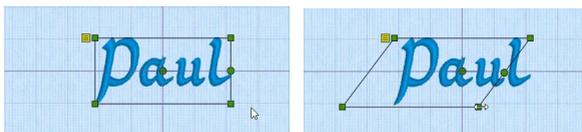
*Hold down the Ctrl key to give a vertical skew to the lettering.*

**Perspective** When Constraint - Perspective  is used, the corner to the right or left of the corner that is dragged moves the same distance towards or away from the dragged corner horizontally. The other two corners do not move. This gives a perspective effect.



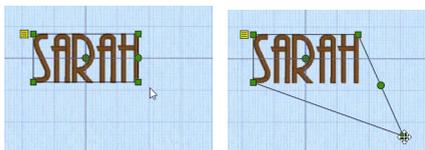
*If you hold the Ctrl key while dragging, the two handles move together as with Italic.*

**Italic** When Constraint - Italic  is used, the corner to the right or left of the corner that is dragged moves the same distance, in the same direction. The other two corners do not move. This gives an italic look to the lettering.



*If you hold the Ctrl key while dragging, the two handles move separately as with Perspective.*

**Free** When Constraint - Free  is used, the corner handles can be dragged in any direction.



*If you hold the Ctrl key while dragging, the proportions of the shape are locked. With Shift the shape is resized from the center.*

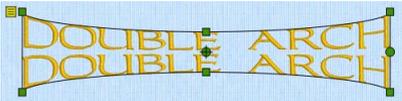
## Force Even Distribution

Force Even Distribution  distributes the handles between the two corners evenly.

*Force Even Distribution affects both the top and bottom of the block.*

## Block Templates

There are 29 templates for use with lettering.

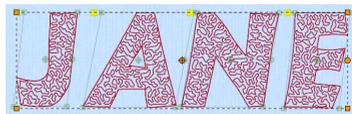
- Horizontal Block** Use Horizontal Block  to place lettering in a straight line with an outline box that has four square green handles.  Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering. *Hold down Ctrl as you drag to resize proportionally, and Shift to resize from the center.*  
Template Settings: Straight, Straight; Constraint - Size, Force Even Distribution  
Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 
- Rounded** Use Rounded  to place lettering in an envelope with an outwardly curving top and base. There are six square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and the curvature of the arches.  Template Settings: Arch, Arch; Constraint - Size, Force Even Distribution  
Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 
- Double Arch** Use Double Arch  to place lettering in an envelope with an inwardly curving top and base. There are six square green handles.  Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and the curvature of the arches. Template Settings: Arch, Arch; Constraint - Size, Force Even Distribution  
Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 
- Diamond** Use Diamond  to place lettering in a diamond envelope. There will be six square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and the distance between vertical pairs of handles. Hold down Ctrl, then click and drag the handles to move the vertical pairs of handles while keeping the same distance between them.  When the Individual checkbox is selected, each letter is created in a diamond-shaped envelope and can be moved and resized individually.  Template Settings: Diamond, Diamond; Constraint - Pennant, Force Even Distribution  
Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 

**Italic** Use Italic  to place lettering in an envelope that is slanted to the right. There will be four square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering. Hold down Ctrl, then click and drag the handles to the left or right to change the slant of the text.



When the Individual checkbox is selected, each letter is created in an italic envelope and can be moved and resized individually.

Template Settings: Straight, Straight;  
Constraint - Italic, Force Even Distribution  
Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 

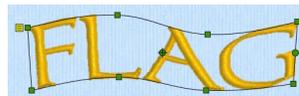


**Freeform** Use Freeform  to place lettering in a fully adjustable straight envelope. There will be 4 square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and change the shape as desired.



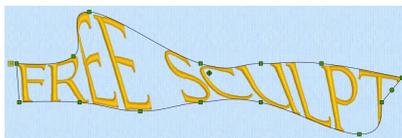
Template Settings: Straight, Straight; Constraint - Free  
Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 

**Flag** Use Flag  to place lettering in a curving envelope. There will be eight square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and change the shape.



Template Settings: Curve, Reflect Top and Bottom Lines; Constraint - Perspective, Force Even Distribution  
Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 

**Free Sculpt** Use Free Sculpt  to place lettering in a fully adjustable curved envelope. There will be 14 square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and change the shape as desired.

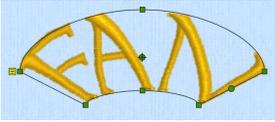
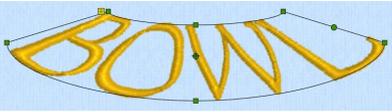


Template Settings: Curve, Curve; Constraint - Free  
Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 

**Arch Over** Use Arch Over  to place lettering in an envelope with straight sides and an outwardly curving top and an inwardly curving base. There will be six square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and the curvature of the top and base.



Template Settings: Arch, Arch; Constraint - Size, Force Even Distribution  
Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 

- Arch Under** Use Arch Under  to place lettering in an envelope with straight sides and an inwardly curving top and an outwardly curving base. There will be six square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and the curvature of the top and base.  
Template Settings: Arch, Arch; Constraint - Size, Force Even Distribution  
Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 
- 
- Fan** Use Fan  to place lettering in an envelope with an outwardly curving top and an inwardly curving base. There will be six square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering, and the angle and curvature of the top and base.  
Template Settings: Arch, Reflect Top and Bottom Lines; Constraint - Perspective, Force Even Distribution  
Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 
- 
- Bowl** Use Bowl  to place lettering in an envelope with an inwardly curving top and an outwardly curving base. There will be six square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering, and the angle and curvature of the top and base.  
Template Settings: Arch, Reflect Top and Bottom Lines; Constraint - Perspective, Force Even Distribution  
Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 
- 
- Pennant Right** Use Pennant Right  to place lettering in an envelope that is larger on the right side. There will be four square green handles. Click and drag the handles to change the size of each end of the pennant. Hold down Ctrl, then click and drag the handles to move one end of the pennant up or down.  
When the Individual checkbox is selected, each letter is created in a pennant-shaped envelope and can be moved and resized individually.  
Template Settings: Straight, Straight; Constraint - Pennant, Force Even Distribution  
Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 
- 
- 

**Pennant Left** Use Pennant Left  to place lettering in an envelope that is larger on the left side. There will be four square green handles. Click and drag the handles to change the size of each end of the pennant. Hold down Ctrl, then click and drag the handles to move one end of the pennant up or down.



When the Individual checkbox is selected, each letter is created in a pennant-shaped envelope and can be moved and resized individually.

Template Settings: Straight, Straight;  
Constraint - Pennant, Force Even Distribution

Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 



**Perspective** Use Perspective  to place lettering in an envelope that is narrower at the top. There will be four square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and change the width of the top or bottom of the text. Hold down Ctrl, then click and drag the handles to the left or right to change the slant of the text.



*Increasing the Gap setting is recommended for Perspective lettering.*

When the Individual checkbox is selected, each letter is created in a perspective-shaped envelope and can be moved and resized individually.

Template Settings: Straight, Straight;  
Constraint - Perspective, Force Even Distribution

Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 



**Bridge Convex Down** Use Bridge Convex Down  to place lettering in an envelope with a flat top and an outwardly curving base. There will be five square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and the curvature of the base.



Template Settings: Straight, Arch; Constraint - Perspective, Force Even Distribution

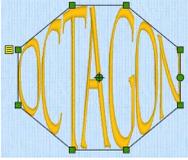
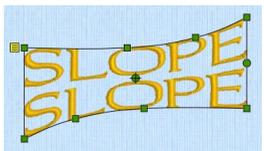
Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 

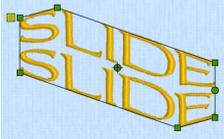
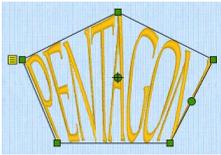
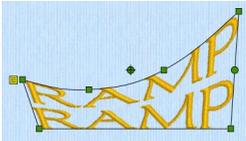
**Bridge Concave Down** Use Bridge Concave Down  to place lettering in an envelope with a flat top and an inwardly curving base. There will be five square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and the curvature of the base.



Template Settings: Straight, Arch; Constraint - Perspective, Force Even Distribution

Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 

- Bridge Convex Up** Use Bridge Convex Up  to place lettering in an envelope with a flat base and an outwardly curving top. There will be five square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and the curvature of the top.  
Template Settings: Arch, Straight; Constraint - Perspective, Force Even Distribution  
Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 
- 
- Bridge Concave Up** Use Bridge Concave Up  to place lettering in an envelope with a flat base and an inwardly curving top. There will be five square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and the curvature of the top.  
Template Settings: Arch, Straight; Constraint - Perspective, Force Even Distribution  
Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 
- 
- Octagon** Use Octagon  to place lettering in an octagonal envelope. There will be eight square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and the distance between vertical pairs of handles.  
Template Settings: Double Diamond, Reflect Top and Bottom Lines; Constraint - Size, Force Even Distribution  
Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 
- 
- Zigzag** Use Zigzag  to place lettering in an angled line envelope. There will be eight square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and the angle of the sides.  
Template Settings: Double Diamond, Reflect Top and Bottom Lines; Constraint - Italic  
Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 
- 
- Chevron** Use Chevron  to place lettering in a peaked envelope. There will be six square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and the angle of the sides.  
Template Settings: Diamond, Reflect Top and Bottom Lines; Constraint - Perspective, Force Even Distribution  
Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 
- 
- Slope** Use Slope  to place lettering in a curved sloping envelope. There will be eight square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and change the shape.  
Template Settings: Curve, Reflect Top and Bottom Lines; Constraint - Italic  
Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: 
- 

Butte	<p>Use Butte  to place lettering in a straight sided envelope with eight square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and the distance between the sides.</p> <p>Template Settings: Double Diamond, Reflect Top and Bottom Lines; Constraint - Perspective</p> <p>Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: </p>	
Gem	<p>Use Gem  to place lettering in an envelope with seven square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering.</p> <p>Template Settings: Double Diamond, Diamond; Constraint - Perspective, Force Even Distribution</p> <p>Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: </p>	
Slide	<p>Use Slide  to place lettering in a sloping rectangular envelope. There will be six square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and the distance between vertical pairs of handles.</p> <p>Template Settings: Diamond, Reflect Top and Bottom Lines; Constraint - Italic</p> <p>Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: </p>	
Pentagon	<p>Use Pentagon  to place lettering in an envelope with a peaked top, a straight base, and sloping sides. There will be five square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and change the angle of the sides and top.</p> <p>Template Settings: Diamond, Straight; Constraint - Size; Force Even Distribution</p> <p>Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: </p>	
Ramp	<p>Use Ramp  to place lettering in an envelope with a curved top, a straight base, and sloping sides. There will be six square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize the lettering and change the angle of the sides and top.</p> <p>Template Settings: Curve, Straight; Constraint - Italic</p> <p>Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: </p>	
Rocket	<p>Use Rocket  to place lettering in an envelope with a peaked top and an arched base. There will be six square green handles. Click and drag the handles to resize and reshape the lettering.</p> <p>Template Settings: Diamond, Arch; Constraint - Perspective</p> <p>Shortcut: Lettering Shape, Letter Tab: </p>	

## Using Block Lettering

- 1 Enter the text "Backwards" in the Letter window. See "Create Lettering" on page 327.
- 2 In the Lettering Shape area, click Horizontal Block.
- 3 Click Apply . The lettering appears in the work area.
- 4 Drag the text a short distance to the right. A four-arrow pointer appears as you drag.

- 5 Place the pointer over one of the square green handles at the corners of the lettering. The Adjust/resize pointer  appears.
- 6 Use the handles to adjust the size and shape of the lettering. Hold the Ctrl key to keep the proportions.
- 7 Use the round handle on the right to rotate the lettering.
- 8 Undo  the rotation.
- 9 Right-click and choose Delete  to remove the lettering from the work area.
- 10 In the Letter window, select the checkbox labeled "Reverse".
- 11 Click Apply . The lettering appears on the work area with the text mirrored. 
- 12 Delete the lettering and deselect Reverse.
- 13 In the Letter window, select the checkbox labeled "Individual", and change the text in the box to "SINGLE".
- 14 Click Apply . The lettering appears on the work area with each letter in its own selection box, and a multiple selection box with a dotted outline and orange handles. 
- 15 To use a different lettering shape, choose a new lettering shape in the Letter window and click Apply again.

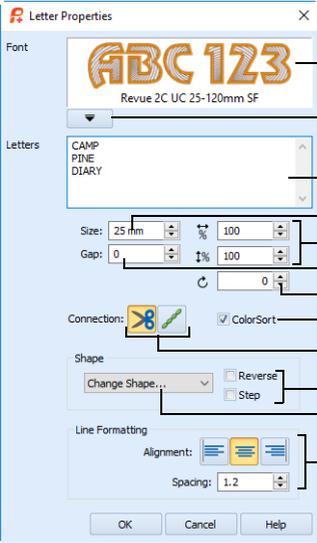
## Letter Properties

Use the Letter Properties dialog to alter the font, text, proportions, connection, shape and line formatting when editing lettering.

*Letter properties may not be changed once the lettering has been converted to embroidery.*

For letter properties, right-click the lettering, and select Properties from the right-click menu.

*To change stitch type properties, choose the desired line or fill type from the Context menu.*



The screenshot shows the 'Letter Properties' dialog box with the following settings and callouts:

- Font:** Preview the font (shows 'ABC 123' in a stylized font).
- Font Selection:** Select a font (dropdown menu showing 'Revue 2C UC 25-120mm SF').
- Letters:** Change the lettering text. Use Ctrl+Enter to add a line. (Text box showing 'CAMP PINE DIARY').
- Size:** Change the font size (25 mm).
- Gap:** Change the height and width proportions of the lettering (0).
- Spacing:** Change the spacing between the letters (100%).
- Rotation:** Rotate the lettering (0 degrees).
- Connection:** Select a connection method (ColorSort checked).
- Shape:** Select a connection method (ColorSort checked).
- Reverse/Step:** Reverse or rotate the letters in the line (Reverse checked).
- Change Shape:** Choose another lettering shape (Change Shape... button).
- Line Formatting:** Set alignment and spacing (Alignment: Center, Spacing: 1.2).

*To change lettering before you have clicked Apply, use the Letter tab. See "Font Selection" on page 329.*

## Font

The font used for this lettering is shown. Click the arrow below the font preview and the font gallery appears. Scroll up or down to select a font from one of the font categories, or use the up and down arrows to see fonts one at a time. For more information on fonts, see “Font Selection” on page 329.

## Letters

This shows the current text. Click in the box and amend the text as desired. Use Ctrl+Enter to insert additional lines of text. Use the scroll bar at the side of the text box to show additional lines of text when there are too many lines to show them all at once.

## Size

Font size can be set from 3mm to 200mm. This is the height of the uppercase 'A' character in the font, and all other characters are sized relative to the height of 'A'. Fonts are initially set at the minimum recommended size for the font.

The recommended font size forms part of the name. For instance, Corinthian 15-35mm should be used with Size set from 15mm to 35mm.

*In the National fonts using alternative alphabets, the character in the 'A' is used as the basis for sizing the characters. This will also apply if you create new fonts with the QuickFont Wizard from TrueType® or OpenType® symbol fonts.*

If you set a satin font to a very large size, use the Satin Column properties dialog box to choose a pattern which will prevent loose stitching that may catch and pull easily. See “Satin Column” on page 456.

## Height and Width

Use Height  and Width  to adjust the proportions of the lettering. For example, to make characters taller without increasing the width, increase the Height.

Set Height and Width from 25% to 400%, in steps of 1%.

## Gap

Use Gap to change the spacing between characters in a line of lettering. A negative value brings the letters closer together and a positive value moves them farther apart.

*Lowercase characters in Script fonts are not affected by the Gap setting.*

Set the Gap from -99 to +99. Type in numbers, or use the arrows to increase or decrease the Gap.

*Increasing the Gap setting is recommended for Perspective lettering.*

## Automatic Kerning

Characters are spaced by automatic kerning according to the way that adjacent pairs of characters fit together. For example, the letters 'AV' need less space between them than 'AB' because of the shape of the characters. The Gap setting then increases or decreases the spacing set by automatic kerning.

Script fonts have a special joining method where all adjacent lowercase characters are directly joined together and are not affected by the Gap setting.

The Gap is based on the width of the A character. A Gap of 1.0 is equal to 6% of the width of the A character.

## Rotate

Use Rotate  to change the angle of the lettering.

### Angle

Use the up and down arrows or enter an angle from 0 to 359 degrees in the Rotate box.

*If desired, move the center of rotation  before rotating.*

## Connection

Change the connection type between Trim  or Running Stitch , as desired.

## ColorSort

Ensure that ColorSort is selected to display the lettering with the minimum number of color blocks.

*Only deselect ColorSort if you want to vary the color of some characters in the lettering.*

## Shape

Select a different Shape for your lettering from the drop-down menu. Use Reverse to reverse the order of letters, or use Step to rotate the letters at a different angle from the line. For more information on lettering shapes, see “Lettering Shapes” on page 335.

*When you change the lettering shape, any adjustments that you made to the shape of the lettering will be lost.*

## Line Formatting

Use line formatting to control how multiple lines of text are arranged relative to each other.

### Alignment

All text is initially created with center  alignment. Use the Alignment buttons to alternatively select left  or right  alignment.

### Spacing

Use Spacing to change the distance between multiple lines of text. The default spacing is 1.2, and can be adjusted from 1.0 to 5.0.

*The Spacing is based on the height of the A character. Spacing of 1.0 is equal to the height of the A character, plus 6%. If you have lower case lettering with descenders (the tails below the baseline on the g, p, q and y characters), you may wish to increase the Spacing to 1.5.*

## Changing Letter Properties

Use Letter Properties to change lettering after it has been placed, but before it has been fixed as an embroidery.

To change the stitch type, right-click the lettering and select the stitch type from the Context menu. If there is more than one stitch area of a particular type in the font, the drop-down menu will show that stitch type in a numbered list; for example, *Pattern Fill 1*, *Pattern Fill 2*. See “Choosing Stitch Properties” on page 424.

- 1 Right-click the lettering and select Properties from the Context menu. The Letter Properties dialog box appears.
- 2 Click the arrow below the font preview to select a different font from the gallery.
- 3 Edit the text of the lettering in the Letters text box. Use Ctrl+Enter to add extra lines or break up existing lines of text.  
*You can check the spelling of the text. See “Check Your Spelling” on page 335.*
- 4 Adjust Size to change the basic size of the lettering. It is recommended to use a size within the range indicated in the font name.
- 5 Click the arrows for Height  and Width  to change the proportions of the lettering. Alternatively, enter a size in the number box.
- 6 Use Rotate  to change the angle of the lettering.
- 7 Adjust Gap to change the spacing between the letters. Click the arrows, or enter a value.
- 8 Select Trim  or Running Stitch  as the connection method.
- 9 Click the arrow below the current lettering shape to select a different lettering shape from the gallery. If desired, set Reverse or Step for the Lettering Shape.
- 10 Select the alignment for multiple lines of lettering. Click Left , Center  or Right , as desired.
- 11 Click the arrows for Spacing to set the distance between multiple lines of text.
- 12 Click OK to apply your changes to the selected lettering.

## Lettering Color

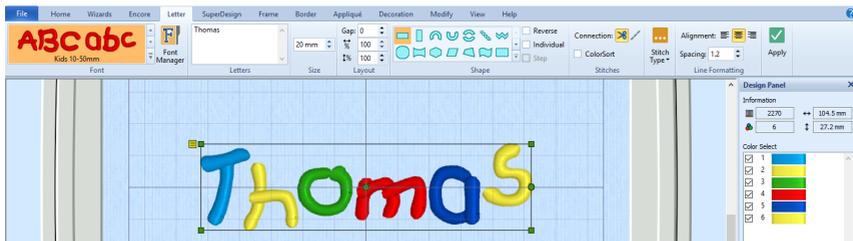
When ColorSort is selected, the lettering is displayed with one color block for a single color in the lettering. For single-color fonts, this will be one color, for multicolor fonts this will be as many colors as there are in the font. ColorSort is selected by default, but is not available if Individual lettering is selected, as each character is created separately.

If ColorSort is not selected, each character in the lettering for a single-color font is displayed as a separate color block. For multicolor fonts, each character will have its own sequence of color blocks. This allows you to use different colors for some characters in a piece of lettering.

*If the Running Stitch Connection option is selected, lettering is created as a single design and always uses a single color block.*

## Varying the Colors for Specific Characters

- 1 In the Letters tab, ensure that ColorSort is not selected (is unchecked).
- 2 Create a block of lettering.  
*The thread colors for each letter can be seen in the Color Select area. For multicolor lettering there will be a color block for each color in every letter.*
- 3 You can use Color Select to change the color of any characters in your lettering. Double-click the top color in the list. The Color Selection dialog box opens.  
*See “Change an Existing Thread Color” on page 45 for more information.*
- 4 Change the color to a contrasting color.
- 5 Click OK to close the dialog box. In the work area the color for the first letter in the text has changed.
- 6 Change other letters as desired.



## Fixing Lettering as an Embroidery

Lettering is fixed as an embroidery when the Modify tab is selected, when it is ColorSorted using the Export functions, when it is fixed using Fix as Stitches in the Home tab or Context menu, or when it is Combined with another design. The stitches are then created, and any further resizing of the embroidery may affect stitch density and length. The font and text, and stitch properties, for example the density, pattern, angle or stitch length, may not be changed after it is fixed. Appliqué fabric cannot be changed in the Context menu after the lettering is fixed, but if PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra is owned you may use the Select Appliqué features on the Appliqué tab.

*When lettering is fixed as stitches, the handles change from green to white. After lettering has been converted to embroidery, it can no longer be changed with Letter Properties, and the stitch types cannot be adjusted. If the Resize  mode is selected, the handles will become blue.*

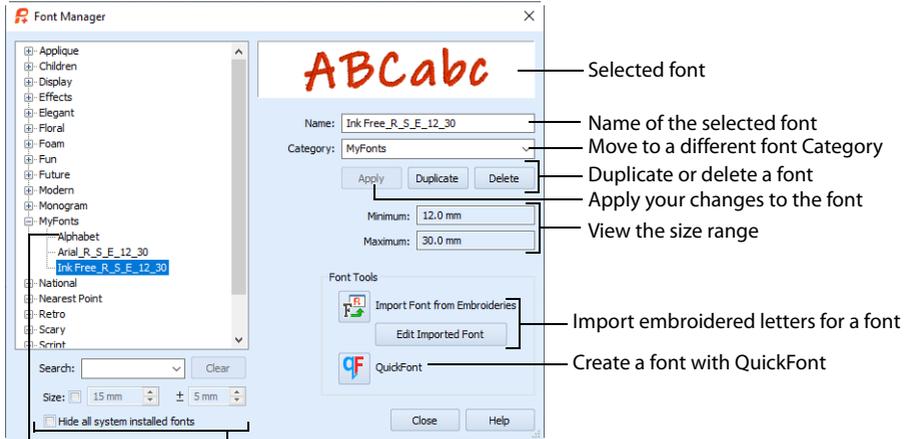
*To reverse fixing as an embroidery, click Undo .*

*To fix lettering as an embroidery deliberately (for example to mirror some lettering shapes), right-click it and select Fix as Stitches  from the Context menu, or select Fix as Stitches in the Combine drop-down menu in the Home tab.*

# Font Manager

Use Font Manager  to search for fonts and to arrange, rename, create, duplicate and delete user fonts.

Use PREMIER+™ 2 Font Create for advanced editing of your fonts.

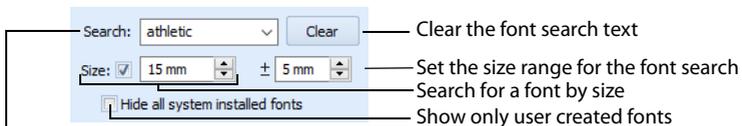


Click to select a font      Search for a font by name or size

When a system font is selected, only the search functions are available in Font Manager.

## Font Search

Use Font Search to search for a font by name or size.



Search for a font by name

## Search

Search for a font by name.

Enter the desired text in the Search box and press Enter. Click Clear to remove the search text, and use the drop-down menu to reuse previous searches.

Click Clear search before browsing for fonts by Category, or for searching by Size.

## Size

Search for fonts by their recommended size.

Ensure that the Size checkbox is selected (checked), then enter the desired size in the Size number box.

The Size is based on the height of the uppercase 'A' character in the font. The recommended font size forms part of the name, for example Corinthian 15-35mm. See "Font Size" on page 330.

## Range

To choose a size range, adjust the number in the Range  $\pm$  box, increasing the number to give a larger size range.

*For example, if the Size is 15mm and the Range is 5mm, then fonts with ranges 5-15mm, 15-25mm, 12-16mm and 5-50mm will be visible, but fonts with ranges 3-8mm & 30-60mm will not. An imported embroidery font within this range will also be found.*

## Hide All System Installed Fonts

Check this box so that only fonts that you created in the QuickFont Wizard, in Import Font from Embroideries, or in PREMIER+™ 2 Font Create are displayed, sorted by Category.

*Only fonts within the Fonts folder structure will be shown.*

## Font Preview

The selected font is previewed, showing its type, name, category and size range.

## Font Types

- User generated font - fonts created by you or another user in QuickFont Wizard or PREMIER+™ 2 Font Create, or imported with Import Font from Embroideries.
- System installed font - the fonts supplied with your PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System can be viewed and searched for, but they cannot be copied or deleted.

## Name

Use the Name text box to change the name of the selected user font.

Edit the font name in the text box, then click Apply to save your changes.

*Remember to preserve the size range information when changing the name. The recommended size can only be changed in PREMIER+™ 2 Font Create. Changing the name does not change the size range.*

## Category

Use Category to select a different Category for the font, or enter the name for a new font Category.

Select a Category from the drop-down menu, and click Apply to confirm the change. The font then moves to its new Category.

*If the selected Category already contains a font with the same name, an error message is displayed: "A font already exists in this category with this name." Rename the font, or select another font.*

## Duplicate

Use Duplicate to create a copy of the selected user font.

The copy is placed in the same Category as the original font, using the same name suffixed with "Copy of ".

## Make a Copy of a Personal Font

- 1 In the Letter tab, click Font Manager . The Font Manager dialog box opens
- 2 At the bottom of the font list, use Search to find the font you want to copy. See "Font Search" on page 354.  
*You can only copy a personal (User) font using Duplicate.*
- 3 Click the desired font in the font list. The font appears in the preview on the right.

- 4 Click the Duplicate button. The font name changes to the original name with "Copy of" in front. Your original font and its copy are now in the font category, with your new font selected.  
*The Duplicate button will be grayed out (not available) if the font is a system font.*
- 5 In Name:, change the text to give your copied font a new name.  
*Take care not to remove the part of the name indicating the font size.*
- 6 Click Apply to save the copied font under the new name.
- 7 If desired, use the Category drop-down menu to place the font in a different Category, then click Apply again to confirm this change.  
*Alternatively, enter the name for a new font Category, then move the font.*

## Delete

Use Delete to remove the selected user font from your computer.

*You cannot delete system fonts using Delete.*

Select the font that you want to delete, and click Apply.

*If you delete a font that you used in an embroidery, the lettering will be fixed as an embroidery, and will no longer be available for editing when you open the embroidery again.*

## Delete a Font

*Make a backup of your fonts before using Delete, as you cannot Undo font removal. Copy the contents of the folder ProgramData\VSMSoftware\Premier+2\Fonts\MyFonts, and any other folder you used.*

- 1 In the Letter tab, click Font Manager . The Font Manager dialog box opens
- 2 At the bottom of the font list, use Search to find the font you want to remove from your computer. See "Font Search" on page 354.  
*You can only Delete a User generated (personal) font.*
- 3 Click the desired font in the font list. The font appears in the preview on the right.
- 4 Click the Delete button. A message is displayed "This will remove your font and cannot be undone. Do you want to continue?".  
*The Delete button will be grayed out (not available) if the font is a system font.*  
*If you have recently used or viewed the font, you may not be able to delete it as it is still locked by the system. Close and reopen PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, and then delete the font.*
- 5 Click Yes to remove the font from your computer.  
*If you deleted the wrong font, recover the copy of the font from backup.*

## Size

Size shows the Minimum and Maximum recommended size for the font.

*This is the size range used by Font Search. The recommended size can only be changed in PREMIER+™ 2 Font Create.*

## Font Tools

### Import Font From Embroideries

Use Import Font From Embroideries  to import individual embroidered letters to create a font in the Import Font From Embroideries dialog box. Use the Edit Imported Font button to make changes to an imported font. See "Import Font from Embroideries" on page 357.

## QuickFont

Use QuickFont  to launch the QuickFont Wizard to create new fonts for PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery automatically from any TrueType® or OpenType® font on your computer. See “Creating Fonts Automatically” on page 370.

## QuickFont

Use the QuickFont  wizard to create new fonts for PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery automatically from any TrueType® or OpenType® font on your computer. See “Creating Fonts Automatically” on page 370.

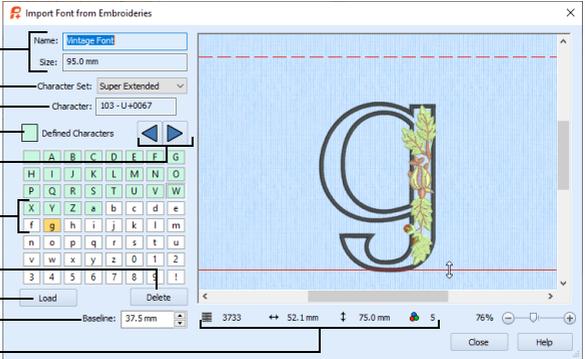
Use *Delete in Font Manager* to remove unwanted QuickFont fonts from your computer. See “Delete” on page 356.

### To Launch QuickFont

- Click QuickFont  in Font Manager, see “Font Manager” on page 354.
- Click QuickFont  in the Accessories  menu in the QuickLink toolbar.

## Import Font from Embroideries

Use Import Font From Embroideries  to import individual embroidered letters to create a font. Browse to the letters individually, or drag them from an Explorer window.



Font name and size —

Select a character set for the font —

Code for the selected letter —

Created letters are highlighted —

View more characters —

The selected letter is orange, and created letters are green —

Delete the selected letter —

Replace the selected letter —

Move the Baseline for the letter —

Embroidery information —

For best results, remove any stray stitches in PREMIER+™ 2 Modify before importing the letters.

As the imported letters are stitch files, rather than fully adjustable design files, they work best at their original size, with the minimum of reshaping.

Imported fonts work best with the Line, Vertical Block and Horizontal Block lettering shapes.

### Name

The name that the font was given in the Select a Name dialog box is displayed.

This name is unique. An error message is displayed if an existing name is used.

### Size

The size of the font. This is taken from the size of the Upper Case 'A', which is the first letter in the font to be created.

## Character Set

Choose a character set for the font. The available options are: Extended, Super Extended, Latin 1, Western 1, Western 2, Western 3, Western 4, Cyrillic 1, Cyrillic 2, Cyrillic 3, Hiragana 1, Hiragana2, Greek 1 and Hebrew 1. The default character set is Extended.

*For more information on character sets, see "Select Font" on page 373.*

## Character

The ASCII character code for the selected letter is given.

## Defined Characters

The letters that have already been created are highlighted in green, and the selected letter is highlighted in orange. Click the Previous ◀ and Next ▶ buttons to view more letters (for example Lower Case letters).

Click to select a letter to create, replace or delete in the letter panel.

*Use the Page Up and Page Down keys on the keyboard to move between the letters.*

## Load

Click Load to reload the selected character. Use Load to replace the current character with a different embroidery. For example, reload if an incorrect character was selected, or to reload the embroidery at its original settings.

## Delete

Click Delete to remove the selected character from the letter panel. Use Delete if a character was created in error, such as if a Lower Case letter was added to an Upper Case font.

## Baseline

Enter a number for the Baseline of the selected character, or use the up and down arrows to adjust the positioning of the character on the Baseline.

*You can also drag the solid red Baseline to position the character.*

Adjust the Baseline for descender characters like Lower Case g, p, and y, or where a decoration on the character descends below the natural Baseline for the character.

*A dashed top red line indicates the position of the top of the Upper Case A. Use this when adjusting the position of letters and punctuation symbols.*

## Design Information

The Design Information shows the stitch count , dimensions (Width  and Height ) and number of colors  for the character embroidery.

## Zoom Bar

Use the Zoom Bar at the bottom of the screen to zoom in or out from the center of the embroidered letter.



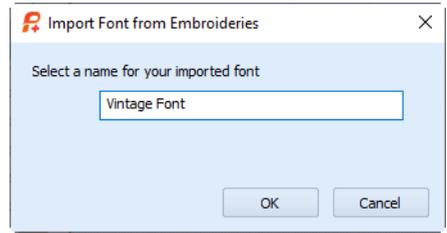
Use the slider to zoom in or out, or click on the Zoom Out  or Zoom In  icons.

## Select a Name

Use the Select a Name dialog box to give your imported font a name.

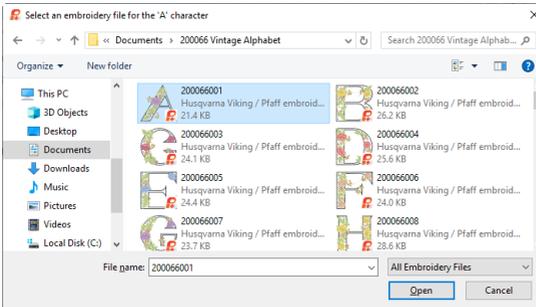
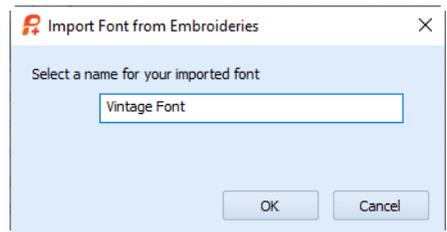
*An error message is displayed if the name has already been used.*

Name the font, then click OK to select the letter 'A' for the font in the Open dialog box.

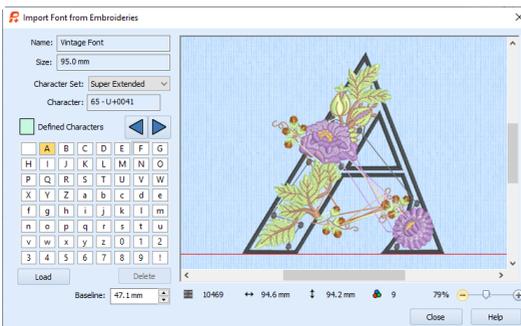


## Create a Font from Embroidered Letters

- 1 Place your embroidered letters in a folder on your computer.
- 2 In the Letter tab, click Font Manager . The Font Manager dialog box opens.
- 3 Click Import Font from Embroideries . A dialog box opens for you to name your font.
- 4 Enter a name for your font, and click OK. The font naming dialog box closes and an Open dialog box appears.
- 5 In the Open dialog box, browse to the folder with your embroidered letters.  
*The Tiles option in the Open dialog box is useful when selecting letters.*

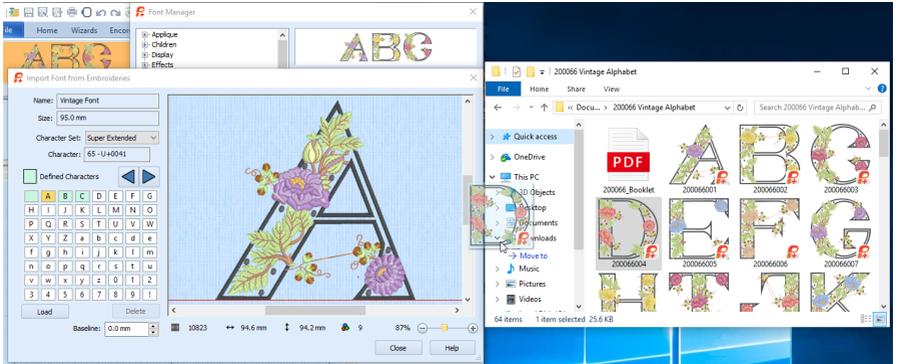


- 6 Select the Upper Case letter 'A', then click Open. The Import Font from Embroideries dialog box opens with the letter 'A' selected.  
*Note the red baseline under the letter 'A'. The Baseline sets where the letter will be placed along the line relative to the other letters in the font.*

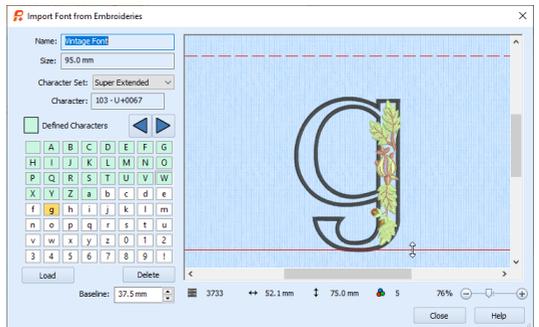


When using Import Font from Embroideries to create a font from individual embroideries, the Upper Case 'A' is always created first. The size of the letters in the font is taken from the letter 'A'.

- 7 In the Letter panel on the left, click the letter 'B'. The Open dialog box opens for you to load the letter 'B'.
- 8 Click to select the letter 'B', then click Open to load it in the Import Font from Embroideries dialog box. Note the red dashed line above the 'B'. This line indicates the position of the top of the letter 'A'.
- 9 Click to select the letter 'C' and load it.
- 10 Without closing Import Font from Embroideries, open a File Explorer window (Windows Explorer on Windows® 7) and browse to the letters for your font.
- 11 In the File Explorer window, click the letter 'D' and drag it to tile D in the Import Font from Embroideries dialog box.



- 12 Click to select the letter 'G', and drag it to the E tile. The letter 'E' is highlighted, but the letter 'G' is in the preview.
- 13 Click and drag 'E' to place it in the correct position. You can also use Load and Delete to replace and remove unwanted letters.
- 14 Click and drag to load the other upper case letters in your alphabet, then load the lower case letters up to the letter 'f'.
- 15 Click and drag the small 'g' onto its tile.
- 16 The solid red line across the preview is the Baseline for the selected letter. Click and drag the Baseline upwards so that the body of the 'g' rests on it, and the tail hangs below. The line moves up across the letter. You can also use the up and down arrows by the Baseline number box to adjust the Baseline, or enter a number. The Baseline sets where the letter will be placed along the line relative to the other letters in the font.



- 17 In the Import Font from Embroideries dialog box, click Next to view more letters.

- 18 Click and drag the apostrophe onto its tile.

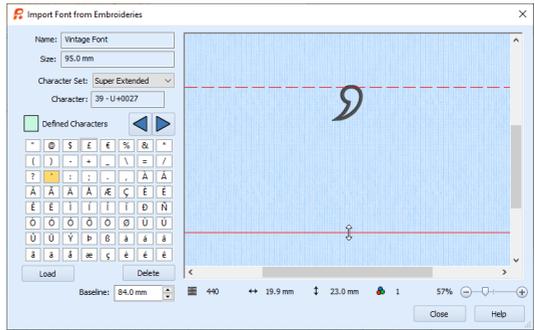
*You can use the comma for an apostrophe.*

- 19 Click and drag the Baseline downwards to place the apostrophe just below the dashed line at the top. *You may need to zoom out using the slider to adjust the position of the lines.*

- 20 Load the remaining embroideries for the font, and adjust the Baseline for the letters.

- 21 Click Close when you have finished, and also close the Font Manager.

*If you need to take a break, click Close to save the font, and Font Manager, then browse to it in the My Fonts Category to load it again with the Edit Imported Font button.*



## Adjust your Imported Font

- 22 Select your new font in the Letter tab.

- 23 In the Letters text box, enter a series of letters to view their position relative to the Baseline, for example "abcdefghijklm".

- 24 In Shape, select Fit to Straight Line , then click Apply.

- 25 If needed, adjust the hoop size and orientation so that your lettering will fit across the bottom of the hoop.

*For larger letters, use a custom hoop size.*

- 26 Drag the green handle on the right up or down so that the lettering lies horizontally along one of the grid lines.

- 27 Open the Font Manager .

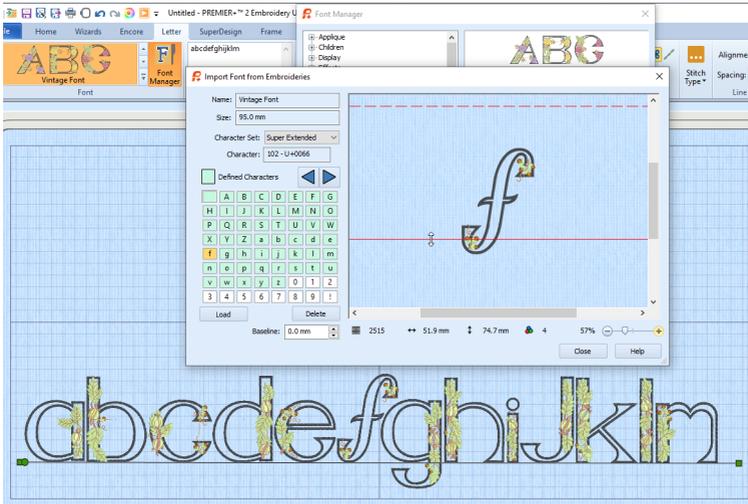
- 28 Drag the dialog box up towards the top of the screen.

- 29 Ensure that your imported font is selected, and click Edit Imported Font.

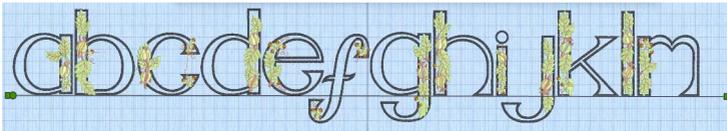
- 30 Move the Import Font from Embroideries dialog box upwards so that you can see your line of lettering.

- 31 Select a letter that needs adjusting. In this example I will adjust 'f'.

- 32** Click and drag the solid red Baseline below the 'f' upwards so that the bottom of the 'f' will be below the Baseline.



- 33** Release the mouse button. The letter 'f' in the text below the dialog box moves downwards.  
**34** Adjust the Baseline again so that the letter 'f' is aligned correctly with the other letters.  
**35** Select the small letter 'j'.  
*Either click on the 'j', or use the Page Up and Page Down keys on the keyboard to move through the letters in the dialog box.*  
**36** Adjust the 'j', then adjust any other letters in that line.



- 37** Adjust the other letters in your alphabet.  
*If you want to start again with a particular letter, click Load and reload the embroidery.  
 Many Upper Case fonts will need little Baseline adjustment.  
 Lower Case letters are likely to need more adjustment, particularly letters like p, g, and y with descenders.*
- 38** When you have adjusted all of your letters, click Close to save your font, and then in Font Manager click Close again.
- 39** Use your new font in the Letter tab.  
*To fine tune the placing of your letters in the work area, use the Individual option. You can adjust the colors of an imported font in PREMIER+™ 2 Font Create.  
 Imported fonts work best with the Line, Vertical Block and Horizontal Block lettering shapes.  
 As the imported letters are stitch files, rather than fully adjustable design files, they work best at or near to their original size, with the minimum of reshaping.*

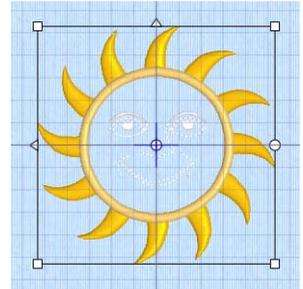


# Lettering Examples

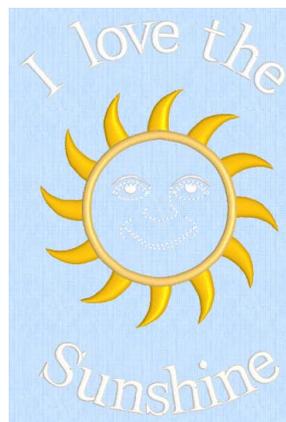
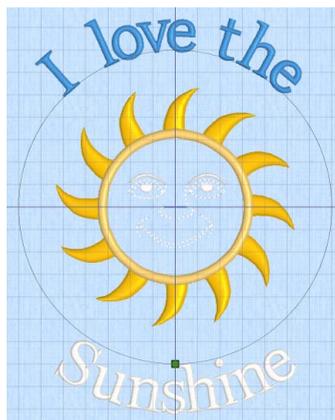
Use lettering to enhance an embroidery, or create a monogram.

## Create a Circle of Letters: I Love the Sunshine

- 1 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Change Hoop . In the Hoop Selection dialog box select 260mm x 200mm - Universal Large Hoop 3.
- 2 Set Orientation to Natural and click OK.
- 3 In the View tab, ensure that the Grid size is set to 10mm.
- 4 In the Quick Access toolbar at the top of the screen, click Insert .
- 5 Browse to Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Stitch.
- 6 Scroll down until you see "Sunshine Applique Large".
- 7 Click Open to load the embroidery into the work area.  
The embroidery has white handles on its selection box, showing that it is initially in Scale rather than Resize  mode (blue handles).
- 8 Click the Letter tab.
- 9 In the font gallery on the left, scroll down to the Traditional font category.
- 10 Select the font Georgia 20-40mm.  
*It will be automatically selected if this is a new PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery window.*
- 11 Enter the words "I love the" in the Letters text box.
- 12 In the Lettering Shape area, click Circle Clockwise.
- 13 In Stitches, ensure that ColorSort is selected (checked).
- 14 Click Apply . The lettering appears in the center of the work area above the embroidery. Its handle is green.  
*The green handle indicates that the lettering has not yet been fixed as stitches.*  
*If the lettering does not surround the embroidery, the embroidery was not selected. Click Undo , click to select the embroidery, then click Apply again.*
- 15 Press the Tab key so that the sun embroidery is selected.
- 16 In the Letters text box, enter the word "Sunshine".
- 17 In the Lettering Shape area, click Circle Counter-Clockwise, and ensure that ColorSort is selected (checked).
- 18 Click Apply . The lettering appears in the center of the work area surrounding the embroidery. Its handles are green.  
*If the thread color for both lines is identical, you can use Full Circle instead of Circle Clockwise and Circle Counter-Clockwise.*

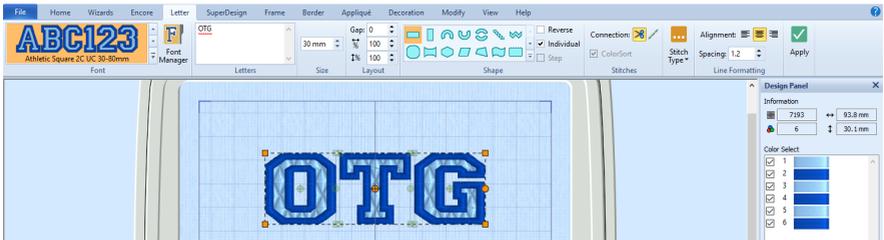


- 19 Drag the square green handle at the bottom of the circle of lettering upwards half a grid square.  
*The circle becomes smaller, but the size of the letters is unaffected.*
- 20 Click the "I Love the" text, and drag the square green handle at the top of the circle of lettering downwards half a grid square
- 21 Look at the Design Panel on the right. The phrase has a single color block in the Color Select area.
- 22 Select the Sunshine text, then move the arrow pointer over the color block and pause for a moment. The word 'Sunshine' is highlighted, and a popup description of the thread is displayed.
- 23 Double-click the color block. The Color Selection dialog box appears.
- 24 In Thread Range choose Show All Thread Ranges, then select Solar Active Ultra Violet 40 from the drop-down list.
- 25 Select thread color 0002 (White/Orange). Click OK to change the color.  
*The word Sunshine is now white.*
- 26 Select the "I love the" text.
- 27 Double-click the blue (number 1) in the Color Select and in the Color Selection dialog box choose Show All Thread Ranges, then select Solar Active Ultra Violet 40 from the drop-down list.
- 28 Select thread color 0001 (White/Yellow) and click OK to change the color.
- 29 Click the Home tab.
- 30 Click Select All , then in Alignment, click Center in Hoop . Both the sun embroidery and the lettering are centered in the hoop.
- 31 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Life View .
- 32 Click Solar Reactive . The sun's face and the lettering change from white to yellow and orange.  
*Solar Reactive simulates the sun shining on the photochromic threads in the design. The threads change shade to show the colors they will become in sunlight.*
- 33 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Save As  and save the embroidery as 'I love the Sunshine'.  
*The sun and lettering will be stored separately within this multipart embroidery, making further adjustment easier.*
- 34 Click Export  in the Quick Access toolbar to export the sunshine embroidery.
- 35 In the Export dialog box, ensure that .vp4 is selected and click OK.
- 36 In the Save As dialog box, browse to Documents\Premier+2\My Designs, and save the embroidery as 'I love the Sunshine\_exported' (a .vp4 file extension is added automatically).  
*When exported, the embroidery is automatically combined and ColorSorted if those options are selected. To add Appliqué to this embroidery, see "Add Appliqué" on page 182'.*



## Individual Letter Monogram

- 1 Click the Letter tab and in the Font drop-down gallery, scroll to the Monogram font category. *These fonts have most characters of equal width, designed for monograms created using the lettering functions or the ExpressMonogram Wizard. They are all uppercase only.*
- 2 In the Monogram font category, select Athletic Square 2C UC 30-80mm. This is a two-color monogram font.
- 3 Enter the letters "OTG" in the Letters text box. Since this is an uppercase font, it is not required to enter uppercase letters.
- 4 In the Lettering Shape area, click Horizontal Block.
- 5 Select the checkbox labeled "Individual".  
*Note that the ColorSort checkbox is unavailable, as each character is created separately.*
- 6 In the Stitch Type  drop-down menu, select Pattern Fill. *The stitch type can be changed in the Letter tab before the lettering is created. To change the stitch type for lettering placed in the work area, right-click each letter separately and select the stitch type from the Context menu.*
- 7 In the Patterns gallery of the Pattern Fill properties dialog box, scroll to the Diamonds Category.
- 8 Click the pattern in row 1, column 1 (number 97).
- 9 Click OK to return to the Letter window.
- 10 Click Apply . Each letter forms a separate block, with its own handles.



- 11 Drag the lettering towards the top of the screen. The pointer changes to the Move  pointer, and the lettering moves as a block.

- 12 Click outside the lettering. None of the letters are now selected.

- 13 Click the "T". It alone is surrounded by a selection box.

- 14 Drag the top right green handle up and to the right, until the T is approximately twice the height, and one and two-thirds the width, of the other two letters.

- 15 Drag the T to the left so that it is midway between the two letters. Alternatively, use the arrow keys to nudge the T into position. This forms a simple three-letter monogram.

- 16 Click the Home tab.

As only the T is selected, only the two threads for the T can be seen in Color Select.

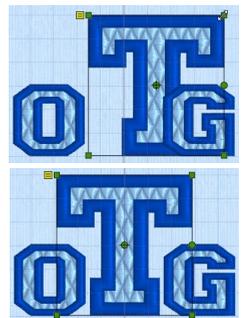
*When Individual is used, there is a color block for each color in every letter.*

- 17 Click Select All . All three letters are surrounded by selection boxes again. See "Select All" on page 59.

The threads for all three letters are now visible in Color Select.

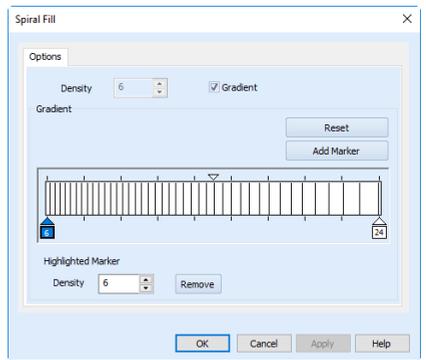
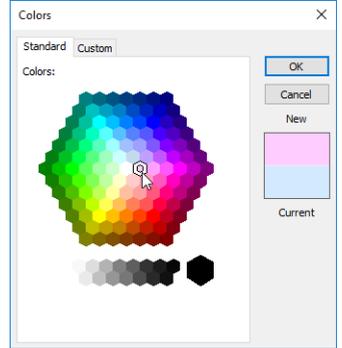
- 18 Click Group . The three letters are grouped as a single design. See "Group" on page 62.

The design will be ColorSorted (if desired) when it is exported for stitching. See "Export" on page 20. *You could change the thread colors for single letters in the monogram. See "Varying the Colors for Specific Characters" on page 352.*



## Change Lettering Fills: Camp Pine Diary

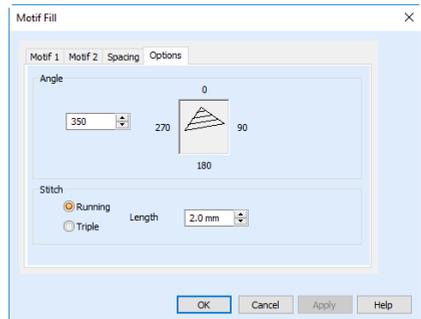
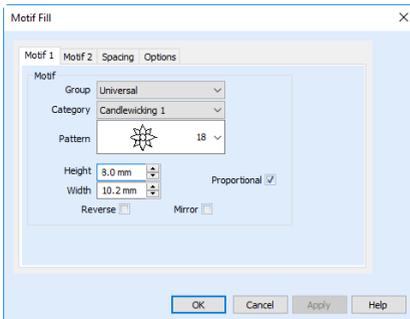
- 1 Ensure PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery  is open.
- 2 Click PREMIER+™ 2 Configure , then click the Appearance tab.
- 3 For Background, click the drop-down arrow and then click More Colors on the drop-down panel. The Colors dialog box appears, with the Standard tab selected.
- 4 In the hexagonal matrix, click the medium pink hexagon sixth from the right (just to the right of the central white hexagon). The color sample on the right will show the old and new colors.
- 5 Click OK. The new color is shown on the Color button.
- 6 Click Apply and the new color will be seen in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery. Click OK.  
*Alternatively, you could load a fabric using the Background Wizard (in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra, not in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery).*
- 7 Click the View tab.
- 8 Click Change Hoop  and in the Hoop Selection dialog box select 240mm x 150mm - Universal Large Hoop 2, with Orientation set to Natural. Click OK.
- 9 Ensure that the Grid Size is set to 10mm.
- 10 Click File, Preferences  and ensure Check Spelling is selected and the language is set to English US.
- 11 Click the Letter tab.
- 12 In the font gallery on the left, scroll to the Display font category.
- 13 Select the font Revue 2C UC 25-120mm SF. It will be shown as the selected font on the Letter page. *Font names include information in addition to the name of the lettering style. 2C means that the font uses two colors. UC indicates the font has only uppercase characters (LC would indicate lowercase characters). Following the font type is the recommended size range. For instance, 25-120mm indicates the font is recommended for use at sizes from 25mm to 120mm. A stitch type abbreviation may be present at the end of the name, in this case SF for Spiral Fill.*
- 14 Click in the Letters box and enter the following text (press Enter as indicated, to create more than one line of lettering):  
CAMP<Enter>  
PINE<Enter>  
DIARY
- 15 Leave Size at the 25mm default, ensure Lettering Shape is set to Horizontal Block , that Individual is deselected (unchecked), and that ColorSort is selected (checked).
- 16 Click Apply  and the lettering will appear on the work area.
- 17 Right-click the lettering and select Spiral Fill from the right-click menu. The Spiral Fill Properties dialog box appears. The Density settings are displayed. A Gradient Density of 6-24 is used.
- 18 Click OK to close the dialog box.
- 19 Right-click the lettering again and select Satin Line from the right-click menu.
- 20 Ensure that the Density is 4, Width of the Satin Line is set to 2.0mm, and Underlay is selected. Click OK to close the dialog box.  
*You will adjust the colors of the lettering when all text has been created.*



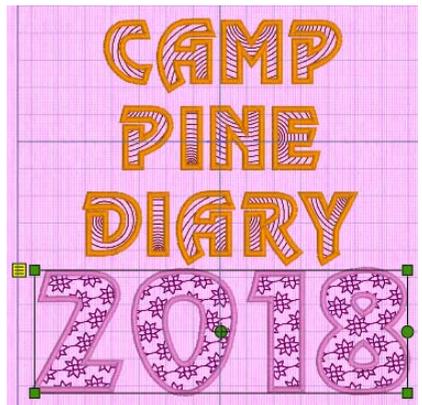
- 21 In the font gallery on the left, ensure that the Display Category is selected, and select the font Revue 2C UC 25-120mm MF.  
*The MF suffix indicates that this font uses a Motif Fill.*
- 22 Click and drag in the Letters box to highlight the previously entered text, and enter the following text to replace it:  
2018
- 23 Set Size to 50mm.



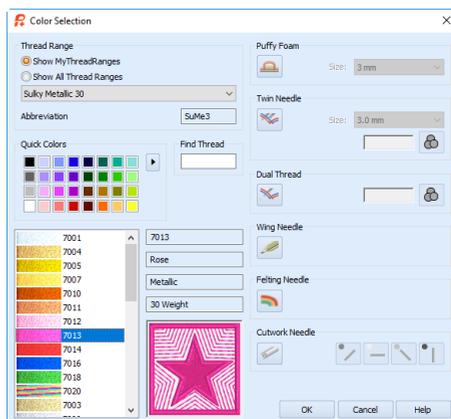
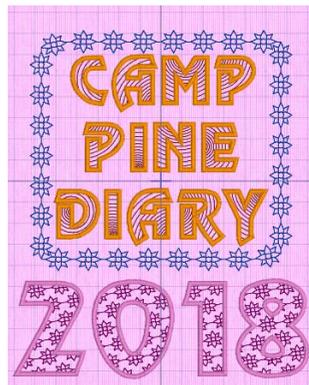
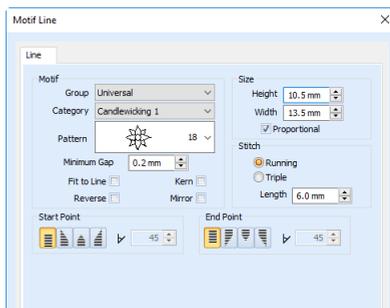
- 24 In the Stitch Type drop-down list, select Motif Fill. The Motif Fill properties dialog box appears, with the motif set to a heart.  
*When using Motif Fill fonts, you may choose from hundreds of motifs, including those similar to your own embroidery machine stitches.*
- 25 In the Motif 1 tab, set the Group to Universal and the Category to Candlewicking 1.
- 26 Click the drop-down arrow for Pattern, scroll down the list and select Pattern 18.
- 27 Ensure that Proportional is selected, and set the Height to 8.0mm.  
The Width will automatically be set to 10.2mm.



- 28 Click the Spacing tab.
- 29 Ensure the Horizontal Gap is set to 15%, and set the Horizontal Offset to 50%.
- 30 Click the Options tab.
- 31 Ensure that the Angle is set to 350.  
*This will make the linking stitches between the flower motifs less noticeable than if set to 0.*
- 32 Click OK to close Motif Fill properties.
- 33 Ensure Lettering Shape is set to Horizontal Block .
- 34 Click Apply  and the lettering will appear on the work area, below the CAMP PINE DIARY lettering, if that was selected.
- 35 Click the CAMP PINE DIARY lettering to select it, and move it up one and a half grid squares (15mm) to allow for a border.
- 36 Click the Border tab.
- 37 Ensure that Margin is set to 6mm, that Rounded Corners is deselected (unchecked), and that Group is selected (checked).



- 38** In Stitch Type select Motif Line .
- 39** Click Options .
- 40** In the Motif Line Properties dialog box, set the Motif Group to Universal, and the Category to Candlewicking 1.
- 41** Click the drop-down arrow for Pattern, scroll down the list and select Pattern 18.
- 42** Set Minimum Gap to 0.2mm.
- 43** Ensure that Proportional is selected, and set the Height to 10.5mm. The Width will automatically be set to 13.5mm.
- 44** Ensure that stitch type is set to Running, and that stitch Length is set to 6.0mm.
- 45** Click OK to close the Motif Line Properties dialog box.
- 46** Click Apply . A border will be placed around the lettering. *The border uses the same motif as the fill for the 2018 lettering.*
- 47** Click the Home tab, then click Restrict Groups . Alternatively, choose Restrict Groups from the context menu *This will enable you to modify the Camp Pine text and border separately.*
- 48** Press the Tab key to select the Diary text.
- 49** In the Design Panel move the arrow pointer over the brown color in the color worksheet (Robison-Anton Rayon 40, 2334 Terra Cotta) and pause for a moment. The areas of brown thread in the embroidery are highlighted, and a popup description of the thread is displayed. *This is the thread for the Spiral Fill.*
- 50** Double-click the thread to open the Color Selection dialog box, and set the thread range to Sulky Metallic 30 in the drop-down list.
- 51** Then select thread 7013 (Rose) and click OK to close the box. The Spiral Fill thread is now metallic.
- 52** In the color worksheet, double-click the orange thread (Robison-Anton Rayon 40, 2327 Honeydew). This is the thread for the satin border around each letter.
- 53** In the Color Selection dialog box, select Sulky Rayon 40 from the Thread Range drop-down list.
- 54** Click in the Find Thread box and enter '1011'. Thread color 1011 (Steel Gray) will be found in the list. Click OK to change the color.
- 55** Press the Tab key until the border is selected.
- 56** In the color worksheet, double-click the blue color (Robison-Anton Rayon 40, 2527 Soldier Blue). This is the thread for the motif border around the lettering.
- 57** In the Color Selection dialog box change this color to Sulky Rayon 40, thread color 1109 (Hot Pink).
- 58** Click Restrict Groups  to deselect it.



- 59 Click the 2018 lettering. A box with green handles surrounds the text.
- 60 In the color worksheet in the Design Panel, double-click color 1 (the motif fill).
- 61 In the Color Selection dialog box, select Sulky Rayon 40 from the Thread Range drop-down list and change the color to thread color 1109 (Hot Pink).
- 62 In the color worksheet, double-click color 2 (the satin border around each letter) and in the Color Selection dialog box, change the color to Sulky Rayon 40, thread color 1192 (Fuchsia).
- 63 Adjust the texts until you are happy with the result.
- 64 Click Select All .
- 65 In the Alignment drop-down list, click Horizontal Alignment, Align Center . The embroideries are aligned along the same vertical line.
- 66 In the Alignment drop-down list, click Center in Hoop .
- 67 Click Group .



*This will enable you to keep the project elements together, but modify the lettering again in future. For example, you could select Restrict Groups to edit the text or numbers and change 2019 to 2020.*

- 68 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Life View . View the embroidery as it will be exported, then click Cancel.
- 69 Click Save  and the Save As dialog box will appear.
- 70 In the Save In box, browse to the folder Documents\Premier+2\My Designs.
- 71 In the File Name box, change the name to 'Camp Pine Diary', then click Save. A .vp4 extension is added automatically.
- This will save the title and year lettering separately, making further adjustment easy.*
- 72 Click Export  in the Quick Access toolbar to export the embroidery optimized for stitching.
- 73 In the Export dialog box, ensure that .vp4 is selected, and in the Save As dialog box, save the embroidery as Documents\Premier+2\My Designs\Camp Pine DiaryExported.
- 74 Click File, Print to see the Print Preview.
- 75 In Worksheets, ensure that Design Scale is set to 75% and that Grid and all the Print Information boxes are checked.



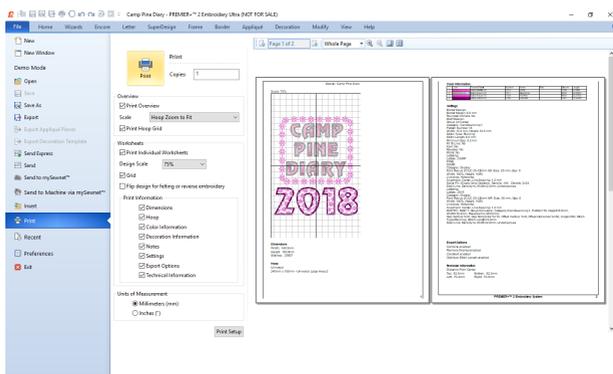
*With these settings the design and color guide will be on one page, but the printout will not be used as a placement template.*

- 76 In the Multiple Pages  drop-down list, select two pages. You can now view the design and the rest of the worksheet.

*Note that settings information for the lettering has been added automatically.*

- 77 Click Print to print the worksheet.

*After completing this exercise, you can use the Appearance tab of PREMIER+™ 2 Configure to set the Background Color back to the default blue (RGB 211, 233, 255) in the Colors dialog box Custom tab.*

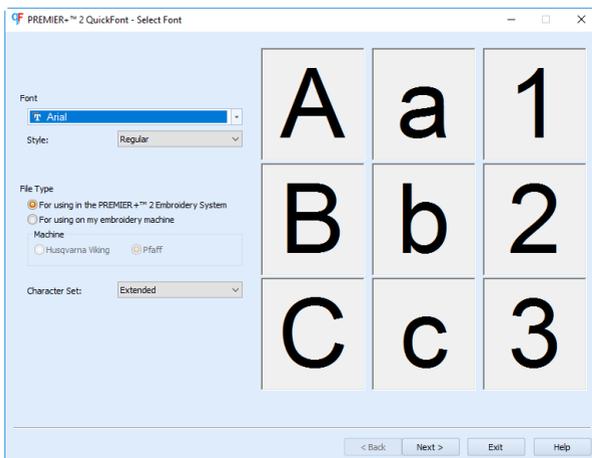


Use PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont to create fonts automatically for use with your PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System, or your embroidery machine.

## How to Create a Font

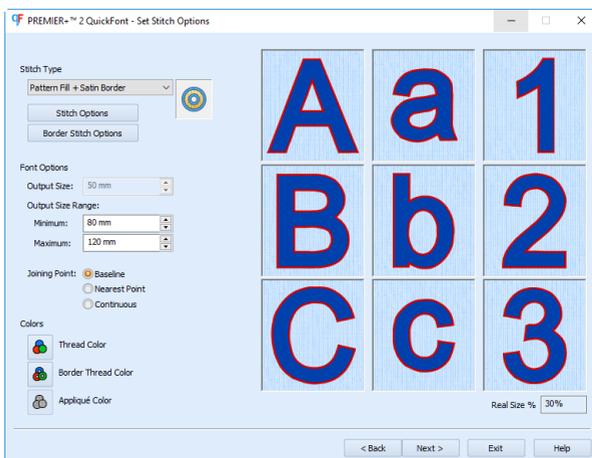
### Select Font

- 1 Start PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont . The Select Font page appears.  
*The initial settings in PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont are remembered from the last time it was used.*
- 2 Click the Font drop-down arrow and select the desired font name in the list. The previews to the right of the window will change according to the font choice.
- 3 Click the drop-down arrow for the Style and select Regular, Bold, Italic or Bold Italic in the list. The previews to the right of the window will change according to the style choice.
- 4 Select a File Type. Choose between:
  - A font to use in the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System
  - A font to use on your embroidery machine.
- 5 Click the drop-down arrow for the Character Set and choose the desired set.  
*The choice of character set will vary, depending on the File Type chosen above.*
- 6 Click Next. The Set Stitch Options page will appear.



### Set Stitch Options

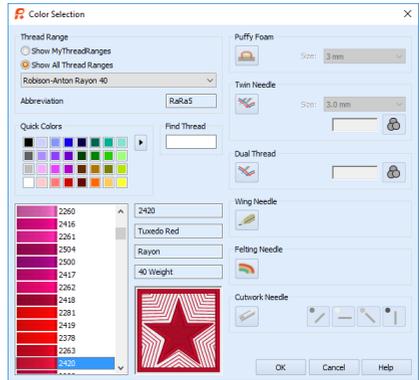
- 7 Select the desired Stitch Type from the drop-down list. The Output Size may change according to the selected Stitch Type.  
*The previews to the right of the window will change according to the selected Stitch Type. For a PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System font, the preview is in the middle of the range.*  
*The first three uppercase characters, lowercase characters and numbers are previewed.*



The size for the 'A' and 'a' characters are set half way between the Minimum and Maximum output size for a PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System font, or the characters are set as near as possible to the Output Size for a machine font.

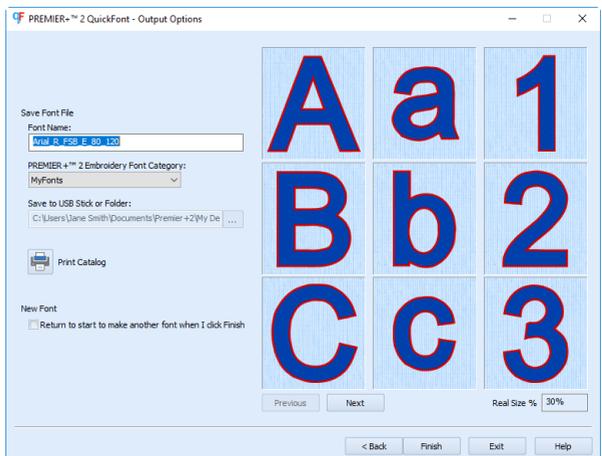
The Real Size % box shows the size of the previews, compared to the Real Size setting in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

- 8 If desired, click Stitch Options and/or Border Stitch Options and change the settings for the selected Stitch Type, such as the fill pattern or satin border width.
- 9 If desired, adjust the Output Size (for a machine font), or Output Size Range (for a PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System font).
- 10 In Joining Point, select Baseline to join letters at the bottom, select Nearest Point to join letters at the place where they are closest for fast stitchout of a small font, and use Continuous for a flowing handwriting effect with a script font.  
*Joining Point options are only available with a PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System font.*
- 11 To change the thread color used for satin columns or pattern fill areas, click the Thread Color icon . The Color Selection dialog box will appear for you to choose a new color.
- 12 To change the thread color used for satin borders, appliqué stitching and outlines, click the Border Thread Color icon . The Color Selection dialog box will appear for you to choose a new color.  
*After you have chosen a new thread color, the previews will be shown with the new color.*
- 13 To change the appliqué fabric color, click the Appliqué Color icon . The Appliqué Selection dialog box will appear for you to choose a new fabric. See “Stitch and Appliqué Colors” on page 391.
- 14 Click Next. A progress bar will appear, showing that the font is being created. The Output Options page will then appear.



## Output Options

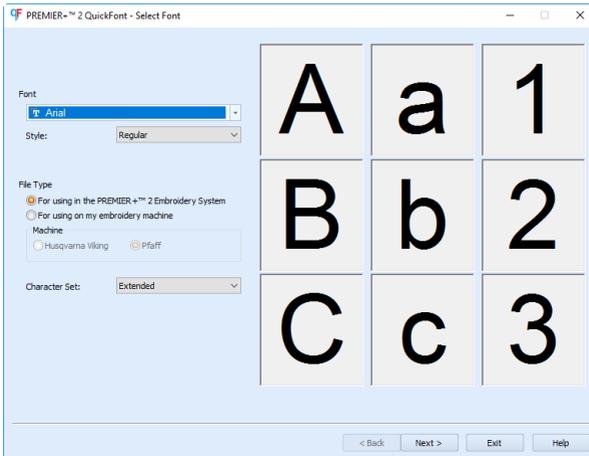
- 15 The Font Name is automatically generated to show the TrueType® font name, then the style (R for Regular, B for Bold, I for Italic or BI for Bold Italic), then the Stitch Type (S for Satin, F for Fill, FSB for Fill + Satin Border, SB for Satin Border, A for Appliqué or O for Outline), then the character set (E for Extended, SE for Super Extended, and so on). At the end is the minimum and maximum recommended sizes in millimeters (for a PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System font), or the Output size (for a machine font). If desired, click in the Font Name box to change the name.
- 16 The PREMIER+ 2 Embroidery System Font Category is initially set according to your choice of Joining Point. It will be set to MyFonts for Baseline joining, Nearest Point for Nearest Point joining or Script for Continuous joining. If desired, select a different category from the drop-down list.  
*PREMIER+ 2 Embroidery System Font Category is not available when creating a machine font.*



- 17** Machine fonts are saved to Documents\Premier+2\My Designs by default. If desired, you can choose a different folder, or save to a USB stick. Click the button with three dots to choose a new folder or drive.
- 18** To view the complete font, use the Previous and Next buttons below the preview to step through the character set.
- 19** To print a reference sheet showing the characters in the font, click Print Catalog.
- 20** To start a new font after creating the current one, select the New Font checkbox.
- 21** Click Finish and PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont will close. The font will be saved according to the selected options.

# Select Font

Use the Select Font page of PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont to select the font, style and character set on which to base a new font. Also select the File Type to make a font to use in the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System, or to use on your HUSQVARNA VIKING® or PFAFF® embroidery machine.



## Font

Click the drop-down arrow for the Font and select the desired font name in the list. The previews to the right of the window will change according to the font choice.

## Style

Click the drop-down arrow for the Style and select Regular, Bold, Italic or Bold Italic in the list. The previews to the right of the window will change according to the style choice.

## File Type

Select a file type.

**For using in the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System:** Use this option to create a font file for use with PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery and other PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System modules.

**For using on my embroidery machine:** Use this option to create a font file for use with your embroidery machine.

## Machine

*This option is only available if 'For using on my embroidery machine' was selected in File Type.*

Choose which machine type the font is for:

- Husqvarna Viking
- Pfaff

# Character Set

The available character sets are: Extended, Super Extended, Latin 1, Western 1, 2, 3 and 4, Cyrillic 1 and 2, Hiragana 1 and 2, Greek 1 and Hebrew 1.

Different character sets are available, depending on the selected file type.

Font Format	Character Set	Default Set
PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Font	Extended Super Extended Latin 1 Cyrillic 3 Hiragana 2 Greek 1 Hebrew 1	Extended
HUSQVARNA VIKING® Font	Western 1 Western 2 Western 3 Cyrillic 1 Hiragana 1	Western 1
PFAFF® Font	Western 4 Cyrillic 2 Hiragana 1	Western 4

The more characters in a font, the greater the amount of time needed to create that font. Nearest Point fonts require four versions of each character. Therefore, such a font will take four times as long to be created.

## Extended

The following characters are in the Extended character set:

```

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNPOQRSTUVWXYZ
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
0123456789
!"#$%&*()_+ \ = / ? ' : ; . ,
ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊËÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕÖÙÚÛÜÝÞß
àáâãäåæçèéêëìíîïðñóôõöøùúûüýþÿ
    
```

## Super-Extended

The following characters are in the Super-Extended character set:

```

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNPOQRSTUVWXYZ
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
0123456789
!"#$%&*()_+ \ = / ? ' : ; . ,
ÀÁÂÃÄÅÆÇÈÉÊËÌÍÎÏÐÑÒÓÔÕÖÙÚÛÜÝÞß
àáâãäåæçèéêëìíîïðñóôõöøùúûüýþÿ
ŠšŸŽžšœž
#<> [ ] { } ~ ` ^ ˇ ˘ ˙ ˚ ˛ ˜ ˝ ™ § ; i € ¥ © ® ° ^ _
    
```



## Cyrillic, Hiragana, Greek and Hebrew fonts

Cyrillic, Hiragana (Japanese), Greek and Hebrew fonts are also available.

*Creating Cyrillic, Hiragana, Greek and Hebrew fonts requires a TrueType font with the relevant set of Unicode characters.*

### Cyrillic 1

The following characters are in the Cyrillic 1 character set:

АБВГДЕЖЗИЙКЛМНОПРСТУФХЦЧШЩЪЫЬЭЮЯ  
абвгдежзийклмнопрстуфхцчшщъыьэюя  
1234567890ÆæŒœÀàÁáÂâÇçÈèÉéÍíÎîÏïÑñ&?!'@

### Cyrillic 2

The following characters are in the Cyrillic 2 character set:

АБВГДЕЖЗИЙКЛМНОПРСТУФХЦЧШЩЪЫЬЭЮЯ  
абвгдежзийклмнопрстуфхцчшщъыьэюя  
1234567890ëV©§&?\$€%.:;`'\*=-!+.,

### Cyrillic 3

The following characters are in the Cyrillic 3 character set:

АБВГДЕЖЗИЙКЛМНОПРСТУФХЦЧШЩЪЫЬЭЮЯ  
абвгдежзийклмнопрстуфхцчшщъыьэюя  
ЁѐЂђЄѕІіЈјЉљЊњЋќЎў  
ëĥġęєѕіїјљњћќўџ  
ГгҒғЖжЗзҚқҢңҪҫҮүҲхҠқ  
ГгҒғЖжЗзҚқҢңҪҫҮүҲхҠқ  
ĂăÆæĚěӨөŸÿЫы  
ăăææěěөөÿÿыы  
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9  
! \$ % & \* ( ) - + \_ \ = / ? — « » ' ' ' " " " : ; , , @ ` ` ` § © ` ` `

### Hiragana 1

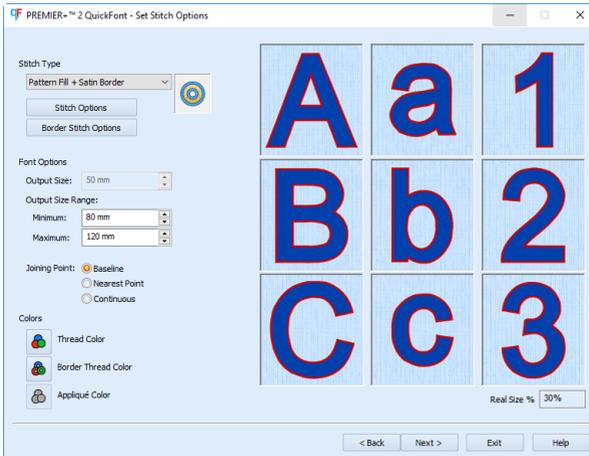
The following characters are in the Hiragana 1 character set:

はなたさかあひにちしきいふぬつすくうへ  
ねてせけえほのとそこお`°  
6 1 んるやま 7 2 やれゆみ 8 3 ゆろよむ 9 4  
よわらめ 0 5 つをりも`°



# Set Stitch Options

Use the Set Stitch Options page of PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont to select the type of stitching used to create the characters, the recommended size range or font size, the joining method and the default font colors.



## Stitch Type

Select the Stitch Type from the drop-down list according to how you wish to embroider the characters in the font. The choices are:

- **Satin**  Create characters using satin columns.
  - **Pattern Fill**  Create characters using Pattern Fill areas.
  - **Pattern Fill + Satin Border**  Create characters using Pattern Fill areas outlined with a Satin Border.
  - **Satin Border**  Create characters using satin borders.
  - **Appliqué**  Create characters with appliqué fabric and placement lines, finished with a satin border.
  - **Outline**  Stitch an outline around the characters using a running, double or triple stitch outline.
- After selecting the desired Stitch Type, click the Options button to choose the stitch settings for creating lettering with the font.

## Stitch Options

Click the Stitch Options button to choose the settings for Satin Column or Pattern Fill in the font. These are used with the following stitch types:

- Satin
- Pattern Fill
- Pattern Fill + Satin Border

See “Stitch and Appliqué Colors” on page 391.

*Most properties may also be changed when placing the lettering from these fonts in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery.*

## Border Stitch Options

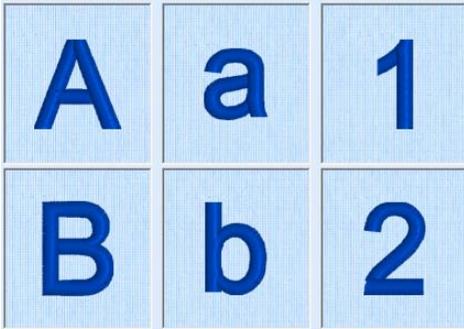
Click the Border Stitch Options button to choose the settings for creating the Satin Border, Appliqué or Outline for the border around letters in the font. These are used with the following stitch types:

- Pattern Fill + Satin Border
- Satin Border
- Appliqué
- Outline

See “Stitch and Appliqué Colors” on page 391.

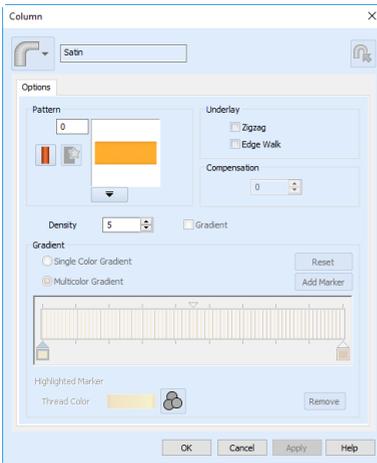
*Most properties may also be changed when placing the lettering from these fonts in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery.*

# Satin



Create characters using satin columns.

Use the Column options to set the satin density, gradient, pattern and underlay methods.



## Density

Set the standard Density from 2 to 80. The lower the number, the closer together the stitches and the more stitches are produced. Density is initially set to 5.

*Gradient and multicolor density are not available in PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont.*

## Pattern

Choose from more than 250 patterns for satin (for areas wider than around 8-10mm). Click a pattern sample or set the Pattern number to select a pattern. Click No Pattern  for standard satin with no pattern. The Pattern is initially set to 0 (No Pattern).

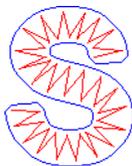
## Underlay

Zigzag creates zigzag lines of running stitch as underlay. Use zigzag underlay for larger fonts which have wide areas of satin. Edge walk places lines of running stitch just inside

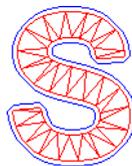
the edges of the satin columns. Use edge walk for larger fonts when the satin columns are not very wide. For larger bold characters, which give very wide areas of satin, select both underlay types. The underlay options are initially deselected.



Edge Walk



Zigzag



Edge Walk plus  
Zigzag

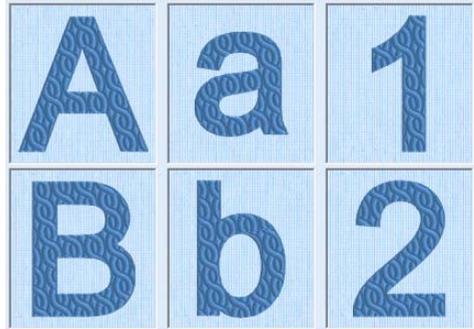
## Pattern Fill

Create characters using pattern fill areas.

Use the Pattern Fill options to select the fill pattern, fill density, stitch angle and underlay type.

*Gradient and multicolor density are not available in PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont.*

See “Pattern Fill Options” on page 386.



## Pattern Fill + Satin Border

Create characters using Pattern Fill areas outlined with satin borders.

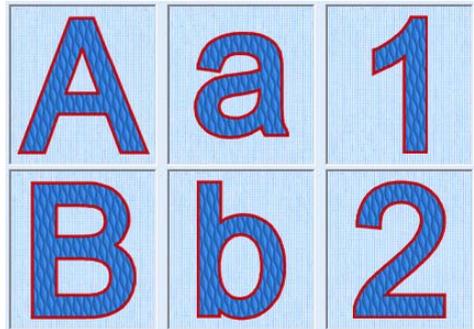
Use the Pattern Fill options to select the fill pattern, fill density, stitch angle and underlay type for the fill.

*Gradient and multicolor density are not available in PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont.*

See “Pattern Fill Options” on page 386.

Use the Satin Border options to select the satin border density and width.

See “Satin Border” on page 388.

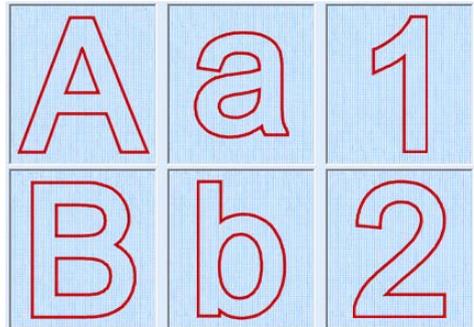


## Satin Border

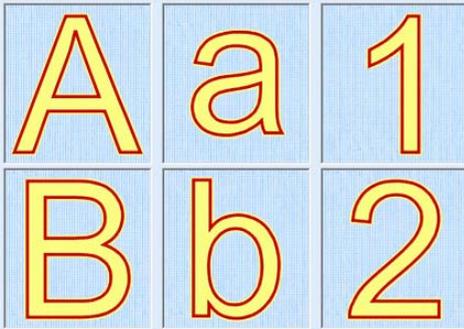
Create the characters using satin borders.

Use the Satin Border options to select the satin border density and width.

See “Satin Border” on page 388.



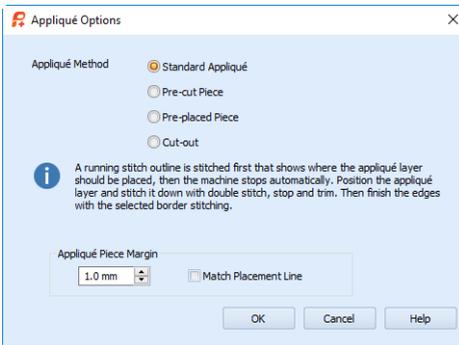
# Appliqué



Create characters as appliqué pieces. Click **Stitch Options** to set the Appliqué Options, and click **Border Stitch Options** to set the Satin Line options.

Use the **Appliqué Options** to choose an appliqué method, set the Appliqué Piece margin, and whether to match the placement line to the margin.

Use the **Satin Line** options to select the satin border density and satin border width.



## Appliqué Method

Choose the method for placing and securing the appliqué fabric.

- **Standard Appliqué**  
Stitch a running line to show where appliqué fabric should be placed, then stop to position the fabric. Stitch down the appliqué fabric with double stitch, then stop so the fabric may be trimmed. Finish the edges with the selected border stitching.
- **Pre-cut Piece**  
Use a pre-cut appliqué piece; created, for example, using an automatic cutter or cutwork needles.

Stitch a running line to show where the pre-cut appliqué piece should be placed, then stop to position the appliqué piece. Stitch down the appliqué piece with double stitch, then finish the edges with the selected border stitching.

- **Pre-placed Piece**  
Place the appliqué fabric before stitching.

Place the appliqué layer in position, then stitch down the appliqué fabric with double stitch. Stop so the fabric may be trimmed. Finish the edges with the selected border stitching.

- **Cut-out**  
Use the appliqué placement line as a guide to where the fabric should be cut; for example for reverse appliqué.

Stitch a double stitch line. Stop so the fabric may be cut to form a hole defined by the stitched outline. Finish the edges with the selected border stitching.

### Appliqué Piece Margin

Set the margin for appliqué placement relative to the drawn border shape from -10mm to 10mm. The initial value is 1.0mm.

*Use a positive value when trimming the appliqué fabric before the border is stitched, for example with Standard Appliqué and Pre-placed Appliqué. A negative value is recommended for cut-out and reverse appliqué.*

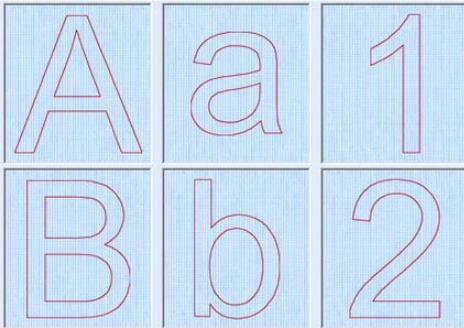
### Match Placement Line

Adjust the position of the first running stitch line for either Standard Appliqué or Pre-cut Piece so that it matches the outline of the appliqué piece after the Appliqué Piece Margin has been applied.

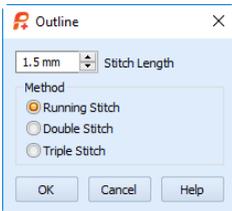
*This may be useful for precise positioning of appliqué pieces that have been pre-cut with an automated cutter, to ensure the placement line is visible.*

To change the appliqué fabric, see “Stitch and Appliqué Colors” on page 391.

# Outline



Stitch an outline around the characters using running, double or triple stitch outline. Use the Outline options to select the outline method and stitch length.



## Stitch Length

The same stitch length is used by all methods. Set the stitch length from 1 to 12mm in 0.1mm steps. The initial setting is 1.5mm.

## Method

Select Running, Double or Triple stitch for the outline of the characters. Running Stitch is a single continuous line of stitches. Double stitch stitches the full length of a line and then retraces the same path back to the starting point, resulting in a double strand of stitching. Triple stitch places three stitches at a time for each stitch that would be placed by running stitch (one forward, one back and another forward) resulting in a triple strand of stitching. The initial setting is Running Stitch.



Running



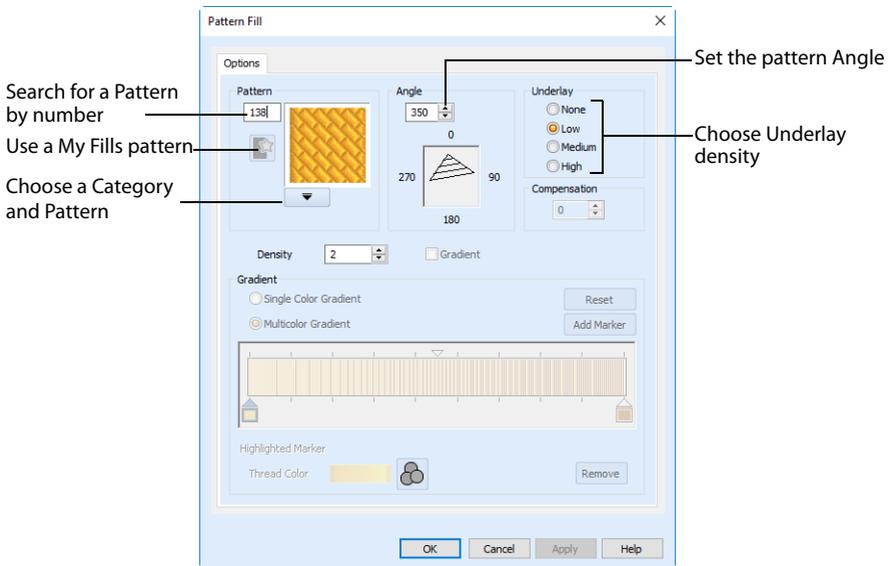
Double



Triple

# Pattern Fill Options

Use the Pattern Fill options to select the fill pattern, fill density, stitch angle and underlay type.



Changes to the Pattern Fill settings will affect the fill options for Pattern Fill as well as for Pattern Fill + Satin Border.

## Pattern

Select the desired pattern number. There are several ways to select patterns:

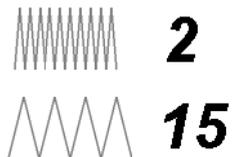
- Click the drop-down arrow below the pattern sample and scroll down to choose a pattern Category, and a pattern. Click the desired pattern sample and the Pattern number is shown.
- Enter a favorite Pattern number directly in the Pattern box. As you type the number, the correct pattern sample is selected immediately.
- Use a My Fill pattern created with Manage My Fills in PREMIER+™ 2 Create (if PREMIER+™ 2 ULTRA is owned). View the patterns in the pattern gallery.

Patterns in categories other than Standard are recommended for use in relatively large fill areas, as they have repeating patterns which work well when 'tiled' together. Pattern 36 produces a 'satin effect' fill stitch. For a complete reference to all the fill patterns that can be used for fonts, see the Fill Patterns Sample Guide. This is provided as a PDF for viewing and printing.

## Density

Set the standard Density from 2 to 80. The lower the number, the closer together the stitches and the more stitches are produced. The Density is initially set to 2.

Gradient and multicolor density are not available in PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont.



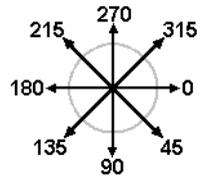
## Options

Use the Options area to change the angle and underlay for the Pattern Fill.

### Angle

The angle of the fill pattern, as shown by the arrow. The thread is at a right angle to the fill pattern. Set the Angle from 0 to 359 degrees.

The Angle is initially set to 350 degrees.



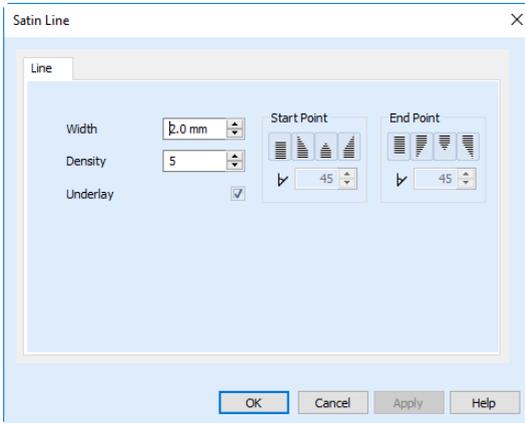
### Underlay

Choose from None, Low, Medium or High density underlay. Underlay is a low density fill that is perpendicular to the stitches of the actual fill area.

Underlay is useful for stabilizing large fill areas. The Underlay is initially set to Low.

# Satin Border

Use the Satin Line options to select the satin border density, width and taper.



Changes to the Satin Line settings will affect the satin options for Satin Border as well as for Pattern Fill + Satin Border.

## Satin Width

Set width for satin border from 1 to 12mm in 0.1mm steps. The Satin Width is initially set to 2.0mm.

## Satin Density

Set the standard Density from 2 to 15. The lower the number, the closer together the stitches and the more stitches are produced. The Satin Density is initially set to 5.

## Satin Underlay

Use this option to place edge walk underlay inside each edge of the satin border. Underlay will not be generated if the Satin Width is set below 2mm.

## Tapered Ends

Tapered Ends are not available in PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont.

## Output Size and Output Size Range

The size may change according to the chosen Stitch Type. The initial settings are within the recommended range. The sizes available are:

	<b>Recommended Sizes</b>	<b>Smallest and Largest Sizes</b>
Satin	12 to 30mm	7 to 50mm
Fill	20 to 120mm	10 to 200mm
Fill + Satin Border	80 to 120mm	50 to 200mm

	<b>Recommended Sizes</b>	<b>Smallest and Largest Sizes</b>
Satin Border	80 to 120mm	50 to 200mm
Appliqué	80 to 120mm	50 to 200mm
Outline	50 to 120mm	25 to 200mm

## Output Size

The Output Size setting is available if the font was selected for using on an embroidery machine. Set it as desired.

## Output Size Range

The Output Size Range settings are available if the font was selected for using in the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System.

The Minimum and Maximum sizes are the recommended sizes for the font, and are set according to the stitch type used. Set them as desired.

*The preview shows the middle size in the range.*

## Joining Point

Set the joining method for the font.

*This option is only available for fonts created for use in the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System. It is not available for fonts for use on an embroidery machine.*

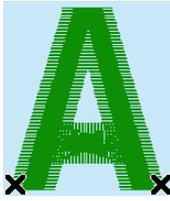
## Baseline

This is the standard joining method. The characters are joined along the 'baseline' on which the characters sit. Use Trim Connection on the Letter tab to insert trim commands that trim the long connecting stitches between characters while the lettering is stitched out.

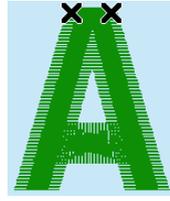
## Nearest Point

Nearest point fonts use special logic in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery to determine the best way to join characters together. Nearest Point is recommended for faster stitchout of small fonts, where connection stitches will be left untrimmed. Choose Running Connection on

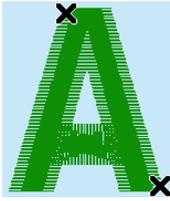
the Letter tab to avoid the need for trimming with small characters. Each character has four versions to give different start (on the left) and end (on the right) points as follows:



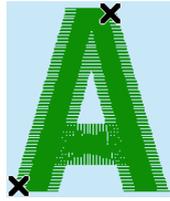
Bottom Left to Bottom Right



Top Left to Top Right

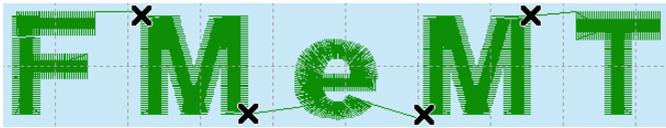


Top Left to Bottom Right



Bottom Left to Top Right

When placing lettering, the correct character versions are automatically selected to give the shortest joining distances between each character. Here, the two Ms are connected in different ways (top left to bottom right and bottom left to top right):



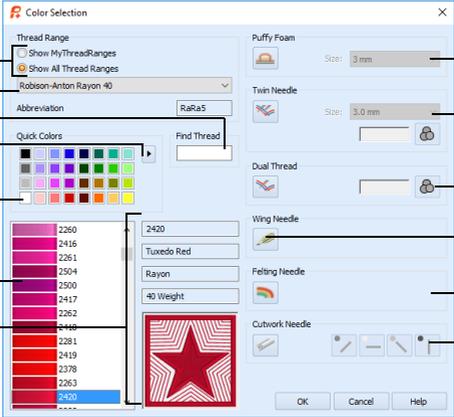
## Continuous

Continuous fonts are typically used to give a flowing handwriting effect for script. When continuous fonts are used for lettering, no space is added between the lowercase letters. (The Gap setting is not used.) Therefore, select Continuous for Script fonts where the lowercase letters are joined. All other characters are connected the same way as baseline fonts.

# Stitch and Appliqué Colors

Click Thread Color  to change the thread color used for continuous satin and pattern fill areas. The Color Selection dialog box will appear for you to choose a new color.

Click Border Thread Color  to change the thread color used for satin borders, appliqué and outlines. The Color Selection dialog box will appear for you to choose a new color.



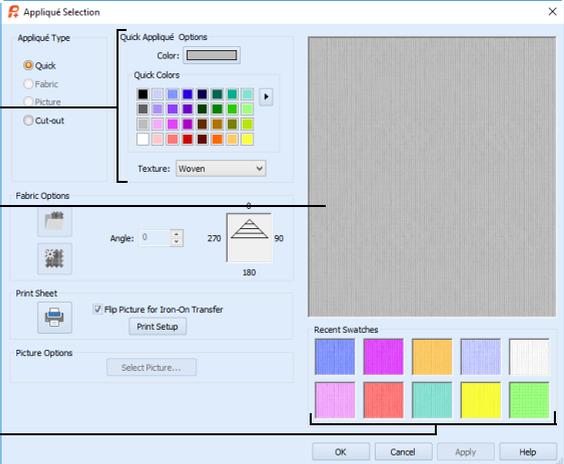
The Color Selection dialog box is shown with various options and a preview of a red star on a white background. The dialog includes sections for Thread Range, Quick Colors, and various needle types. Annotations point to specific features:

- Show chosen thread ranges
- Select a thread range
- Search for a thread number
- Choose a Quick Color Theme
- Click a Quick Color to select a matching thread color
- Click a thread color to select a thread
- View the thread information
- Puffy Foam depth
- Twin needle stitch size & color
- Second thread color
- Wing needle
- Felting needle
- Cutwork needle angle

After you have chosen a new thread color, the previews will be shown with the new color.

Click Appliqué Color  to change the appliqué fabric color. The Appliqué Selection dialog box will appear for you to choose a new fabric.

Only Quick Appliqués are available in PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont, to optimize font creation and loading time.

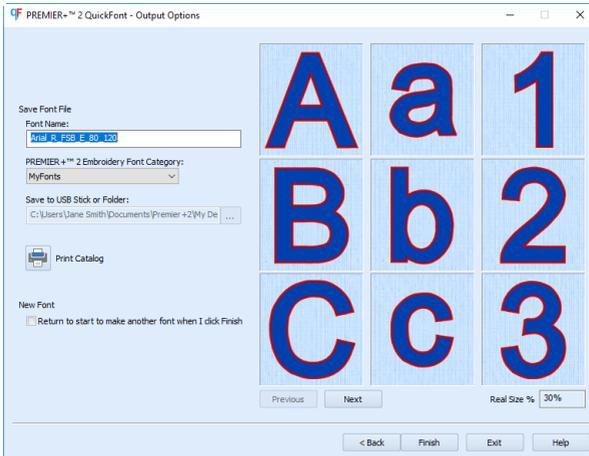


The Appliqué Selection dialog box is shown with various options and a preview of a grey fabric texture. The dialog includes sections for Appliqué Type, Quick Appliqué Options, Fabric Options, and Picture Options. Annotations point to specific features:

- Select a Quick Color & texture
- Preview the appliqué fabric
- Reuse a recent fabric

# Output Options

Use the Output Options page of PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont to review the font, to name it, and to select where it will be saved.



## Font Name

The Font Name is automatically generated to show the TrueType® font name, then the style (R for Regular, B for Bold, I for Italic or BI for Bold Italic), then the Stitch Type (S for Satin, F for Fill, FSB for Fill + Satin Border, SB for Satin Border, A for Appliqué or O for Outline), then the Character Set (E for Extended; SE for Super Extended; L1 for Latin 1; W1, W2, W3 and W4 for Western 1, 2, 3 and 4; C1, C2 and C3 for Cyrillic 1, 2 and 3; H1 and H2 for Hiragana 1 and 2; G1 for Greek 1; and Hb1 for Hebrew 1); then the minimum and maximum recommended sizes in millimeters (or the Output Size for a machine font).

You may change the Font Name as desired.

*The font name will be reset to the automatic name if you click Back and then return to the Set Font Name page.*

## PREMIER+ 2 Embroidery Font

The categories are the same as the categories on the Letter tab in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery.

The Category is initially set according to your choice of Joining Point. It will be set to MyFonts for Baseline joining, Nearest Point for Nearest Point joining or Script for Continuous joining.

You may select any Category as desired.

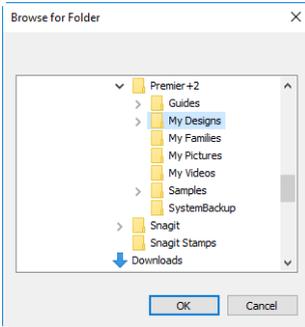
*The Category will be reset to the default selection according to Joining Point if you click Back and then return to the Set Font Name page.*

## Save to USB Stick or Folder

*This option is only available if the font was selected for using on an embroidery machine.*

Save the font as a .vf3 (font) file on your computer, or to a USB stick. By default the font is saved to Documents\Premier+2\My Designs\.

To save to a different folder, or to a USB stick, click the button with three dots  and browse to the desired location.



Click OK to save the font.

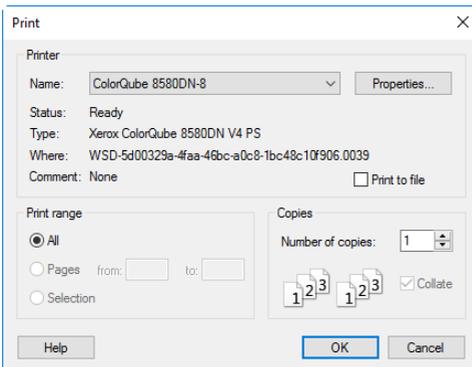
To use the font on your embroidery machine, do as follows:

- Browse from the embroidery machine using File Manager or Files & Folders and download the font from your computer.
- Save the .vf3 file to a USB Embroidery Stick (or copy using Windows® Explorer); then transfer it to your embroidery machine.

## Print Catalog

Click the Print Catalog button to print a reference sheet showing the characters in the font.

The Print dialog box appears, where you may specify number of copies, the destination printer, and other printer setup options. Click OK to print the catalog.



## Printer

Select the printer you want to use.

## Properties

Displays a dialog box where you can make additional choices about printing, specific to the type of printer you have selected.

## Print to File

When this option is checked, you will be prompted for a file name after you click OK. The print job will then be saved with the file name you specify and can be sent to the printer at a later time.

*This is an advanced Windows® printing option.*

## Print Range

Select the range of pages you wish to print.

## Copies

Select the number of Copies you wish to print. If you choose to print more than one copy, you can choose to Collate the copies.

## New Font

Select the New Font checkbox to start a new font when the current font has been created. PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont displays the Select Font page.

## Preview

The 3D view boxes allow you to browse through the converted font, showing three uppercase letters, three lowercase letters, and three numbers or symbols. The character order is the same as the selected character set.

*You can change the 3D background with PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.*

## Previous

View the previous nine characters.

## Next

View the next nine characters.

## Real Size%

This box shows how big the 3D view you can see is as a percentage of the real size of the generated stitch files. This depends on the Real Size setting being correct in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

# Create a Pattern Fill Font

- 1 In PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, click the Letter tab, and in Font Manager  click the QuickFont Wizard icon . Alternatively, use PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont from the Accessories section of the QuickLink toolbar. You can also start PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont in the Windows® Start Screen, Start Menu, or on the Desktop.

The Select Font page will appear.

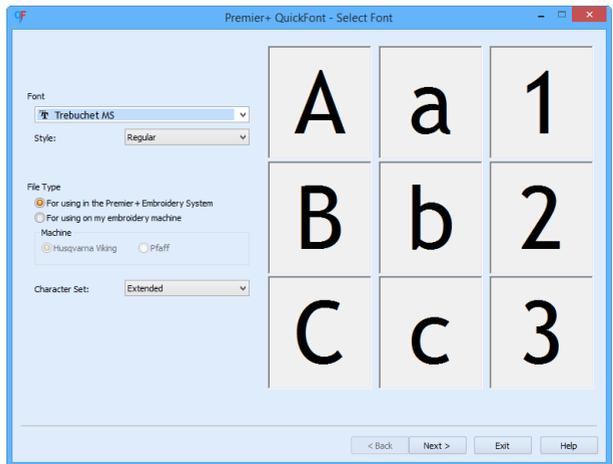
- 2 Click the drop-down arrow for Font and choose Trebuchet MS from the list of fonts. The previews will show the appearance of the 'ABC', 'abc' and '123' characters in the font.
- 3 Ensure the Style is set to Regular.
- 4 If you are creating a font for use in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, choose 'For using in the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System'.

If you are creating a font for a machine, select 'For using on my embroidery machine', and choose your machine brand.

*The pictures here illustrate using PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont to create a font for PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery.*

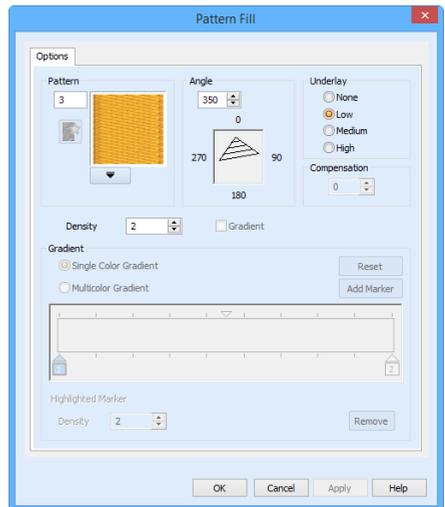
- 5 Select a character set:
  - If you are using PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont for PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, ensure that Extended is set as the Character Set.
  - If you are creating a font for a HUSQVARNA VIKING® embroidery machine, ensure that Western 1 is set as the Character Set.
  - If you are creating a font for a PFAFF® embroidery machine, ensure that Western 4 is set as the Character Set.

*These character sets are appropriate for general English text, with letters, numbers and some punctuation.*

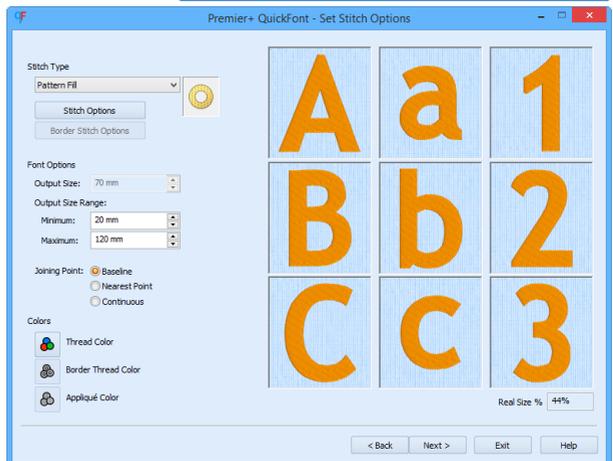


- 6 Click Next and the Set Stitch Options page will appear.
- 7 Set the Stitch Type to Pattern Fill . The previews now show the pattern fill, and the Output Size and Output Size Range values change, as Pattern Fill is suitable for larger letter sizes than the default Satin.
- 8 Click the Stitch Options button and the Pattern Fill dialog box will appear.

- 9 Ensure the Pattern is set to 3 from the Standard 1 Category.
- 10 In the Density area, ensure the Density is set to 2 and click OK.
- 11 Click the Thread Color icon  and the Color Selection dialog box will appear.
- 12 Ensure the Thread Range is set to Robison-Anton Rayon 40.
- 13 Click in the Find Thread box and enter '2409'. Thread color 2409 (Yellow Mist) will be found in the list.



- 14 Click OK and the previews will be updated with the new thread color.
- 15 Ensure the Joining Point is set to Baseline, which is the recommended setting for most lettering. *Nearest Point is recommended for faster stitchout of small fonts, where connection stitches will be left untrimmed. Continuous is used for Script fonts where the lowercase letters are joined. The Joining Point options are only available when creating a font for use in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery. They are not accessible when creating a machine font.*



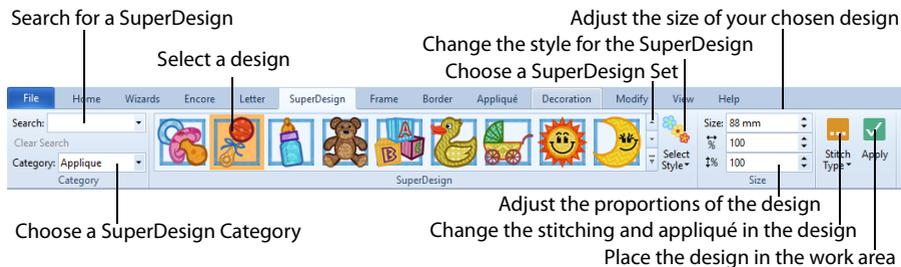
- 16 Click Next. The font is generated, and the Output Options page will appear.
- 17 Use Next and Previous to preview the other letters in the font.
- 18 Leave the Font Name unchanged. *The Font Name is automatically generated to show the TrueType® font name, then the style (R for Regular), then the Stitch Type (F for Pattern Fill), then the Character Set (here E for Extended), then the minimum and maximum recommended sizes in millimeters (or output size for a machine font). Other letter combinations are used for different style and stitch type choices.*
- 19 If you are creating a font in PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont for use in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, leave the Category as MyFonts. This will save the font to the MyFonts folder on your computer.
- 20 If you are creating a font for use on a machine, save the font to the My Designs folder on your computer (the default location), or to a USB embroidery stick.
- 21 If desired, click Print Catalog to print a reference sheet that shows the font details and the characters in the new font.
- 22 Click Finish to close PREMIER+™ 2 QuickFont.

*To use the font in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, click the drop-down arrow on the right of the font gallery, and scroll to the MyFonts category. The font Trebuchet MS\_R\_F\_E\_20\_120 will be previewed in the MyFonts section of the font gallery.*

*The Font Gallery will automatically detect and preview any new fonts you add to MyFonts, and the font can be used in the same way as the system fonts.*

## Using SuperDesigns

Create SuperDesigns from the SuperDesign sets available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery. SuperDesigns are special designs that can be resized with constant stitch density.



Some SuperDesigns are multicolored, and the stitch type and style for many can be changed. Alter the size, proportions, stitch type and thread color. A SuperDesign can be resized with constant stitch density, and the stitch properties adjusted even after saving, until it is fixed as embroidery.

*When first starting PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery the Animals category is selected. If you have used the SuperDesign tab previously, the most recent category is remembered.*

SuperDesign sets are grouped into categories. Each set contains 9 SuperDesigns, each of which may have multiple styles. The SuperDesign gallery shows thumbnails of all the SuperDesigns in the currently selected SuperDesign set. SuperDesigns have names and keywords, to allow you to search easily in all categories.

*If you own PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery or PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra not all SuperDesign Categories and Sets are available.*

## Create a SuperDesign

- 1 Click the SuperDesign tab.
- 2 Search for a SuperDesign, or choose a SuperDesign Category from the drop-down menu on the left. The preview will show the first design set in that category.  
*Select a single Category, or browse All categories.*
- 3 Click the arrow to the right of the set drop-down menu and choose a SuperDesign set, then click a design to select it.
- 4 Set the Size in millimeters as desired, from 5mm to 200mm. This sets the height of the SuperDesign, and the width is set proportionally.
- 5 Click the arrows for width  $\text{↔}$  and height  $\text{↕}$  to change the proportions of the design from 25% to 400%. Alternatively, enter a size in the number box.
- 6 If desired, select a line or fill type from the Stitch Type  $\text{■}$  drop-down menu to open the properties dialog for the stitch type. See “Choosing Stitch Properties” on page 424.
- 7 Change the stitch properties for the SuperDesign in the properties dialog, for example the density, and the stitch length, angle and pattern. Click OK to close the dialog.
- 8 Click Apply  $\text{✓}$ . The SuperDesign appears in the work area, leaving any existing SuperDesigns unchanged.

# Search

Search for a SuperDesign by name, folder name, or keyword.

Enter the desired text in the Search box and press Enter. Click Clear Search to remove the search text, and use the drop-down menu to reuse previous searches.

*Click Clear Search before browsing SuperDesigns by Category.*

## Shortcuts

- Search - Keys: Alt, S, E
- Clear Search - Keys: Alt, S, X

## Search for a SuperDesign

- 1 Click the SuperDesign tab.
- 2 Enter a search term in the Search box, for example 'christmas', and press Enter.
- 3 Click the drop-down menu on the right to view all of the Christmas designs.  
*These include designs from Christmas categories, and single designs with a Christmas theme.*
- 4 Note that the SuperDesign Category drop-down menu is not available, as the Search uses all categories. Click the Clear Search button on the left. The most recently used category becomes available.
- 5 In the Search box enter 'dog', then press Enter.  
*Besides 18 household pets, there are also three pictures of a sausage in a roll (a hotdog). Searching may sometimes produce unexpected results!*
- 6 Click the Clear Search button to return to Category view.
- 7 In the Search box enter 'lion', then press Enter. There are ten different Lion designs.
- 8 Place the pointer over the first four lions in turn.  
*The first three are from the Animals set in the Appliqué Category, and the fourth is from Tassels. They are all named Lion. The Search checks Category and SuperDesign names, in addition to keywords.*
- 9 Place the pointer over the next six lions.  
*The remaining lions are from Zodiac, and are named Leo. The term "Lion" is from the keywords for these SuperDesigns.*
- 10 Click to select the first Leo, then click the Stitch Type drop-down menu. The stitch types for this individual SuperDesign are listed.  
*The Search function finds all varieties of a particular SuperDesign, so there is no need to check the Styles for a SuperDesign set individually when using Search. In the example above, the appliqué lions using Satin Line, and two styles of Motif Line are found.*



## SuperDesign Categories

There are 28 SuperDesign categories: Animals, Appliqué, Borders, Buttonholes, Cartoons, Celebrations, ChildStyle, Corners, Effects, Fantasy, Flowers and Leaves, Food and Drink, Hearts, Holidays, Home, Music, People, Redwork, Religious, Scallop, Sports, Sports Symbols, Stars, Tassels, Transport, Trees, Wreath and Zodiac.

*If you own PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery or PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra not all SuperDesign Categories and Sets are available.*

## Shortcut

Keys: Alt, S, G

## SuperDesign Set

Each SuperDesign category contains numbered SuperDesign sets. Each set contains 9 SuperDesigns.

A set of SuperDesigns has its own default size. This size is used each time the SuperDesign set is first selected.

## Select Style

Some SuperDesign sets have varied styles, for example the size variations in Fantasy (Small, Medium, Large), the border variations in Appliqué (Satin Border, Motif Border 1, Motif Border 2), or the Fill and Outline variants in Cartoons.

Use the Select Style drop-down menu to choose between these variants. The selected set is displayed in the Gallery.

## SuperDesign Effects

Some SuperDesigns use effects such as appliqué, felting needle, twin needle, wing needle and tassels.

Appliqué	SuperDesigns for use with appliqué fabrics. (Appliqué Category)
Felting Needle	SuperDesigns with a design embellished by using a felting needle and, optionally, a contrasting roving fiber. (Effects Category)
Twin Needle	SuperDesigns stitched out using a twin needle. This creates a horizontal offset between the original thread color in the left-hand needle, and a second thread color in the right-hand needle. (Effects Category)
Wing Needle	SuperDesigns using a wing needle to create holes in the fabric for hemstitch and other heirloom techniques. (Effects Category)
Tassels	SuperDesigns using tassels. (Tassels Category)

## SuperDesign Size

When selected, a SuperDesign is set at its recommended size, representing the height of the SuperDesign. You can change the SuperDesign dimensions in the Size area of the SuperDesign tab. SuperDesign size can be set from 5mm to 200mm.

*If you set a satin SuperDesign to a very large size, use Satin Properties to choose a pattern which will prevent loose stitching that may catch and pull easily. See "Satin Column" on page 456.*

Once a SuperDesign has been converted to an embroidery it can only be scaled and resized in the same way as any other embroidery. If further adjustments are required, place the design again as a new SuperDesign.

## Height and Width

Adjust height  and width  separately to change the proportions of the SuperDesign. For instance, increase height to make the design taller without increasing the width.

Height and width can be set from 25% to 400% of the original size, in steps of 1%.

## Stitch Type

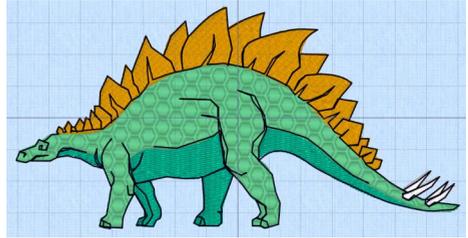
Use Stitch Type  to alter the appearance of the stitching used in the selected SuperDesign.

If there is more than one stitch area of a particular type in the design, the drop-down menu will show that stitch type in a numbered list; for example Pattern Fill 1, Pattern Fill 2.

If desired, select a line or fill type from the Stitch Type  drop-down menu to open the properties dialog box for the stitch type. Use the properties dialog box to alter the appearance of stitching in the lettering.

## Change the Stitch Type in a SuperDesign

- 1 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Change Hoop  and change to hoop to Universal, 170mm x 100mm - Universal Midsize Hoop 1, Rotated and click OK.
  - 2 Open the SuperDesign tab and choose "Animals" from the SuperDesign Category drop-down menu.
  - 3 Click the arrow to the right of the SuperDesign set drop-down menu and choose Dinosaurs 1.
  - 4 Select design 3, the Stegosaurus, and set Size to 70mm.
  - 5 Click Stitch Type , and in the drop-down menu select Pattern Fill 2. The Pattern Fill dialog box opens.
  - 6 Change the pattern to 174 (column 6 row 1 in Polygons), then click OK.
  - 7 Click Apply , and the embroidery of the Stegosaurus appears in the work area, with a pattern similar to scales on the upper body.
  - 8 Click the Frame tab, and place a frame around the Stegosaurus.
  - 9 Click the SuperDesign tab. Your settings have been retained.
  - 10 Click Undo  to remove the frame.
  - 11 Click the Modify tab, and you are warned that the design will be fixed as an embroidery. Edit it as desired.
  - 12 Click the SuperDesign tab again. The settings for the Stegosaurus are still as you set them.
  - 13 Click Apply , to place another copy of the Stegosaurus.
  - 14 Click the Triceratops (number 6). The Size has changed to 45mm (the default size for this design).
  - 15 In Stitch Type , select Pattern Fill 2. The settings are the default settings for this SuperDesign (Pattern 3, and Angle 0).
- Adjusting the settings before placing the SuperDesign is useful if several versions of the same design are to be used. When a different SuperDesign is selected, the default settings are used.*
- 16 Right-click the second copy of the Stegosaurus, and in the Context menu select Pattern Fill, Pattern Fill 2. The Pattern Fill dialog box appears, enabling you to further adjust the design.  
*You could create a number of Stegosaurus designs with the same pattern, but different colors, or angle. You could also duplicate the adjusted SuperDesign, and then make further adjustments to the copy.*
  - 17 In the Category drop-down list, select Celebrations, design 3, some bells.
  - 18 Click Stitch Type , and look at the drop-down menu. There are nine types of pattern fill.  
*For this design, you would need to find out where each of many pattern fills were used. It would probably be easier to place the design and adjust it afterwards. See "Changing SuperDesign Stitch Types" on page 403.*



## Edit SuperDesigns

You can adjust SuperDesigns after they are placed in the work area, and before they have been fixed as stitches, even after saving.

*A SuperDesign that has not been fixed as an embroidery has green handles. A SuperDesign fixed as an embroidery has white handles or blue handles. See "Resize and Scale" on page 66.*

To Adjust SuperDesigns:

- Drag the green handles to change the shape of a SuperDesign. Hold the Ctrl key while dragging to retain the original proportions, or the Shift key to resize from the center. See “Reshaping a SuperDesign” on page 402.
- Right-click a SuperDesign and select an option from the Context menu:
  - Choose Properties to change the size, height and width. See “Changing SuperDesign Properties and Stitch Type” on page 403.

*If there is more than one stitch area of a particular type in the design, the drop-down menu will show that stitch type in a numbered list; for example Pattern Fill 1, Pattern Fill 2.*

- Choose a stitch type and open its properties dialog to alter properties such as density, stitch length, angle and pattern. See “Choosing Stitch Properties” on page 424.
- For Appliqué SuperDesigns, in the Context menu select Appliqué Fabric, then choose a fabric from the submenu. The Appliqué Selection dialog box opens. See “Change the Fabric in an Appliqué Embroidery” on page 176, and “Appliqué Selection” on page 185. *The position of the pattern in an appliqué fabric may only be changed after fixing as stitches.*
- To change the thread colors in the SuperDesign, click a thread color in the Design Panel. See “Change an Existing Thread Color” on page 45.

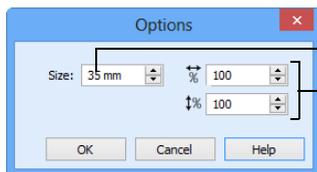
*To fix the SuperDesign as stitches, see “Fixing SuperDesigns as Embroideries” on page 406.*

## Reshaping a SuperDesign

- 1 Choose a SuperDesign in the SuperDesign window. See “Create a SuperDesign” on page 398.
- 2 Click Apply . The SuperDesign appears in the work area.
- 3 Drag the design a short distance to the right. A four arrow pointer appears as you drag.
- 4 Place the pointer over one of the square green handles at the corners of the design. The Adjust/resize pointer  appears.
- 5 Drag the handle to change the shape of the SuperDesign.
- 6 Hold the Ctrl key and drag one of the handles. The size changes, but the shape remains the same. Hold down Shift to resize from the center. *Alternatively, you can right-click and select Properties. In the Options dialog change the size and proportions and click OK.*
- 7 Right-click the SuperDesign, and in the Context menu select Fix as Stitches . The handles on the design are now white, indicating that the SuperDesign has been fixed as an embroidery. *The SuperDesign will also be fixed as an embroidery if you adjust it in the Modify tab.*
- 8 Click Undo. The green handles reappear. You can adjust the design again.

## SuperDesign Options

Use the SuperDesign options dialog box to change the size, and the percentage width  and height  of a SuperDesign that has been placed on the work area.



Change the SuperDesign size

Adjust the proportions of the design

To change SuperDesigns before you have clicked Apply, use the SuperDesign tab. See “Create a SuperDesign” on page 398.

*SuperDesign properties may not be changed once the design has been converted to embroidery.*

To open SuperDesign properties, right-click the SuperDesign, and select Properties from the Context menu.

## Size

SuperDesign size can be set from 5mm to 200mm. This is the height of the SuperDesign.

## Height and Width

Use height  and width  to adjust the proportions of the SuperDesign. For instance, to make the design taller without increasing the width, increase the height.

Height and width can be set from 25% to 400% of the original size, in steps of 1%.

## Changing SuperDesign Properties and Stitch Type

Use the SuperDesign options dialog to change a design after it has been placed, and even after saving, but before it has been fixed as an embroidery.

*You cannot change the design itself with SuperDesign Properties. Create a new design instead. To change the stitch type, right-click the SuperDesign and select the stitch type from the Context menu. See "Choosing Stitch Properties" on page 424.*

- 1 Right-click the SuperDesign and select Properties from the Context menu. The SuperDesign Options dialog appears.
- 2 Adjust Size to change the basic size of the SuperDesign. It is recommended to use a size within the range suggested in the SuperDesign guide.

*Each SuperDesign has its own default size. The default size is set automatically each time a SuperDesign is selected.*

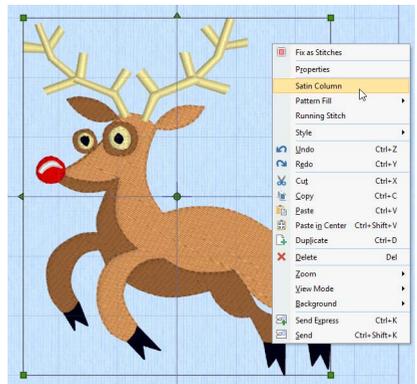
- 3 Click the arrows for percentage width  and height  to change the proportions of the SuperDesign. Alternatively, enter a size in the number box. You can change each proportion from 25% to 400% of the default setting in steps of 1%.

- 4 Click OK to apply your changes to the selected SuperDesign.

*To change the stitch types or appliqué pieces within the SuperDesign, right-click the SuperDesign and select the desired stitch type area or appliqué fabric from the Context menu. The properties dialog for the stitch type, or the Appliqué Selection dialog box for that appliqué appears. See "Choosing Stitch Properties" on page 424 and "Appliqué Selection" on page 185.*

## Changing SuperDesign Stitch Types

- 1 Open the SuperDesign tab and choose "Holidays" from the SuperDesign Category drop-down menu.
- 2 Click the arrow to the right of the SuperDesign set drop-down menu and choose Christmas 1.
- 3 Click the sixth design in the set, Reindeer.
- 4 Set Size to 120mm, and click Apply .
- 5 Right-click the SuperDesign.
- 6 Near the top of the Context menu three stitch types are listed. Click Satin Column. The Satin Column properties dialog box opens.
- 7 Change the density to 10 and click OK. The stitch density of the antlers, and detail on the eyes and nose has become less dense.
- 8 Right-click the reindeer again and click Pattern Fill in the Context menu. A submenu with three options appears.

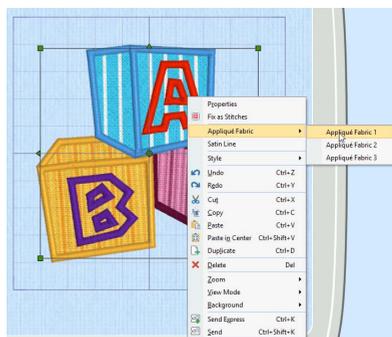


- 9 Click Pattern Fill 1, and change the pattern in the fill to 230. Then click OK. The upper body is now patterned, with the curves following the contours of the deer.
- 10 Open the Pattern Fill submenu again, and click Pattern Fill 2. Change the pattern in the fill to 237 and click OK. The lower body is now patterned with broad curves. *Try different effects on different stitch types and see how the SuperDesign changes. You can add a pattern, change the stitch density, or make other changes to personalize the design.*



## Changing SuperDesign Appliqué

- 1 Open the SuperDesign tab and choose "Appliqué" from the SuperDesign Category drop-down menu.
- 2 Click the arrow to the right of the SuperDesign set drop-down menu and choose Children 1.
- 3 Click the fifth design in the set, Blocks, and click Apply .
- 4 Right-click the SuperDesign.
- 5 Near the top of the Context menu Appliqué Fabric and Satin Line are listed. Click Appliqué Fabric in the Context menu. A submenu with three options appears.
- 6 Click Appliqué Fabric 1. The Appliqué Selection dialog box appears.
- 7 Click Load Previously Saved Fabric  and choose a different colored fabric.
- 8 Change the other fabrics in the blocks.



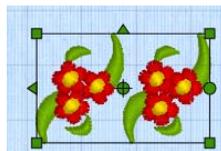
*You can also change the angle of the fabric pattern, and use the Color Select area to change the thread color for the border. See "Appliqué Selection" on page 185.*

## SuperDesign Color

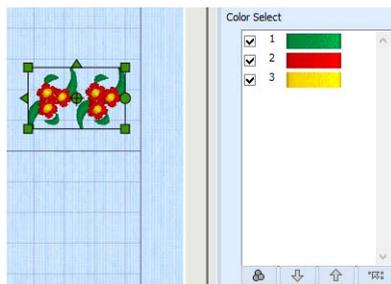
You can change the colors of SuperDesigns before or after they have been fixed as embroideries.

### Change SuperDesign Color

- 1 Open the SuperDesign tab and choose "Borders" from the SuperDesign Category drop-down menu.
- 2 Click the arrow to the right of the SuperDesign set drop-down menu and choose Borders 1.
- 3 Click the final design in the set and click Apply .
- 4 Click the Home tab. The thread colors for the SuperDesign can be seen in the Color Select area.
- 5 Double-click the top color in the list. The Color Selection dialog opens. See "Change an Existing Thread Color" on page 45 for more information.



- 6 Change this pale green to a deeper green.
- 7 Click OK to close the dialog.  
The green has changed in the Design window and in the SuperDesign in the work area.
- 8 Undo  the color change. The SuperDesign has returned to its original colors.  
*If you plan to create many of the same SuperDesigns using Duplicate  or Encore, it is recommended to change colors before creating the additional ones. Alternatively, you may Combine  and ColorSort , and then change the colors.*



## SuperDesigns with Appliqué and Effects

For appliqué fonts, SuperDesigns, and frames the fabric can be changed as well as some of the border settings. For example, in Stitch Type  select Appliqué Fabric, and in the Appliqué Selection dialog change the fabric, angle and margin. See “Appliqué Selection” on page 185. The appliqué placement stitches cannot be edited, but the position of the placement line may be adjusted to match the appliqué piece margin.

*The position of the pattern in an appliqué fabric may only be changed after fixing as stitches.*

For effects such as Felting Needle, Twin Needle and Wing Needle you can change the stitch properties in Stitch Type  or in the Context menu after creation. Change the Felting Needle color from the color select area in the Design Panel. Change to the appropriate needle before stitching.

## Stitching out an Appliqué SuperDesign

Appliqué SuperDesigns are designed to be stitched out in a particular sequence. They are created with the standard appliqué options, to trim on the machine. Preview the two stops in the Design Player, with instructions to place the fabric and to trim it. These instructions are also present on the printed worksheet.

*If you are using pre-cut pieces (with outlines created in Export Appliqué Pieces for a fabric cutter or INSPIRA® Cutwork Needles), the second stop can be ignored as there is no need to trim. It may also be useful to match the placement line to the appliqué piece margin, to ensure the placement line is visible.*

When stitching out an appliqué embroidery, do as follows:

- 1 Begin embroidering. A running line will show where to position the appliqué fabric.
- 2 A stop then allows you to place the fabric. The message "Place the appliqué fabric now" is displayed.
- 3 Stitch down the appliqué fabric with double stitch.
- 4 The machine stops again, and the message "Cut around the appliqué" is displayed. Trim the fabric.
- 5 Finally, finish the edges with the satin or motif line.
- 6 Stitch out any other appliqué pieces in the SuperDesign.

*When stitching out an appliqué frame, the placement section in the appliqué is the same color as the first color in the frame, so it doesn't show under the appliqué fabric. If desired, change in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery to the first color for the embroidery.*

## Stitching out with Twin Needles

Twin Needles only work horizontally, i.e. the needles are side by side as you look at the machine. If the hoop orientation or the exported design is rotated, this will affect the stitchout of the design.

## Stitching out with Wing Needles

A wing needle creates holes in the fabric, for hemstitch and other heirloom techniques. Use a very fine thread and a stabilizer to create evenly placed durable holes.

## Stitching out with Felting Needles

Use a felting needle, optionally with a contrasting roving fiber, for the felting color chosen in the Color Selection dialog box. In projects without a roving fiber, choose a felting needle color similar to the back of the fabric.

*When Exporting an embroidery with a Felting Needle effect, the option "Flip design for felting or reverse embroidery" is initially selected in the Export dialog box. See "Export" on page 20.*

# Fixing SuperDesigns as Embroideries

## Fixing SuperDesigns as Embroideries

SuperDesigns are fixed as an embroidery when the Modify tab is selected, Fix as Stitches  is used, or they are Combined with another design. The stitches are then created, and any further resizing of the embroidery may affect stitch density and length. The stitch properties, for example the density, pattern, angle or stitch length, may not be changed after it is fixed. Appliqué fabric cannot be changed in the Context menu after the SuperDesign is fixed, but if PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra is owned you may use the Select Appliqué features on the Appliqué tab.

*When SuperDesigns are fixed as stitches, the handles change from green to white. After a SuperDesign has been converted to embroidery, it can no longer be changed with SuperDesign properties, and the stitch types cannot be adjusted. If the Resize  mode is selected, the handles will become blue.*

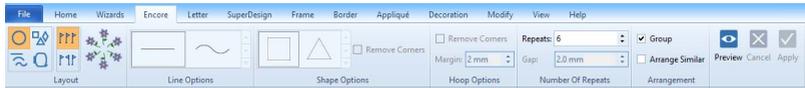
*To reverse fixing as an embroidery, click Undo .*

*To fix a SuperDesign as an embroidery deliberately, right-click it and select Fix as Stitches  from the Context menu, or select Fix as Stitches in the Combine drop-down menu in the Home tab.*

# Create a SuperDesign Daisy Chain

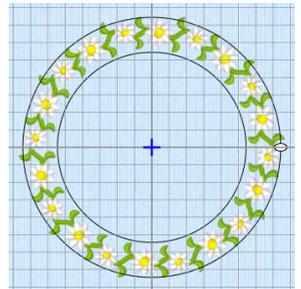
Use Encore to create a circle of SuperDesigns.

- 1 Open the SuperDesign tab.
- 2 Choose "Borders" from the SuperDesign Category drop-down menu.
- 3 In the SuperDesign set drop-down menu, ensure that the Borders 1 set is selected.
- 4 Click the flower design number 3.
- 5 Ensure that Size is set to 18mm.
- 6 Click Apply  and the flower SuperDesign appears on the work area.
- 7 Click the Encore tab. See "Encore" on page 76.
- 8 Ensure that the Encore Type is set to Circle .
- 9 Ensure that Position is set to Standard .
- 10 Set Repeats to 6.
- 11 Ensure that Group is selected.  
*Use Combine, ColorSort and Remove Overlap when exporting to reduce the number of thread color changes, and to prevent areas of stitches building up if repeated embroideries overlap. See "Export" on page 20.*



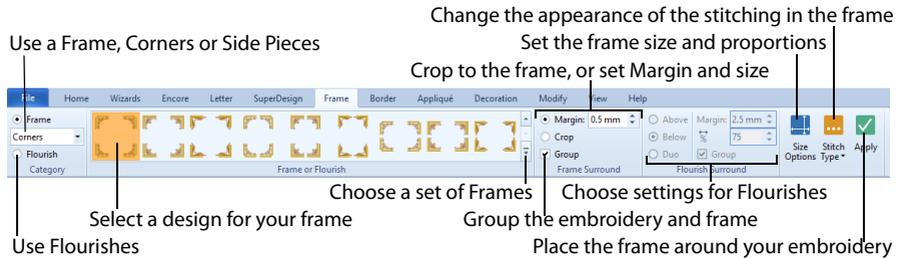
- 12 Click Preview and a circle of daisy designs appears on the work area. The daisy designs appear a little sparse. More designs would create a better circle.
- 13 Increase the number of Repeats to 10 and click Preview again. The circle now looks more balanced.
- 14 Drag the top of the circle downwards until the daisy designs meet.
- 15 Click Apply . The daisy design now forms a group.
- 16 Look at the Design Panel. There are three colors for each embroidery in the group.

*Use Restrict Groups on the Home tab or context menu to adjust individual daisies in the chain. When exported, your chain may have three or more colors, depending on the amount that the flowers overlap.*



## Frames

In the Frame tab you can create a frame which is placed at a size to fit around the currently selected embroidery(ies), group, lettering or SuperDesigns, or if no embroidery is selected, on the work area at the size set under Size Options.



The frame and the design it surrounds are usually created as a group. Use Restrict Groups on the Home tab or the context menu to select and adjust the frame, or one of the embroideries within it.

## Creating Frames

Select corners, frames and side pieces to place around your embroidery.

*In the text below corners, flourishes, frames and side pieces are referred to collectively as frames.*

Choose from the categories of corners, frames and side pieces. Then choose a frame set, and select a design. Place the frame around your embroidery, or anywhere on the work area.

Alternatively, select Flourish and choose a flourish to be placed above, below or as a duo above and below the selected embroideries.

Some frames are multicolored, and the stitch type for many can be changed. A frame around a single embroidery can be resized with constant stitch density, and the stitch properties adjusted even after saving, until it is fixed as embroidery.

*The frame is generally placed earlier in the stitch order than the originally selected embroidery, so that any appliqué fabric may be placed before the embroidery that is being framed. However, if Crop is selected, the frame will be added after the embroidery.*

*For an appliqué frame if crop is selected, the placement stitches will be added before the embroidery, and the border stitches after the embroidery. Whenever Crop is used, if the embroidery contains lettering or a SuperDesign, it will be fixed as stitches.*

*If multiple embroideries are surrounded by a frame with the Crop option selected, the inner embroideries will be combined automatically.*

*The Frame Surround options stay the same until you change them, or close PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery.*

## Create a Frame

- 1 Load one or more embroideries in the work area and select them.
- 2 Click the Frame tab.
- 3 Choose a frame category (corners, frames or side pieces) from the Frame drop-down menu.  
*The gallery will show the first frame set in that category.*
- 4 Choose a set of frames from the drop-down list to the right of the frame gallery, then click a frame to select it. It will be highlighted.
- 5 If desired, select Group to group the frame with the embroidery(ies).
- 6 Select to use a margin or to crop the embroidery when placing the frame.
  - Margin leaves a space between the embroidery and the frame around it.
  - Crop leaves no margin visible, and will cut the embroidery to the shape of the frame.
- 7 If you selected Margin, set the Size in millimeters from -50 mm to 50 mm.
- 8 If desired, click Size Options  to set the frame size, and percentage width and height in the Options dialog box. Click OK to close the dialog box.  
*When one or more embroideries are selected, the frame is placed around that selection. The settings in the Size Options dialog will be used if no embroidery is selected.*
- 9 If desired, select a line or fill type, or the appliqué fabric for an appliqué frame, from the Stitch Type  drop-down menu to open the properties dialog for the stitch type or fabric. See “Choosing Stitch Properties” on page 424.  
Change the stitch properties for the frame in the properties dialog, for example the density, and the stitch length, angle and pattern. Click OK to close the dialog.
- 10 Click Apply  to view your framed embroidery.  
*To change the properties in the framed embroidery, select Restrict Groups on the Home tab or context menu, and then adjust the frame or the enclosed design.*

## Create a Flourish

- 1 Load an embroidery in the work area and select it.
- 2 Click the Frame tab.
- 3 Select Flourishes. The gallery will show the first flourish set.  
*The gallery will show the first flourish set.*
- 4 Choose a set of flourishes from the drop-down list to the right of the frame gallery, then click a flourish to select it. It will be highlighted.
- 5 Choose whether to place the flourish Above, Below, or as a Duo above and below the embroidery.
- 6 Set the Size of the Margin in millimeters from -50mm to 50mm.  
*If a negative margin is used the flourish may overlap the embroidery.*
- 7 Set the percentage width  relative to the size of the embroidery.
- 8 If desired, select Group to group the flourish with the embroidery.
- 9 If desired, click Size Options  to set the flourish size, and percentage width and height in the Options dialog box. Click OK to close the dialog box.  
*When one or more embroideries is selected, the flourish is placed above or below that selection. The settings in the Size Options dialog will be used if no embroidery is selected.*
- 10 If desired, select a line or fill type, or the appliqué fabric for an appliqué frame, from the Stitch Type  drop-down menu to open the properties dialog for the stitch type or fabric. See “Choosing Stitch Properties” on page 424 or “Appliqué Selection” on page 185.  
Change the stitch properties for the flourish in the properties dialog, for example the density, and the stitch length, angle and pattern. Click OK to close the dialog.
- 11 Click Apply  to view the finished result.  
*To change the properties in the embellished embroidery, select Restrict Groups on the Home tab or context menu, and then adjust the flourish or the design.*

## Appliqué Frames and Foam Frames

For appliqué fonts, SuperDesigns and frames, the fabric can be changed as well as some of the border settings. For example, in Stitch Type  select Appliqué Fabric, and in the

Appliqué Selection dialog change the fabric, angle and margin. See “Appliqué Selection” on page 185. The appliqué placement stitches cannot be edited, but the position of the placement line may be adjusted to match the appliqué piece margin.

*The position of the pattern in an appliqué fabric may only be changed after fixing as stitches.*

For Foam fonts and frames, only the color can be changed. The Stitch Type area is unavailable, and no properties can be selected in the Context menu.

Special instructions are displayed for stitching out appliqué or foam fonts, SuperDesigns and frames. The instructions can be previewed in the Design Player.

## Stitching out an Appliqué Frame

Appliqué frames are designed to be stitched out in a particular sequence. They are created with the standard appliqué options, to trim on the machine. Preview the two stops in the Design Player, with instructions to place the fabric and to trim it. These instructions are also present on the printed worksheet.

*If you are using pre-cut pieces (with outlines created in Export Appliqué Pieces for a fabric cutter or INSPIRA® Cutwork Needles), the second stop can be ignored as there is no need to trim. It may also be useful to match the placement line to the appliqué piece margin, to ensure the placement line is visible.*

When stitching out an appliqué embroidery, do as follows:

- 1 Begin embroidering. A running line will show where to position the appliqué fabric.
- 2 A stop then allows you to place the fabric. The message "Place the appliqué fabric now" is displayed.
- 3 Stitch down the appliqué fabric with double stitch.
- 4 The machine stops again, and the message "Cut around the appliqué" is displayed. Trim the fabric.
- 5 Finally, finish the edges with the satin or motif line.

*The placement section in the appliqué is the same color as the first color in the frame, so it doesn't show under the appliqué fabric. If desired, change in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery to the first color for the embroidery.*

## Stitching out a Foam Frame

Foam frames are designed to be stitched out in a particular sequence. Preview the two stops in the Design Player, with instructions to place the foam and to remove any excess foam. These instructions are also present on the printed worksheet.

When stitching out a puffy foam frame, do as follows:

- 1 Begin embroidering. A running line will show where to position the puffy foam.
- 2 A stop then allows you to place the foam. The message "Place the puffy foam on the fabric now" is displayed.
- 3 Stitch down the foam with satin stitching.
- 4 The machine stops again, and the message "Remove any excess puffy foam" is displayed. Remove the excess foam.

The thread color is changed, and the framed design is stitched.

## Frame Selection

*When starting PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery the first available frame set is selected. If you have used the Frames and Flourishes page previously in the current window of PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, the last frame set and its settings are remembered.*

## Select a Frame or Flourish

Frames, corners, flourishes or side pieces are placed around the currently selected embroidery(ies) or group, or placed at a default or chosen size on the work area.

*The frame is placed around the selected embroidery. If no embroidery is selected, or more than one embroidery is selected, a frame using the dimensions set in Size Options is placed on the work area.*

Click Frame and select one of corners, frames or side pieces from the Category drop-down list, or click Flourish. Select a frame set from the drop-down gallery. Then select an individual design.

*Side pieces are available in three sizes.*

*Corners, frames and flourishes are available in three styles: square, portrait and landscape.*

## Frame Category

There are three frame Categories: corners, frames or side pieces.

*In this chapter these frame types are referred to collectively as frames.*

## Frame Set

Each frame type (Category) contains several named frame sets. Each set contains 9 designs.

Side pieces are available in three sizes. Corners, frames and flourishes are available in three styles: square, portrait and landscape.

*Each frame set has its own default size. The default size is set automatically each time a frame set is selected.*

## Frame Surround Options

The frame is placed at a size to fit around the selected embroidery(ies). If there is no selected embroidery, and no size has been set, the frame default size is used.

To further adjust the frame size, use Size Options. See “Setting the Frame Size” on page 413.

## Margin

Margin leaves a space between the embroidery and the frame around it. Frame margin can be set from -50mm to 50mm.

## Crop

Crop the embroidery when placing the frame, so that no margin is visible. If the embroidery contains letters or a SuperDesign, it will be fixed as stitches. If required, the embroidery will be cut to fit the shape of the frame. The frame will usually be added after the embroidery. However, for an appliqué frame, the placement stitches will be added before the embroidery, and the border stitches after the embroidery.

*For example, a circular frame will crop a rectangular embroidery to a circle, with no visible margins. If the original embroidery is portrait shaped, it is recommended to use a portrait style frame. If more than one embroidery is selected, they will be combined before the frame is created.*

## Group

Group the frame and embroidery(ies) when they are placed on the work area.

*It is recommended to use Group. If Group is chosen, after creation use Restrict Groups on the Home tab or context menu, then select the item that you wish to adjust. If Group is not selected, the frame can be moved separately, and stitch properties may be adjusted immediately after creation.*

## Flourish Surround Options

The flourish is placed at a size to suit the selected embroidery(es). If there is no selected embroidery, and no size has been set, the flourish default size is used.

To further adjust the flourish size, use Size Options. See “Setting the Frame Size” on page 413.

**Above:** Place the flourish above the selected embroidery (or embroideries).

**Below:** Place the flourish below the selected embroidery (or embroideries).

**Duo:** Place vertically mirrored flourishes above and below the selected embroidery (or embroideries).

## Margin

Margin leaves a space between the embroidery and the flourish. Flourish margin can be set from -50mm to 50mm.

## Percent Width

Adjust width  to change the size of the flourish.

Percent width can be set from 10% to 200% of the original size, in steps of 1%. The properties stay the same until you change them or close PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery.

## Group

Group the flourish with the embroidery(ies) when they are placed on the work area.

*It is recommended to use Group. If Group is chosen, after creation use Restrict Groups on the Home tab or context menu, then select the item that you wish to adjust. If Group is not selected, the flourish can be moved separately, and stitch properties may be adjusted immediately after creation.*

## Size Options

Use Size Options  to set the size, height and width in the Frame Options dialog box.

## Stitch Type

Use Stitch Type  to alter the appearance of the stitching used in the frame, and the fabric for the appliqué.

*Changes made to the stitch properties for a frame set are retained until a new frame set is selected.*

To change the Stitch Type, select a stitch type from the drop-down menu to open the properties dialog for the stitch type. See “Choosing Stitch Properties” on page 424.

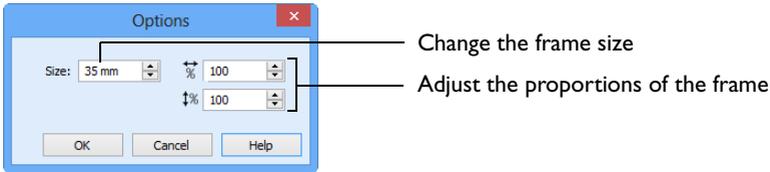
## Apply

Click Apply  to place the frame on the work area around the selected embroidery(ies), or at the specified size if no embroidery is selected.

## Frame or Flourish Options

Use the Options dialog box to change the size, and percentage width  and height  of a frame or flourish before it is placed on the work area.

*This size will only be used if no embroidery is selected.*



To change frames after you have clicked Apply , use the Frame Properties dialog box. See “Frame Properties” on page 414.

### Size

Frame size can be set from 5mm to 200mm. This is the height of the frame.

### Height and Width

Use height  and width  to adjust the proportions of the frame. For instance, to make the frame taller without increasing the width, increase the height.

Height and width can be set from 25% to 400% of the original size, in steps of 1%.

## Setting the Frame Size

Use the Frame Options dialog to change the dimensions of a frame or flourish before it has been placed on the work area.

- 1 In the Frame tab, click the Size Options button. The Frame Options dialog box appears.
- 2 Adjust Size to change the basic size of the frame.
- 3 Click the arrows for percentage width  and height  to change the proportions of the frame. Alternatively, enter a size in the number box.
- 4 Click OK to apply your changes to the frame.

## Editing Frames

After a frame has been placed in the work area, you can change its size and stitch types until it is fixed as an embroidery. If it was grouped, use Restrict Groups on the Home tab or context menu, then select the frame to adjust it.

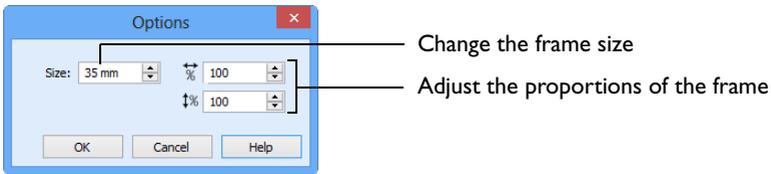
### Change a Frame in the Work Area

- 1 There are four green handles on the corners of the frame. Move the mouse pointer over one of the corner  handles. The Adjust/resize pointer  appears.
- 2 Click and drag the handle to adjust the size of the frame.  
*Hold Ctrl while dragging a handle to keep the frame in proportion.*
- 3 To adjust the frame properties, right-click the frame.
- 4 From the right-click menu, select Properties to change the frame size in the Frame Properties dialog box, or select a stitch type to adjust it in its stitch properties dialog box.
- 5 Click and drag the frame to place it as desired.

*You can also rotate the frame with the rotate handle , or flip it with the horizontal  and vertical  mirror handles.*

# Frame Properties

Use the Frame or Flourish properties dialog box to change the size, and the percentage width  and height  of a frame that has been placed on the work area.



*The Frame Properties dialog box will only appear if Group was not used when the frame was created, or if Restrict Groups is used temporarily.*

To change frames before you have clicked Apply , use the Size Options dialog box. See “Create a Frame” on page 409.

*Frame properties may not be changed once the design has been converted to embroidery.*

To open the frame properties dialog box, right-click the frame, and select Properties from the Context menu.

## Size

Frame size can be set from 5mm to 200mm. This is the height of the frame.

## Height and Width

Use height  and width  to adjust the proportions of the frame. For instance, to make the frame taller without increasing the width, increase the height.

Height and width can be set from 25% to 400% of the original size, in steps of 1%.

## Changing Properties and Stitch Type

Use the properties dialog box to change a frame after it has been placed, but before it has been fixed as an embroidery.

*You cannot change the frame style with Frame properties. Create a new frame instead. To change the stitch type, right-click the frame and select the stitch type from the Context menu. See “Choosing Stitch Properties” on page 424.*

- 1 Right-click within the frame and select Properties from the Context menu. The Options dialog box appears.  
*The Options dialog box will not appear if Group was used when the frame was created. Use Restrict Groups temporarily to change properties.*
- 2 Adjust Size to change the basic size of the frame.
- 3 Click the arrows for percentage width  and height  to change the proportions of the frame. Alternatively, enter a size in the number box.
- 4 Click OK to apply your changes to the selected frame.
- 5 To change the stitch types within the Frame, right-click the Frame and select the stitch type from the Context menu. The properties dialog for that stitch type appears. See “Choosing Stitch Properties” on page 424.

## Frame Color

You can change the colors of frames before or after they have been fixed as embroideries.

## Change Frame Color

- 1 Load an embroidery in the work area and select it.
- 2 Click the Frame tab and choose "Frame".
- 3 Frames is selected in the Frame drop-down menu.
- 4 Click the arrow to the right of the frames gallery and scroll down to the Classical 6 MC frame set.
- 5 Click the first design in the gallery, number 1.
- 6 Ensure that Margin is selected, and click Apply .
- 7 Look at the Design Panel. The thread colors for the frame can be seen in the Color Select area.  
*If Group was selected the frame colors will be at the top of the list, below the colors for the embroidery, and the selection box handles will be orange, indicating a group.*  
*If Group was not selected, only the colors for the frame will be shown, and the selection box handles will be green.*
- 8 Double-click the second frame color. The Color Selection dialog opens. See "Change an Existing Thread Color" on page 45 for more information.
- 9 Change this deep yellow to a pale yellow.
- 10 Click OK to close the dialog box.  
The yellow has changed in the Design Panel and in the frame in the work area.
- 11 Undo  the color change. The frame has gone back to its original colors.

## Fixing Frames and Flourishes as Embroideries

Frames and flourishes are fixed as an embroidery when the Modify tab is selected, Fix as Stitches  is used, or they are Combined with another design. The stitches are then created, and any further resizing or rescaling of the embroidery may affect stitch density and length. The stitch properties, for example the density, pattern, angle or stitch length, may not be changed after it is fixed. Appliqué fabric cannot be changed in the Context menu after the frame is fixed, but if PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra is owned you may use the Select Appliqué features on the Appliqué tab.

*When frames are fixed as embroideries, the handles change from green to white. After a frame has been converted to embroidery, it can no longer be changed with Frame properties, and the stitch types cannot be adjusted. If the Resize  mode is selected, the handles will become blue. To reverse fixing as an embroidery, click Undo .*

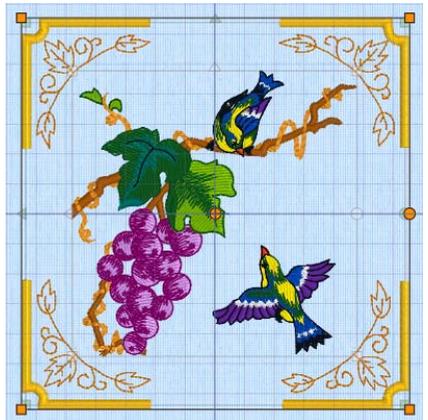
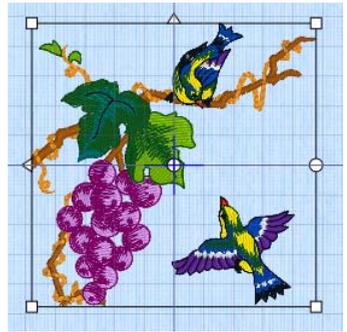
*To fix a frame as an embroidery deliberately, right-click it and select Fix as Stitches  from the Context menu, or select Fix as Stitches in the Combine drop-down menu in the Home tab.*

## Using Frames

Frame one or more embroideries.

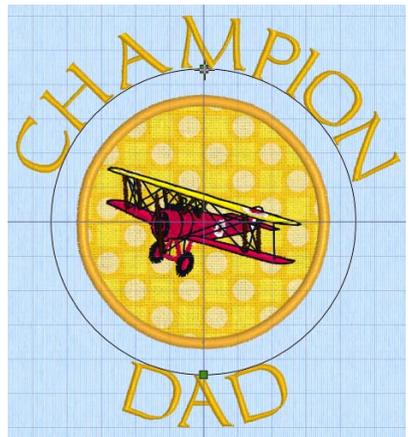
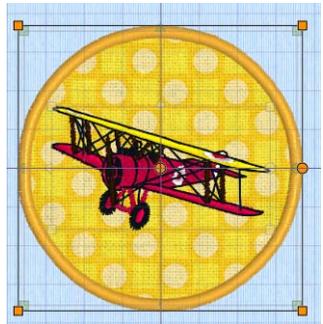
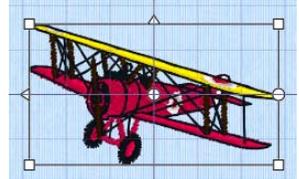
## Changing Frame Properties: Grapes and Birds

- 1 Click File, New  to open a new window.
- 2 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Insert .
- 3 Browse to Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Stitch2\Birds.
- 4 Click to load "Grapes and Birds" into the work area.  
*The embroidery has white handles on its selection box, showing that it is initially in Scale rather than Resize  mode (blue handles).*
- 5 Click the Frame tab.
- 6 Click Frame, then choose "Corners" from the Frames Category drop-down menu.
- 7 Click the arrow to the right of the frames gallery and scroll down to the Ornamental 2 MC set.
- 8 Click the first set of corners in the gallery, number 1.  
*These corners are designed to frame a square embroidery. Corners 4–6 and 7–9 are for portrait and landscape formats.*
- 9 In Frame Surround, select Margin and ensure that it is set to 2.5 mm. (This is the default size.)
- 10 Ensure that Group is selected.
- 11 Click Apply . The set of corners is placed around the embroidery as a frame. It has orange handles, and a solid outline.
- 12 Drag the frame a short distance. The embroidery and frame move as a unit.  
*If the embroidery does not move with the frame, Group was not selected. Group makes the embroidery and frame act as one unit. To adjust the embroidery or frame, select Restrict Groups on the Home tab or the context menu, then make the adjustments.*
- 13 The frame would look better if it fitted a little more snugly. Click Undo  until only the Grapes and Birds embroidery remains.
- 14 In the Frame tab, click the down arrow to change Margin to 0.5 mm.
- 15 Click Apply . The frame now fits closely around the embroidery, but does not overlap it.  
The satin line on the outside of the corners is a little heavy. Its width can be changed, and its ends can be tapered.
- 16 Right-click the frame, then click Restrict Groups .
- 17 Right-click the frame again and select Satin Line from the Context menu. The Satin Line properties dialog appears. See "Satin Line" on page 468.  
*Alternatively, you could have used Stitch Type to change the satin properties before placing the frame.*
- 18 In the Satin Line properties dialog, click the down arrow to change Width to 2.5 mm.
- 19 Click to select Right Taper for both Start Point  and End Point .
- 20 Click OK. The frame is now more delicate.
- 21 Click outside the frame to view the design without the selection box.  
Alternatively, click Realistic 3D mode  or Life View  to see the design without the selection box and grid.



## Create a Framed Badge: Champion Dad

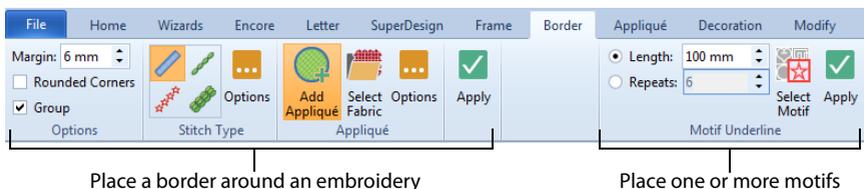
- 1 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Change Hoop . In the Hoop Selection dialog box select 180mm x 130mm - Universal Large Hoop 1.
- 2 Set Orientation to Natural and click OK.
- 3 In the Quick Access toolbar at the top of the screen, click Insert .
- 4 Browse to Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb\Stitch2\Transport.
- 5 Scroll down until you see "Biplane", and click to select it.
- 6 Click Open to load the embroidery into the work area.  
*The embroidery has white handles on its selection box, showing that it is initially in Scale rather than Resize  mode (blue handles).*
- 7 Click the Frame tab.
- 8 In Category, ensure that Frames is selected.
- 9 Select the second (round) frame in Applique Shields 1 (the top set in the list).
- 10 In the Stitch Type drop-down menu at the top right, select Appliqué Fabric. The Appliqué Selection dialog box opens.
- 11 Click Load Previously Saved Fabric . The Picture Viewer opens.
- 12 Browse to the folder General\Checkerboard.
- 13 Scroll down and select the fabric Checkers Round 1 - 18, then click OK. The Picture Viewer will close and the fabric will be shown in the Appliqué Selection dialog box.
- 14 Click OK to close the Appliqué Selection dialog box.
- 15 Ensure that the embroidery is still selected and click Apply  to place the frame around the embroidery.
- 16 In the Color Select on the right, double-click the top color in the list. This is the blue for the frame.
- 17 In the Quick Colors click the dark yellow in row 4 column 7.
- 18 In the Color Selection dialog box keep this gold color, or choose a slightly darker color.
- 19 Click OK to close the Color Selection dialog. The frame border is now a gold color.
- 20 Click the Letter tab.
- 21 In the font gallery on the left, scroll to the Modern font category.
- 22 Select the font Carlton UC 15-45mm.
- 23 Enter the word "Champion" in the Letters text box and press Enter on the keyboard for a new line.
- 24 In the line below enter the word "Dad".
- 25 Set Gap to 10.
- 26 In the Lettering Shape area, click Full Circle .
- 27 In Stitches, ensure that ColorSort is selected (checked).
- 28 Click Apply . The lettering appears around the embroidery. Its handles are green.  
*If the lettering does not surround the embroidery, the embroidery was not selected. Click Undo , click to select the embroidery, then click Apply again.*
- 29 Drag the square green handle at the top of the circle of lettering downwards so that it fits well around the framed embroidery.
- 30 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Design Player  to see the embroidery as it will be stitched out.
- 31 Click Cancel to close the Design Player.
- 32 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Save As  and save the embroidery as "Champion Dad".  
*The various parts of this multipart embroidery will be stored separately, making further adjustment easier.*



# Borders and Motifs

In the Border tab you can create a border to place around your embroidery(ies), group, lettering or SuperDesigns and lines of motifs.

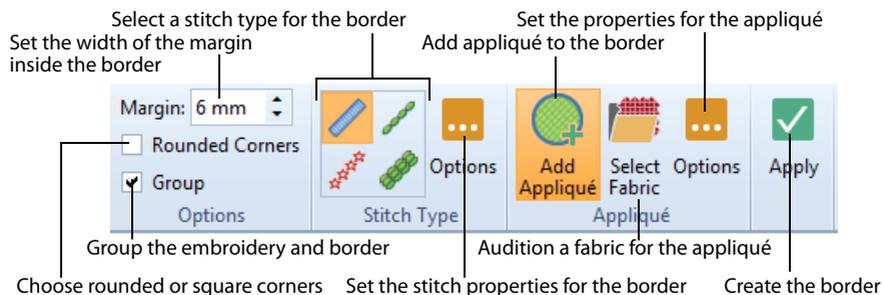
- A border is placed at a size to fit around the selected embroidery(ies) or group, or if no embroidery is selected, on the work area using the current Options and Stitch Type.
- Use Motif Underline to create a line of motifs, or a single motif below the currently selected embroidery(ies) or group.



## Border

Select a margin width and whether to use rounded corners, then select a border type from motif line, satin border, running stitch and triple stitch. Click Options to set the properties for each stitch type.

*The stitch properties may only be adjusted before the border is created.*



The border is placed around the rectangular "edge" of the selected embroidery(ies), or around the inside edge of the hoop. (In the ExpressMonogram Wizard the border is placed around the edge of the envelope area.) It is placed earlier in the stitch order than the originally selected embroidery, so that any appliqué fabric may be placed before the embroidery that is being bordered.

*If more than one embroidery is selected, the border is placed around the selected embroideries, using the distance set in Margin.*

The border is placed with white handles, showing that it is initially in Scale rather than Resize  mode (blue handles).

*Border options are retained during the current session.*



## Create a Border

- 1 Load an embroidery in the work area and select it.
- 2 Click the Border tab.
- 3 Select Rounded or Square corners.  
*Rounded corners may overlap the corners of the embroidery. Adjust the Margin for the desired effect.*
- 4 If desired, select Group to form a group from the border and the embroidery(ies).
- 5 Select a Stitch Type (Satin Line, Triple Stitch, Running Stitch or Motif Line).
- 6 If desired, click Stitch Options  to open the properties dialog for the stitch type. See “Choosing Stitch Properties” on page 424.  
Change the stitch properties for the border in the properties dialog, for example the density and stitch length. Click OK to close the dialog.
- 7 To add appliqué to the design, click Add Appliqué , then click Select Fabric  to audition a fabric in the Appliqué Selection dialog. See “Appliqué Selection” on page 185.
- 8 If desired, click Appliqué Options  to open the Appliqué Options dialog box and choose an Appliqué Method. See “Appliqué Options” on page 198.
- 9 Set the Margin size in millimeters from -50 mm to 50 mm. This is the distance from the selected embroidery, or from the edge of the hoop.  
*For a satin or motif border you may need to adjust the margin to avoid overlapping the embroidery.*
- 10 Click Apply  to view your framed embroidery.  
*If PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra is owned, you can change the appliqué fabric in the Appliqué Selection dialog box after creating the border. Click Restrict Groups on the Home tab or the context menu. Click the Appliqué tab and click Select Piece, then click the border. The Appliqué Selection dialog box appears. Change the fabric as desired. See “Appliqué Selection” on page 185.*

## Margin

Margin leaves a space between the embroidery and the center of the border around it. Margin can be set between -50mm and 50mm. The initial setting is 2.5mm.

*For a satin or motif border you may need to adjust the margin to avoid overlapping the embroidery.*

## Rounded Corners

Use rounded or square borders. Rounded is not initially selected.

*Rounded corners may overlap the corners of the embroidery. You can adjust Margin for the desired effect.*

## Group

Group the border and the embroidery when they are placed on the work area.

## Stitch Types

Use Stitch Type to select the appearance of the stitching used in the border. The stitch types available for automatically created borders are:

- Motif Line
- Satin Line
- Running Stitch
- Triple Stitch

Click Options to set the properties for each stitch type. The properties dialog for that stitch type will open. See “Choosing Stitch Properties” on page 424.

For the individual stitch types, see “Motif Line” on page 469, “Satin Line” on page 468, “Running Stitch” on page 464 and “Triple Stitch” on page 467.

## Add Appliqué

Use Add Appliqué  to add appliqué to the border that you create. Appliqué placement stitches are automatically added to the border that you draw.

A new color block, using the same color as the border is placed at the beginning of the embroidery for the appliqué placement stitches. The appliqué placement stitches use the method, appliqué piece margin, running stitch length and double stitch length set in Appliqué Options. A Color Change is also placed at the beginning of the border line, using the default border color. The border uses stitch type settings set in the Line Options for the selected stitch type.

## Select Fabric

Use Select Fabric  to audition a fabric for your appliqué in the Appliqué Selection dialog box.

Click Select Fabric  and the Appliqué Selection dialog box appears. See “Appliqué Selection” on page 185.

## Shortcuts

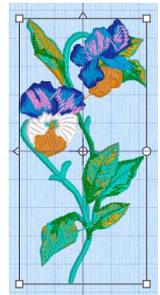
- Appliqué, Border Tab: 
- Keys: Alt, B, SF

## Apply

Click Apply  to place the framed embroidery on the work area.

## Add a Border with Appliqué to a Flower Embroidery

- 1 Click File, New  to open a new window.
- 2 In the Quick Access toolbar, click Insert .
- 3 Browse to Documents\Premier+2\Samples\Premier+2Emb \Stitch2\Flowers.
- 4 Scroll down and click to load "Pansy Stem" into the work area.  
*The embroidery has white handles on its selection box, showing that it is initially in Scale rather than Resize  mode (blue handles).*
- 5 Click the Border tab.
- 6 In Options, select (check) Rounded Corners and ensure that Group is selected.  
*Group creates a group from the border and embroidery, so that they can be rotated and resized as a single unit. See “Group” on page 62.*
- 7 In Stitch Type ensure that Satin Line  is selected.
- 8 Click Add Appliqué  to select it. The other appliqué options are now available.



- 9 Click Select Fabric . The Appliqué Selection dialog box opens. See "Appliqué Selection" on page 185.
- 10 In the Quick Colors select the turquoise in row 1 column 8, then click OK to select the fabric.
- 11 Click Appliqué Options .
- 12 In the Appliqué Options dialog box ensure that Standard Appliqué is selected, then click OK. See "Appliqué Options" on page 198.
- 13 Click Apply . The embroidery is surrounded by an appliqué frame. *Note the orange handles and solid outline indicating that the border and embroidery are a group.*
- 14 Click Undo .
- 15 Click the Letter tab.
- 16 In the Script category, select the font Chateau Uniform 20-30mm, and enter the words "Happy Birthday" on two lines.
- 17 Click Align Left , then click Apply .
- 18 Move the lettering to the right of the flower.
- 19 Click the Home tab, then click Select All . (Alternatively, Ctrl + Click the designs or use Ctrl + A.) Both designs are now selected. If required, move the selection box to the left so that the designs are in the hoop.
- 20 Click the Border tab.
- 21 In the Border area, click Apply .
- 22 Both designs are framed, but the leaf at the top left is clipped by the rounded corners of the border. Click Undo .
- 23 Set the Margin to 10mm, then click the Home tab and select both designs again.
- 24 Click the Border tab, then click Apply . The embroidery and lettering are framed by the border.

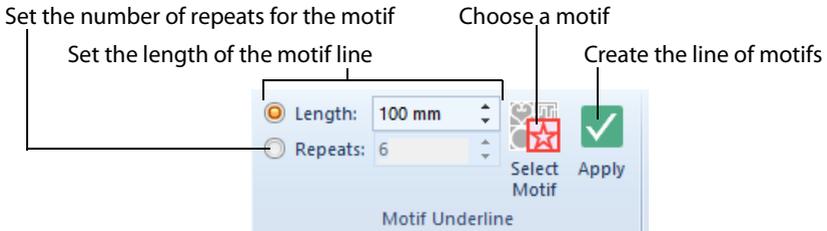


# Motifs

Create a motif line of a chosen length or a selected number of repeats. Alternatively, place a single motif.

Motifs are created from the motif sets available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery. Motifs are relatively small single-color designs similar to machine stitches, created using single, running and triple stitches.

*If motifs are designed to overlap each other the calculation for number of repeats may not be exact.*



*If you have used the Motif tab previously in that session of PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, the last motif and its settings is remembered. When starting PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery the system default star motif is selected.*

## Using Motifs

The motif group, category and set are shown in the Motif Underline section of the Border tab.

The motif line is created below the currently selected embroidery(ies), group, lettering or SuperDesign, and earlier than it in the stitchout order.

*Additional motifs may be created using the optional PREMIER+™ 2 Create module, and added to the My Motifs database.*

When starting PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery the star (Pattern 5 in General Motifs 1) is selected. If you have used the Motif tab previously in that session of PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, the last motif and its settings are remembered.

## Length

Set the Length of the line of motifs from 10 to 1000mm in steps of 1.0mm. Length is initially set to 100mm.

## Repeats

The total number of copies of the selected motif in the line. Set the number of repeats from 1 to 100.

## Select Motif

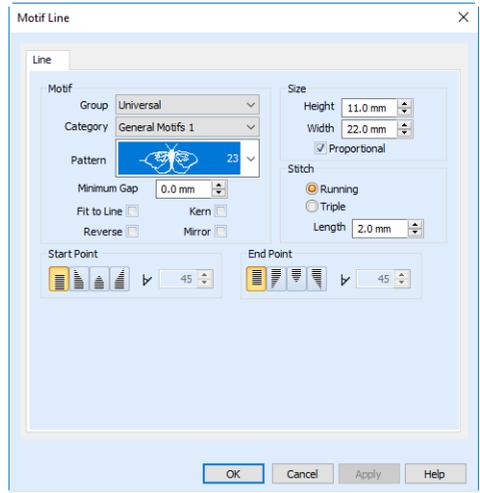
Use Select Motif  to select the motif for your line. The Motif Line dialog box opens. See "Motif Line" on page 469.

## Apply

Use Apply  to place the line of motifs in the work area.

## Create Lines of Butterfly Motifs

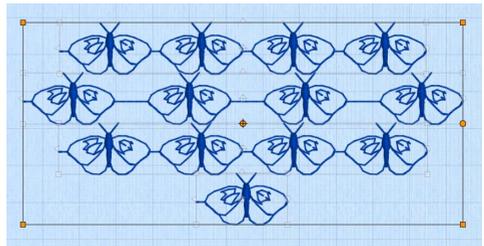
- 1 Click the Border tab.
- 2 In the Motif Underline section, click Select Motif . The Motif Line selection dialog box opens.  
*See "Motif Line" on page 469.*
- 3 Select Universal from the Group drop-down list.
- 4 Select General Motifs 1 from the Category drop-down list.
- 5 In the Pattern drop-down list, select motif 23, a butterfly.  
*The Height and Width are initially set according to the chosen motif.*



- 6 In Size, ensure that Proportional is selected (checked), and set Height to 14mm.
- 7 In Stitch ensure that Running is selected, and that Length is set to 2.0mm.  
*Length is initially set to the recommended value for the motif.*
- 8 Click OK to select the butterfly motif.
- 9 In the Motif Underline section of the Border tab, click Length to select it.

- 10 Use the up and down arrows to set the Length to 100mm.
- 11 Click Apply . A line of four butterflies is placed on the work area.  
*The width of the butterfly motif is 25mm, so the line contains four motifs.*  
*You can resize or rescale this line of motifs, or change its color, in the same way as for any other design.*

- 12 Set Length to 120mm and click Apply  again. There are still four motifs, but they are more widely spaced.  
*Only complete motifs are used when placing a motif line with Motif Underline.*  
*Note that the second line of butterflies forms a group with the first line. Motif lines are grouped with the previously placed line, unless you click outside the selection box before creating the new line.*



- 13 In the Motif Underline section, click Repeats.
- 14 Use the up and down arrows to set the number of repeats to four, then click Apply .  
*The motif line is the same size as the first line you created.*
- 15 Use the down arrow to set the number of repeats to one, then click Apply . This places a single motif in the work area.  
*Use Encore to create curved motif lines, circles and shapes using single motifs, and to mirror motifs within a line. See "Encore" on page 76.*

You can change the properties for many line and fill types in fonts, SuperDesigns and frames.

The properties for a stitch type can be changed using its properties dialog before or after the lettering, SuperDesign or frame is created.

- Use the drop-down in the Options dialog box for the stitch type.
- If required, click Restrict Groups  on the Home tab or context menu to enable editing within a group. Then right-click on the lettering, SuperDesign, or Frame, and select the stitch type that you wish to change in the design from the right-click menu. The properties dialog box for that stitch type will appear.

*You can only edit the stitch properties for a design with green handles (before it is fixed as stitches).*

If the Stitch Type area is grayed out (unavailable), this means that the area was designed with properties that cannot be edited. For example, this occurs with Foam fonts that have special settings to ensure the embroidery foam is cut, and it also occurs with a few very complex fonts that have many different fill patterns in different letters, or multigradient fills, such as Acorn 6C UC 35-60mm in the Floral category.

## Editable Properties

Most fonts, SuperDesigns and frames will allow multiple line and fill properties to be changed. Where very complex properties such as multicolor gradients or many different properties in different characters are used, the edit properties functions are not available. Examples of editable properties include:

- In the Elegant category, American Gothic 25-75mm has Satin Column stitches, therefore the satin properties dialog is available.
- In the Monogram category, Athletic Square 2C UC 30-80mm has both satin and pattern fill stitches, therefore two properties dialogs are available.
- In the Wild West category, Decor 2C UC 45-100mm has two types of pattern fill stitch (the same pattern at different angles), and a Satin Column outline. Therefore the Satin Column dialog and a Pattern Fill properties dialog for Pattern Fill 1 and Pattern Fill 2 are available.
- In the Appliqué category, Crazy Patch 2 UC 55-120mm has one stitch type, Triple Stitch, and two appliqué fabrics. Therefore one properties dialog is available for the outline stitching, and two fabric dialogs are available for the appliqués.
- In the Floral category, Acorn 6C UC 35-60mm uses many different fill patterns in different letters. Therefore no stitch properties settings are available.
- In the Fun category, Balloon 3C UC 25-80mm uses multicolor gradient satin. Therefore no stitch properties settings are available.
- In the Foam category, all the fonts have special settings to ensure the embroidery foam is cut. Therefore no stitch properties are available.

If there is more than one stitch area of a particular type in the design, the drop-down menu will show that stitch type in a numbered list; for example, Pattern Fill 1, Pattern Fill 2.

# Pattern Fill

A pattern fill area is an area of stitching where the threads all lie parallel to each other, and that has stitch points inserted to create different types of patterns. The density and color can also be changed with single gradient density and multigradient density.

Add new patterns using Manage My Fills in PREMIER+™ 2 Create (if PREMIER+™ 2 ULTRA is owned).

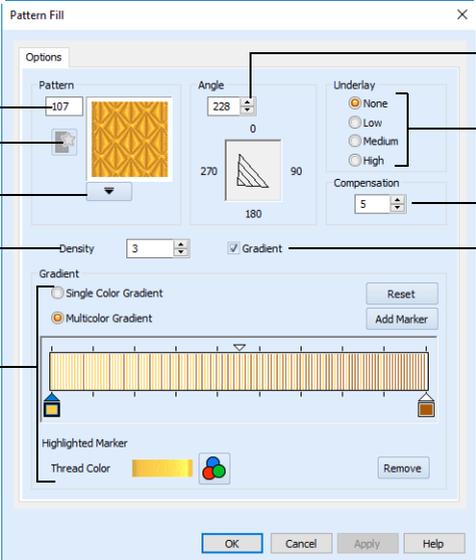
The patterns may be simple textures or decorative shapes. A satin-effect pattern (pattern number 36 in Standard 3) is also available.

*Constant density creates a uniform fill at the chosen density. Gradient density creates a fill with varying density or color.*



Litho UC 20-80mm, Pattern Fill Area with Pattern 107 from Diamonds

Use the Pattern Fill properties dialog box (if available) to change the pattern, density and stitch angle used for fill areas.



The screenshot shows the 'Pattern Fill' dialog box with the following settings and annotations:

- Options:**
  - Pattern:** 107 (Annotated: Search for a Pattern by number)
  - Angle:** 228 (Annotated: Set the pattern Angle)
  - Underlay:** None (Annotated: Choose Underlay density)
  - Compensation:** 5 (Annotated: Adjust the area's size)
- Density:** 3 (Annotated: Set Standard density)
- Gradient:**  Gradient (Annotated: Use gradient density)
- Gradient Settings:**
  - Single Color Gradient:**  (Annotated: Settings for Single & Multicolor gradient)
  - Multicolor Gradient:**
  - Highlighted Marker:** Thread Color (Annotated: Settings for Single & Multicolor gradient)

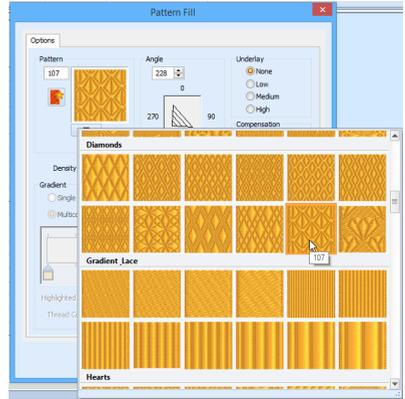
# Pattern Fill — Pattern

## Patterns

Use the Pattern area to select the desired pattern category and number.

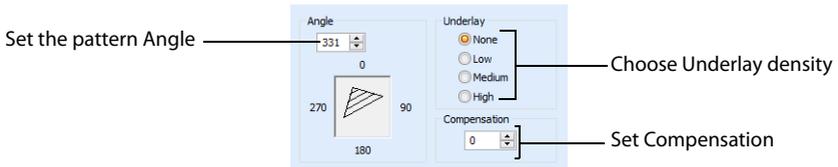
Select the desired pattern number. There are several ways to select patterns:

- Click the drop-down arrow below the pattern sample and scroll down to choose a pattern Category, and a pattern. Click the desired pattern sample and the Pattern number is shown.
- Enter a favorite Pattern number directly in the Pattern box. As you type the number, the correct pattern sample is selected immediately.
- Use a My Fill pattern created with Manage My Fills in PREMIER+™ 2 Create (if PREMIER+™ 2 ULTRA is owned). View the patterns in the pattern gallery. See “Fill and Satin Patterns” on page 471.



## Pattern Fill — Options

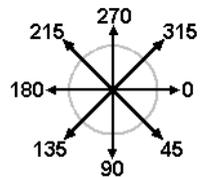
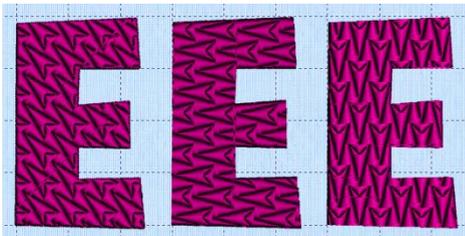
Use the Options area to see and change the settings for fill angle, underlay and compensation.



## Angle

The angle of the fill pattern, as shown by the arrow. The thread is at a right angle to the fill pattern. Set the Angle from 0 to 359 degrees. The initial setting is 0.

*The fill angle will also affect the orientation of the gradient.*



The example shows pattern number 56 with the fill angle set to 315, 270 and 180 degrees.

## Underlay

Choose from None, Low, Medium or High density underlay. Underlay is a low density fill that is perpendicular to the stitches of the actual fill area. Underlay is useful for stabilizing large fill areas. Underlay is initially set to Low.

*Underlay stitches are not generated for areas using gradient density, although the property can be selected in case you switch the area back to a standard density area.*

## Compensation

Compensation is used to make an area 'bolder' by increasing its relative size. Set Compensation from 0 to 20. The higher the number, the bolder the area appears. The initial setting is 0.

## Pattern Fill — Density

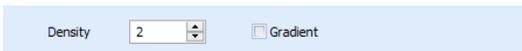
Use the Density area to see and change the density settings and the color Gradient of the fill.

The color on a fill area can change over a range, or have multiple color changes across the fill. This is ideal for gradual color changes such as sunsets, subtle shadow effects and so on.

Gradient is not initially selected.

*Embroidery on thicker fabrics usually looks better with more stitch coverage, or a low density setting. Choose a low value such as 2 or 3 for heavy knit fabrics, a higher value such as 5 or 6 for a light material like linen or satin.*

## Standard Density



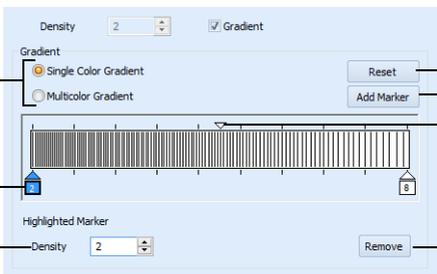
Set the standard Density from 2 to 40. The lower the number, the closer together the stitches and the more stitches are produced.



The initial setting is 2.



## Single Color Gradient



Select single or multicolor gradient

Highlighted value marker

Set the stitch density for the chosen value marker

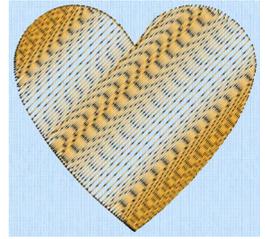
Return to the original settings

Add a marker

Adjustment marker

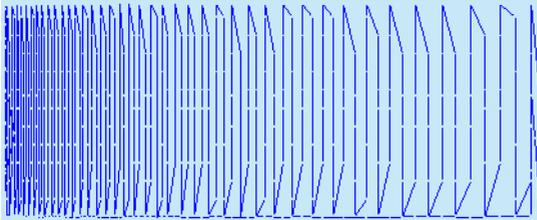
Delete the selected marker

Use Single Color Gradient to change the density across a fill with only one color. Set a value for the start and end density markers for the fill, and the density gradually changes between the two values. Add multiple markers for a more complex pattern.



*The markers can each take a value of 2 to 80, which means you can reverse the gradient simply by swapping the start and end values.*

The example shows a Gradient of 2 to 15, with a fill angle of 90°.



Use Density Gradient for loosely stitched areas so that the traveling stitches will go around the outside of the fill area. Set the start and end densities to the same number. If the Density Gradient option was not used the traveling stitches would cross the fill area and show through.

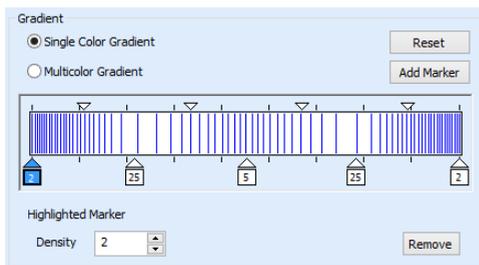
Use the adjustment marker above the gradient bar to change the gradient across the fill.

## Reset

Reset your changes and use the initial settings.

## Add Marker

Click Add Marker to add a value marker below the gradient bar, and an adjustment marker above the gradient bar. The initial value for the marker will be between the existing markers. Edit the density value, and move the value and adjustment markers as desired.



This means that you can have any combination of density values across the fill area. Remember, a higher value means the fill is less dense.

## Density

Density is used to change the density of the stitching. Set Density from 2 to 80. The higher the number, the less dense the fill. The initial start marker setting is 2, and end marker setting is 8.

## Remove

Click Remove to delete the highlighted marker.

## Use a Single Gradient Fill

- 1 Open the Pattern Fill properties dialog box.
- 2 Click (check) the Gradient checkbox. The Gradient box will become available.
- 3 Select Single Color Gradient.
- 4 Click a value maker (the marker below the gradient bar) and change the value in the Density box to the required density value.
- 5 Click Apply to view your changes.
- 6 Move the adjustment marker above the gradient bar to vary the change in density across the fill.
- 7 Click Add Marker to add another value marker and adjustment marker.
- 8 Change the density of the fill as desired.



- 9 Click OK to close the properties dialog box.

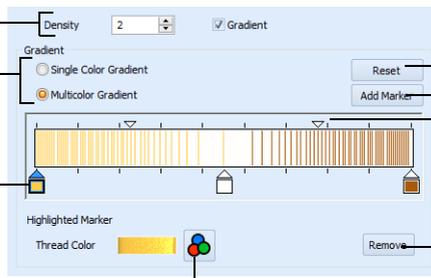
## Multicolor Gradient

Set the stitch density for the whole fill

Select single or multicolor gradient

Selected color marker

Choose a thread for the highlighted marker



Return to the original settings

Add a marker

Adjustment markers

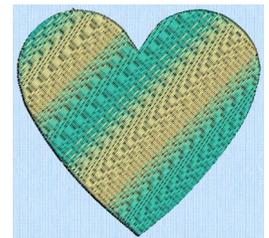
Delete the selected marker

Use Multicolor Gradient to change the color across a fill with only one density. Set colors for the start and end markers for the fill, and the color gradually changes between the two values.

Use the marker above the gradient bar to change the color gradient across the fill.

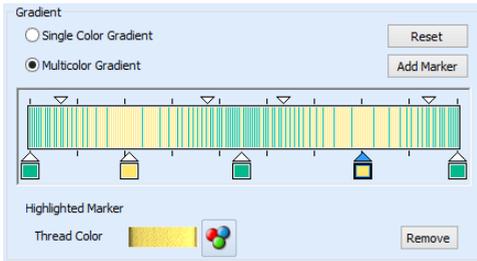
## Reset

Reset your changes and use the initial settings.



## Add Marker

Click Add Marker to add a color marker below the gradient bar, and an adjustment marker above the gradient bar. The initial color for the marker will be the same as the currently highlighted marker. Change the color and move the color and adjustment markers as desired.



This means that you can have any combination of colors across the fill area.

## Thread Color

Use Thread Color  to change the color of the currently highlighted marker. The Color Selection box will be displayed.

See *"Change an Existing Thread Color"* on page 45.

## Remove

Click Remove to delete the highlighted marker.

## Use a Multicolor Gradient Fill

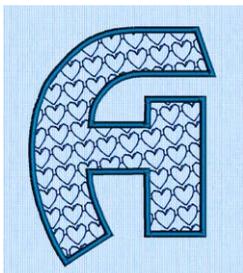
- 1 Open the properties dialog box.
- 2 Click (check) the Gradient checkbox. The Gradient box will become available.
- 3 Select Multicolor Gradient.
- 4 Click a color marker (the marker below the gradient bar) and click Thread Color to open the Color Selection dialog box.
- 5 Change the color to the required color and click OK.
- 6 Click Apply to view your changes.
- 7 Move the adjustment marker above the gradient bar to vary the change in color across the fill.
- 8 Click Add Marker to add another color marker and adjustment marker.
- 9 Change the color of the fill as desired.



- 10 Click OK to close the properties dialog box.

# Motif Fill

Motif fill areas contain repeated small stitches placed using a Universal or machine motif pattern. Motifs are used at any angle, at varying sizes, and alternate lines can use different motifs. Typically, there are spaces between the motifs in a pattern.



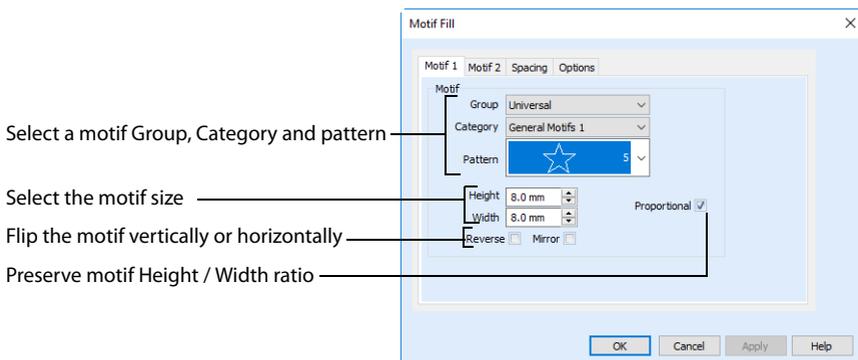
Motif fill using a heart pattern, number 6, in the General Motifs 1 category, at an Angle of 350 degrees. A satin line is used for the border. (Revue 2C UC 25-120mm MF, Display category)

In the Motif Fill dialog you can select motifs, and set the motif angle, spacing, offset, stitch type and length when creating a motif fill area. Use Motif 1 to select the first motif and its size, and Motif 2 for a second optional motif.

For an example using Motif Fill, see “Create a Quilt Block with a Central Filled Shape” on page 151.

## Motif Fill — Motif 1

The Motif Fill properties dialog box has tabs for setting all the properties on a motif fill area.



The Motif 1 tab is always shown first when the Motif Fill properties appear.

### Motif

Use Motif to select the first motif and its size.

### Group

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired group of motif patterns.

### Category

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired category of motif patterns.

## Pattern

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired motif visually. Motifs are also numbered for convenient reference.

## Height and Width

The Height and Width are initially set according to the chosen motif. The maximum and minimum values for Height and Width are individual to each motif.

## Proportional

Use this option to keep the relative Height and Width in proportion when either is changed.

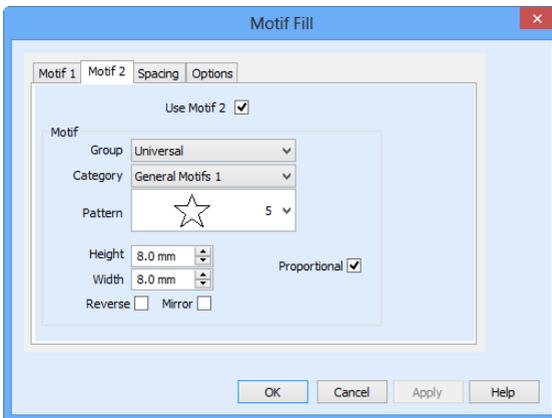
## Reverse

Use this option to reverse the direction of the motif along the lines of the motif fill. Some motifs are symmetrical and will have no apparent change when they are reversed.

## Mirror

Use this option to mirror the motif across the line of motif fill. Some motifs are symmetrical and will have no apparent change when they are mirrored.

## Motif Fill — Motif 2



Use the Motif 2 tab to select a second optional motif and its size.

## Use Motif 2

Select the Use Motif 2 option to use a second motif in the motif fill. The second motif will be placed on alternating lines with the first motif. All other options are identical to the Motif 1 tab.

## Motif

Use Motif to select the motif and its size.

## Group

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired group of motif patterns.

## Category

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired category of motif patterns.

## Pattern

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired motif visually. Motifs are also numbered for convenient reference.

## Height and Width

The Height and Width are initially set according to the chosen motif. The maximum and minimum values for Height and Width are individual to each motif.

## Proportional

Use this option to keep the relative Height and Width in proportion when either is changed.

## Reverse

Use this option to reverse the direction of the motif along the lines of the motif fill. Some motifs are symmetrical and will have no apparent change when they are reversed.

## Mirror

Use this option to mirror the motif across the line of motif fill. Some motifs are symmetrical and will have no apparent change when they are mirrored.

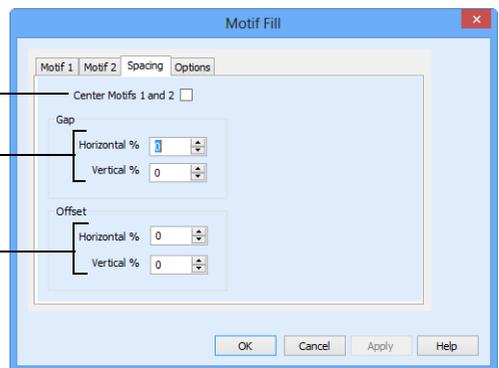
## Motif Fill — Spacing

Use Spacing to set the relative position of the motifs in the fill.

Space the motifs regularly

Set the distance between motifs and lines of motifs

Set the relative position of motifs and lines of motifs



## Center Motifs 1 and 2

When this option is selected the narrower of the two motifs has extra stitches added at either side to make it the same width as the wider motif. This is so that the motifs can be centered, or so the horizontal offset between them will remain constant.

## Gap

The Horizontal gap adds or removes space between motifs along the line. The Vertical gap adds or removes space between lines of motifs.

Set the Horizontal and Vertical gaps from -50% to +100%.

## Offset

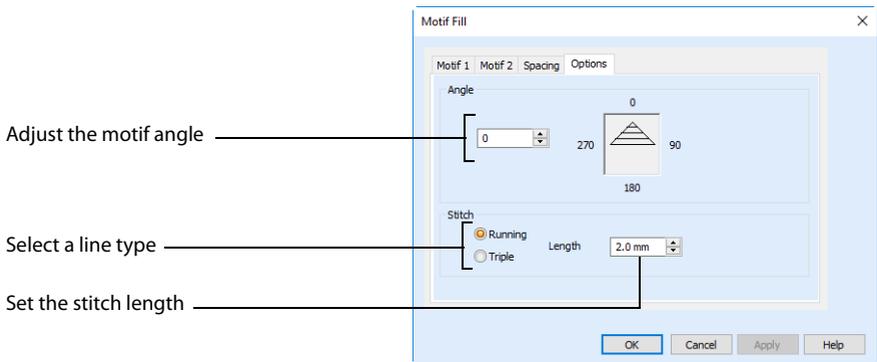
The Horizontal offset moves the motifs along each line, relative to the previous line. The Vertical offset adjusts the position of every other line of motifs, so that it is nearer to one line than the next or previous line.

Set the Horizontal and Vertical gaps from -50% to 50%.

*The offset is limited to 50% each way because, for instance, a 75% offset would be the same as a -25% offset.*

## Motif Fill — Options

Use the Options tab to change the settings for fill angle, stitch type and length.



## Angle

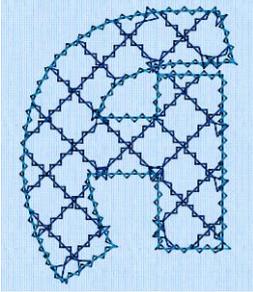
The angle of the motif fill pattern, as shown by the arrow. Set the Angle from 0 to 359 degrees.

## Stitch

Select Running or Triple stitch for stitching out the motifs. Set the maximum stitch Length from 1 to 12mm in steps of 0.1mm.

# Crosshatch Fill

Crosshatch fills are used in quilting, and to create free-standing lace.

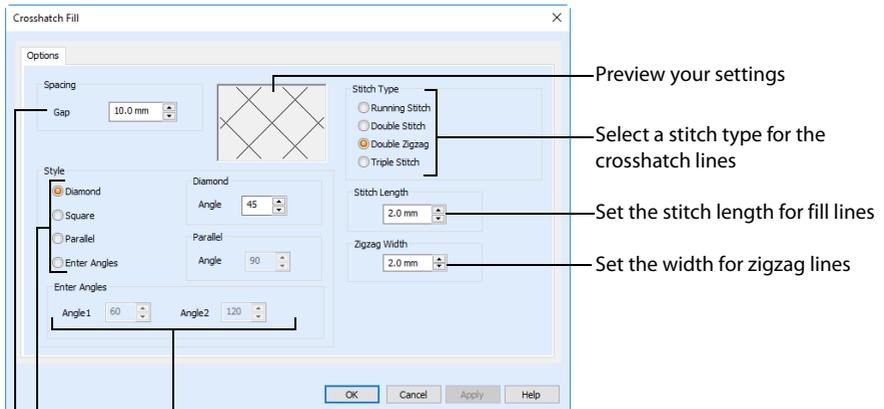


Crosshatch Fill, using Diamond style and an Angle of 45 degrees. Double Zigzag is the stitch used in the fill and for the border.

(Revue Patchwork UC 50-120mm XH, Display category)

## Crosshatch Fill — Options

The Crosshatch Fill properties dialog box enables you to set the gap, style, line angle, stitch type and stitch length for the crosshatched lines of stitching in the fill. The preview changes according to the options chosen.



- Set the angle for one or both crosshatch lines
- Select a style for the Crosshatch fill
- Adjust the gap between the stitch lines

- **Diamond** creates a symmetrical crosshatch pattern (balanced horizontally). Diamond is selected by default, with an initial angle of 315 degrees.
- **Square** creates a crosshatch pattern of lines set at 90 degrees.
- **Parallel** creates a pattern of parallel lines, with an initial angle of 0 degrees.
- **Enter Angles** can be used to create an asymmetrical crosshatch pattern. Enter an angle for each of the two line directions in the crosshatch.

## Spacing

Set the Gap to the preferred distance between lines of stitching.

Set the Gap from 1mm to 20mm in steps of 0.1mm. It is initially set to 5mm.

## Style

Choose from Diamond, Square, Parallel and Enter Angles. Diamond is selected by default, and creates a symmetrical crosshatch pattern (balanced horizontally). Choose Enter Angles to create an asymmetrical crosshatch pattern, if desired.

### Diamond

Enter an Angle for the Diamond fill. The Angle is initially set to 315 degrees.

### Square

There are no additional options for the Square fill.

### Parallel

Enter an Angle for the Parallel fill. The Angle is initially set to 90 degrees.

*The Pattern Fills 257 to 264 provide banded fill patterns that combine with crosshatch parallel fills to create a weave effect. Set Spacing for the parallel fill at 2.4mm to combine with Pattern 257, 2.8mm to combine with Pattern 258, and so on.*

### Enter Angles

Enter an angle for each of the two line directions in the crosshatch. Angle1 is initially set to the same angle as the Diamond style previously used, and Angle2 is initially set to this angle plus 90 degrees.

## Stitch Type

Select a stitch type for the crosshatch fill. Choose from:

- Running Stitch
- Double Stitch
- Double Zigzag
- Triple Stitch

## Stitch Length

Set the Stitch Length from 1 to 12mm in steps of 0.1mm. The initial setting is 2.0mm.

## Zigzag Width

Set the Zigzag width for Double Zigzag stitch from 0.1 to 6mm in steps of 0.1mm. The initial setting is 0.6mm.

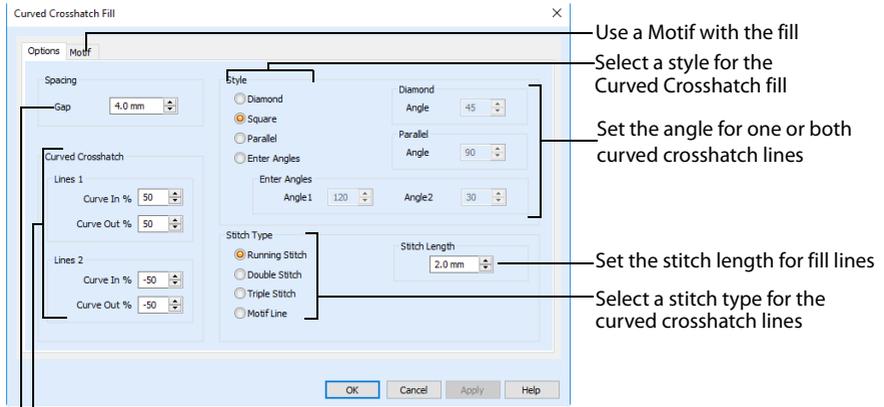
*Double Zigzag is a special stitch type, recommended for lace. A running stitch line is retraced in a zigzag pattern to create a mesh. After embroidering on water soluble stabilizer, the mesh of stitches provides strength when the stabilizer is washed away.*

# Curved Crosshatch Fill

Curved Crosshatch fills use curving lines in the crosshatch, which can be used to create a feeling of depth. They are used in quilting, and to create free-standing lace.

## Curved Crosshatch Fill — Options

The Curved Crosshatch Fill properties dialog box enables you to set the curve, gap, style, line angle, stitch type and stitch length for the curved crosshatched lines of stitching in the fill.



Set the curve for the curved crosshatch lines  
Adjust the gap between the stitch lines

Use a Motif with the fill  
Select a style for the Curved Crosshatch fill

Set the angle for one or both curved crosshatch lines

Set the stitch length for fill lines  
Select a stitch type for the curved crosshatch lines

## Spacing

Set the Gap to the preferred distance between lines of stitching.

Set the Gap from 1mm to 20mm in steps of 0.1 mm. It is initially set to 5mm.

## Style

Choose from Diamond, Square, Parallel and Enter Angles. Diamond is selected by default, and creates a symmetrical crosshatch pattern (balanced horizontally). Choose Enter Angles to create an asymmetrical crosshatch pattern, if desired.

### Diamond

Enter an Angle for the Diamond fill. The Angle is initially set to 45 degrees.

### Square

There are no additional options for the Square fill which creates a crosshatch pattern of lines set at 90 degrees.

### Parallel

Enter an Angle for the Parallel fill. The Angle is initially set to 90 degrees.

*The Pattern Fills 257 to 264 provide banded fill patterns that combine with crosshatch parallel fills to create a weave effect. Set Spacing for the parallel fill at 2.4mm to combine with Pattern 257, 2.8mm to combine with Pattern 258, and so on.*

## Enter Angles

Enter an angle for each of the two line directions in the crosshatch. Angle1 is initially set to the same angle as the Diamond style previously used, and Angle2 is initially set to this angle plus 90 degrees.

## Stitch Type

Select a stitch type for the curved crosshatch fill. Choose from:

- Running Stitch
- Double Stitch
- Triple Stitch
- Motif Line

## Stitch Length

Set the Stitch Length from 1 to 12mm in steps of 0.1mm. The initial setting is 2.0mm.

## Curved Crosshatch

Use Lines 1 and 2 to change the curve on the crosshatch lines.

### Lines 1

Change the position of the origin for one of the sets of curved lines.

Set percentage Curve In and Curve Out from -100 to 100. The initial setting for Curve In % and for Curve Out % is 50.

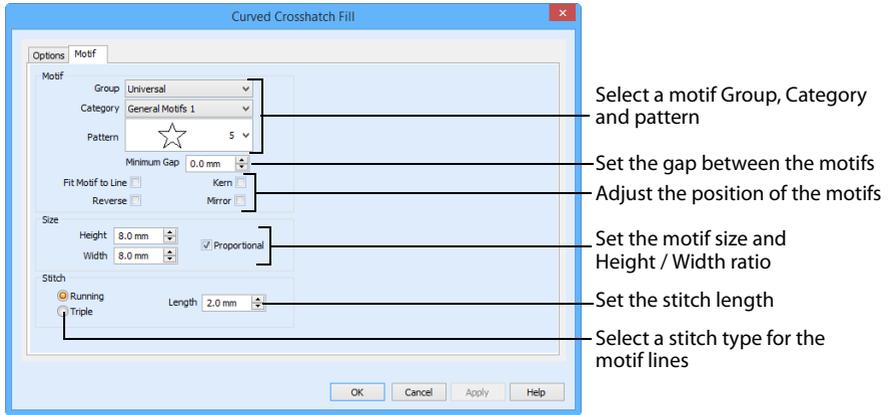
### Lines 2

Change the position of the origin for the other set of curved lines.

Set percentage Curve In and Curve Out from -100 to 100. The initial setting for Curve In % and for Curve Out % is 50.

# Curved Crosshatch Fill — Motif

The selected Motif is only used by the Curved Crosshatch Fill if the Motif Line option is selected on the Options tab.



## Motif

### Group

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired group of motif patterns.

### Category

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired category of motif patterns.

### Pattern

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired motif visually. Motifs are also numbered for convenient reference.

### Minimum Gap

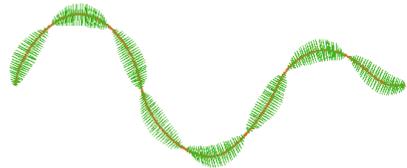
The Minimum Gap is the minimum amount of extra stitching that is placed between the motifs along the line. This is in addition to any spacing that is part of the selected motif.

### Fit Motif To Line

Select this option to make the shape of the motifs follow the curves of the line.



When Fit To Line is off, the ends of each motif are placed on the line.



When Fit To Line is on, each motif is adjusted to fit along the line.

## Reverse

Use this option to reverse the direction of the motif along the line. Some motifs are symmetrical and will have no apparent change when they are reversed.

## Kern

Use Kern to automatically increase the space between adjacent motifs where necessary, so that the motifs fit along the line without overlapping.

## Mirror

Use this option to mirror the motif across the line of motif fill. Some motifs are symmetrical and will have no apparent change when they are mirrored.

## Size

### Height and Width

The Height and Width are initially set according to the chosen motif. The maximum and minimum values for Height and Width are individual to each motif.

### Proportional

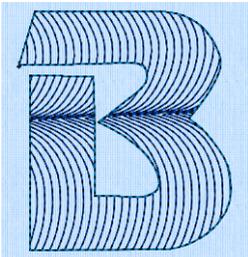
Use this option to keep the relative Height and Width in proportion when either is changed.

## Stitch

Select Running or Triple stitch for stitching out the motifs. Set the maximum stitch Length from 1 to 12mm in steps of 0.1mm. Length is initially set to the recommended value for each motif.

# MultiWave Fill

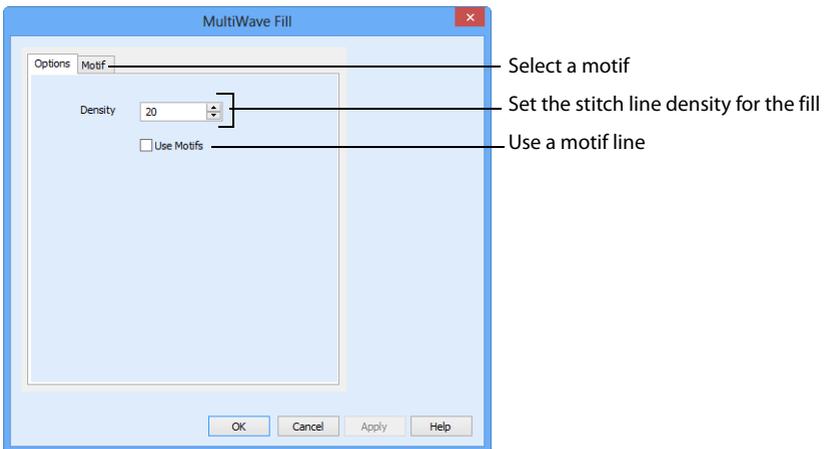
MultiWave fill areas use a wave pattern defined by a line, or lines, drawn on the fill area by the designer. Vary the density, or use a motif for the stitch lines.



MultiWave Fill, using a density of 20 and a Triple Stitch border  
(Revue UC 25-120mm MW, Display category)

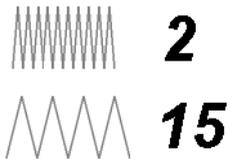
For an example using MultiWave Fill, see “Create a Two Letter Monogram” on page 323.

## MultiWave Fill — Options



### Density

Set Density from 2 to 40. The lower the number, the closer together the stitches and the more stitches are produced.

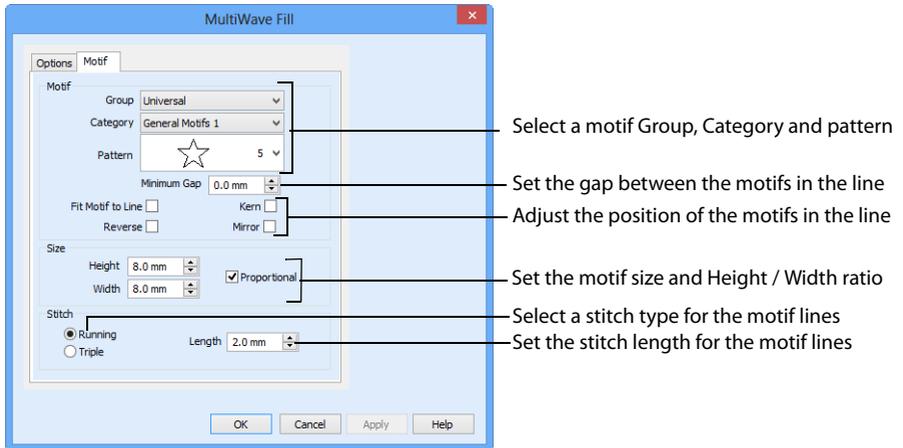


### Use Motifs

Click Use Motifs if you would prefer to use motifs instead of a plain line to follow the line angle selected for the fill. Click the Motif tab to choose a motif.

# MultiWave Fill — Motif

The selected Motif is only used by the MultiWave Fill if the Use Motifs option is selected on the Options tab.



## Motif

### Group

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired group of motif patterns.

### Category

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired category of motif patterns.

### Pattern

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired motif visually. Motifs are also numbered for convenient reference.

### Minimum Gap

The Minimum Gap is the minimum amount of extra stitching that is placed between the motifs along the line. This is in addition to any spacing that is part of the selected motif.

### Fit Motif To Line

Select this option to make the shape of the motifs follow the curves of the line.



When Fit To Line is off, the ends of each motif are placed on the line.



When Fit To Line is on, each motif is adjusted to fit along the line.

## Reverse

Use this option to reverse the direction of the motif along the line. Some motifs are symmetrical and will have no apparent change when they are reversed.

## Kern

Use Kern to automatically increase the space between adjacent motifs where necessary, so that the motifs fit along the line without overlapping.

## Mirror

Use this option to mirror the motif across the line of motif fill. Some motifs are symmetrical and will have no apparent change when they are mirrored.

## Size

### Height and Width

The Height and Width are initially set according to the chosen motif. The maximum and minimum values for Height and Width are individual to each motif.

### Proportional

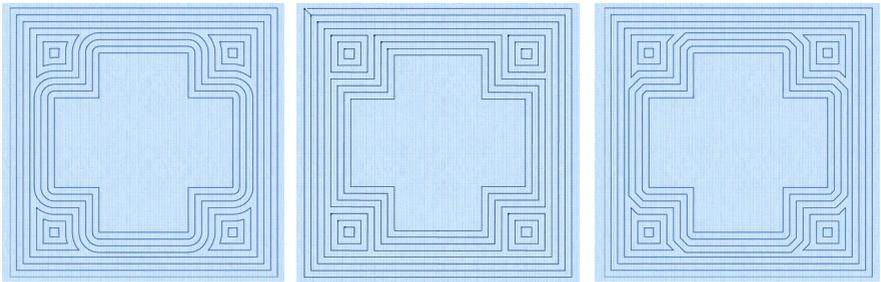
Use this option to keep the relative Height and Width in proportion when either is changed.

## Stitch

Select Running or Triple stitch for stitching out the motifs. Set the maximum stitch Length from 1 to 12mm in steps of 0.1mm. Length is initially set to the recommended value for each motif.

# Echo Fill

Echo Fill places echo lines within a shape. Choose from rounded, square and diagonal corners, and set the gap between the echo lines.



Rounded corners

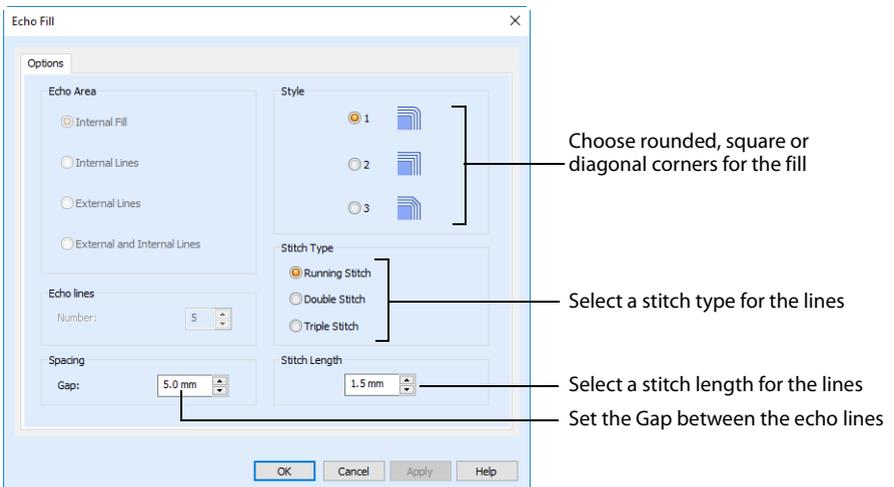
Square corners

Diagonal corners

For an example using Echo Fill, see “Show an Echo Around an Embroidery” on page 149.

## Echo Fill — Options

The Echo Fill properties dialog box enables you to place echo lines within a shape. Set the style, gap, stitch type and stitch length.



Choose rounded, square or diagonal corners for the fill

Select a stitch type for the lines

Select a stitch length for the lines

Set the Gap between the echo lines

Some options used in other modules are unavailable in the Quilt Block Wizard. “Show an Echo Around an Embroidery” on page 149

## Style

Choose from 1, 2 or 3. For a square shape:

- 1  will create rounded corners
- 2  will create square corners

- 3  will create diagonal corners

Rounded corners (1) is initially selected.

### Stitch type

Select a line type for the echo lines in the fill. Choose from:

- Running Stitch
- Double Stitch
- Triple Stitch

### Spacing

Set the Gap to the preferred distance between lines of stitching.

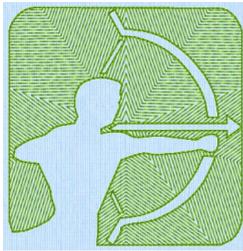
Set the Gap from 2mm to 20mm in steps of 0.1mm. It is initially set to 5mm.

### Stitch Length

Set the stitch length for the echo lines from 1 to 12mm in 0.1mm steps. The initial setting is 1.5mm.

# Shape Fill

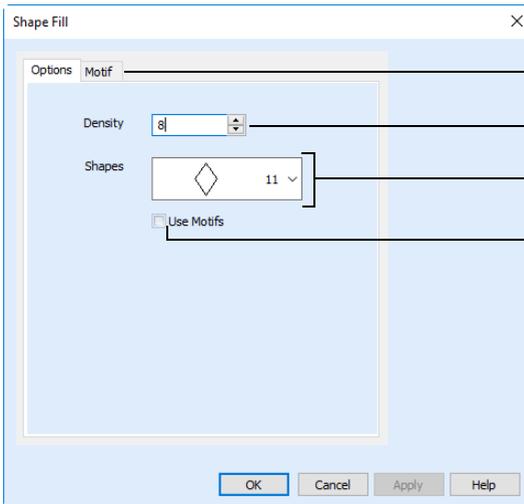
Shape fill areas use one of 75 different shapes. Vary the stitch density and use motif lines for the fill.



Shape Fill Area using Shape 26 and Density 12.  
(SuperDesign Zodiac 3, number 3)

The Shape Fill properties dialog box has tabs for setting all the properties on a shape fill area.

## Shape Fill — Options



Select a motif for the fill

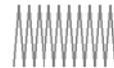
Set the stitch density for the fill

Select a shape for the fill

Use motif lines in the fill

### Density

Set Density from 2 to 40. The lower the number, the closer together the stitches and the more stitches are produced.



**2**

### Shapes

Click the drop-down arrow and select the desired shape from the list.



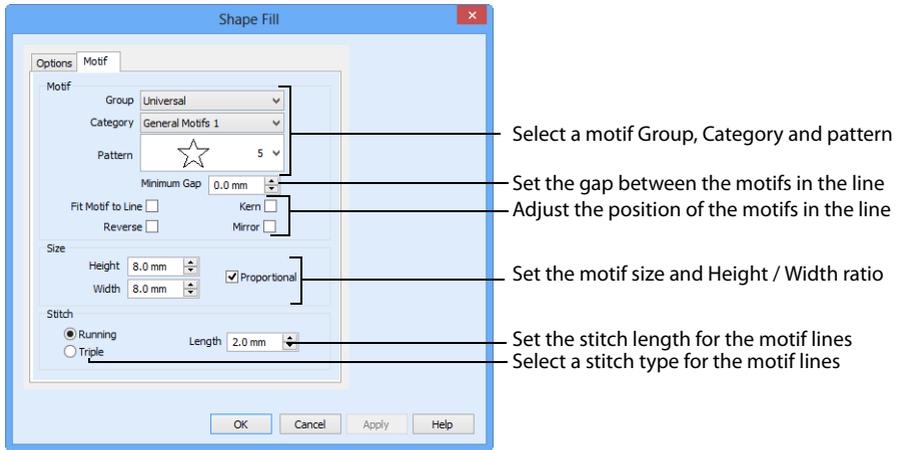
**15**

### Use Motifs

Click Use Motifs if you would prefer to use motifs instead of a plain line to follow the shape selected for the fill. Click the Motif tab to choose a motif.

# Shape Fill — Motif

The selected Motif is only used by the Shape Fill if the Use Motifs option is selected on the Options tab.



## Motif

### Group

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired group of motif patterns.

### Category

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired category of motif patterns.

### Pattern

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired motif visually. Motifs are also numbered for convenient reference.

### Minimum Gap

The Minimum Gap is the minimum amount of extra stitching that is placed between the motifs along the line. This is in addition to any spacing that is part of the selected motif.

### Fit Motif To Line

Select this option to make the shape of the motifs follow the curves of the line.



When Fit To Line is off, the ends of each motif are placed on the line.



When Fit To Line is on, each motif is adjusted to fit along the line.

## Reverse

Use this option to reverse the direction of the motif along the line. This is useful, for instance, if you have placed a QuickStitch™ Motif Line and wish to reverse the motif direction. Some motifs are symmetrical and will have no apparent change when they are reversed.

## Kern

Use Kern to automatically increase the space between adjacent motifs where necessary, so that the motifs fit along the line without overlapping.

## Mirror

Use this option to mirror the motif across the line of motif fill. Some motifs are symmetrical and will have no apparent change when they are mirrored.

## Size

### Height and Width

The Height and Width are initially set according to the chosen motif. The maximum and minimum values for Height and Width are individual to each motif.

### Proportional

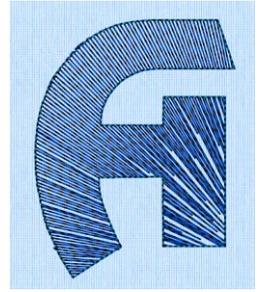
Use this option to keep the relative Height and Width in proportion when either is changed.

## Stitch

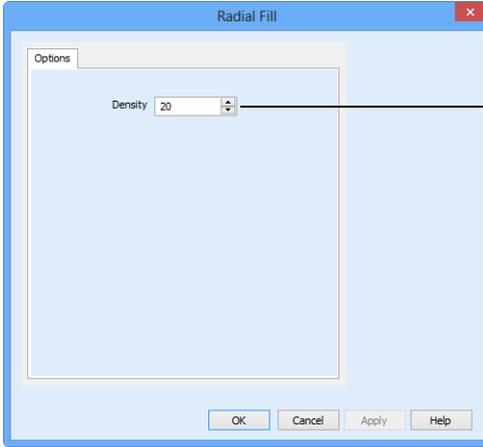
Select Running or Triple stitch for stitching out the motifs. Set the maximum stitch Length from 1 to 12mm in steps of 0.1mm. Length is initially set to the recommended value for each motif.

# Radial Fill

Radial fill areas use a pattern of radiating lines from an origin point. The stitch density can be varied.



## Radial Fill — Options

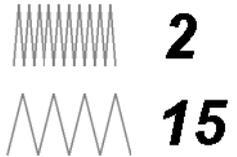


Set the density from 2 to 40

### Density

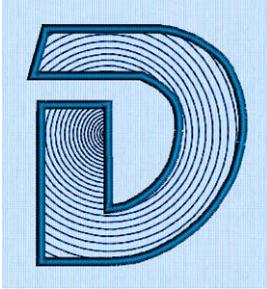
Set Density from 2 to 40. The lower the number, the closer together the stitches and the more stitches are produced.

The initial setting is 20.



# Spiral Fill

Spiral fill areas use a spiral pattern from an origin point. Use constant or gradient density.



Spiral Fill using Gradient Density with a Satin Line border.  
(Revue 2C UC 25-120 SF, Display category)

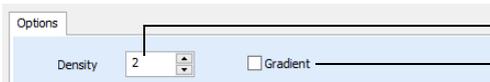
## Spiral Fill — Options

### Density

The density on a spiral fill area can change over a range, or have multiple density changes from the origin to the edge of the fill. Choose from two density options: Standard and Gradient.

*Embroidery on thicker fabrics usually looks better with more stitch coverage, or a low density setting. Choose a low value such as 2 or 3 for heavy knit fabrics, a higher value such as 5 or 6 for a light material like linen or satin.*

### Standard Density

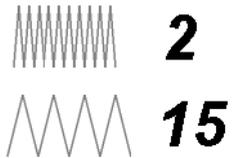


Set the density from 2 to 80

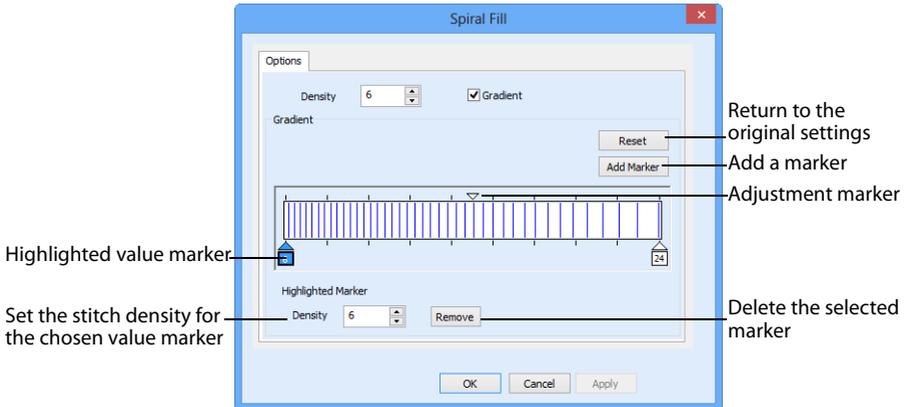
Select Gradient fill

Set the standard Density from 2 to 80. The lower the number, the closer together the stitches and the more stitches are produced.

The initial setting is 2.



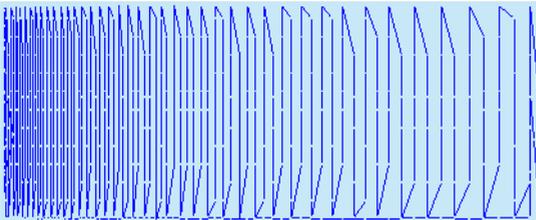
## Gradient Density



Use Gradient Density to change the density across the Spiral Fill. Set a value for the start and end density markers for the fill, and the density gradually changes between the two values. The start value is used at the origin of the spiral fill, and the end value is used at the edge.

*The markers can each take a value of 2 to 80, which means you can reverse the gradient simply by swapping the start and end values.*

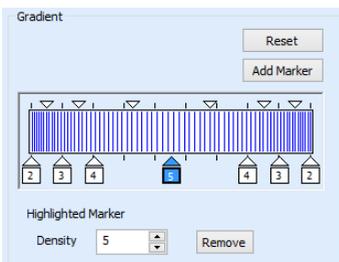
The example shows a Gradient of 2 to 15, with a fill angle of 90°.



Use the marker above the gradient bar to change the gradient across the fill.

### Add Marker

Click Add Marker to add a marker. The initial value for the marker will be between the existing markers. Edit the value and move the marker as desired.



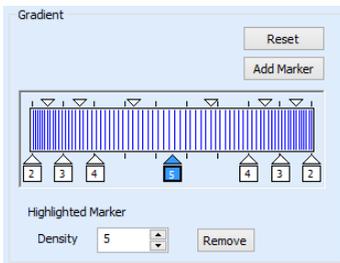
This means that you can have any combination of density values across the fill area. Remember, a higher value means the fill is less dense. The marker furthest to the left affects the spiral fill at the origin, then from left to right to the edge of the spiral fill.

## Remove

Click Remove to delete the highlighted marker.

## Use Spiral Fill with a Gradient

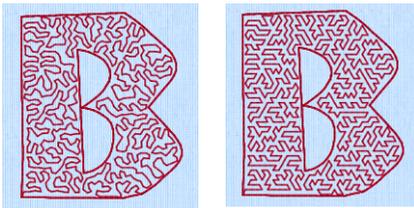
- 1 Open the properties dialog box.
- 2 Click the Gradient option. The Gradient box will become available.
- 3 Click a value maker (the marker below the gradient bar) and change the value in the Density box to the required density value.
- 4 Click Apply to view your changes.
- 5 Move the adjustment marker above the gradient bar to vary the change in density across the fill.
- 6 Click Add Marker to add another value marker and adjustment marker.
- 7 Change the density of the fill as desired.



- 8 Click OK to close the properties dialog box.

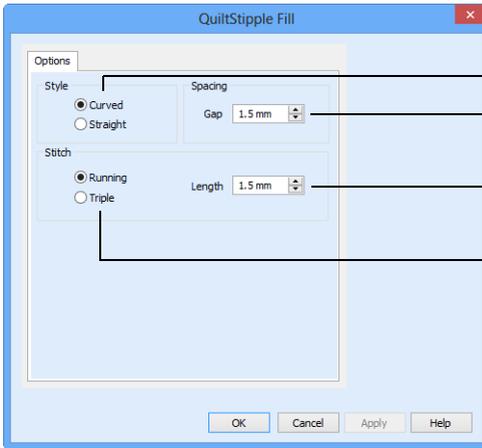
## QuiltStipple Fill

QuiltStipple fill areas use stipple stitch in curved or straight lines. Vary the gap between stitch lines and use running or triple stitch.



QuiltStipple Fill using curved and straight styles with a Triple Stitch border.  
(Inform UC 25-120mm QS, Display category)

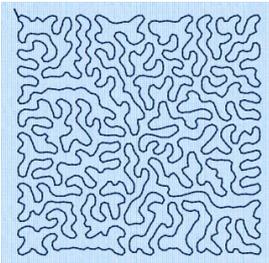
# QuiltStipple Fill — Options



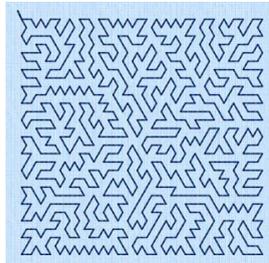
- Select curved or straight stipple lines
- Set the spacing between the stipple lines
- Set the stitch length for the stipple lines
- Select a stitch type for the stipple lines

## Style

Choose between curved or straight.



Curved



Straight

## Spacing

Set the Gap to the preferred distance between lines of stitching. This also, where possible, is the border inside the area, between the edge of the area and the fill pattern.

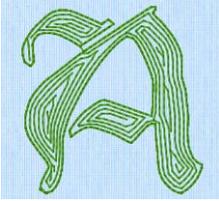
Set the Gap from 1 to 20mm in steps of 0.1mm. It is initially set to 5.0mm.

## Stitch

Select Running or Triple stitch for stitching out the fill. Set the Length of stitches from 1 to 12mm in steps of 0.1mm. Length is initially set to 1.5mm.

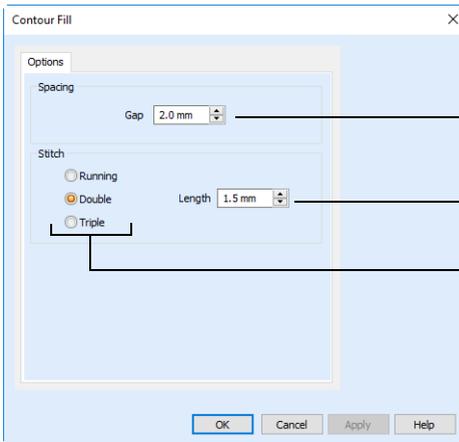
# Contour Fill

Contour fill areas use contour stitch lines. Vary the gap between stitch lines and the length of the stitches, and use running, double or triple stitch.



Contour Fill, using Triple Stitch and a 1.0mm gap, and with a Triple Stitch border.  
(Per Gothic 25-120mm CF, Elegant category)

## Contour Fill — Options



Set the space between the lines in the fill

Set a stitch length for the contour lines

Select a stitch type for the contour lines

### Spacing

Set the Gap to the preferred distance between lines of stitching. This also is the border inside the area, between the edge of the area and the fill pattern.

Set the Gap from 0.2 to 5mm in steps of 0.1mm. It is initially set to 1.5mm.

### Stitch

Select Running, Double or Triple stitch for stitching out the fill. Set the Length of stitches from 1 to 12mm in steps of 0.1mm. Length is initially set to 2mm.

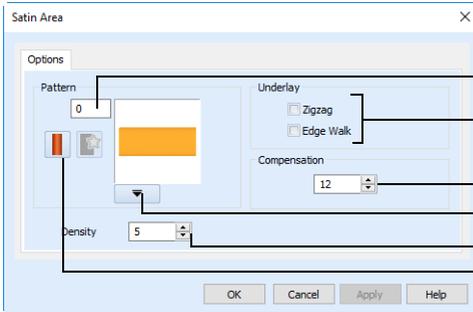
# Satin Area

Satin areas contain zigzag stitches that fill the area from one end to the other at the same density. The stitch angle changes with the shape of the area, and can be adjusted as desired. Choose automatic edge walk and/or zigzag underlay.



## Satin Area — Options

Use the Satin Area options (if available) to set density, compensation, pattern and underlay for satin areas.



- Search for a pattern by number
- Select an underlay type for the satin
- Adjust the area's size
- Choose a Category and pattern
- Set the stitch density for the satin
- Click to use no pattern

## Pattern

Choose from more than 250 patterns for satin (for areas wider than around 8-10mm). Click a pattern sample or enter the Pattern number to select a pattern. Set the Pattern number to 0 for standard satin with no pattern, or click No Pattern . The initial setting is 0.

Add new patterns using *Manage My Fills* in PREMIER+™ 2 Create (if PREMIER+™ 2 ULTRA is owned). View the patterns in the pattern gallery. See "Fill and Satin Patterns" on page 471.

## Underlay

Set the Underlay option that will be used for the satin area. Zigzag creates zigzag lines of running stitch as underlay. Use zigzag underlay for wide areas of satin. Edge walk places lines of running stitch just inside the edges of the satin areas. Use edge walk when the satin areas have both wide and narrow sections. For very wide areas of satin, select both underlay types.

Zigzag is initially selected.

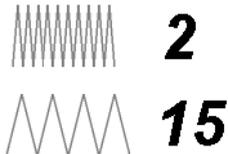
## Compensation

Compensation is used to make an area 'bolder' by increasing its relative size. Set Compensation from 0 to 30. The higher the number, the bolder the area appears.

## Density

Set Density from 2 to 80. The lower the number, the closer together the stitches and the more stitches are produced.

The initial setting is 4.



## Columns

Use the Column properties dialog box to edit the properties for the following column types:

- Satin Column
- Feathered Satin
- Richelieu Bars
- Tapered Motifs

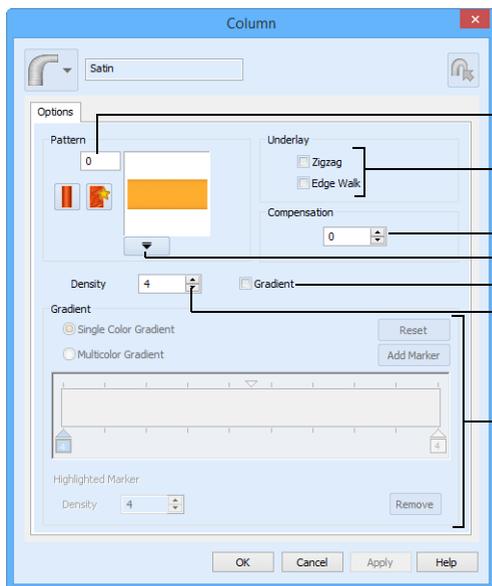
*You may edit the properties for the column type, but you cannot change between column types.*

## Satin Column

Satin Column forms a column of straight or curving satin.

### Satin Column Options

Use the Satin Column Options to set density, compensation, pattern (for columns wider than around 8-10mm) and underlay.



Search for a pattern by number

Select an underlay type for the satin

Adjust the area's size

Choose a Category and pattern

Use gradient density

Set the Standard density

Settings for Single & Multicolor gradient

## Pattern

Choose from more than 250 patterns for satin (for areas wider than around 8-10mm). Click a pattern sample or enter the Pattern number to select a pattern. Set the Pattern number to 0 for standard satin with no pattern, or click No Pattern . The initial setting is 0.

Add new patterns using *Manage My Fills* in PREMIER+™ 2 Create (if PREMIER+™ 2 ULTRA is owned). View the patterns in the pattern gallery. See "Fill and Satin Patterns" on page 471.

Patterns should only be used for columns wider than about 8-10 mm.

## Underlay

Set the Underlay option that will be used for the satin column. Zigzag creates zigzag lines of running stitch as underlay. Use zigzag underlay for wide areas of satin. Edge walk places lines of running stitch just inside the edges of the satin column. Use edge walk when the satin columns have both wide and narrow sections. For very wide satin columns, select both underlay types.

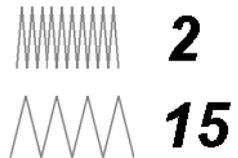
## Compensation

Compensation is used to make an area 'bolder' by increasing its relative size. Set Compensation from 0 to 30. The higher the number, the bolder the area appears. The initial setting is 0.

## Standard Density

Set Density from 2 to 80. The lower the number, the closer together the stitches and the more stitches are produced.

The initial setting is 4.



## Gradient

Use the Gradient settings to see and change the density settings and the color Gradient of the satin.

The color on a satin column can change over a range, or have multiple color changes across the area. This is ideal for gradual color changes such as subtle shadow effects. Gradient is not initially selected.

## Single Color Gradient

Select single or multicolor gradient

Highlighted value marker

Set the stitch density for the chosen value marker

Return to the original settings

Add a marker

Adjustment marker

Delete the selected marker

Use Single Color Gradient to change the density across a satin column with only one color. Set a value for the start and end density markers for the fill, and the density gradually changes between the two values. Add multiple markers for a more complex pattern.

*The markers can each take a value of 2 to 80, which means you can reverse the gradient simply by swapping the start and end values.*

Use the adjustment marker above the gradient bar to change the gradient across the area.

Use Reset to cancel your changes and use the initial settings.

Click Add Marker to add a value marker below the gradient bar, and an adjustment marker above the gradient bar. The initial value for the marker will be between the existing markers. Edit the density value, and move the value and adjustment markers as desired. This means that you can have any combination of density values across the area. A higher value means the fill is less dense.

Density is used to change the density of the stitching. Set Density from 2 to 80. The higher the number, the less dense the satin. The initial start marker setting is 4, and end marker setting is 4.

Click Remove to delete the highlighted marker.

## Multicolor Gradient

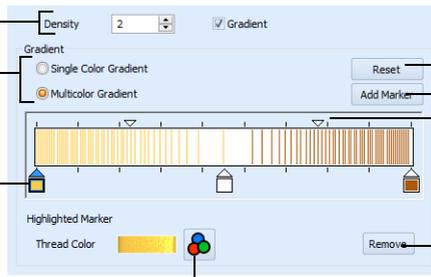
Set the stitch density

for the whole fill

Select single or  
multicolor gradient

Selected color marker

Choose a thread for the  
highlighted marker



Return to the  
original settings

Add a marker

Adjustment markers

Delete the selected  
marker

Use Multicolor Gradient to change the color across a satin column with only one density. Set colors for the start and end markers for the area, and the color gradually changes between the two values.

Use the marker above the gradient bar to change the color gradient across the area.

Use Reset to cancel your changes and use the initial settings.

Click Add Marker to add a color marker below the gradient bar, and an adjustment marker above the gradient bar. The initial color for the marker will be the same as the currently highlighted marker. Change the color and move the color and adjustment markers as desired. This means that you can have any combination of colors across the area.

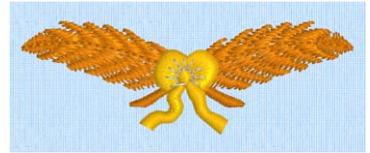
Use Thread Color  to change the color of the currently highlighted marker. The Color Selection box will be displayed.

See "Change an Existing Thread Color" on page 45.

Click Remove to delete the highlighted marker.

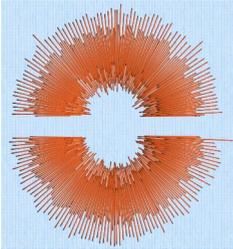
# Feathered Satin

Feathered Satin forms a column of satin that is feathered on one, or both sides. A Feathered Satin column uses zigzag stitches where the start and end points of the stitches are random rather than all parallel.

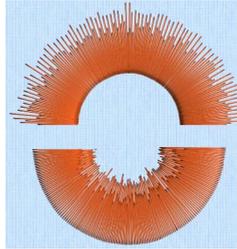


Flourish Laurel 1/8 uses Feathered Satin for the leaves

Choose whether one or both sides of the column will be feathered, and set the stitch length and density.



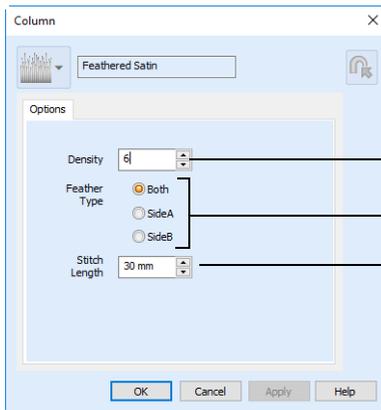
Feather Both Sides



Feather One Side

## Feathered Satin Options

Use the Feathered Satin Options to set density, Feather Type, and Stitch Length.



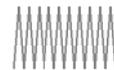
Set the density for the feathered satin

Select which side of the column to feather

Set the length of the feathering stitches

### Density

Set Density from 2 to 40. The lower the number, the closer together the stitches and the more stitches are produced. The initial setting is 15.



2



20

## Feather Type

Select which side of the column to feather. The available options are Both, Side A or Side B, according to the side where the first (A) or second (B) point was placed.

## Stitch Length

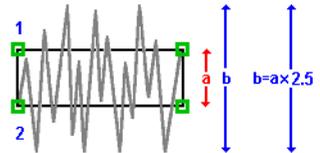
Set the Length of feathering stitches from 2 to 30mm in steps of 1 mm. The initial setting is 30mm.

## Feather Both Sides

Create a satin column with both edges feathered.

The start and end points of the stitches are random rather than all parallel. The final width of the section is 2-2.5 times larger than it is for standard satin, as shown.

The maximum stitch lengths of the feathered satin may be from 2 to 30mm and the satin density may be from 2 to 40.

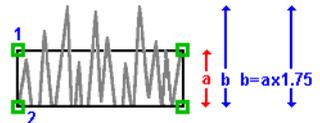


## Feather One Side

Create curved satin with one edge feathered.

If desired, the feathered side may be altered in the properties dialog box.

One edge is feathered, so the start and end points of the stitches on the feathered are random rather than all parallel. The final width of the section is 1.5 to 1.75 times larger than it would be for standard satin, as shown.



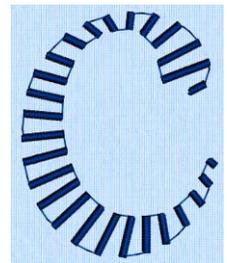
The maximum stitch lengths of the feathered satin may be from 2 to 30mm and the satin density may be from 2 to 40.

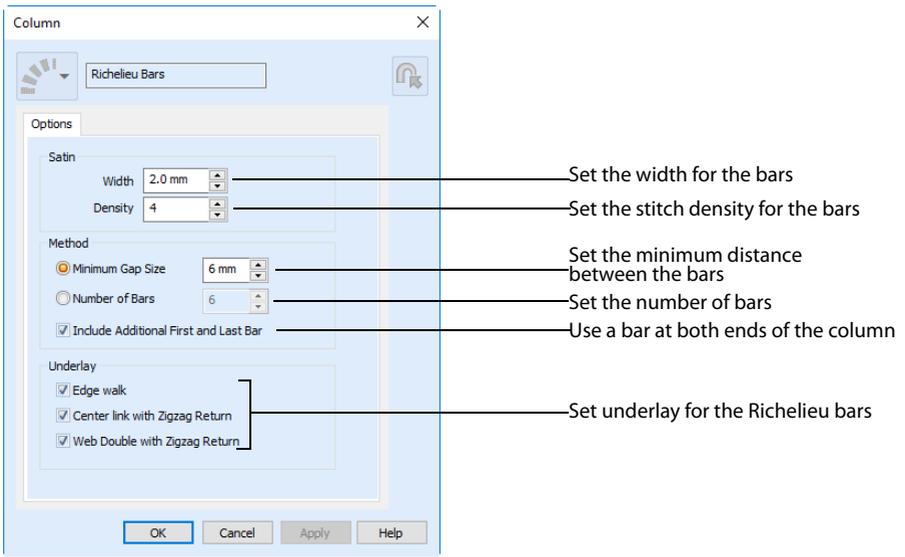
## Richelieu Bars

Richelieu Bars forms bars in the work area. Richelieu bars are often used in lace designs.

## Richelieu Bars Options

Use Richelieu Bars Options to set the width and density of the satin bars, the gap between the bars, and the number of bars.





Set the width for the bars

Set the stitch density for the bars

Set the minimum distance between the bars

Set the number of bars

Use a bar at both ends of the column

Set underlay for the Richelieu bars

## Satin

Set the Width of the satin bars from 1mm to 6mm in steps of 0.1mm. The initial setting is 2mm.

Set the Density of the satin bars from 2 to 15. The initial Density is 4.

## Method

Select a method for setting the number of bars.

Select Minimum Gap Size to set the distance between the bars from 1mm to 50mm in steps of 1mm. The initial setting is 6mm.

Select Number of Bars to set the number of bars from 1 to 50. The initial number is 6.

Turn off Include Additional First and Last Bar if the edges of the Richelieu bar area are to be covered in satin. This option is initially selected.

## Underlay

Choose from Edge walk, Center link with zigzag return, and Web double with zigzag return. All three options are initially selected.

- Edge walk places lines of running stitch just inside the edges of the satin bars.
- Center link with zigzag return places a central line of running stitch, with a zigzag return line.
- Web double with zigzag return places a crosshatch pattern of stitching with a zigzag return line.

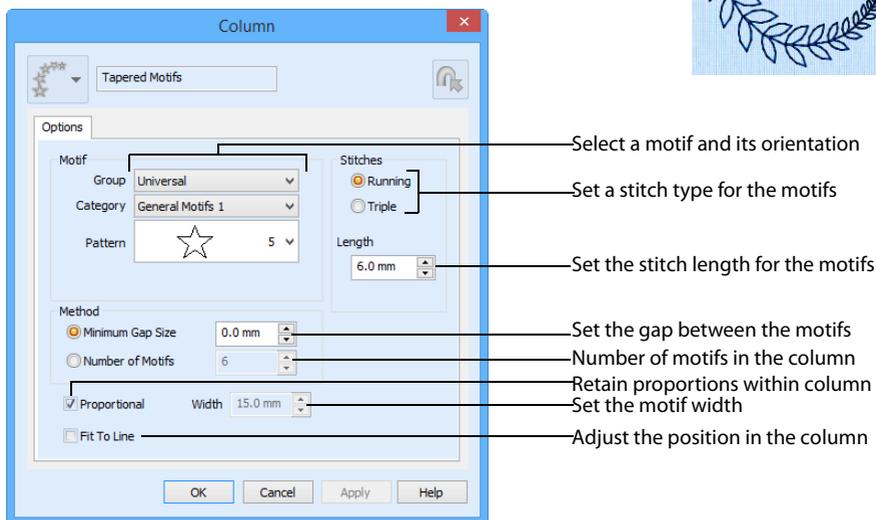
*Vary the combination of underlay, depending on the type of design. It is recommended to use all three types for free-standing lace.*

## Tapered Motifs

Tapered Motifs forms columns of motifs. Tapered motifs are often used in lace designs.

### Tapered Motifs Options

Use the Tapered Motifs Options to set the motif type, stitch type, and placement method.



## Motif

### Group

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired group of motif patterns.

### Category

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired category of motif patterns.

### Pattern

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired motif visually. Motifs are also numbered for convenient reference.

## Method

### Minimum Gap Size

The Minimum Gap is the minimum amount of extra stitching that is placed between the motifs along the line. This is in addition to any spacing that is part of the selected motif.

### Number of Motifs

Set the number of Motifs from 2 to 50. The initial number is 6.

## Fit To Line

Select this option to make the shape of the motifs follow the curves of the line.



When Fit To Line is off, the ends of each motif are placed on the line.



When Fit To Line is on, each motif is adjusted to fit along the line.

## Proportional

Use this option to keep the relative height and width of the motif in proportion when the column width is changed. This option is selected by default.

## Width

The Width is initially set according to the chosen motif. The maximum and minimum values for Width are individual to each motif.

# Line Types

The following line types are available:

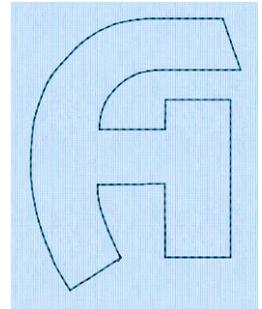
- Running Stitch
- Double Stitch
- Double Zigzag
- Triple Stitch
- Satin Line
- Motif Line

## Running Stitch

Running stitch is a row of small stitches going forward. Running Stitch is also the preferred option for traveling stitches between sections of an embroidery.



Lines of running stitch are used for light markout or as underlay.



## Running Stitch Properties

A screenshot of the 'Running Stitch' dialog box in an embroidery software. The dialog has a 'Line' section with a 'Length' field set to '2.0 mm'. Below this is a 'Cutwork' section with a checkbox for 'Create Cutwork Needle Line', a 'Method' section with radio buttons for '2 Cutwork Needles' (selected) and '4 Cutwork Needles', and a 'Secure Points' section with a checked checkbox for 'Include Secure Points' and a 'Distance Between Secure Points' field set to '30 mm'. Callout lines point from text labels to these specific settings.

Running Stitch

Line

Length 2.0 mm

Cutwork

Create Cutwork Needle Line

Method

2 Cutwork Needles

4 Cutwork Needles

Secure Points

Include Secure Points

Distance Between Secure Points 30 mm

OK Cancel Apply Help

Set the stitch length

Create a cutwork line

Select 2 or 4 cutwork needles

Create stability gaps in the cutwork line

Set the distance between the gaps

### Length

Set the Length of Running stitch from 0.3 to 12mm in steps of 0.1mm.

The initial setting is 2.0 mm.

## Cutwork

The cutwork needle features allow you to draw a cutting line within your design, optimized for the INSPIRA® Cutwork Needles. Use two or four cutwork needles, and add secure points for fabric stability.

### Create Cutwork Needle Line

Enable the cutwork needle feature. By default this feature is not selected (checked).

### Method

Choose between:

- 2 Cutwork Needles
- 4 Cutwork Needles

By default 2 needles is selected.

*With 2 needles, a bladed needle set at one angle is used to cut around the shape, and then the second needle travels around the shape cutting at a different angle.*

*With 4 needles a more precise cutting method is used, where each needle is used for the section of the shape that closely matches its angle. This method is recommended for more delicate fabrics.*

### Secure Points

Select Include Secure Points to create gaps in the cutwork needle line. By default Include Secure Points is selected.

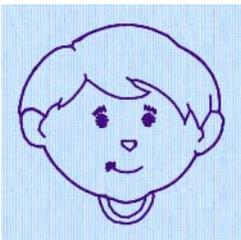
*This allows the cut fabric to remain attached for stability while all the cutwork needle lines are created. Afterwards it can be easily trimmed with scissors.*

Set the Distance Between Secure Points from 10mm to 100mm in steps of 1 mm. The initial setting is 30mm.

## Double Stitch

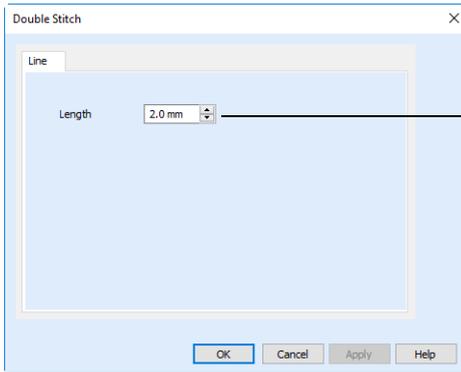
Double stitch is a row of small stitches going forward, followed by a row of small stitches going backward, so it ends at the same point where it began.

Double stitch is used for markout and for branching outlines that need to return to their starting points.



This Cartoons 2 SuperDesign uses Running Stitch, Double Stitch and Triple Stitch.

## Double Stitch Properties



Set the stitch length from 1mm to 12mm

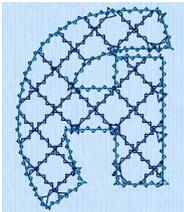
### Length

Set the Length of Double stitch from 1 to 12mm in steps of 0.1mm.

The initial setting is 2mm.

## Double Zigzag

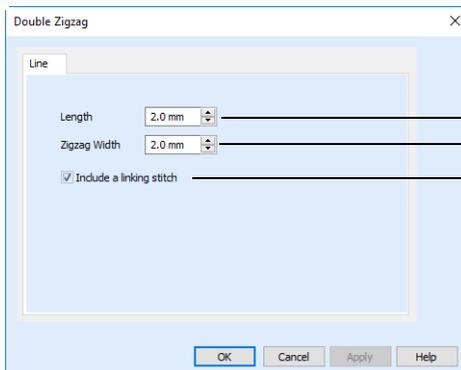
Double Zigzag stitch is a row of small stitches going forward, followed by a zigzag row of small stitches going backward, so it ends at the same point where it began.



Crosshatch Fill, using Diamond style and an Angle of 45 degrees. Double Zigzag is the stitch used in the fill and for the border.  
(Revue Patchwork UC 50-120mm XH)

*Double Zigzag is a special stitch type, recommended for lace. A running stitch line is retraced in a zigzag pattern to create a mesh if sections are placed together. Alternatively, use this stitch type for crosshatch fill.*

## Double Zigzag Properties



Set the stitch length

Set the width of the zigzag line

Use a linking stitch between sections of Double Zigzag

## Length

Set the Length of Double Zigzag stitch from 1 to 12mm in steps of 0.1mm.

The initial setting is 2mm.

## Zigzag Width

Set the Width of the Zigzag part of the stitch from 0.2 to 6mm in steps of 0.1mm.

The initial setting is 0.6mm.

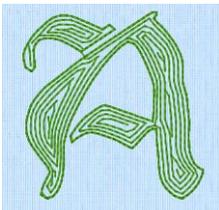
## Include a Linking Stitch

Use a linking stitch between sections of Double Zigzag stitch.

## Triple Stitch

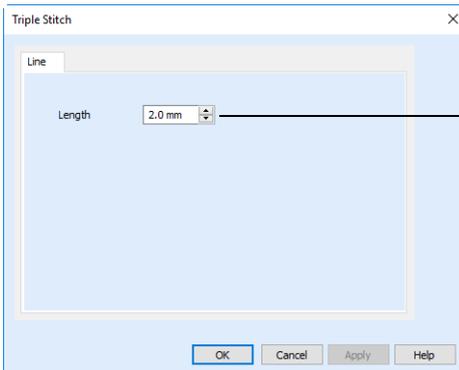
Triple stitch is a row of small three-part stitches, each composed of one stitch going forward, one going backward then one going forward. The stitch length can be changed from 1mm to 12mm for individual lines in the properties dialog box.

Use triple stitch for heavy markout or as heavy joining lines between sections of a character or SuperDesign.



Contour Fill, using Triple Stitch and a 0.8mm gap, and with a Triple Stitch border.  
(Per Gothic 25-120mm CF, Elegant category)

## Triple Stitch Properties



Set the stitch length

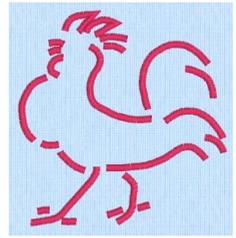
## Length

Set the Length of Triple stitch from 1 to 12mm in steps of 0.1mm.

The initial setting is 2mm.

# Satin Line

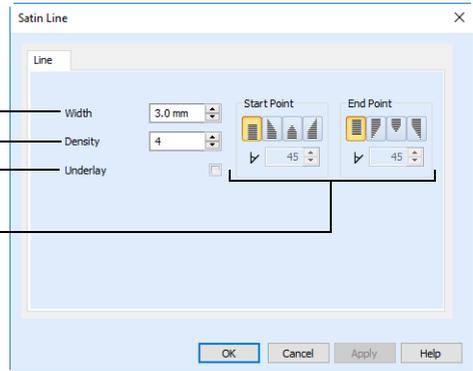
Satin Line is a line of constant-width satin stitch. It can be used alone, or as a border to a fill. The width of the line can be set from 1 to 12mm.



## Satin Line Properties

Set density, width and taper for satin line.

- Set the satin line width
- Set the stitch density for the line
- Use edge walk underlay inside each edge of the line
- Taper the ends of the satin line



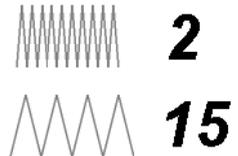
### Width

Set Width for satin border from 1 to 12mm in 0.1mm steps.

### Density

Set Density from 2 to 15. The lower the number, the closer together the stitches and the more stitches are produced. The initial setting is 4.

*Embroidery on thicker fabrics usually looks better with more stitch coverage, or a low density setting. Choose a low value such as 2 or 3 for heavy knit fabrics, a higher value such as 5 or 6 for a light material like linen or satin.*



### Underlay

Use this option to place edge walk underlay inside each edge of the satin line. Underlay will not be generated if the Border Width is set below 2mm.

### Tapered Ends

The Start Point and End Point settings can be used to taper the ends of your satin lines.

*Use these options to create mitered or pointed ends for your satin lines.*

### Start Point

Use these options to change the type of line beginning for the satin line. Select a taper type, then set the angle of the taper.

- No Taper
- Left Taper

- Central Point 
- Right Taper 

To set the Taper Angle , click the up and down arrows or enter a number.

### End Point

Use these options to change the type of line end for the satin line. Select a taper type, then set the angle of the taper.

- No Taper 
- Left Taper 
- Central Point 
- Right Taper 

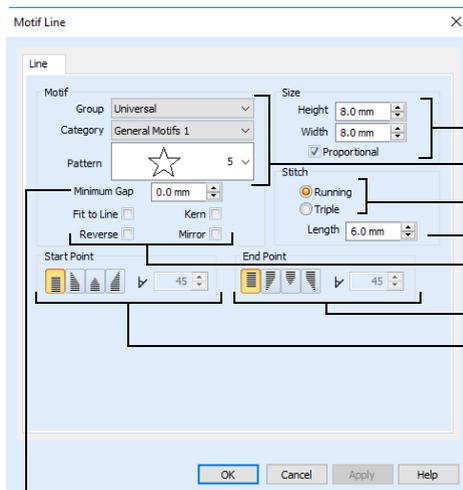
To set the Taper Angle , click the up and down arrows or enter a number.

## Motif Line

Motif line is used for decorative stitches and details.

### Motif Line Properties

The Motif Line properties dialog box appears when you select a motif line.



- Set the motif size and Height / Width ratio
- Select a motif Group, Category and pattern
- Select a stitch type for the motif line
- Set the stitch length for the motif line
- Adjust the position of the motifs in the line
- Taper the end of the motif line
- Taper the beginning of the motif line

Set the gap between the motifs in the line

### Motif

#### Group

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired group of motif patterns.

#### Category

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired category of motif patterns.

## Pattern

Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired motif visually. Motifs are also numbered for convenient reference.

## Minimum Gap

The Minimum Gap is the minimum amount of extra stitching that is placed between the motifs along the line. This is in addition to any spacing that is part of the selected motif.

## Fit To Line

Select this option to make the shape of the motifs follow the curves of the line.



When Fit To Line is off, the ends of each motif are placed on the line.



When Fit To Line is on, each motif is adjusted to fit along the line.

## Reverse

Use this option to reverse the direction of the motif along the line. Some motifs are symmetrical and will have no apparent change when they are reversed.

## Kern

Use Kern to automatically increase the space between adjacent motifs where necessary, so that the motifs fit along the line without overlapping.

## Mirror

Use this option to mirror the motif across the line of motifs. Some motifs are symmetrical and will have no apparent change when they are mirrored.

## Size

### Height and Width

The Height and Width are initially set according to the chosen motif. The maximum and minimum values for Height and Width are individual to each motif.

### Proportional

Use this option to keep the relative Height and Width in proportion when either is changed.

## Stitch

Select Running or Triple stitch for stitching out the motifs. Set the maximum Length of stitches from 1 to 20mm in steps of 0.1 mm. Length is initially set to the recommended value for each motif.

## Tapered Ends

The Start Point and End Point settings can be used to taper the ends of your motif lines.

For Motif Lines, the Central Point option starts at the first stitch point in the first motif in the line. The precise position of the point will vary, depending on the motif used.

*Use these options to create mitered or pointed ends for your motif lines.*

### Start Point

Use these options to change the type of line beginning for the Motif Line. Select a taper type, then set the angle of the taper.

- No Taper 
- Left Taper 
- Central Point 
- Right Taper 

To set the Taper Angle , click the up and down arrows or enter a number.

### End Point

Use these options to change the type of line end for the Motif Line. Select a taper type, then set the angle of the taper.

- No Taper 
- Left Taper 
- Central Point 
- Right Taper 

To set the Taper Angle , click the up and down arrows or enter a number.

## Fill and Satin Patterns

Set the Fill Pattern number for fill areas, satin areas and columns. When a pattern fill area is first created, for example by converting from another stitch type, the initial setting is pattern 3. Standard satin uses Pattern 0, which is not available for Pattern Fill areas.

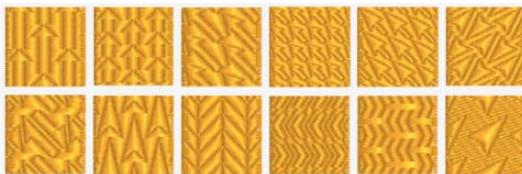
*Patterns in categories other than Standard are recommended for use in relatively large fill areas, as they have repeating patterns which work well when 'tiled' together. Pattern 36 produces a 'satin effect' fill stitch. The first four patterns in the Gradient & Lace category (253-256) are recommended for multicolor gradient. Patterns 257 to 264 provide banded fill patterns that combine with crosshatch parallel fills to create a weave effect for lace designs. Set Spacing for the parallel fill at 2.4mm to combine with Pattern 257, 2.8mm to combine with Pattern 258, and so on.*

For a complete reference to all the fill patterns that can be used, see the *Fill Patterns Sample Guide*. This is provided as a PDF for viewing and printing.

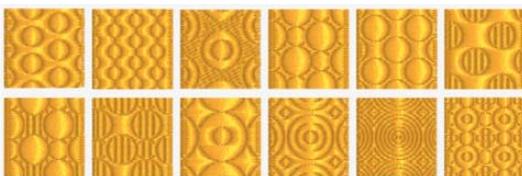
Animals 1 — Patterns 37 to 48



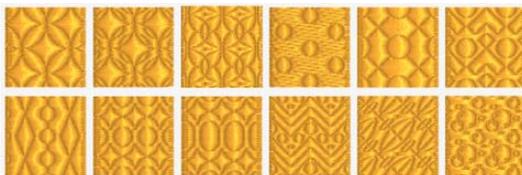
Arrows — Patterns 49 to 60



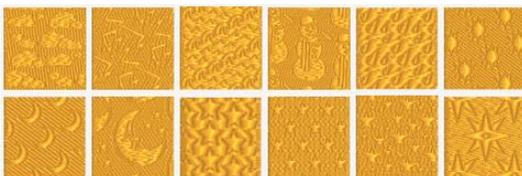
Circles 1 — Patterns 61 to 72



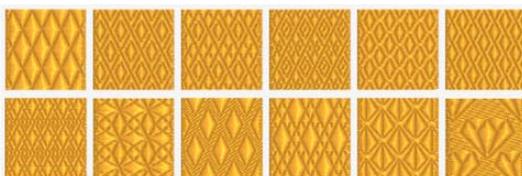
Circles 2 — Patterns 73 to 84



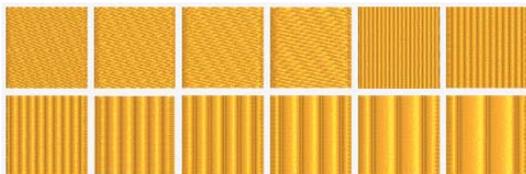
Climate — Patterns 85 to 96



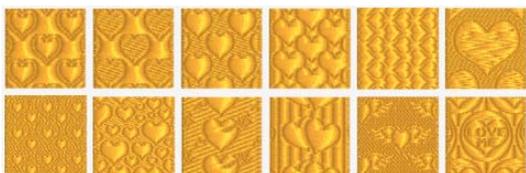
Diamonds — Patterns 97 to 108



Gradient & Lace —  
Patterns 253 to 264



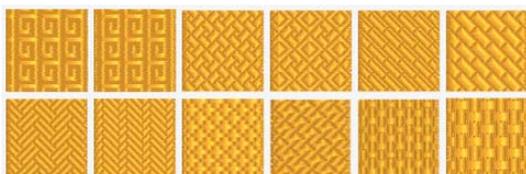
Hearts — Patterns 109 to 120



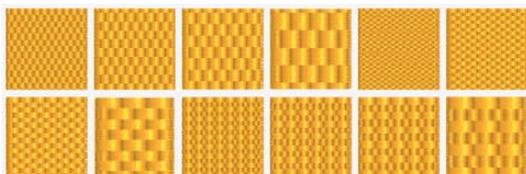
Leisure 1 — Patterns 121 to 132



Mosaic 1 — Patterns 133 to 144



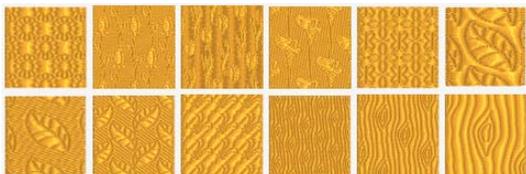
Mosaic 2 — Patterns 265 to 276



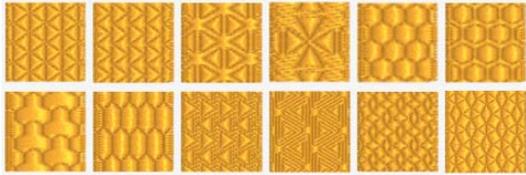
People — Patterns 145 to 156



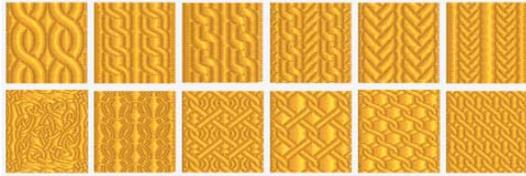
Plants & Flowers 1 —  
Patterns 157 to 168



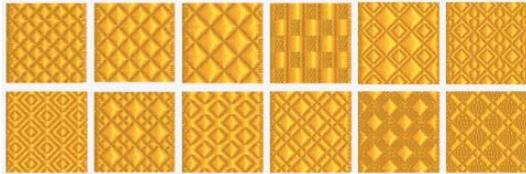
Polygons — Patterns 169 to 180



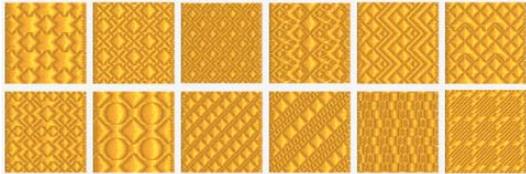
Rope & Chains —  
Patterns 181 to 192



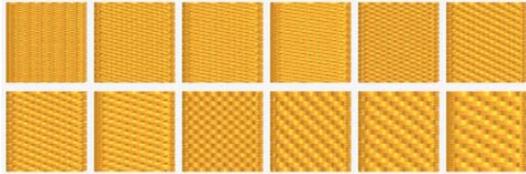
Squares 1 — Patterns 193 to 204



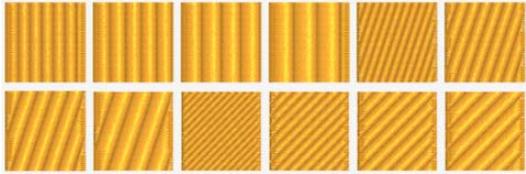
Squares 2 — Patterns 205 to 216



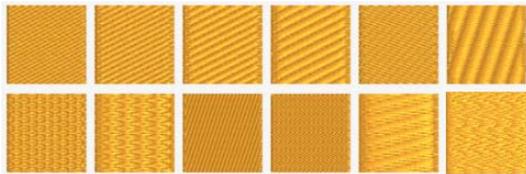
Standard 1 — Patterns 1 to 12



Standard 2 — Patterns 13 to 24



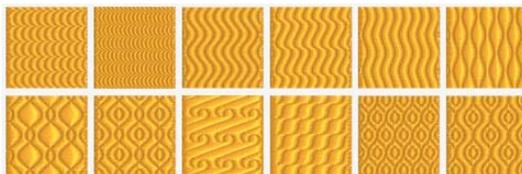
Standard 3 — Patterns 25 to 36



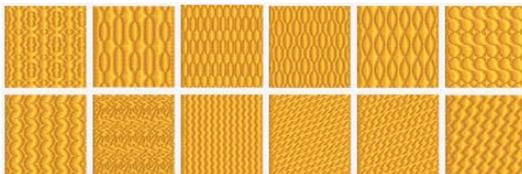
Transport — Patterns 217 to 228



Waves 1 — Patterns 229 to 240



Waves 2 — Patterns 241 to 252



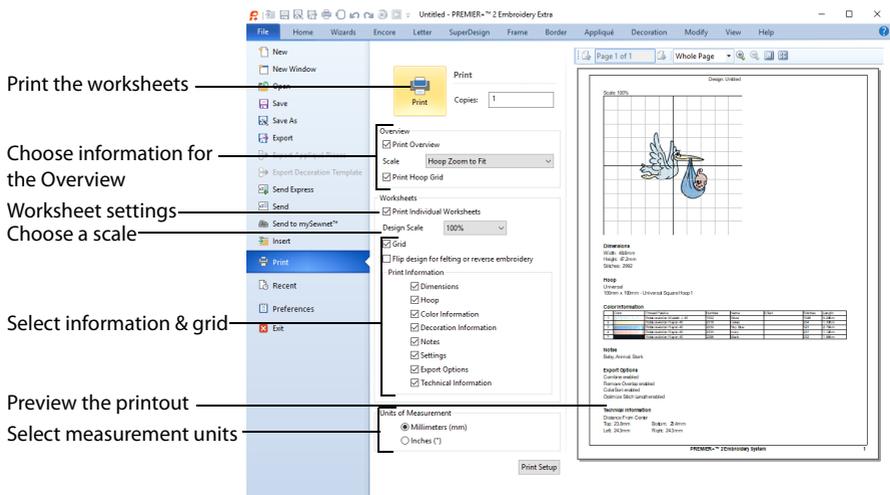
Use the Print page to select your print settings, and to preview and print a worksheet for your embroidery. In PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra, you may print an overview of the embroidery on a project background or split into sections. The printed pages match the Export settings for the embroidery.

To open the print page in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, click File, Print .

To open the print dialog in Windows® Explorer, right-click an embroidery, or a group of selected embroideries, and select Print in the Context menu.

## Print Page

Select the printer and page layout in print setup, and choose a scale, hoop, units of measurement, and details to be printed. Then click Print to print the embroidery worksheet and/or overview.



## Shortcuts

- Quick Access Toolbar: 

## Print

Click Print to open the Print page and print the project. See "Print" on page 480.

## Overview

Select the options in this section to print all embroideries (including the background if one has been loaded).

## Print Overview

Select whether to print an overview.

## Scale

Select from Hoop Real Size, Hoop Zoom to Fit, Garment/Quilt Block Real Size, and Garment/Quilt Block Zoom to Fit. Hoop Zoom to Fit is initially selected.

## Print Hoop Grid

Select whether to show a grid in the hoop view.

## Worksheet Options

Choose a hoop to display around the embroidery on the worksheet, and select a Design Scale. Choose the information to show for each embroidery in the worksheet (Dimension, Color Information, Notes and Settings and Technical Information), and whether to use a grid.

## Worksheets

Select the format of the worksheets. Choose a full worksheet for each embroidery, or display several embroideries on each sheet.

## Print Individual Worksheets

Print a worksheet for each piece of the embroidery.

## Design Scale

Select 25%, 50%, 75%, 100% or 'to fit' scaling when printing your embroidery. This is how large the embroidery will print compared to the real size of a stitched out embroidery. Use a reduced Design Scale if you want to ensure that the worksheet fits on one page. Look at the print preview pane to see how many pages will be printed.

## Grid

This determines whether or not a grid will be printed with the embroidery. If you turn this off you will still get a rectangle representing the hoop.

## Flip design for felting or reverse embroidery

Select to flip the embroidery for being stitched in reverse, or for felting effects.

## Print Information

This section determines what additional information is printed. All items are selected initially.

## Dimensions

The size of the embroidery and the stitch count.

## Hoop

The hoop used for the embroidery.

## Color Information

The sequence of thread colors used and, if available, the thread specification (range and thread number). Stop Commands and their text (where present) are also shown.

## Decoration Information

Information on the decorations used, including their size, color and number.

## Notes and Settings

Any notes or settings that are included with the embroidery.

## Export Options

The Export options used for the embroidery, as set in the Export dialog box.

## Technical Information

The distance of each edge of the embroidery from the center of the embroidery.

## Units of Measurement

Select either Millimeters or Inches.

## Print Setup

Click Print Setup to select a printer in the Print Setup dialog. See “Print Setup” on page 480. You can choose the units of measurement (inches or millimeters) and print quality. Select and enter details for a table of contents.

## Preview Pane

The preview pane displays the embroidery as it would appear when printed. Other information, such as the Dimension, Color Information, Notes, Settings and Technical Information, is shown depending on the choices made in the Worksheets section of the Print dialog box.

The print preview toolbar offers you options to zoom in and out of the page, and to show multiple pages  or individual pages . If there are multiple pages, step through them with Next Page  and Previous Page .

*If you are trying to preview an embroidery that does not lie entirely inside its hoop then the preview will not be shown and a message will appear instead of the Print Preview. Solve this by changing the hoop size or adjusting the embroidery so that it fits the hoop.*

## Print Preview Toolbar

The print preview toolbar offers you the following options:

### Next Page

Preview the next page  to be printed. If this is grayed out when you are on Page 1 then there are no more pages and the print fits on one page.

### Previous Page

Preview the previous page  to be printed.

### Multiple Pages

Select  how many printed pages to preview at a time.

### Individual Page

Preview only one  page at a time.

Zoom In

Take a closer look at the page to be printed.

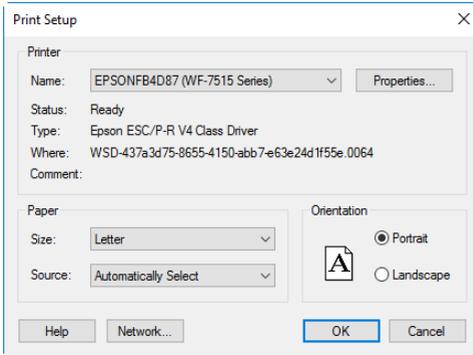
Zoom Out

Take a larger look at the page to be printed.

# Print Setup

This is displayed when you click the Print Setup button in the Print dialog box.

Use Print Setup to select the destination printer and its connection.



## Printer

Select the printer you want to use.

## Paper Size

Select the size of paper that the embroidery is to be printed on.

## Paper Source

Some printers offer multiple trays for different paper sources. Specify the tray here.

## Orientation

Choose Portrait or Landscape. Generally, you should not need Landscape for the standard hoop sizes as the embroidery is rotated automatically by the print process when you print an embroidery that uses a Rotated hoop.

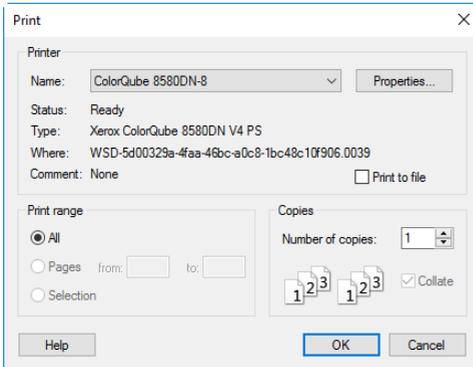
## Properties

Displays a dialog box that provides additional printing choices, specific to the type of printer you have selected.

# Print

Print the embroideries and background that are displayed on the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery screen. Other information, such as the Dimensions, Color Information, Notes and Technical Information is printed depending on the choices made in the Print page, where the scale may also be altered, and a grid turned on or off. If possible, the hoop will be printed with the same orientation as on the screen. If a horizontal hoop is too wide to fit on the paper at the Design Scale chosen in the Worksheets section then the hoop will be rotated 90 degrees when it is printed.

The Print dialog box appears, where you may specify number of copies, the destination printer, and other printer setup options.



## Shortcut

- Keys: Ctrl + P

## Printer

Select the printer you want to use.

## Properties

Displays a dialog box where you can make additional choices about printing, specific to the type of printer you have selected.

## Print to File

When this option is checked, you will be prompted for a file name after you click OK. The print job will then be saved with the file name you specify and can be sent to the printer at a later time.

*This is an advanced Windows® printing option.*

## Print Range

Select the range of pages you wish to print.

## Copies

Select the number of Copies you wish to print. If you choose to print more than one copy, you can choose to Collate the copies.

Use Preferences  to choose overlap options and adjust spelling checker settings. When these are changed, the new settings will be remembered when PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery is closed and reopened.

Remove Overlap When Combining Embroideries

**Spelling**

Check Spelling    English US ▾

**Appliqué Piece Margin**

Apply my settings for Appliqué Piece Margin, overriding the initial settings for lettering, SuperDesigns, Frames and Flourishes.

Override margin width: 1.0 mm ▾

Override Match Placement Line

## Shortcut

- File Menu: 

## Remove Overlap When Combining Embroideries

When this option is selected, overlapping areas of embroidery are removed, so that there is no build-up of stitching where embroideries overlap. This is used for the Combine All and Combine Selected functions.

This option is initially selected.

*Remove overlap is not used if any of the designs contain appliqué.*

## Spelling

When Check Spelling is selected, text entered in the Letters box on the Letter tab is checked for unrecognized words in the selected language. Spelling is also checked in the Letter Properties dialog box that appears when you right-click lettering on the work area. Additionally, new sentences are capitalized. To change the language, click the drop-down arrow and choose the desired language from the list.

Deselect Check Spelling if you prefer not to check spelling.

*Unrecognized words may be added to the dictionary when they are underlined in red.*

Check Spelling is initially selected, and the language is initially set to English US.

## Appliqué Piece Margin

Use the Appliqué Piece Margin settings in Preferences to override the initial appliqué placement settings for lettering, SuperDesigns, Frames and Flourishes.

*See “Appliqué Selection” on page 185 for more information on using appliqué placement margin and Match Placement Line.*

## Override margin width

Override the appliqué placement margin for the selected design, using the width set here instead. Set the margin for appliqué placement relative to the selected shape from -10mm to 10mm. The initial value is 1.0mm.

*If you prefer always to use a certain value margin width for your automated cutter, set it here.*

## Override Match Placement Line

Override the setting for Match Placement Line in the selected design.

*If you prefer always to match the placement line to the appliqué margin (for example, to ensure the placement line is visible when positioning precisely cut pieces), choose this setting.*

## Error Messages

### Opening the Program

"Feature not available in this version."

This message will appear when trying to start a module or feature if the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System cannot detect an activation for that module or feature. Ensure that you have activated your software.

Your license may not cover this module or feature. To upgrade, see your dealer or look in the Purchase Center at: [www.EmbroideryPurchaseCenter.com](http://www.EmbroideryPurchaseCenter.com)

### Loading Embroideries

"Cannot open embroidery."

This message appears if the desired embroidery is not where the module expects it to be, for example if an embroidery was loaded from a USB memory stick, then closed and the memory stick removed. The message would appear if you tried to load the embroidery from the Recent Files list on the File menu.

"Unrecognized file format."

This message appears if the embroidery you are attempting to load is corrupt. For example, it might have the extension .vp4, yet not be a proper Husqvarna Viking / Pfaff embroidery.

"Embroidery is corrupt."

The embroidery is corrupt and cannot be loaded. Refer to source of this file for a solution.

"Embroidery XY coordinates incorrect."

The embroidery is corrupt and cannot be loaded. Refer to source of this file for a solution.

"Unrecognized file extension."

This message appears if you attempt to load a file with an extension that does not belong to any embroidery file types. For example, it would appear if you tried to Drag and Drop a .doc file onto the screen.

"Embroidery not created using licensed software."

This message may appear if you attempt to load an embroidery created in third-party software. Such embroideries may cause unpredictable results.

## Using the Program

### "Feature not available in this version."

This message will appear when trying to start a module or feature if the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System cannot detect an activation for that module or feature. Ensure that you have activated your software.

Your license may not cover this module or feature. To upgrade, see your dealer or look in the Purchase Center at: [www.EmbroideryPurchaseCenter.com](http://www.EmbroideryPurchaseCenter.com)

## Using the ExpressDesign Wizard

### "Problem with scanner or camera software."

This message will appear when trying to use your scanner or digital camera if the device has not been installed correctly. Close PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, follow the manufacturer's instructions for the WIA-compliant device, then reopen PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery and try again.

### "Scanner or camera is in use by another application."

This message will appear when trying to use your scanner or digital camera if another graphics program is already open that uses the WIA-compliant device. Close PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery and the other graphics program, then reopen PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery and try again.

### "Your scanner or camera is no longer available for use. Close this program, plug in and switch on your scanner or camera, and run this program again."

This message will appear if the connection to your scanner or digital camera has a problem. Close PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, check the connections to your scanner or digital camera, then reopen PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery and try again.

### "Failure to acquire picture due to unknown causes."

This message will appear in certain circumstances when trying to use your scanner or digital camera, for example if the cable is disconnected during the scan or download. Close PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, check the connections to your scanner or digital camera, then reopen PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery and try again.

### "Could not load picture file."

This message could appear if the desired picture is not where the module expects it to be, for example if it was loaded from a USB memory stick, then closed and the memory stick removed. It could also appear if the file you are attempting to load is corrupt. For example, it might have an extension such as .bmp or .jpg, yet not be a proper picture file.

### "Some areas were too thick to be traced."

This message may appear when creating an Express Trace design if the final picture has thick areas of solid color. Some or all parts of the design may not be created. Try using

options in the wizard, on the Outline Finder and Expander page and/or the Monochrome Threshold page, to ensure the outlines are not too thick. Cancel the wizard, adjust the picture so that the outlines are easier to isolate with Monochrome Threshold, then open the picture in the ExpressDesign Wizard again.

### "Please choose a valid motif pattern."

This message appears if you try to select a motif from My Motifs, and all the motifs have been deleted from My Motifs. Use PREMIER+™ 2 Create to add at least one motif to My Motifs.

### "Error. Motif database is missing or corrupt. Cannot change motif."

This message usually means that the motif database has been deleted or corrupted. This may be corrected by repairing the installation.

First, delete the file named 'SystemMotifs.mdb' from ProgramData\VSMSSoftware\Premier+2\System.

*This assumes you have installed your PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System software in the default location. If the file is not present then this is the reason for the error. The file name may simply be shown as 'SystemMotifs'!*

Put your PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System software USB stick in your computer and re-run the installation. When the choice appears, select the "Modify or remove" option and click Next. In the next screen, select Repair and click Next. Continue with the installation and follow the on-screen instructions. When the installation is complete, the motifs will be restored.

## Using the ExpressMonogram Wizard

### "Please select letters for the monogram"

This message appears if you try to create a monogram with no letters selected. Select some letters.

### "One of your letters is not valid"

This message appears if you try to create a monogram using a character that is outside the available font range (ASCII 33-255). Use a valid character.

## Using the PhotoStitch Wizard

### "Problem with scanner or camera software."

This message will appear when trying to use your scanner or digital camera if the device has not been installed correctly. Close PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, follow the manufacturer's instructions for the WIA-compliant device, then reopen PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery and try again.

### "Scanner or camera is in use by another application."

This message will appear when trying to use your scanner or digital camera if another graphics program is already open that uses the WIA-compliant device. Close PREMIER+™ 2

Embroidery and the other graphics program, then reopen PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery and try again.

**"Your scanner or camera is no longer available for use. Close this program, plug in and switch on your scanner or camera, and run this program again."**

This message will appear if the connection to your scanner or digital camera has a problem. Close PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, check the connections to your scanner or digital camera, then reopen PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery and try again.

**"Failure to acquire picture due to unknown causes."**

This message will appear in certain circumstances when trying to use your scanner or digital camera, for example if the cable is disconnected during the scan or download. Close PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, check the connections to your scanner or digital camera, then reopen PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery and try again.

**"Error. This scanned image type is not supported."**

This message will appear if the scanner has created an image file that is not supported by PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery. Convert the image to a supported image file format.

**"Could not load picture file."**

This message could appear if the desired picture is not where the module expects it to be, for example if it was loaded from a USB memory stick, then closed and the memory stick removed. It could also appear if the file you are attempting to load is corrupt. For example, it might have an extension such as .bmp or .jpg, yet not be a proper picture file.

**"The selected dimensions will produce a large PhotoStitch and stitch creation may take some time. Removing background areas will reduce the time required."**

This message will appear if you specify a PhotoStitch larger than 26,000mm square. Click OK to continue creating the PhotoStitch. To reduce the stitch creation time, remove the picture background, particularly any very detailed areas. Stitch creation time is shorter for Linear PhotoStitch.

## Choosing Thread Colors

**"The color xx has been found in your database, but the thread color is not exactly the same."**

This message appears if the Thread Range and Color Number of the selected color are identical to those in your thread database, but some aspect of the color is different. It could be a different material or weight, or have additional colors as a variegated thread. This could happen if the design you are attempting to edit was supplied by someone with a different version of the color, for instance if they have edited it in My Threads, or if they have a later version of the thread database. If you click OK, the color will be replaced with the near match. You can alter it to any other color if desired. If you click Cancel, the color

will not be changed. To import the new color from an embroidery if it is a My Threads color, use PREMIER+™ 2 Thread Cache. To check for the latest updates for the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System, use Smart Update in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

### "Could not find xx in your database. Matching to closest thread in yy."

This message appears if the Thread Range of the selected color is not found in your thread database. This could happen if the design you are attempting to edit was supplied by someone with a later version of the thread database. If you click OK, the color will be replaced with the nearest match in the Import Thread Range you have set in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure. You can alter it to any other color if desired. If you click Cancel, the color will not be changed. To import the new color from an embroidery if it is a MyThreads color, use PREMIER+™ 2 Thread Cache. To check for the latest updates for the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System, use Smart Update in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

### "Error - thread range is corrupt or missing. Cannot change thread. Restore MySettings or reinstall the thread database."

This message appears if there is a problem with your thread database. You will be unable to choose a thread color. First close all the modules of the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System, close down your computer and restart. If this does not clear the problem, restore a backup with Restore MySettings, if you have created one using Backup MySettings in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure. Otherwise, you either need a new version of the thread database, or a repair install of your PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System software. To check for the latest updates for the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System, use Smart Update in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure.

If the error still appears, then repair the installation. First, delete the following files from ProgramData\VSMSoftware\Premier+2\System:

- User.sqlite
- System\_cdb2.sqlite

*This assumes you have installed your PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System software in the default location. If these files are not present then this is the reason for the error. The file names may be shown without their file extensions.*

Put your PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System software USB stick in your computer and re-run the installation. When the choice appears, select the "Modify or remove" option and click Next. In the next screen, select Repair and click Next. Continue with the installation and follow the on-screen instructions. When the installation is complete, the thread database will be restored to its original installation state. This means that the My Threads database will have the default set of threads.

*This will also reset MyThreadRanges and custom Quick Color Themes to their installation states. Check Smart Update in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure after repairing the installation.*

### "Error: Please select a valid thread."

This message appears if you attempt to click OK in the Color Selection dialog box when My Threads is selected as the thread range and My Threads is empty.

To prevent this message appearing again, use PREMIER+™ 2 Thread Cache to add at least one thread to My Threads.

## Creating Lettering, SuperDesigns, Frames, Flourishes and Borders

"Please enter an integer between 3 and 200."

This message appears if the size entered in the Size Box on the Letter tab is below 3mm or above 200mm. The Size setting refers to the height in millimeters of an uppercase 'A' in the selected font. If you wish to increase lettering above this you could click and drag one of the corner boxes or alter the Height or Width proportions.

"Error. Cannot open Font File."

This message appears if the font or SuperDesign set that you have selected is not available. The most likely reason is that it is already open in the optional PREMIER+™ 2 Font Create module. Close PREMIER+™ 2 Font Create, then try again. This could also happen if you opened the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery program, then accidentally moved or deleted the font from the relevant category folder in ProgramData\VSMSoftware\Premier+2\Fonts, or the SuperDesign file from ProgramData\VSMSoftware\Premier+2\SuperDesigns. Close PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, make sure the file is in the folder, then try again.

"Error. No SuperDesigns, Frames or Flourish files found."

This message appears if the SuperDesigns or Frames folder is empty or has been accidentally moved, deleted or renamed. Close PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, make sure the folder ProgramData\VSMSoftware\Premier+2\SuperDesigns, or \Frames, is in the correct location and contains the SuperDesign or frames files, then try again.

If you are unable to restore or replace the SuperDesigns or Frames folder, repair the installation. Put your PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System software USB stick in your computer and re-run the Components installation. When the choice appears, select the "Modify or remove" option and click Next. In the next screen, select Repair and click Next. Continue with the installation and follow the on-screen instructions. When the installation is complete, the SuperDesigns or Frames will be restored.

*Check Smart Update in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure after repairing the installation.*

"Error. Font file is corrupt."

This message appears when trying to select or use a lettering style if the file has corrupted. Reinstall the font.

This may also appear if a font is created in PREMIER+™ 2 Font Create and has no characters defined. Use PREMIER+™ 2 Font Create to define at least one character in the font.

"Error. Could not set up font data."

This message may appear at the end of font creation with the QuickFont Wizard if one or more characters is not properly defined in a font. That is, there is no data in the TrueType®

or OpenType® font about the characters, so they have not been created in the embroidery font. This may happen with specialist or symbol fonts, which are not designed for general text usage. If desired, use PREMIER+™ 2 Font Create to create any missing characters.

#### **"Error. No letters in font file."**

This message may appear if the font is corrupt, or if the character selected is not in that font. Reinstall the font, or use PREMIER+™ 2 Font Create to add the character to the font.

#### **"Error. Font is too thin to be filled."**

This message may appear when trying to preview or create a font with the QuickFont Wizard. When some parts of characters have very narrow sections, they may not be large enough to have fill areas created when the Stitch Type is set to Fill or Fill + Satin Border. If the font is created, it may have characters or parts of some characters missing. It is recommended to choose a different Stitch Type. Alternatively, create the font then use PREMIER+™ 2 Font Create to create the missing parts and/or characters.

#### **"Error - Shapes database is corrupt or missing."**

This message appears if the database of Frames and Borders, or the database of shapes used for Encore shapes, shape fill, and creating border and appliqué shapes, has been corrupted or accidentally moved or deleted.

*This error does not prevent PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery from starting. However, you will not be able to use the relevant functions until this is resolved.*

To correct this, start the installation for your PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System software, then choose the Repair option.

If the problem persists, delete the file named 'BorderShapes.bdr' from ProgramData\VSMSSoftware\Premier+2\System, and then use the Repair option again.

*This assumes you have installed your PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System software in the default location. If the file is not present then this is the reason for the error.*

## **Modifying Embroideries**

#### **"A group is selected. To modify one item, use Restrict Groups and then select the design you wish to modify."**

This message is displayed if you click the Modify tab when a group is selected. Select the item within the group that you wish to edit individually after using Restrict Groups, then click the Modify tab again.

#### **"Multiple items are selected. Please ensure only one item is selected."**

This message is displayed if you click the Modify tab when several items are selected. Click the individual item that you wish to modify, or use the Tab key to step through the designs until the desired one is selected, then click the Modify tab again.

#### **"A design must be selected to use the features of the Modify tab."**

This message is displayed if you click the Modify tab when no item is selected. Select an item, then click the Modify tab again.

**"This will fix your selected design as embroidery stitches. Do you wish to continue?"**

This message is displayed if you click the Modify tab when a SuperDesign, Lettering, or frame is selected. When a design is fixed, the stitches are then created, and any further resizing may affect stitch density and length. The stitch properties, for example the density, pattern, angle or stitch length, may not be changed after it is fixed, and for lettering the font and text may not be changed. Only click OK if you wish that item to be fixed as stitches.

**"Decorations cannot be edited using the features on the Modify tab."**

This message is displayed if you click the Modify tab when decorations are selected. You cannot adjust decorations on the Modify tab.

**"Pasting into the Modify tab will combine and fix as stitches all designs from the clipboard block."**

This message is displayed if you copy designs to the clipboard block, and then attempt to paste them into the Modify tab. Only click OK if you wish the items to be fixed as stitches.

## Exporting and Saving Files

**"Embroidery is too large or is not in the hoop."**

This message appears if an embroidery you are trying to Export or Print is outside the selected hoop or larger than will fit in it. For example, with the 100mm x 100mm hoop selected, an embroidery smaller than 100mm x 100mm might be placed partially outside the work area when you click Export or Print. This message would then appear. Move the embroidery completely within the four blue corners of the work area and try again.

**"Embroidery too large for export format."**

Certain formats are limited to the number of stitches they can save or the size of hoop used on their specific embroidery machine, for example .sew. If you attempt to save a file in this format that is bigger than the largest available hoop size or has more stitches than are allowed, this message would appear.

**"Unrecognized file extension."**

This message appears if you type an incorrect extension that does not belong to any embroidery types in the File Name box when trying to save a file.

**"You can't save here. Please choose another location."**

This message appears if, for instance, you have loaded an embroidery from a CD-ROM and then attempt to save the embroidery back to the CD. A CD-ROM is read only, therefore you will not be able to save the embroidery.

**"Embroidery has too many stitches for file format."**

There is a limit on the number of stitches that may be saved to an embroidery file in Pfaff (.pcs) file format. This message appears if the embroidery you attempt to save to this format exceeds this limit.

### "No stitch data to save."

This message appears on attempting to save when there is no embroidery on the current window.

## Printing Embroideries

### "No embroideries available to print. Only embroideries that are inside the hoop can be printed."

This message appears if the embroidery on screen is partially outside the selected hoop. Move the embroidery completely within the four blue corners of the work area and try again.

## Miscellaneous

### "Not enough memory available to perform function."

This message will appear if system resources are low. Close other programs and try again. If this does not work, try restarting your computer.

### "No apps are installed to open this type of link (file). Look for an app in the Store."

This message will appear if the file association for HTML (the Help file format) has become disassociated. Reset your file association for HTML files to your preferred browser.

Open the Control Panel in Windows, select Programs, then Default Programs, and then select "Associate a file type or protocol with a program" (Set Associations). Browse down to .html, and ensure that your chosen browser is selected as the default program.

## Other Topics

### Screen Appearance

"It seems to take a long time to redraw embroideries when I choose different functions or switch to a new embroidery."

The refresh rate of the screen is limited by the power of your computer's processor and RAM as well as the video card and its memory. To get the best performance from your system, try using 2D view as this requires less power than 3D view.

"Some of the icons in the Toolbar are 'grayed out'."

Certain icons (for example Save and Export on the Quick Access Toolbar) are only highlighted once an embroidery is shown on the screen.

"I have changed grid color and spacing and now I wish to return to the original settings."

Use PREMIER+™ 2 Configure to change the grid color. Follow the instructions in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure and select Blue Gray (RGB values 102, 102, 153) from the standard color drop-down on the Grid Color button.

Use Screen Preferences to change the grid spacing. Set the Grid Size to 10.

"I have changed the screen background color and now I wish to return to the original light blue."

Use PREMIER+™ 2 Configure to change the background color. Follow the instructions in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure and select the RGB values 211, 233, 255 in the Colors dialog box.

### Loading Embroideries

"I can't drag and drop embroideries from the Open dialog box."

To drag and drop embroideries onto the Work Area, in Windows® 10 and 8, click File Explorer on the Status Bar. In Windows® 7, right-click Start, then Explore to start Windows® Explorer. Then follow the instructions under Drag and Drop. See "Load Embroideries with Drag and Drop" on page 17.

### Working with Embroideries

"The embroidery I want to work with appears too small on the screen."

Make sure the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery window is maximized by clicking the Maximize icon on the title bar. Click Zoom To Fit to expand the hoop so it fills the work area. Also, choose a Hoop Size in Hoop Selection that is suitable to the embroidery size.

"When I hover the mouse pointer over a color in the color worksheet, part of the embroidery changes to an unusual color."

This is called "Highlight Selected Color". It allows you to see where each color is used in an embroidery. For example, if you have several color blocks using the same thread color and

you wish to change the color of a specific section, hover over each color in the worksheet in turn until the section you require is highlighted.

**"I find it hard to select the part of the embroidery I wish to edit."**

Many functions of PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery can be used to help see sections of embroideries more easily. They include the Zoom Commands and the Draw Range. The different methods of selection (Box Select, Freehand Select, Freehand Point Select and Select All Visible) are also useful for different situations.

**"I've selected the wrong embroidery to move or manipulate."**

To deselect an embroidery, click the mouse on another embroidery. To select the desired embroidery, click on it and an outline box will appear. If one embroidery or piece of lettering is overlapping another making it difficult to select, click the Previous and Next Design icons on the Home tab. Alternatively, press the Tab key to select each embroidery in turn.

**"The color worksheet appears blank."**

If no design is selected, the worksheet will be blank. To view and change the threads in an embroidery, select the embroidery, then view the threads in the color worksheet.

**"Certain features are always grayed out (unavailable)."**

Certain functions are only available in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra, for example the ExpressDesign Wizard, the PhotoStitch Wizard, the Quilt Block Wizard, Split Project Wizard and the Background Wizard. In PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery these functions will be grayed out (unavailable). Other functions are available only if PREMIER+™ 2 ULTRA is owned, such as the Family Tree Wizard and many PhotoStitch Wizard options.

## Choosing Thread Colors

**"When I try to use Find Thread to select a thread number, the wrong thread shade is selected."**

The Find Thread feature in Color Selection allows you to enter partial thread numbers. The first thread in the list matching the number is found, with priority given to an exact match. If you are attempting to find a thread with only part of the number, the first thread matched may not be the desired thread. To ensure you select the correct thread, enter the thread number as it appears in the list. Some thread ranges have prefix characters on the thread number. These must also be entered to obtain an exact match.

## Using Groups and Multiple Selections

**"How do I change a design within a group?"**

If a design is within a group, you cannot initially select it individually for adjusting. Use Restrict Groups on the Home tab or context menu, and then select the desired design, lettering, SuperDesign or frame individually.

**"When I try to resize a design, the resize is always proportional."**

If a design is within a multiple selection or a group, resizing is always proportional. Either use Restrict Groups on the Home tab or context menu and select the desired designs individually, or Ungroup and Combine all of the designs to resize them together in different proportions.

**"Why can't I mirror a selected design?"**

If a design is within a multiple selection or a group, there is no flip handle, and you cannot mirror the multiple selection or group. Either use Restrict Groups on the Home tab or context menu and select the desired designs individually, or Ungroup and Combine all of the designs to mirror them together.

## Modifying Embroideries

**"When I pasted a decorated design into the Modify tab I could not see the decorations, but when I moved to the Home tab they appeared."**

If you paste a design with decorations into the Modify tab, the decorations are not visible. They will reappear as separate subdesigns when you move to one of the other tabs. Retain or delete them as desired.

## Importing Pictures

**"The From Scanner or Camera option is not available, even though my scanner/camera is plugged in."**

The From Scanner or Camera option may not be available, even though you have installed and connected a scanner/camera, if it does not support Windows Image Acquisition (WIA). If your scanner/camera supports a different image acquisition system, e.g. TWAIN, create a .PNG or .JPG file of the image in My Pictures, and load it from there.

## Using the ExpressDesign Wizard

**"My picture already has outlines, but some outlines are not traced properly when I create an Express Trace embroidery."**

This can happen if the outlines in your original picture are only one pixel wide. For example, there may be gaps or missing sections of the outline. If this happens, select Find Outlines on the Outline Finder and Expander page and ensure Expand is set to 1. This will thicken all the outlines so that they are traced correctly.

**"The preview picture is blank or almost blank on the Express Trace Options or Express Border Options page."**

This may happen if the outlines in the picture are only one pixel wide after the Monochrome Threshold page.

For Express Trace, return to the Outline Finder and Expander page, select Find Outlines and ensure Expand is set to 1.

For Express Border, first click Picture Options and set the Area Sensitivity to High. If this does not have the desired effect, return to the Monochrome Threshold page and adjust the slider so that more of the picture within the desired areas turns black. If this also selects unwanted parts of the picture, you may need to remove the unwanted areas in a picture editor.

*PREMIER+™ 2 Create and PREMIER+™ 2 PhotoStitch have picture editing functions that may be used to remove unwanted areas.*

"My picture only makes a rectangular border when I create an Express Border."

This can happen with a picture that has a border or background that is black or very dark, especially if the background or border cannot be removed with Monochrome Threshold.

For pictures with a dark border, it should be possible to remove the border on the Rotate and Crop Picture page of the ExpressDesign Wizard. If this is not possible, edit the picture to remove the border or change the border color.

For pictures on a dark background, use an image editor to invert the colors in the picture or change the background color to a light color.

After editing the picture, load it again in the ExpressDesign Wizard.

"I made a change to my design in the ExpressDesign Wizard and now I can't click Finish to load the design in the work area."

If you make a change to the options on the Fabric And Stitch Type Options page in the ExpressDesign Wizard, you must click Refresh Preview to view your changes before you can click Finish. Refresh the preview, then Finish.

## Linear PhotoStitch Embroideries

"I would like to get rid of the lines created from the white background of my picture by Linear PhotoStitch embroidery."

After creating and saving an embroidery, use the Modify tab or open the file in PREMIER+™ 2 Modify and use the following instructions.

- 1 Use the Freehand Block Select feature to mark the stitches in the background.
- 2 Click Delete Stitches.
- 3 Save the adjusted embroidery.

## PhotoStitch Embroideries

"I would like to get rid of the stray stitches in the background of my PhotoStitch embroidery."

It is best to clean the background of a picture so that there are no flecks, as they can cause stray stitches. If some remain in a saved PhotoStitch embroidery, remove them in the Modify tab or open the file in PREMIER+™ 2 Modify and use the following instructions.

- 1 Use one of the Select features to select the stray stitches.
- 2 Click Delete Stitches.

- 3 Save the adjusted embroidery.

## Using the ExpressMonogram Wizard

"Can I edit my monogram after placing it on the work area?"

When you have created a monogram and placed it in the work area, right-click it and select Properties to reopen the ExpressMonogram Wizard with the monogram loaded. The pale green handles indicate that the monogram has not been fixed as an embroidery, and can still be adjusted in the ExpressMonogram Wizard.

"How do I save my monogram so I can adjust it later?"

If your monogram in the work area has pale green handles (indicating that it has not been fixed as an embroidery), you can save it individually, or as part of a selection or group in a .vp4 file.

"I have used a motif as an envelope border and the results are unexpected."

If the selected motif width is larger than the size of the monogram or name, then only one motif may be created. Adjusting lettering or motif size or spacing may allow multiple motifs to be included in the border. If the selected motif shape is irregular it may overlap the monogram. Adjusting lettering or motif size or spacing may produce the desired results.

"How can I resize my monogram on the work area?"

When a monogram is resized on the work area, it is fixed as a group of embroideries and you will not be able to edit the text. To change the size of a monogram without fixing it, right-click and select Properties in the Context menu to open it in the ExpressMonogram Wizard. You can then resize the letters within the monogram, and the border around it.

## Encore

"I want to change the design that has been used in the corners in Encore."

In Encore Shape and Encore Hoop, when two embroideries are selected, the embroidery that is first in the stitch-out order will be placed in the corners. If you want to use the other embroidery in the corners, use Layout Order to change the order.

"Not all of my designs have been used in the Encore function."

A maximum of two designs can be used with Encore Shape and Encore Hoop. If more than two designs are selected, only the first two that were loaded will be used in the Encore. Either use Encore Circle or Line, or group some of the embroideries before using Encore.

"I have used an odd number of repeats and the center of rotation is not in the same place as the center of the circle after I right-click."

This is because the shape of an embroidery becomes a factor when there is an odd number of repeats. For an even number of repeats, the shape of an embroidery is cancelled out by the exact same shape on the opposite side of the circle. For an odd

number of repeats, the circle is not 'balanced' in quite the same way, so the center point of the final embroidery may not be in the same place as the original center of the circle after you right-click.

This may also happen with an even number of repeats when the Mirror option is chosen for Position and the embroidery is not horizontally symmetrical. If you regard each pair of mirrored embroideries as a single item, an odd number of pairs may cause the center of rotation to move.

**"The Mirror option does not seem to have any effect."**

If your embroidery is horizontally symmetrical before you use the Encore function, the Mirror option will have no apparent effect. However, it will affect stitch order of each alternate copy. For example, clockwise stitching will become counter-clockwise, and so on.

## Endless Embroidery

**"How can I change the marker positions in an endless embroidery?"**

Load the embroidery in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, click the Wizards tab, then click Endless. If the endless embroidery was created in the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery System any markers (alignment stitches) are removed, so that alternative ones may be placed.

**"I have loaded an embroidery that I made Endless some time ago. How do I know what Fabric Direction was used when I made it endless?"**

Reload the embroidery in the Endless wizard, and view the Fabric Direction in the wizard. Alternatively, for an older embroidery use the slider bars on the Modify tab to find the locations of the start and end marker stitches. For example, if the start markers are at the top and the end markers are at the bottom, the original Fabric Direction was Up.

**"The Endless function does not work."**

The Endless function is not available in any of the following situations:

- There is no embroidery loaded, so there is nothing that can be made endless: load an embroidery
- The embroidery is too big for or is outside the current hoop: adjust the embroidery as needed or choose a larger hoop

## Lettering, SuperDesigns and Frames

**"I don't remember which font I used when making an embroidery."**

If lettering, a SuperDesign or frame has green handles it has not yet been fixed as stitches. Simply right-click and choose Properties or the desired stitch type from the context menu to see the font and stitch properties used to create it. Otherwise, view the settings; information on the font, SuperDesign, Motif or Frame used in an embroidery made in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery is stored in the Settings. Open the embroidery and click the Settings tab in the Home tab to view the settings. Alternatively, print a worksheet for the embroidery.

"I want to change the size of the lettering, but the control boxes have no effect."

For the following Lettering Shapes, there are no control boxes to change the size of the characters in the lettering:

- Circle Clockwise
- Circle Clockwise
- Full Circle
- Fit To Straight Line
- Fit To Wavy Line

Instead, use Size, Height and Width in Letter Properties to change the size of the characters.

"When I try to change the properties of the lettering or SuperDesign I cannot access the Properties dialog."

You cannot change letter properties (e.g. the font or text) or SuperDesign properties (e.g. stitch type settings) when lettering or a SuperDesign has been fixed as stitches. If lettering or a SuperDesign is fixed as stitches it will have white handles. This happens when it is adjusted in the Modify tab, when Fix as Stitches is used, or if a design that was created in PREMIER+™ 2 ULTRA is opened in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery or PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.

"I want to change the appearance of the font stitching, but the Stitch Type drop-down is not available."

If the Stitch Type area is grayed out (unavailable), this means that the area was designed with properties cannot be edited. For example, this occurs with Foam fonts that have special settings to ensure the embroidery foam is cut, and it also occurs with a few very complex fonts that have many different fill patterns in different letters, or multigradient fills, such as Acorn 6C UC 35-60mm in the Floral category.

"When I try to change the stitch properties the Stitch Type drop-down is grayed out (unavailable)."

If the Stitch Type area is grayed out (unavailable), this means that the area was designed with properties cannot be edited. For example, this occurs with Foam fonts that have special settings to ensure the embroidery foam is cut, and it also occurs with a few very complex fonts that have many different fill patterns in different letters, or multigradient fills, such as Acorn 6C UC 35-60mm in the Floral category.

"I have increased the Gap setting, but the lowercase characters are still touching each other."

For script fonts, the Gap setting has no effect on adjacent lowercase characters. Script fonts use a special 'continuous' joining method, which places lowercase characters adjacent to each other to give the appearance of handwriting. All the fonts in the Script category use this joining method, and you may also create new fonts with the QuickFont Wizard or the optional PREMIER+™ 2 Font Create module that use this joining method.

"All the lettering appears in uppercase, even though I have typed lowercase characters in the Letters box."

You are using an uppercase font. In an uppercase font (with UC in the name), all the lowercase characters are identical to the uppercase characters.

"All the lettering appears in lowercase, even though I have typed uppercase characters in the Letters box."

You are using an lowercase font. In an lowercase font (with LC in the name), all the uppercase characters are identical to the lowercase characters.

"I have placed multiple lettering with different text in each item and I want to change the text that appears in some of them. However, the text in the Letters box stays the same when I select earlier pieces of lettering."

Select the desired lettering with green handles, then right-click on the lettering. The Letter Properties will appear and you may change the text.

*Once lettering has been converted to embroidery (white or blue handles), no adjustments can be made with Letter Properties.*

"When I use a Script font with the Full Circle line type, the characters are not arranged correctly."

Script fonts use a special connection method that allows adjacent lower case letters to be connected to each other, regardless of the Gap setting. This is not compatible with the way the characters are arranged by the Full Circle line type.

*Circle Clockwise and Circle Counter-Clockwise are compatible with Script fonts.*

"I have adjusted my lettering on the work area, but when I change the Letter Properties, the lettering changes shape a little."

The control boxes on blocks of lettering allow subtle adjustments directly to the shape of the lettering. However, the Letter Properties only allows the proportions of Height and Width to be adjusted. When the Letter Properties are changed, the previous adjustments may be partially lost when the Height and Width values are applied. Therefore, it is recommended to make all desired adjustments in Letter Properties before making final adjustments directly with the control boxes.

"In Letter Options I tried to edit the Stitch Type for my lettering, but the drop-down menu was grayed out."

If a font does not use an editable stitch type, the Stitch Type will not be available in Letter Options.

"In Letter Properties I tried to edit the Stitch Type for my lettering, but there was no drop-down menu."

Stitch types are not available in the Letter Properties dialog box. Right-click the lettering, and select the stitch type from the right-click menu.

"In SuperDesign Options I tried to edit the stitch properties for my SuperDesign, but the drop-down list was grayed out."

If a SuperDesign does not include an editable stitch type, the Stitch Type drop-down list will not be available in the SuperDesign Options dialog box.

"The selected Frame or Flourish cannot be seen completely."

Frames and Flourishes with running stitch that is vertical or horizontal are not always completely visible at zoom to fit. This varies depending on the font, size of lettering and envelope. Use the Zoom In feature, if desired, to verify that the stitching exists.

"In Font Manager one of the fonts in My Fonts shows a Minimum and Maximum size of 0.0 mm."

In the Font Manager dialog box a font that was created in QuickFont Wizard in PREMIER+™ Embroidery or in PREMIER+™ Font Create, and copied to your My Fonts folder, may show a minimum and maximum size of 0.0 mm. This does not affect the use of the font.

## Using Import Font from Embroideries

"How do I create an apostrophe or quotes?"

If your set of letters includes a comma, load it as the apostrophe, then move the Baseline so that it is on or just below the red dashed top line. For quotes, copy and flip the comma before loading as single and double quotes.

You can also use PREMIER+™ 2 Modify to add accents to existing characters, and create other punctuation symbols.

"My apostrophe overlaps another letter when placed as lettering."

When loading letters for a font, the apostrophe and quotes may kern better if they are placed further down from the red dashed top line.

Alternatively, use Horizontal Block with the Individual option to be able to fully adjust the lettering after placing it in the work area.

## Backgrounds and Appliqué

"When I moved a design, its appliqué did not move with it."

Appliqué is associated with the selected Color Change or Stop. If you add appliqué to a Color Change or Stop in a different design, the appliqué will be associated with the selected design, not the desired one. Make sure that you select a Color Change or Stop in the desired design before adding appliqué.

## Using Decorations

"When I resized a decoration design, some areas showed an increase in the numbers of beads, while others became more spaced out."

When a decoration line or shape is enlarged, the number of decorations increases; and when it is made smaller the number decreases. Where decorations are placed individually,

the number of decorations does not change when the decoration subdesign is made larger or smaller.

## Using Design Player

"Why is the stitch order of my embroidery different in Design Player from when I use the slider bars in the Modify tab?"

Design Player uses the Export settings in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure when displaying the stitching out of an embroidery. The slider bars in the Modify tab show the stitch order as displayed in the Color Select area of the Design Panel. If the embroidery is ColorSorted, some color blocks may be placed together. If ColorSort is selected in the Optimize for Sewing settings in the Export tab of PREMIER+™ 2 Configure, Design Player will then show different results from the slider bars.

## Multipart Hoops

"The alignment stitches for the second part of a design seem to have disappeared."

Some multipart embroideries are created with alignment stitches that overlap exactly. When viewing these designs in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery, deselect Remove Overlap in PREMIER+™ 2 Configure, Export, before sending them to the embroidery machine.

## Cancelling unwanted actions

"I used Box Select around an area, but selected some stitches I didn't want. Undo is grayed out so I can't click it."

To cancel a stitch block selection made using Box Select, Freehand Select, Freehand Point Select or Select All Visible, click anywhere in the currently active embroidery, but outside the box showing the selected stitches. The stitches will no longer be selected.

## ColorSorting Files

"When I ColorSort an embroidery the number of color blocks produced varies."

The ColorSort process does not just put the same color blocks together. It checks for overlap between areas, therefore depending on the overlaps, the final number of color blocks may vary, even if you are Combining a similar number of elements.

"I ColorSorted my design. Why are there so many colors in the Color Select area for it?"

If you use ColorSort on a multiple selection or group, the number of colors seen in the Color Select area may be more than if the same embroideries were combined. This is because ColorSort looks at the embroideries within the selection or group separately. To keep embroidery elements editable in your project and minimize the number of colors when stitching out, use Export with ColorSort to create a version for stitching.

Use Design Player or Print Preview to see how many colors the exported embroidery will have, according to the current options.

## Printing Embroideries

"When I print my embroideries the grid is not shown at the correct size"

If you select Hoop Zoom to Fit in the Print page, the grid will be proportional to the scaling used to fit the hoop to the printed page. If you select 'Garment/Quilt Block Zoom to Fit' or 'Garment/Quilt Block Real Size' in the Print page, the grid will extend across the whole of the selected background, not just the hoop area. The grid will be proportional to the scaling used to fit the garment and hoop to the printed page.

## Ribbon Tabs

### File Tab/Menu

	New	Clear the screen ready to create a new embroidery project. Ctrl + N
	New Window	Open an additional PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery window. Ctrl + Shift + N
	Open	Open an existing embroidery, replacing the embroidery on the screen. Ctrl + O
	Save	Save the embroidery as a multipart embroidery in.vp4 format. Ctrl + S; Alt, 2
	Save As	Save the embroidery as a multipart embroidery in.vp4 format under a new name. Ctrl + Shift + S; Alt, 3
	Export	Save the embroidery in the current window as a flattened .vp4 file or in an alternative embroidery format, optimized for stitching. Ctrl+ E; Alt, 4
	Export Appliqué Pieces	Save or print appliqué outlines ready for cutting by a fabric cutter or INSPIRA™ Cutwork Needles. Ctrl + Shift + E
	Export Decoration Template	Save a template for all your decorations in a format for your cutter, to create a crystal transfer template. Ctrl + Shift + D
	Send Express	Send the selected embroidery to the screen of the connected embroidery machine. Ctrl + K
	Send	Send the selected embroidery to the MyFiles or Personal Files folder of the connected embroidery machine. Ctrl + Shift + K
	Send to mySewnet™	Send the selected embroidery to the mySewnet™ cloud for your mySewnet™ enabled embroidery machine. Ctrl + W
	Send to Machine via mySewnet™	Send the selected embroidery to your mySewnet™ enabled embroidery machine via the mySewnet™ cloud.
	Insert	Insert an existing embroidery into your current project. Ctrl + I; Alt, 1
	Print	Set printing options, preview and print the selected embroidery(ies) and background.

	Recent	Open recently used embroideries.
	Preferences	Set overlap and spelling checker options.
	Exit	Close the current window and prompt to save new and changed embroideries. Alt + F4

# Home Tab

Clipboard		
	Copy	Make a copy of the selected embroidery or block of stitches and place it on the clipboard. Ctrl + C; Alt, H, CP
	Paste	Paste the clipboard block. Ctrl + V; Alt, H, V, P
	Paste into Center	Paste the Clipboard Block in the center of the hoop. Ctrl + Shift + V; Alt, H, V, C
	Cut	Delete the selected embroidery or block of stitches from the screen and place it on the clipboard. Ctrl + X; Alt, H, X
	Duplicate	Make a copy of the selected embroidery, which is automatically pasted on the work area. Ctrl + D; Alt, H, DU
	Delete	Delete the currently selected embroidery, block or stitch without moving it to the clipboard. Delete; Alt, H, DE
Select		
	Box Select	Select a number of embroideries by opening a square or rectangular box around them. Alt, H, SS, B
	Freehand Select	Select a number of embroideries within an area of any shape. Alt, H, SS, F
	Freehand Point Select	Select a block of embroideries within an area of any shape, defined by a series of points. Alt, H, SS, P
	Select All	Select all embroideries. Ctrl + A; Alt, H, SA
	Select None	Deselect all of the embroideries in the work area, including any outside the hoop. Ctrl + Shift + A; Alt, H, SN
	Replace Selection	Replace the currently selected designs with the new selection. Alt, H, RS
	Add To Selection	Add the new selection to the currently selected designs. Alt, H, SA
	Remove From Selection	Remove the new selection from the currently selected designs. Alt, H, SD
	Group	Group selected designs together so they may be moved, resized or scaled and rotated together. Alt, H, G
	Ungroup	Ungroup a selected group permanently, so that each design may be edited independently. Alt, H, U

	Restrict Groups	Temporarily disable all groups in the work area. This allows any design within a group to be edited independently. Alt, H, E
	Previous Design	Select the previous design in the stitchout order. Shift + Tab; Alt, H, P
	Next Design	Select the next design in the stitchout order. Tab; Alt, H, N
	Resize	Switch between resize and scale for the selected embroidery(ies) or group. Alt, H, R
<b>Tools</b>		
Combine		
	Combine All	Merge all embroideries on the work area into a single embroidery. Alt, H, M, A
	Combine Selected	Merge the selected embroideries into a single embroidery. Alt, H, M, S
	Fix As Stitches	Fix the selected subdesign or subdesigns as embroideries. Lettering properties such as font and stitch types are not adjustable after fixing. Alt, H, M, F
	ColorSort	Reduce the embroidery(ies) or group to the minimum number of color blocks. Alternatively, you can use the ColorSort option in Export when creating an embroidery file optimized for stitching. Alt, H, CS
	Color Tone	Convert all the threads in the selected embroidery(ies) or group to those of another manufacturer. Also adjust brightness and contrast, selecting new threads automatically. Alt, H, CT
<b>Layout</b>		
	Rotate 45	Rotate the selected embroidery(ies) or group by 45 degrees. Alt, H, OT
	Modify Design	Show and change the size and rotation of the currently selected embroidery(ies) or group. Designs within multiple selections and groups are always scaled or resized proportionally. Alt, H, OD
Alignment		
	Center In Hoop	Move the selected embroidery(ies) or group to the center of the hoop and ensure it starts in the center of the hoop. Alt, H, AL, C
Horizontal Alignment		
	Align Left	Align all selected embroideries and groups on the left edge. Alt, H, AL, H, L

		<p><b>Align Center</b> Center align all selected embroideries and groups horizontally. Alt, H, AL, H, C</p>
		<p><b>Align Right</b> Align all selected embroideries and groups on the right edge. Alt, H, AL, H, R</p>
		<p><b>Distribute Horizontally</b> Align all selected embroideries and groups to be equally spaced horizontally. Alt, H, AL, H, D</p>
<b>Vertical Alignment</b>		
		<p><b>Align Top</b> Align all selected embroideries and groups on the top edge. Alt, H, AL, V, T</p>
		<p><b>Align Middle</b> Center align all selected embroideries and groups vertically. Alt, H, AL, V, M</p>
		<p><b>Align Bottom</b> Align all selected embroideries and groups on the bottom edge. Alt, H, AL, V, B</p>
		<p><b>Distribute Vertically</b> Align all selected embroideries and groups to be equally spaced vertically. Alt, H, AL, V, D</p>
	<b>Move Into Hoop</b>	<p>Move the selected embroidery(ies), groups or block of stitches within the hoop. Alt, H, OV</p>
<b>Layout Order</b>		
		<p><b>Move Forwards</b> Bring the selected embroidery(ies) or group one step closer to the front. Alt, H, B, F</p>
		<p><b>Move Backwards</b> Bring the selected embroidery(ies) or group one step closer to the back. Alt, H, B, B</p>
		<p><b>Move to Front</b> Place the selected embroidery(ies) or group at the front. Alt, H, B, R</p>
		<p><b>Move to Back</b> Place the selected embroidery(ies) or group at the back. Alt, H, B, A</p>
<b>Hoop</b>		

	Change Hoop	Choose the hoop size you wish to use in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery. Ctrl + H; Alt, 6; Alt, H, H; Alt, V, H
	Life View	Show how an embroidery exported from the project will look in 3D with real-world perspective. Share a picture or video of your design on your favorite social media site. Ctrl + L; Alt, H, L; Alt, 9
	Design Player	Play through the stitches in the embroidery as if they were being stitched from an exported embroidery. Share a picture or video of your design on your favorite social media site. Ctrl + J; Alt, H, J; Alt, 0

# Wizards Tab

	<b>ExpressMonogram Wizard</b>	Start the ExpressMonogram Wizard to add a one, two or three letter monogram. Alt, W, M
	<b>Endless Wizard</b>	Add markers to an embroidery so it can be stitched out in a continuous, regularly spaced, sequence as many times as desired. Alt, W, N
	<b>ExpressDesign Wizard*</b>	<p> <b>ExpressDesign into Hoop</b> Create an embroidery automatically to fit the currently selected hoop. Alt, W, E, H</p> <p> <b>ExpressDesign into Rectangle</b> Create an embroidery automatically that is a best fit to a rectangular selected area. Alt, W, E, R</p>
	<b>PhotoStitch Wizard*</b>	<p> <b>PhotoStitch Into Hoop</b> Create an embroidery automatically from a photo, including photos from social media sites, to fit the currently selected hoop. Alt, W, P, H</p> <p> <b>PhotoStitch Into Rectangle</b> Create an embroidery automatically from a photo, including photos from social media sites, that is a best-fit to a rectangular selected area. Alt, W, P, R</p>
	<b>Word Sculpt Wizard*</b>	Create a word design automatically using your choice of outline, words, and fonts. Alt, W, W
	<b>Quilt Block Wizard*</b>	Create a filled or outline quilt block automatically, or create a quilting fill around an embroidery. Alt, W, Q
	<b>Family Tree Wizard**</b>	Create an embroidered chart from your family history. Alt, W, F
	<b>Project-in-the-Hoop Wizard*</b>	Create an in-the-hoop design using your choice of project type, style and dimensions. Alt, W, I
	<b>Split Project Wizard*</b>	Split the embroidery project for any single-part hoop. Alt, W, S

\*Available only in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.

\*\*Available only in PREMIER+™ 2 ULTRA

# Encore Tab

Place repeated copies of embroideries in a circle, a line or a shape, or around the edge of the hoop.

Layout		
Type		Choose a circle, line, shape or hoop. Alt, E, T
		Circle Place the embroideries in a circle.
		Line Place the embroideries in one of 8 line options from left to right.
		Shape Place up to two selected embroideries around the edge of a shape.
		Hoop Place up to two selected embroideries around the hoop edge.
Position		Place the embroideries in the original orientation, or reflect alternate copies. Alt, E, M
		Standard The copies of the embroidery use the original orientation.
		Mirror Each alternate copy of the embroidery is reflected.
Line Options		Select a line type. Alt, E, L
Shape Options		Select one of 28 shapes, and whether or not to include an embroidery in the corners. Shape: Alt, E, SS; Remove Corners: Alt, E, SR
Hoop Options		Set the Margin between the embroideries and the edge of the hoop, and choose whether or not to include an embroidery in the corners. Remove Corners: Alt, E, HR; Margin: Alt, E, HM
Number of Repeats		Set the number of repeats in the Encore by changing the gap, or setting the number of repeats. Repeats: Alt, E, RE; Gap: Alt, E, GA
Arrangement		Set options for Group and Arrange Similar (place individual designs together when using multiple embroideries that are overlapped). Group: Alt, E, RG; Arrange Similar: Alt, E, RA
	Preview	View the repeated designs in the work area. Alt, E, P
	Cancel	Cancel the preview. Alt, E, X
	Apply	Create the repeated embroidery. Alt, E, A

# Letter Tab

## Font

Category	Select desired font category and font name from the drop-down list.
	Alt, L, F
	Appliqué Fonts for use with appliqué fabrics.
	Children Child-themed and "cute" fonts such as fonts similar to children's writing and animal fonts.
	Display Decorative fonts using specialty and pattern fills, often used in large sizes.
	Effects Fonts using special thread colors and needles, such as needle felting, twin needle and wing needle.
	Elegant Stylish fonts with a heritage feeling, such as gothic and illuminated alphabets.
	Floral Fonts with leaves and flowers decorating the letters.
	Foam Fonts for use with puffy foam for a raised 3D effect.
	Fun Informal fonts, such as athletic or party fonts.
	Future Informal fonts with a hi-tech theme.
	Modern Fonts with 'clean' designs in modern styles.
	Monogram These fonts have most characters of equal width, designed for use in monograms. They are all upper case only.
	My Fonts My Fonts is the default category for fonts you create.
	National Fonts associated with particular cultures, or alternative alphabets such as Greek and Hebrew.
	Nearest Point Nearest point fonts use special logic to determine the best way to join characters together. There are four versions of each character to enable the special joining method. Nearest Point fonts are ideally used with Running Stitch connection.
	Retro Classic Art Nouveau and Art Deco style fonts.
	Scary Informal fonts with a spooky or horror theme.

 <b>Font Manager</b>	<p>Script Script fonts have a special joining method where all adjacent lowercase characters are directly joined together and are not affected by the Gap setting. This is used to give an appearance of handwriting in different styles.</p> <p>Traditional Old-fashioned fonts.</p> <p>Wild West Informal fonts with a cowboy theme.</p> <p>Search for fonts and to arrange, rename, create, duplicate and delete user fonts. Alt, L, M</p>
<b>Letters</b>	Click in the Letters box and enter the desired characters. Press Enter to create more than one line of text.
<b>Size</b>	Enter the Size in millimeters, from 3mm to 200mm. This is the height of the uppercase 'A' character in the font, and all other characters are sized in proportion to this. Alt, L, S
<b>Layout</b>	Set the relative width and height, and the gap between the letters. Gap: Alt, L, G; Width: Alt, L, W; Height: Alt, L, H
<b>Lettering Shapes</b>   Horizontal Block  Vertical Block  Circle Clockwise  Circle Counter-Clockwise  Full Circle  Fit To Straight Line  Fit To Wavy Line  Rounded  Double Arch  Diamond  Italic  Freeform  Flag  Free Sculpt  Arch Over	<p>Select a shape for your lettering. Alt, L, T</p> <p>Place lines of lettering in straight lines.</p> <p>Place lines of lettering in straight vertical lines.</p> <p>Place one line of lettering clockwise around a circle.</p> <p>Place one line of lettering counter-clockwise around a circle.</p> <p>Place two lines of text on opposite sides of a circle.</p> <p>Place one line of lettering along a straight line.</p> <p>Place one line of lettering along a curved line.</p> <p>Place lettering in an envelope with an outwardly curving top and base.</p> <p>Place lines of lettering in a shape with an inwardly curving top and base.</p> <p>Place lines of lettering in a diamond shape.</p> <p>Place lines of lettering in a shape that is slanted.</p> <p>Place lettering in a fully adjustable straight envelope.</p> <p>Place lettering in a curving envelope with 8 handles.</p> <p>Place lettering in a fully adjustable curved envelope with 14 handles.</p> <p>Place lines of lettering in a shape with an outwardly curving top and an inwardly curving base.</p>

	Arch Under	Place lines of lettering in a shape with an inwardly curving top and an outwardly curving base.
	Fan	Place lettering in an envelope with an outwardly curving top and an inwardly curving base.
	Bowl	Place lettering in an envelope with an inwardly curving top and an outwardly curving base.
	Pennant Right	Place lines of lettering in a shape that is larger on the right side.
	Pennant Left	Place lines of lettering in a shape that is larger on the left side.
	Perspective	Place lines of lettering in a shape that is narrower at the top.
	Bridge Convex Down	Place lines of lettering in a shape with a flat top and an outwardly curving base.
	Bridge Concave Down	Place lines of lettering in a shape with a flat top and an inwardly curving base.
	Bridge Convex Up	Place lettering in an envelope with a flat base and an outwardly curving top.
	Bridge Concave Up	Place lines of lettering in a shape with a flat base and an inwardly curving top.
	Octagon	Place lettering in a octagonal envelope.
	Zigzag	Place lettering in angled line envelope.
	Chevron	Place lettering in a peaked envelope.
	Slope	Place lettering in a curved sloping envelope.
	Butte	Place lettering in a straight sided envelope with 8 handles.
	Gem	Place lettering in an envelope with 7 handles.
	Slide	Place lettering in a sloping rectangular envelope.
	Pentagon	Place lettering in an envelope with a peaked top, a straight base, and sloping sides.
	Ramp	Place lettering in an envelope with a curved top, a straight base, and sloping sides.
	Rocket	Place lettering in an envelope with a peaked top and an arched base.
	Reverse	Select Reverse so it is checked to reverse the order of letters entered in the Letters box. Alt, L, YR
	Individual	Select Individual so you can move and resize the letters individually. Alt, L, YI
	Step	Select Step so it is checked to rotate the letters independently from the angle of the line for Fit To Straight Line or Fit To Wavy Line. Alt, L, YS
<b>Stitches</b>		
	Connection	The connection method selects how the characters are joined together. Alt, L, C

		Trim The letters are joined with movement stitches. Alt, L, CT
		Running Stitch The letters are joined with small stitches. Alt, L, CR
ColorSort		Reduce the lettering to the minimum number of color blocks. It is recommended to use the ColorSort checkbox unless you wish to vary the colors of specific characters. Alt, L, O
 Stitch Type		Alter the appearance of the stitching used in the lettering. Alt, L, I
<b>Line Formatting</b>		
		Align Left Align text to the left. Alt, L, LL
		Align Center Align text in the center. Alt, L, LC
		Align Right Align text to the right. Alt, L, LR
		Spacing Change the distance between multiple lines of text. Alt, L, LS
		Apply Place the lettering in the work area. Alt, L, A

## SuperDesign Tab

Category	
Search	Enter one or more words to show all SuperDesigns that match. Alt, S, E
Clear Search	Clear all search text. Alt, S, X
Category	Click the drop-down arrow on the right of the SuperDesign set name and choose the desired SuperDesign set in the list. Thumbnails of the SuperDesigns in the set will be shown. Alt, S, G
SuperDesign	
SuperDesign	Click the thumbnail of the desired SuperDesign to select and highlight it. Alt, S, D
Select Style	Select from a choice of alternative stitching styles for your selected design. Alt, S, T
Size	Set the height of the SuperDesign in millimeters, and set its width/height proportions. Size: Alt, S, S; Width: Alt, S, W; Height: Alt, S, H
 Stitch Type	Alter the appearance of the stitching used in the SuperDesign. Alt, S, I
 Apply	Place the SuperDesign in the work area. Alt, S, A

## Frame Tab

Category	Click the drop-down arrow to select corners, frames or side pieces. Alternatively, click Flourishes. Frames: Alt, R, FR; Frame Type: Alt, R, FC; Flourish: Alt, R, FL
Frame or Flourish	Click the drop-down arrow to select the desired category of frame or flourish, then click the thumbnail of the desired frame or flourish to select and highlight it. Alt, R, FF
Frame Surround	
Margin	Set the margin between the embroidery and the frame. Alt, R, RM; Margin Size: Alt, R, RA
Crop	Crop the embroidery when placing the frame, so that no margin is visible. Alt, R, RP
Group	Group the embroidery and the frame or flourish together when you click Apply. Alt, R, RG
Flourish Surround	
Position	Set the width of the flourish in millimeters, and its width/height proportions, and choose whether to Group the embroidery. Place the flourish above, below, or as a duo above and below the embroidery. Above: Alt, R, LA; Below: Alt, R, LB; Duo: Alt, R, LD
Margin	Set the margin between the flourish(es) and embroidery. Alt, R, LM
Width	Set the width of the flourish in millimeters. Alt, R, LW
Group	Choose whether to Group the embroidery with the flourish. Alt, R, LG
 Size Options	Use Options dialog to set the frame or flourish size, width and height. Alt, R, S
 Stitch Type	Alter the appearance of the stitching used in the frame. Alt, R, I
 Apply	Place the frame on the work area around the selected embroidery, or at the specified size if no embroidery is selected. Alt, R, A

# Border Tab

<b>Options</b>		
	Margin	Set the space between the embroidery and the center of the border around it. Alt, B, OM
	Rounded Corners	Use rounded or square corners for the border. Alt, B, OR
	Group	Group the border with the embroidery(ies) when it is placed on the work area. Alt, B, OG
<b>Stitch Types</b>		
	Satin Line	Use a line of constant width satin stitch. Alt, B, S
	Motif Line	Use a line of motifs. Alt, B, S
	Running Stitch	Use a line of small stitches going forward. Alt, B, S
	Triple Stitch	Use a row of small three-part stitches, each composed of one stitch going forward, one going backward then one going forward. Alt, B, S
	Options	Click Options and the stitch Options dialog box for the border type will appear. Alt, B, I
<b>Appliqué</b>		
	Add Appliqué	Add appliqué stitches and fabric to your border. Alt, B, P
	Select Fabric	Audition a new fabric for your border appliqué. Alt, B, F
	Appliqué Options	Use Appliqué Options to change the appliqué method. Alt, B, N
	Apply	Place the embroidery with its surrounding border on the work area. Alt, B, A
<b>Motif Underline</b>		
	Length	Length of the motif line. Length: Alt, B, ML; Size: Alt, B, MN
	Repeats	Number of repeats in the motif line. Repeats: Alt, B, MR; Number: Alt, B, MP
	Select Motif	Open the Motif Line dialog box to set the stitch type and size for the motif. Alt, B, MS
	Apply	Place the line of motifs in the work area. Alt, B, MA

# Appliqué Tab

The Appliqué tab is available only in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.

Create		
	Appliqué Outline	
	Freehand Tablet Appliqué Outline	Draw to define a line of any shape to create an appliqué outline. Alt, A, A, T
	Freehand Point Appliqué Outline	Place points to define a line of any shape to create an appliqué outline. Alt, A, A, P
	Appliqué Hole	
	Freehand Tablet Appliqué Hole	Draw to define a line of any shape to create a hole within the selected appliqué outline. Alt, A, H, T
	Freehand Point Appliqué Hole	Place points to define a line of any shape to create a hole within the selected appliqué outline. Alt, A, H, P
	Express Appliqué	Automatically find appliqué stitches within an existing embroidery, and apply an appliqué fabric to them. Alt, A, E
Select		
	Select Piece	Select an Appliqué Piece to alter its shape and preview or adjust its fabric. Alt, A, T
	Next Piece	Select the next Appliqué Piece in the stitchout order. Alt, A, N
	Previous Piece	Select the previous Appliqué Piece in the stitchout order. Alt, A, P
Edit		
	Insert Points	Add new points into the currently selected Appliqué Piece. Alt, A, I
	Delete Points	Delete points from the currently selected Appliqué Piece. Alt, A, D
	Delete Piece	Delete the currently selected Appliqué Piece with its outline. Alt, A, X
	Select Fabric	Audition a new fabric for the currently selected Appliqué Piece. Alt, A, F

The Appliqué tab is available only in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.

# Decoration Tab

The Decoration tab is available only in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.

Add Decoration		
	Place Individual	Place decorations individually on your project. Placeholder stitches are created for each decoration. Alt, D, P
	Draw Line	Place lines of decorations on your project. Placeholder stitches are created for each decoration.
	Freehand Tablet Line	Draw to define a line of decorations on your project. Alt, D, L, T
	Freehand Point Line	Place points to define a line of decorations on your project. Alt, D, L, P
	Draw Shape	Place a shaped line of decorations on your project. Alt, D, S
	Decoration SuperDesign	Insert a Decoration SuperDesign on your current project. Alt, D, D
Edit Decoration		
	Select Decoration	Select either Individual or Lines of Decorations for editing or deleting. Alt, D, C
	Insert Points	Add new points into the currently selected Line of Decorations. Alt, D, R
	Delete Points	Delete points from the currently selected Line of Decorations. Alt, D, E
	Delete Selection	Delete the currently selected Individual or Line of Decorations. Alt, D, Y
	Break Up Line	Break up the currently selected Line of Decorations into a number of Individual Decorations for independent editing. Alt, D, K
	Properties	Change the style, size or color of the currently selected Individual or Line of Decorations. Alt, D, O

# Modify Tab

The Modify tab is available only in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.

Clipboard		
	Copy	Make a copy of the selected embroidery or block of stitches and place it on the clipboard. Ctrl + C; Alt, M, CP
	Paste	Paste the clipboard stitches and attach them to the last visible stitch. Ctrl + V; Alt, M, V, P
	Paste into Center	Paste the Clipboard Block in the center of the hoop. Alt, M, V, C
	Cut	Delete the selected embroidery or block of stitches from the screen and place it on the clipboard. Ctrl + X; Alt, M, X
	Duplicate	Make a copy of the selected embroidery, which is automatically pasted on the work area. Ctrl + D; Alt, M, DU
	Delete	Delete the currently selected embroidery, block or stitch without moving it to the clipboard. Delete; Alt, M, DE
Select		
	Box Select	Select an area of stitches by opening a square or rectangular box around it. Alt, M, SB
	Freehand Select	Select an area of stitches by drawing an irregular outline around it. Alt, M, SF
	Freehand Point Select	Select a block of stitches within an area of any shape made of straight and curved lines. Alt, M, SP
	Select Stitches	Select and edit single stitches. Alt, M, SS
	Select All Visible	Select all visible stitches. Use in combination with hidden colors and Draw Range. Ctrl + A; Alt, M, SA
	Select None	Deselect all of the embroideries in the work area, including any outside the hoop. Alt, M, SN
	Replace Selection	Replace the currently selected designs with the new selection. Alt, M, SR
	Add To Selection	Add the new selection to the currently selected stitches. Alt, M, SA
	Remove From Selection	Remove the new selection from the currently selected stitches. Alt, M, SD
	Resize	Switch between Resize and Scale modes. Alt, M, R
Draw Stitches		

	Draw Range	The upper slider bar sets the Draw From Start stitch. The lower slider bar sets the Draw To End stitch. Move the appropriate slider bar to change the start or end stitch. Stitches are not displayed when the color block containing the stitches is hidden.
	Draw All Stitches	Display all stitches in the embroidery selected for editing. Alt, M, DA
	Get Length	Measure the distance between any two points on an embroidery. Alt, M, L
<b>Insert</b>		
	Insert Color Command	Add a new color change at the point where you click. Alt, M, IC
	Insert Stop Command	Insert a Stop command at the point where you click, displaying a message. Alt, M, IP
	Insert Stitches	Add new stitches to an embroidery. Alt, M, IS
<b>Modify Block</b>		
	Width %	Show and change the width of the currently selected block. The width is scaled or resized according to the Resize mode. Alt, M, MW
	Height %	Show and change the height of the currently selected block. The height is scaled or resized according to the Resize mode. Alt, M, MH
	Angle	Show and change the angle of the currently selected block. Alt, M, MR
	Apply	Apply the changes to the current block. Alt, M, MA

## View Tab

<b>Grid</b>		
	Show Grid	Show or hide the background grid, and set its size. Show Grid: Alt, V, G Size: Alt, V, S
	Get Length	Measure the distance between any two points on an embroidery. Alt, V, L
<b>Background*</b>		
	Background Wizard	Start the Background Wizard to preview embroideries on a garment, quilt block or fabric. Alt, V, W
	Move and Rotate Background	Click and drag to move and rotate the garment, quilt block or fabric background around the hoop or project area. Alt, V, M
	Fade	Use the slider to Hide, Fade or Show the background garment, quilt block or fabric.
	Remove Background	Remove the garment, quilt block or fabric background. Alt, V, E
<b>View Mode</b>		
	3D View	View embroideries and background in standard 3D mode. Ctrl + T; Alt, V, 3
	Realistic 3D	View embroideries and background in 3D without the selection box. Ctrl + R; Alt, V, R
	2D View	View embroideries in 2D. Alt, V, 2
<b>Hoop</b>		
	Change Hoop	Choose the hoop size you wish to use in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery. Ctrl + H; Alt, 6; Alt, V, H
<b>Design Panel</b>		
	Show Design Panel	Show the Design Panel. Alt, V, D

\*Available only in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.

# Help Tab

	Help Topics	List help topics. F1; Alt, P, H
	Internet FAQs	Use the Internet to access answers to Frequently Asked Questions on the software. Alt, P, I
	Learning Center	View interactive training tutorials and videos on the Internet. Alt, P, L
	Purchase Center	Purchase additional modules on the Internet. Alt, P, P
	About PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery	Display module information, version number and copyright. Alt, P, A

# Context Menu

In addition to the options below, options for the stitch types (for SuperDesigns, lettering and frames), decorations and appliqué pieces may be present. For example, an appliqué SuperDesign may have options for Appliqué Fabric 1 and 2, and for Satin Line. These will open the Appliqué Selection dialog box and the Satin Line properties dialog box.

	Properties	Alter the size or rotation of the selected embroidery. Alter text and size of the selected lettering. Alter the size of the selected SuperDesign.
	Undo	Reverse the last action. Ctrl + Z
	Redo	Reverse the previously undone action. Ctrl + Y
	Cut	Delete the selected embroidery or block of stitches from the screen and place it on the clipboard. Ctrl + X
	Copy	Make a copy of the selected embroidery or block of stitches and place it on the clipboard. Ctrl + C
	Paste	Paste the clipboard stitches and attach them to the last visible stitch. Ctrl + V
	Paste in Center	Paste the Clipboard Block in the center of the hoop. Ctrl + Shift + V
	Duplicate	Make a copy of the selected embroidery, which is automatically pasted on the work area. Ctrl + D
	Delete	Delete the currently selected embroidery, block or stitch without moving it to the clipboard. Delete
<b>Zoom</b>		
	Zoom To Fit	Fit the work area to the screen. Ctrl + 9
	100%	Display at 100% magnification. Ctrl + 1
	200%	Display at 200% magnification. Ctrl + 2
	400%	Display at 400% magnification. Ctrl + 3
	800%	Display at 800% magnification. Ctrl + 4
	75%	Display at 75% magnification. Ctrl + 5

	50% Display at 50% magnification. Ctrl + 6
	25% Display at 25% magnification. Ctrl + 7
<b>View Mode</b>	
	<b>3D View</b> View embroideries and background in standard 3D mode. Ctrl + T
	<b>Realistic 3D</b> View embroideries and background in 3D without the selection box. Ctrl + R
	<b>2D View</b> View embroideries in 2D.
<b>Background</b>	
	<b>Move and Rotate Background</b> Click and drag to move the garment, quilt block or fabric background around the hoop or project area.
	<b>Remove Background</b> Remove the garment, quilt block or fabric background from the project.
	Background Off
	Fade to 10%
	Fade to 20%
	Fade to 30%
	Fade to 40%
	Fade to 50%
	Fade to 60%
	Fade to 70%
	Fade to 80%
	Fade to 90%
	Background On
	<b>Send Express</b> Send the selected embroidery to the screen of the connected embroidery machine. Ctrl + K
	<b>Send</b> Send the selected embroidery to the MyFiles or Personal Files folder of the connected embroidery machine. Ctrl + Shift + K
	<b>Send to mySewnet™</b> Send the selected embroidery to the mySewnet™ cloud for your mySewnet™ enabled embroidery machine. Ctrl + W
	<b>Send to Machine via mySewnet™</b> Send the selected embroidery to your mySewnet™ enabled embroidery machine via the mySewnet™ cloud.

# Handles Menu

	Straight	Create a lettering block with a straight line for the top.
	Diamond	Create a lettering block with a point at the top.
	Double Diamond	Create a lettering block with straight lines between the four handles at the top.
	Arch	Create a lettering block with a curve at the top.
	Curve	Create a lettering block with curved lines between the four handles at the top.
	Add a point to curve	Add a single point to the right end of the selected curve.
	Add 3 points to curve	Add three points to the right end of the selected curve.
	Remove a point from curve	Remove a point from the right end of the selected curve.
	Match Top and Bottom Lines	Use the same line type for the top and bottom lines in a block.
<p>Bottom Line Type</p>		
	Straight	Create a lettering block with a straight line for the bottom.
	Diamond	Create a lettering block with curved lines between the four handles at the bottom.
	Double Diamond	Create a lettering block with straight lines between the four handles at the bottom.
	Arch	Create a lettering block with a curve at the bottom.
	Curve	Create a lettering block with curved lines between the four handles at the bottom.
	Add a point to curve	Add a single point to the right end of the selected curve.
	Add 3 points to curve	Add three points to the right end of the selected curve.
	Remove a point from curve	Remove a point from the right end of the selected curve.
	Constraint - Size	When used, the two corners adjacent to the corner that is dragged move the same distance, in the same direction.
	Constraint - Pennant	When used, the corner above or below the corner that is dragged moves the same distance towards or away from the dragged corner vertically.
	Constraint - Perspective	When used, the corner to the right or left of the corner that is dragged moves the same distance towards or away from the dragged corner horizontally.

	Constraint - Italic	When used, the corner to the right or left of the corner that is dragged moves the same distance, in the same direction.
	Constraint - Free	When used, the corner handles can be dragged in any direction.
	Force Even Distribution	Distribute the handles between the two corners evenly.

# Toolbars

## Quick Access Toolbar

	Insert	Insert an existing embroidery into your current project. Ctrl + I; Alt, 1
	Save	Save a multipart embroidery under the same name. Ctrl + S; Alt, 2
	Save As	Save a multipart embroidery under a new name. Alt, 3
	Export	Save the embroidery in the current window as a flattened .vp4 file, or in an alternative embroidery format. Alt, 4
	Print	Print the selected embroidery(ies) and background. To set page options, use File, Print. Ctrl + P; Alt, 5
	Change Hoop	Choose the hoop size you wish to use in PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery. Ctrl + H; Alt, 6
	Undo	Undo the last action. Ctrl + Z; Alt, 7
	Redo	Redo the previously undone action. Ctrl + Y; Alt, 8
	Life View	Show how an embroidery exported from the project will look in 3D with real-world perspective. Ctrl + L; Alt, 9
	Design Player	Play through the stitches in the embroidery as if they were being stitched from an exported embroidery. Ctrl + J; Alt, 0

## Status Bar

Use the Zoom Commands on the Status Bar to navigate around embroideries.

	Zoom To Rectangle	Increase magnification of an area of the embroidery. Ctrl + 0
	Zoom To Fit	Fit the work area to the screen. Ctrl + 9
		100% Display at 100% magnification. Ctrl + 1
		200% Display at 200% magnification. Ctrl + 2
		400% Display at 400% magnification. Ctrl + 3
		800% Display at 800% magnification. Ctrl + 4
		75% Display at 75% magnification. Ctrl + 5
		50% Display at 50% magnification. Ctrl + 6
		25% Display at 25% magnification. Ctrl + 7
	Zoom Out	Decrease magnification. Ctrl + -
	Zoom In	Increase magnification. Ctrl + =

## QuickLink Toolbar

For information about the contents of the QuickLink toolbar, please refer to the PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Guide.

# Design Panel

## Design Information

**Stitch Count** : The Stitch Count of the embroidery.

**Width** : The Width of the embroidery.

**Height** : The Height of the embroidery.

**Colors** : The number of colors in the embroidery.

## Color Select

A worksheet panel showing the color blocks in the embroidery. It is used to change the thread color, show which color blocks are visible and turn the display of color blocks on and off, move color blocks up  and down  the design, and merge  color blocks.

The Move and Merge color functions are available only in the Modify tab of PREMIER+™ 2 Embroidery Extra.

*The Draw Range may hide threads in a visible color block.*

Notes and Settings	
 Notes	Display the Notes for the currently selected embroidery.
 Settings	Display the Settings for the currently selected embroidery.
 Edit	Edit the Notes or Settings for the currently selected embroidery.

## Clipboard Block

The Clipboard Block shows the current embroidery that can be pasted into the work area.

## Overview Window

The overview window gives a small overview of the whole work area for the current embroideries and background.

# Character Sets

The character set contains the following characters:

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ  
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz  
0123456789 spc  
! " @ \$ % & \* ( ) - + \_ = \ / ? ' ; : , .  
À Á Â Ã Ä Å Æ Ç È É Ê Ë Ì Í Î Ï Ð Ñ Ò Ó Ô Õ Ö Ø Ù Ú Û Ü Ý Þ ß  
à á â ã ä å æ ç è é ê ë ì í î ï ð ñ ò ó ô õ ö ø ù ú û ý þ ÿ

## Alternative Alphabets

You can enter characters in other alphabets from the National font category, such as Greek and Hebrew. Use the key listed in the table to obtain the desired character.

### Hebrew

On your keyboard, use the character below the Hebrew character to write that character. Numbers, symbols and punctuation use their usual keys.

---

						
!	A	B	C	D	E	F

---

						
G	H	I	J	K	L	M

---

						
N	O	P	Q	R	S	T

---

						
U	V	W	X	Y	Z	

---

# Greek

On your keyboard, use the character below the Greek character to write that character. Numbers, symbols and punctuation use their usual keys.

Α	Β	Γ	Δ	Ε	Θ	Η
A	B	C	D	E	F	H
Ι	Χ	Κ	Λ	Μ	Ν	Ο
I	J	K	L	M	N	O
Π	Ω	Ρ	Σ	Τ	Υ	΄
P	Q	R	S	T	U	V
Ψ	Ξ	Φ	Ζ	α	β	γ
W	X	Y	Z	a	b	c
δ	ε	θ	η	ι	χ	κ
d	e	f	h	i	j	k
λ	μ	ν	ο	π	ω	ρ
l	m	n	o	p	q	r
σ	τ	υ	ς	ψ	ξ	φ
s	t	u	v	w	x	y
ζ						
z						

# Index

## Numerics

- 2 Cutwork Needles ..... 465
- 2D Template..... 226
- 2D View ..... 30
  - Thread Effects..... 30
- 3D
  - Realistic..... 29
  - Standard..... 29
- 3D Background
  - Color ..... 85
  - Texture ..... 85
- 4 Cutwork Needles ..... 465
- 45
  - Rotate..... 143
- 45 Degree Rotate ..... 68
- A**
  - Abbreviation ..... 46
  - About..... 5
  - Acquire Picture..... 196, 245
  - Acrobat Reader® ..... 4
  - Add
    - Quick Color Theme..... 53
  - Add 3 points to curve ..... 341
  - Add a point to curve ..... 341
  - Add to Dictionary ..... 482
  - Add To Selection ..... 61, 101
  - Adding Decorations ..... 201
  - Adjust Embroidery
    - Quilt Block Wizard ..... 141
  - Adjusting Monograms ..... 317
  - Aids for Alignment..... 227
  - Align
    - Bottom..... 71
    - Center..... 70, 369
    - Left ..... 70
    - Middle..... 71
    - Right ..... 70
    - Split Project Sections..... 226
    - To Previous Sections..... 228
    - Top..... 71
    - With Corner or Baste Alignment Stitches  
228
    - With No Alignment Stitches..... 228
  - Alignment
    - General Considerations ..... 226
    - Horizontal ..... 70
    - Lettering..... 332, 351
    - Other Aids..... 227
    - Stitch ..... 228
    - Stitch Style..... 220, 230
    - Tools..... 70
    - Vertical..... 71
    - With No Stitches..... 220, 228
  - All
    - Combine..... 73
    - Select..... 59
  - Alternative Style
    - Small Letters ..... 312
  - Ancestors Chart ..... 280
  - Angle ..... 141, 426, 434
  - Background Picture .163, 166, 191, 197
  - Block Rotation..... 69, 101
  - Fill ..... 426
  - Fill in Quilt Block..... 141
  - Fill Pattern ..... 426
  - Linear PhotoStitch..... 261
  - Modify Block..... 522
  - Pattern Fill ..... 387
  - Tiles ..... 266
  - Animals 1 — Patterns 37 to 48..... 472
  - Animated Demo ..... 41
  - Animation
    - Create Stitches..... 259
  - Appliqué..... 176–198, 383
    - Create ..... 420
    - Express..... 178
    - Method ..... 130, 199
    - Placement..... 130, 198
  - Appliqué Embroidery
    - Change Fabric..... 176
  - Appliqué Frame
    - Stitching Out ..... 333, 334, 405, 410
  - Appliqué Hole ..... 177
  - Appliqué Outline..... 177
  - Appliqué Piece ..... 176
    - Margin..... 199
  - Appliqué Piece Margin 131, 187, 199, 384, 482
  - Appliqué Pieces
    - Export ..... 25
  - Appliqué Selection ..... 185
  - Appliqué Tab ..... 519
  - Arch ..... 341
  - Arch Over ..... 344
  - Arch Under ..... 345
  - Area
    - Define with Eraser ..... 250
    - Deselect ..... 99, 100
    - Focal ..... 258
    - Get Length Of ..... 33, 94
    - Group ..... 62
    - Traveling Stitches Around Outside... 428
    - Work ..... 7
  - Area Sensitivity
    - Express Border ..... 129
    - Picture Options..... 123
    - Quick Trace..... 127
  - Arrows — Patterns 49 to 60 ..... 472
  - Artistic Effect ..... 260
  - Autolevel..... 235, 236, 252
  - Automatic
    - Crop ..... 116
    - Ghost Mode ..... 93
    - Kerning ..... 331, 350
  - Automatic Crop
    - Background Wizard..... 163
  - Automatic Reset
    - Rotate and Crop Picture ..... 247
  - B**
    - Background
      - Color..... 85

Faded.....	34, 155
Grid .....	8
Move.....	34, 156
Name.....	169, 194
Off.....	34, 155
On.....	34, 155
Removal.....	235
Remove.....	249
Remove Color.....	132
Size.....	168, 193
Texture.....	85
Wizard.....	155-170, 189-194
Background Color	
ExpressDesign.....	122
Remove in ExpressDesign.....	122
Remove Multiple.....	122
Backgrounds.....	155, 185
Real Size.....	157
Backwards	
Move.....	72
Bar	
Menu.....	6
Status.....	8
Title.....	6
Zoom.....	32, 85, 308, 311, 313, 316
Baseline	
QuickFont.....	389, 396
Baste	
Alignment Stitches.....	221, 228
Bead.....	201
Bells.....	17
Black Lines.....	123
Block.....	339
Clipboard.....	8, 94, 140
Deselect.....	98
Horizontally Flip.....	69
Make From Visible Area.....	100
Modify.....	68
Paste.....	95, 98
Rotation Angle.....	69, 101
Select.....	97
Vertically Flip.....	69
Block Templates.....	343
Blocks	
Change Order Of Color.....	102
Blue.....	55
Handles for Resize.....	98
Handles Resize.....	66
Border	
Express.....	106
Express Options.....	128
Individual Letter.....	315, 321
Monogram.....	315
Monogram Adjust.....	322
Options.....	130, 198, 418
Type.....	128
Border Properties	
Satin.....	468
Both	
Endless Marker.....	84
Bottom	
Align.....	71
Bowl.....	345
Box	
Select.....	59, 99
Selection.....	57
Break Up Line.....	207
Bridge Concave Down.....	346
Bridge Concave Up.....	347
Bridge Convex Down.....	346
Bridge Convex Up.....	347
Brightness	
Color Tone.....	50
Butte.....	348
Butterfly Motif Line.....	423
<b>C</b>	
Camera.....	196, 245
Category.....	431, 433, 469
Curved Crosshatch Fill.....	439
Font.....	329
Font Name.....	392
Frame.....	517
MultiWave Fill.....	442
Shape Fill.....	447
Tapered Motifs.....	462
Center	
Align.....	70
Cross.....	32
In Hoop.....	69
Lines.....	227
Center Motifs 1 and 2.....	433
Center of	
Embroidery.....	32
Rotation.....	68
Central Point.....	469, 471
Change	
All To.....	121, 257
Colors.....	352, 404, 414
Existing Thread Color.....	45
Frame Properties.....	413, 414
Hoop.....	219
Letter Properties.....	351
Order Of Color Blocks.....	102
SuperDesign Properties.....	403
Thread.....	121, 257
Character Set.....	374, 531
Cyrillic 1.....	376
Cyrillic 2.....	376
Cyrillic 3.....	376
Extended.....	374
Greek 1.....	377
Hebrew 1.....	377
Hiragana 1.....	376
Hiragana 2.....	377
Latin 1.....	375
Super-Extended.....	374
Western 1.....	375
Western 2.....	375
Western 3.....	375
Western 4.....	375
Characters	
Enter Special.....	335, 532
Keystrokes for Special.....	4
Not Available in Font.....	334
Chart	
Ancestors.....	280
Check Spelling.....	335, 482
Chevron.....	347
Children.....	276, 278
Choose	
Connection Method.....	283

Design Type .....	112	ColorSort .....	49
Embroidery Type.....	243	After Combine .....	73
Fabric.....	227	Frame .....	414
Monochrome Thread Color.....	260	Lettering .....	332, 351, 352, 404
New Thread Color .....	55	Combine.....	73
Photographs for PhotoStitch Wizard.....	234	All.....	73
Picture .....	113, 195, 244	Border .....	419
Pictures for ExpressDesign Wizard ..	108	Remove Overlap .....	482
Thread Colors .....	120, 256	Selected .....	74
Thread Colors Tiles .....	265	Then ColorSort .....	73
Choose Picture		Compensation .....	230
Background Wizard .....	160, 189	Fill .....	427
Circle		Satin Area .....	455
Encore .....	77	Split Project.....	221
Circle Clockwise.....	336	Connected Outlines .....	111
Circle Counter-Clockwise .....	336	Connection	
Circles 1 — Patterns 61 to 72.....	472	Lettering .....	351
Circles 2 — Patterns 73 to 84.....	472	Split Project.....	221, 230
Circular		Types .....	331
Rotate Handle .....	57	Connection Method.....	283
Cleaning a Picture.....	108	Connector Type .....	287
Climate — Patterns 85 to 96 .....	472	Constant	
Clipboard Block.....	8, 94, 140	Density .....	66
Close		Stitch Count.....	66
PREMIER+ Embroidery .....	5	Constant Width Satin.....	126
Save On.....	19	Constraint - Free .....	342
Color		Constraint - Italic .....	342
3D Background.....	85	Constraint - Pennant.....	342
Change Existing Thread .....	45, 320, 321	Constraint - Perspective .....	342
Change Order of Blocks.....	102	Constraint - Size.....	341
Choose New Thread.....	55	Constraints .....	341
Edit .....	54	Context Menu .....	525
ExpressDesign Background .....	122	Continuous	
Information .....	477	QuickFont .....	390
Insert .....	103	Contour Fill Options.....	454
Linear PhotoStitch .....	260	Contrast	
List.....	121, 257	Color Tone .....	50
Match .....	306	Picture.....	236
Models .....	55	Control Panel .....	8, 531
Order .....	121	Convert	
Paste .....	54	Lettering to Embroidery.....	353, 415
Preview Thread .....	123, 126, 258	SuperDesigns to Embroidery .....	406
Select.....	531	Thread Range .....	51
Selection .....	120, 256	Copies	
Thread .....	55, 127, 129	Print Number.....	481
Tone .....	50	Copy.....	94, 95
Worksheet .....	45, 102	Color.....	54
Color PhotoStitch		Corner	
Creating.....	241	Alignment Stitch .....	220, 228
Photographs.....	236	Endless Marker .....	83
Color PhotoStitch Embroidery .....	232, 243	Corners .....	408
Color Tile Embroidery.....	233, 244	Rounded Border.....	315
Photos .....	237	Create	
Colors.....	531	Appliqué .....	420
Change .....	352, 404, 414	Lettering .....	326, 327
Choose Thread.....	120, 256	Stitches Animation .....	259
Dialog Box .....	55	Create a Family Tree Embroidery .....	289
Edit .....	45	Create a Frame .....	409
Lettering.....	352, 415	Create New Chart.....	276
Merge.....	103	Creating	
Move.....	103	Embroideries .....	496
Number of .....	120, 256	Creating Fonts.....	370
Remove Multiple Background.....	122	Crop	
SuperDesigns .....	404	Picture for Background .....	163
Thread .....	45	Picture for Fabric.....	166, 191
View Selected .....	102	Picture for Garment.....	163

Picture for Quilt Block.....	163	Satin Border.....	468
Crop Box.....	197, 247	Satin Columns.....	380
Crop Picture		Shape Fill.....	446
Load Picture Wizard.....	197	Standard.....	427
Cross		Stitch Options.....	263
Center.....	32	Stitching.....	261
Crosshatch		Depth	
Curved.....	437	Scan.....	261
Crosshatch Fill Properties.....	435	Descendants Chart.....	276, 278
Curve.....	341	Description	
Curved		Thread.....	364
QuiltStipple Fill.....	453	Deselect	
Curved Crosshatch Fill.....	437	Block.....	98
Properties.....	437	Wrong Area.....	99, 100
Custom Color.....	55	Design	
Cut.....	94	Choose Type.....	112
Cut Line		Information8, 35, 40, 125, 127, 129, 262, 264	
Quilt Block.....	138	Preview.....	263
Cut-out.....	130, 199, 384	Scale.....	477
Cutwork.....	465	Separator Animation.....	221
Cutwork Needle.....	48, 465	Design Information.....	531
Cutwork Needle Line.....	24	Design Panel.....	35
Cyrillic 1 Character Set.....	376	Show.....	35
Cyrillic 2 Character Set.....	376	Design Player.....	38
Cyrillic 3 Character Set.....	376	Video Speed.....	43
<b>D</b>		Design Underlay	
Dark Borders and Backgrounds.....	112	Express Embroidery.....	125
Decide Stitch Out Order.....	226	Designs	
Decorated Bells.....	212	Grouping.....	62
Decoration.....	201	Desktop Shortcuts.....	5
Decoration Information.....	478	Detail	
Decoration Line		Enhance.....	236, 261, 263
Freehand Point.....	203	Detail Enhancement.....	109
Freehand Tablet.....	203	Diagonal Corners	
Decoration Selection.....	208	Echo Fill.....	445
Decoration SuperDesign.....	205	Diamond.....	340, 343
Decoration Tab.....	520	Curved Crosshatch Fill.....	437
Decoration Template.....	27	Tile Shape.....	265
Decorations.....	201-215	Diamonds — Patterns 97 to 108.....	472
Editing.....	205	Dictionary	
Export.....	210	Spelling.....	482
Define		Different Colors for Lettering.....	352, 415
Focal Area.....	258	Different Colors for SuperDesigns.....	404
Delete.....	96	Digital Camera.....	196, 245
All Thread Colors.....	257	Dimensions	
Font.....	356	Page Setup.....	477
Quick Color Theme.....	54	Display Names As.....	277
Single Stitches.....	96	Distance	
Thread Color.....	122, 257	Between Secure Points.....	465
Delete All		Distribute	
Thread Color.....	122	Horizontally.....	70
Delete Piece.....	181	Vertically.....	71
Delete Points.....	181, 206	Double Arch.....	343
Delete Selection.....	206	Double Diamond.....	340
Demo.....	41	Double Stitch	
Density		Appliqué.....	130, 199
Constant.....	66	Length.....	200
Fill Properties.....	427	Properties.....	466
Gradient.....	427, 451, 457	Double Stitch - Stop - Satin.....	130, 199, 384
MultiWave Fill.....	441	Double with Zigzag Return.....	466
Normal.....	427, 450	Double Zigzag.....	466
Pattern Fill.....	386	Drag and Drop Embroideries.....	17
Radial Fill.....	449	Draw All Stitches.....	105
Satin.....	388	Draw Line.....	202
Satin Area.....	456	Draw Range.....	104, 522

Draw Shape.....	204
Dual Thread.....	47
Duplicate	
Font.....	355
<b>E</b>	
Echo Fill.....	444
Echo Lines.....	444
Edge Walk Underlay.....	388
Express Border.....	468
Satin Columns.....	380
Edit	
Color.....	54
Colors and Stitches.....	45
Embroideries.....	93
Frames and Borders.....	408, 418
Menu.....	506
Page.....	521
Quick Color Theme.....	54
Select Embroidery.....	98
Single Stitches.....	96
Edit Individuals.....	276
Editable Properties.....	424
Editing Decorations.....	205
Effect	
Artistic.....	260
Effects.....	46
Embroideries	
Drag and Drop Load.....	17
Edit.....	93
Grouping.....	62
Managing.....	14
Modifying.....	57, 76
Open.....	14
Open Recently Used.....	17
Remove Overlap When Combining.....	482
Save.....	18
View.....	29
Embroidery	
Center.....	32
Choose Type.....	243
Color PhotoStitch.....	232
Create.....	496
Endless.....	82
Express.....	106, 113
Express Options.....	120
File Formats.....	11
Fix Lettering.....	353, 415
Fix SuperDesigns.....	406
Monochrome Linear.....	233
On Heavy Knit Fabric.....	427, 450, 468
On Linen.....	427, 450, 468
On Satin.....	427, 450, 468
On Thick Fabric.....	427, 450, 468
Open.....	140, 294
Paste.....	95
Repeat.....	76, 84
Select.....	57
Select to Edit.....	98
Sepia PhotoStitch.....	232
Split.....	218
Stitch Out Endless.....	89
Test Stitch Out of Endless.....	89
Thumbnail.....	229
Encore.....	76
Line.....	407, 423
Motif Line.....	423
Shape.....	79
SuperDesigns.....	407
Tab.....	511
End Marker.....	83
End Point.....	469, 471
Endless	
Embroidery.....	82
Embroidery Stitch Out.....	89
Embroidery Test Stitch Out.....	89
Hoop Orientation and Fabric Direction	
Examples.....	87
Enhance Detail.....	236, 242, 261, 263
Enhancing Details.....	109
Enter	
Letters.....	334
Special Characters.....	335, 532
Enter Angles	
Curved Crosshatch Fill.....	438
Enter Another Partner.....	278
Enter Size.....	13, 151, 219
Quilt Block.....	138
Word Sculpt.....	292
Envelopes	
Monogram.....	308
Eraser	
Background Removal.....	249
Large.....	250
Medium.....	250
Small.....	250
Error Messages.....	484
Examples of Endless Hoop Orientation and	
Fabric Direction.....	87
Existing Thread Color.....	45
Exit.....	5
Save On.....	19
Expand	
Find Outlines.....	117
Pixel-Thin Lines.....	123
Expander	
Find Outlines.....	117
Explorer.....	17
Export.....	20
Export Appliqué Pieces.....	25
Export Decoration Template.....	27
Export Options.....	478
Exporting Decorations.....	210
Express Appliqué.....	178
Express Border.....	106, 113
Options.....	128
Pictures.....	111
Express Embroidery.....	106, 113
Options.....	120
Pictures.....	110
Express Trace.....	106, 113
Options.....	126
Pictures.....	111
ExpressDesign	
Wizard.....	106-135
ExpressDesign Wizard	
Choose and Optimize Pictures.....	108
ExpressMonogram	
Wizard.....	301-325
ExpressMonogram Wizard.....	318, 323
Extended	
Character Set.....	374

Eye		Fill Pattern.....	471
Red.....	252	Select.....	144
Select.....	253	Fill Patterns	
<b>F</b>		Sample Guide.....	472
Fabric		Fill Properties	
Background.....	157, 158	Density.....	427
Embroidery on Heavy Knit.....	427, 450, 468	Options.....	426
Embroidery on Thick.....	427, 450, 468	Pattern.....	426
Express Embroidery.....	125	Finalizing Options.....	81
Rotate and Crop Picture.....	166, 191	Find	
Select.....	182, 420	Information.....	3
Fabric Advisor		Outlines.....	117
Express Embroidery.....	125	Find Thread.....	46
Fabric and Stitch Type Options.....	124	Finish	
Fabric Choice.....	227	ExpressMonogram Wizard.....	277, 284, 286, 288, 309, 311, 314, 316
Fabric Direction		First Individual.....	276, 278
Endless Embroidery.....	83	First Name.....	278
Examples.....	87	First Section	
FaceBook.....	11, 42, 44, 115, 161, 190, 196, 239, 246	Split Embroidery.....	222
Fade		Stitch Out.....	227
Background.....	34, 155	Fit Motif To Line	
Family.....	276	Curved Crosshatch Fill.....	439
Family Name.....	278	MultiWave Fill.....	442
Family Tree		Shape Fill.....	447
Wizard.....	273-289	Fit To Hoop.....	107
Fan.....	345	Fit To Line.....	470
FAQs.....	4	Tapered Motifs.....	463
Father.....	280	Fit To Rectangle.....	107
Feather		Fit To Straight Line.....	338
Both Sides.....	460	Fit To Wavy Line.....	338
Top.....	460	Resize.....	338
Feathered Satin.....	459	Fix	
Felting Needle.....	48	Lettering as Embroidery.....	353, 415
Female.....	278	SuperDesigns as Embroidery.....	406
File		Fix As Stitches.....	74
Embroidery Formats.....	11	Fix as Stitches.....	402, 406, 415
Name.....	15	Flag.....	344
File Menu.....	504	Flickr.....	11, 38, 41, 42, 44, 115, 161, 190, 196, 239, 246
Files		Flip	
Picture.....	11	Block Horizontally.....	69
Sample.....	4	Block Vertically.....	69
Files of Type		Handles.....	57
Open.....	15	Horizontal.....	141
Fill.....	382	Vertical.....	142
Angle.....	426	Vertical and Horizontal.....	69
Curved Crosshatch.....	437	Flip design for felting or reverse embroidery.....	477
Echo.....	444	Flood Fill.....	249
Express Embroidery.....	125	Background Removal.....	235
Flood.....	249	Flourish.....	409
MultiWave.....	441	Foam	
Pattern.....	144	Puffy.....	46, 47
Satin Effect.....	471	Focal Area.....	258
Tiles.....	266	Define.....	258
Fill + Satin Border.....	382	Font.....	373
Fill Area		Category.....	329
Traveling Stitches Around Outside.....	428	Create.....	370
Fill Density		Create New.....	395
Tiles.....	266	Delete.....	356
Fill Options		Duplicate.....	355
Contour.....	454	Import External.....	357
QuiltStipple.....	453	LC Lowercase.....	334
Radial.....	449	Letter Properties.....	350
Shape.....	446	Name.....	330, 392
Spiral.....	450	New.....	394

Properties .....	424	Given Beside Family Name .....	277
Search .....	328, 354	Given Name .....	278
Select .....	283	Given Name Only .....	277
Selection .....	329	Glow in the Dark .....	40
Size .....	513	Gradient	
Special Characters Not Available .....	334	Multicolor .....	429, 458
Style .....	310, 313	Gradient — Patterns 253 to 264 .....	473
UC Uppercase .....	334	Gradient Density .....	427, 451, 457
Font Manager .....	354	Grandchildren .....	276, 277, 279
Fonts		Grandparents .....	280
OpenType® Symbol .....	330, 350	Great-Grandchildren .....	276, 277, 279
Special .....	330, 350	Great-Grandparents .....	281
TrueType® Symbol .....	330, 350	Greek .....	533
Force Even Distribution .....	342	Greek 1 Character Set .....	377
Formats of Embroidery File .....	11	Green .....	55
Formatting Multi-Lines .....	332, 351	Green Handles 211, 213, 214, 335, 363, 401, 413, 424	
Forwards		Pale .....	317
Move .....	72	Grid .....	8, 32
Frame .....	285, 408	Page Setup .....	477
Border Width .....	413, 414	Group .....	62, 419, 431, 433, 469
Create .....	409	Area .....	62
Options .....	413, 414	Curved Crosshatch Fill .....	439
Frame Properties		MultiWave Fill .....	442
Change .....	413, 414	Shape Fill .....	447
Frames .....	408	Tapered Motifs .....	462
Free		Group Similar	
Constraint .....	342	Encore .....	81
Free Rotation .....	67	Grouping Selected Embroideries .....	62
Free Sculpt .....	344	Groups	
Freeform .....	344	Using .....	62
Freehand		Guides	
Select .....	59, 99	Sample .....	4
Freehand Point		View and Print .....	4
Decoration Line .....	203	<b>H</b>	
Freehand Point Appliqué Hole .....	178	Handles	
Freehand Point Appliqué Outline .....	177	Blue for Resize .....	98
Freehand Tablet Appliqué Hole .....	178	Green 211, 213, 214, 335, 401, 413, 424	
Freehand Tablet Appliqué Outline .....	177	Pale Green .....	317
Full		Resize and Scale .....	66
Letter .....	310	Square Resize .....	57
Letter Options .....	319	Triangular Flip .....	57
Full Circle .....	336	White for Scale .....	98
<b>G</b>		Handles Menu .....	527
Gamma		Hearts — Patterns 109 to 120 .....	473
Picture .....	50	Heavy Knit Fabric .....	427, 450, 468
Gap .....	434	Hebrew .....	532
Encore .....	81	Hebrew 1 Character Set .....	377
Endless .....	84	Height .....	531
Letter Options .....	331	Height %	
Letter Properties .....	350	Modify Block .....	522
Minimum .....	439, 442, 447, 462, 470	Height and Width .....	432, 433, 470
Gaps in Pictures .....	109	Curved Crosshatch Fill .....	440
Garment		Letter Options .....	330
Background .....	157	Letter Properties .....	350
Load .....	158	MultiWave Fill .....	443
Rotate and Crop Picture .....	163	Shape Fill .....	448
Gem .....	348	SuperDesign .....	400, 403, 414
Gender .....	278	Tapered Motifs .....	463
General Alignment Considerations .....	226	Help	
General Considerations		Menu .....	524
ExpressDesign Wizard .....	108	Online .....	4
Get Length Of Area .....	33, 94	Hexagon	
Getting Started .....	1	Tile Shape .....	265
Ghost Mode .....	93	Hide and Show Stitches .....	102
Given Above Family Name .....	277		

High	
Compensation .....	221
Highlight Thread .....	364
Hiragana 1 Character Set .....	376
Hiragana 2 Character Set .....	377
Hole	
Appliqué .....	177
Hoop .....	477
Center In .....	69
Change .....	219
Encore .....	80
Fit To .....	107
Move Into .....	71
Options Encore .....	80
Orientation Examples .....	87
PhotoStitch To .....	233
Project .....	298
Selection .....	12
Size .....	218
Split Project Wizard .....	229
Splitting .....	22
Templates and Printed Worksheets .....	227
Hoop Group .....	12, 219
Hoop Size .....	12, 219
Horizontal	
Alignment .....	70
Flip .....	69
Horizontal Block .....	343
Horizontal Flip .....	141
Horizontally	
Distribute .....	70
Flip Block .....	69
How to Create a Font .....	370
How to Create Lettering .....	282
HSL .....	55
HTML .....	492
Hue Saturation Luminance (HSL)	
Color Model .....	55
<b>I</b>	
Identical	
Small Letters .....	312
Import External Font .....	356, 357
Import Font from Embroideries .....	501
Improving Contrast and Color .....	236
Inches .....	33, 94
Include Secure Points .....	465
Included in My Hoops .....	12, 219
Individual	
Letter Tab .....	514
Place Bead .....	202
Individual Letter Border .....	321
Border Options .....	315
Information	
Color .....	477
Design8, 35, 40, 125, 127, 129, 145, 262, 264, 267, 295 .....	
Endless Embroidery .....	85
Finding .....	3
Print .....	477
Save Embroidery Project .....	222
Technical .....	4, 478
Insert .....	16
Color Change .....	103
Stitches .....	97
Stop Command .....	103
Insert Points .....	181
Instagram .....	115, 161, 190, 196, 239, 246
Intelligent Split .....	220, 230
Internet FAQs .....	4
Italic .....	344
Constraint .....	342
<b>J</b>	
Joining Point	
QuickFont .....	389
Jump Stitch	
Split Project .....	221
<b>K</b>	
Keep and Remove Parts of Background ...	110
Keep and Remove Parts of the Photograph	235
Keep Original Photograph .....	234
Keep Original Picture .....	108
Kern .....	470
Curved Crosshatch Fill .....	440
MultiWave Fill .....	443
Shape Fill .....	448
Kerning	
Letter Options .....	331
Letter Properties .....	350
Keystrokes for Special Characters .....	4
<b>L</b>	
Lace — Patterns 253 to 264 .....	473
Language	
Spelling .....	482
Large	
Eraser .....	250
Letter .....	308
Last	
Split Embroidery Section .....	223
Latin 1 Character Set .....	375
Layout Order .....	72
LC Lowercase Font .....	334
Left	
Align .....	70
Left Taper .....	468, 469, 471
Left/Bottom	
Endless Marker .....	84
Leisure 1 — Patterns 121 to 132 .....	473
Length	
Double Stitch .....	200
Of Area .....	33, 94
Running Stitch .....	199
Stitch .....	385
Letter	
Full .....	310
Individual Border .....	315, 321
Large .....	308
Small .....	308, 312
Tab .....	512
Letter Borders	
Spacing .....	306
Letter Properties .....	349
Change .....	351
Lettering	
ColorSort .....	332
Create .....	326, 327
Different Colors .....	352, 415
Fix as Embroidery .....	353, 415
Multi-Line .....	334
Resize Fit To Wavy Line .....	338

Letters	
Entering.....	334
Letter Properties.....	350
Life View .....	39
Limit	
Offset.....	434
Line	
Between Letters.....	321
Break Up.....	207
Encore .....	78, 407, 423
Endless Marker.....	83
Fit Motif To.....	439, 442, 447
Fit To .....	463, 470
Formatting.....	332, 351
Lettering Shapes .....	335
Type .....	335
Line Options	
Encore .....	78
Linear	
Linear PhotoStitch.....	260
Linear Embroidery	
Monochrome.....	233
Linear PhotoStitch	
Angle.....	261
Background Removal .....	239
Choose Thread Color .....	260
Creating .....	240
Photographs.....	237
Specks .....	249
Thread Color.....	260
Linear PhotoStitch Embroidery.....	233, 244
Linen.....	427, 450, 468
Lines	
Black .....	123
Center.....	227
Echo.....	444
Expand Pixel-Thin .....	123
Reduce Thick .....	123
Load	
Embroideries with Drag and Drop.....	17
Existing Background.....	159
Previously Saved Background.....	158
Load Embroidery	
Quilt Block Wizard .....	140, 294
Look In	
Open.....	15
Low	
Compensation .....	221
Lowercase Font LC.....	334
Luminance.....	55
<b>M</b>	
Main Toolbar.....	529
Make Block from Visible Area .....	100
Male .....	278
Managing Embroideries .....	14
Margin	
Appliqué Piece.....	131, 187
Border .....	306
Border Options .....	142, 315, 419
Encore .....	80
Marker	
End.....	83
Positions.....	84
Match	
Color.....	306
Match Placement Line.....	131, 187, 199, 384
Override .....	483
Match Top and Bottom Lines.....	341
Maze	
Linear PhotoStitch.....	260
Measurement Units.....	478
Measurements .....	33, 94
Medium	
Eraser.....	250
Menu	
Bar .....	6
Context .....	525, 527
Edit.....	506
File.....	504
Help .....	524
Start .....	5
View .....	523
Wizards .....	510
Menus .....	504
Merge Colors .....	103
Method	
Appliqué .....	383
Choose Connection .....	283
Outline Stitch .....	385
QuickTrace.....	126
Splitting Embroidery .....	220
Method for Appliqué.....	130, 199
Middle	
Align .....	71
Millimeters.....	33, 94
Minimum Gap .....	470
Curved Crosshatch Fill .....	439
MultiWave Fill .....	442
Shape Fill .....	447
Tapered Motifs.....	462
Minimum Significant Stitch Length .....	24
Mirror.....	432, 433, 470
Curved Crosshatch Fill .....	440
Encore.....	81
MultiWave Fill .....	443
Shape Fill.....	448
Mirrored	
Encore.....	77
Mitered End.....	468, 471
Modify Block.....	68
Modify Tab	
Thread Effects .....	47
Modifying Embroideries.....	57, 76
Monochrome	
PhotoStitch Embroidery.....	232, 243
Monochrome Linear Embroidery.....	233
Monochrome PhotoStitch	
Photographs.....	237
Monochrome Threshold.....	118
Monogram	
Border .....	315
Create.....	304
Envelopes .....	308
Resize .....	317
Select.....	308
Size.....	310
Spacing.....	311
Style.....	308
Wizard.....	301-325
Mosaic — Patterns 133 to 144 .....	473
Mosaic — Patterns 265 to 276 .....	473

Mother .....	280
Motif.....	447, 469
Curved Crosshatch Fill.....	439
Encore .....	423
Fit To Line.....	439, 442, 447
MultiWave Fill.....	442
Shape Fill.....	447
Tapered Motifs.....	462
Motif 1 .....	431, 432
Motif 2 .....	432
Motif Fill Properties .....	431
Options .....	434
Patterns .....	431, 432, 446
Motif Line .....	
Encore .....	423
Properties .....	469
Motifs .....	
Center 1 and 2.....	433
Use.....	441, 446
Move .....	
Background.....	34, 156
Backwards .....	72
Center of Rotation .....	68
Colors .....	103
Embroidery .....	66
Forwards .....	72
Into Hoop.....	71
Move Down .....	
Color .....	121
Move Up .....	
Color .....	121
Multicolor Gradient .....	429, 458
Multi-Line .....	
Formatting .....	332, 351
Lettering.....	334
Multipart Hoops .....	
Splitting.....	22
Multiple .....	
Background Colors.....	122
Multiple Designs .....	
Encore .....	78
Multiple Select .....	58
MultiWave Fill .....	441
My Hoops .....	12, 219
MyThreadRanges .....	46
<b>N</b>	
Name .....	
Background.....	169, 194
File.....	15
Font.....	330, 392
Thumbnail .....	17
Nearest Point .....	
QuickFont .....	389, 396
Needle .....	
Cutwork.....	465
New .....	14
Background.....	158, 160
New Font .....	
QuickFont .....	394
New Thread Color .....	55
New Window .....	14
Next.....	394
Split Section.....	222
Next Design.....	62
Next Page .....	
Print Preview .....	478
Next Piece.....	180
No Change .....	
Picture Outline.....	123
No Taper .....	468, 469, 471
None .....	
Alignment Stitch .....	220, 228
Compensation .....	221
Select.....	60, 100
Normal Density.....	427, 450
Notes .....	36
Page Setup.....	478
Nudge .....	
Embroidery .....	66
Number of Colors.....	120, 256
Number of Repeats .....	81
<b>O</b>	
Octagon.....	347
Offset .....	434
Limit.....	434
On .....	
Background .....	34, 155
One Page / Two Page .....	
Print Preview .....	478
Online Help .....	4
On-screen Pointers .....	9
Open.....	15
Embroidery .....	14, 140, 294
Recently Used Embroideries.....	17
OpenType® Symbol Fonts .....	330, 350
Optimize Photos .....	
PhotoStitch Wizard .....	234
Optimize Pictures for ExpressDesign Wizard	108
Optimize Stitch Length.....	24
Options .....	
Border .....	130, 198
Contour Fill.....	454
Express Border .....	128
Express Embroidery .....	120
Express Trace .....	126
Fabric and Stitch Type.....	124
Fill Properties.....	426
Frame .....	413, 414
Hoop Encore.....	80
Motif Fill Properties.....	434
MultiWave Fill.....	441
Picture.....	123, 127, 129, 252
Print .....	224
QuiltStipple Fill .....	453
Radial Fill .....	449
Shape Fill.....	446
Spiral Fill.....	450
Stitch .....	127, 263, 265
Trace.....	127
Word Sculpt .....	293
Order .....	
Layout .....	72
Of Color Blocks .....	102
Orientation .....	13, 219
Print Setup .....	480
Original .....	
Photograph.....	234
Original Picture.....	108
Monochrome Threshold .....	119
Other Topics.....	493

Outline .....	385	217 to 228 (Transport) .....	475
Appliqué .....	177	229 to 240 (Waves 1) .....	475
Finder and Expander .....	117	241 to 252 (Waves 2) .....	475
Outlines .....	111	25 to 36 (Standard 3) .....	474
Find for Express Embroidery .....	117	253 to 264 (Gradient) .....	473
Output Options .....	371, 392	253 to 264 (Lace) .....	473
Output Size .....	388	265 to 276 (Mosaic) .....	473
Output Size Range .....	388	37 to 48 (Animals 1) .....	472
Overlap .....		49 to 60 (Arrows) .....	472
Embroidery Project .....	220	61 to 72 (Circles 1) .....	472
Remove on Combine .....	482	73 to 84 (Circles 2) .....	472
Override Margin Width .....	483	85 to 96 (Climate) .....	472
Override Match Placement Line .....	483	97 to 108 (Diamonds) .....	472
Overview Window .....	8, 32	Motif Fill Properties .....	431, 432, 446
<b>P</b>		<b>PDF</b>	
Page .....		Fill Patterns .....	472
Edit .....	521	PDF Guides .....	4
Page Setup .....		Pennant	
Project Wizard Printing .....	224	Constraint .....	342
Pale Green Handles .....	317	Pennant Left .....	346
Panel .....		Pennant Right .....	345
Control .....	531	Pentagon .....	348
Paper .....		People — Patterns 145 to 156 .....	473
Size .....	480	Percentage Zoom .....	31
Source .....	480	Perspective .....	346
Parallel .....		Constraint .....	342
Curved Crosshatch Fill .....	437	Perspective Correction 16, 167, 192, 197, 248	
Parents .....	277, 280	Photochromic Threads .....	41
Partner .....	278	Photograph	
Partner Connectors .....	288	For PhotoStitch Wizard .....	234, 236
Parts of Software Window .....	6	Keep Original .....	234
Paste .....	94, 95	Remove Background .....	249
As Embroidery .....	95	PhotoStitch .....	243
As Stitch Block .....	95	Color .....	232, 243
Block .....	98	Color Tile .....	233
Embroidery .....	140	Linear .....	233
Paste Color .....	54	Monochrome .....	232, 243
Paste Picture .....	161, 190, 196, 245	Monochrome Linear .....	244
Paste To All .....	54	Sepia .....	232, 243
Patch Gaps in Pictures .....	109	PhotoStitch To Hoop .....	233
Pattern .....	432, 433, 470	PhotoStitch To Rectangle .....	234
Curved Crosshatch Fill .....	439	PhotoStitch Wizard .....	232–267
Fill .....	386, 471	Choose and Optimize Photographs .....	234
Fill Properties .....	426	Photographs .....	236
MultiWave Fill .....	442	Starting .....	233
Satin Area .....	455	Using .....	238
Satin Columns .....	380	<b>Pick</b>	
Shape Fill .....	447	ExpressDesign Background Color .....	122
Tapered Motifs .....	462	Thread Color .....	121
Pattern 36 .....	386	Thread Colors .....	257
Pattern 36 Satin Effect Fill .....	471	<b>Picture</b>	
Pattern Fill .....		Acquire .....	196, 245
Properties .....	386	And Thread Color List .....	257
Patterns .....		Background Wizard .....	160, 189
1 to 12 (Standard 1) .....	474	Brightness .....	50
109 to 120 (Hearts) .....	473	Choose .....	113, 195, 244
121 to 132 (Leisure 1) .....	473	Cleaning .....	108
13 to 24 (Standard 2) .....	474	Contrast .....	50
133 to 144 (Mosaic) .....	473	Crop .....	197
145 to 156 (People) .....	473	Files .....	11
157 to 168 (Plants & Flowers 1) .....	473	For PhotoStitch .....	237
169 to 180 (Polygons) .....	474	Gamma .....	50
181 to 192 (Rope & Chains) .....	474	Keep Original .....	108
193 to 204 (Squares 1) .....	474	Original .....	119
205 to 216 (Squares 2) .....	474	Paste .....	161, 190, 196, 245
		Proportions .....	108, 235

Remove Background .....	249	Find Outlines .....	118
Rotate.....	115, 247	Monochrome Threshold .....	119
Save for PhotoStitch .....	253	Quick Trace.....	128
Scan .....	114, 196, 245	Thread Color.....	123, 126, 258
Share.....	42	Previews	
Source .....	123	Choose Thread Colors.....	123
Tidying .....	235	Previous .....	394
Underexposed .....	236	Split Section.....	222
View .....	113, 195, 245	Previous Design.....	61
View for Background .....	160, 189	Previous Piece .....	180
Picture and Thread Color List.....	121	Previous Section	
Picture Options		Align To .....	228
Express Border .....	129	Previously Saved	
ExpressDesign.....	123	Background .....	158
PhotoStitch Wizard.....	252	Print.....	476, 480
Quick Trace.....	127	Information .....	477
Picture Viewer .....	195	Options.....	224
Pictures		PDF Guides.....	4
Dark Borders and Backgrounds .....	112	Preview Toolbar.....	478
For Express Border.....	111	Range .....	394, 481
For Express Embroidery.....	110	Setup .....	480
For Express Trace.....	111	To File .....	481
For ExpressDesign Wizard.....	108	Print Catalog	
Formats.....	196, 245	QuickFont .....	396
Patch Gaps.....	109	Print Preview	
Stippled .....	112	Toolbar.....	478
Piece		Print Sheet.....	186
Delete.....	181	Print to File	
Pre-cut .....	130, 199	QuickFont .....	394
Pre-placed .....	130, 199	Printed Worksheet	
Pixel-Thin Lines .....	123	And Hoop Templates.....	227
Place Individual.....	202	Printer.....	481
Placement		Print Setup .....	480
Appliqué .....	130, 198	QuickFont Wizard .....	393
Placement Line		Printing .....	476
Match .....	131, 187, 199, 384	Project	
Plants & Flowers 1 — Patterns 157 to 168	473	Save .....	222
Play Demo.....	41	Save Embroidery.....	222
Play My Demo .....	41	Save Sections .....	223
Point		Stitch Out and Align Split Sections .....	226
Nearest.....	389	Project-in-the-Hoop	
QuickFont Joining.....	389	Wizard .....	298
Secure .....	465	Project-in-the-Hoop Wizard .....	298
Point to Point		Properties	
Tiles.....	266	Change Frame.....	413, 414
Pointers.....	9	Change Letter .....	351
Polygon		Change SuperDesign .....	403
Select.....	60, 100	Curved Crosshatch Fill .....	437
Polygons — Patterns 169 to 180 .....	474	Double Stitch .....	466
PopUp Thread Description.....	364	Editable .....	424
Position		Font.....	424
Encore .....	77, 80	Letter .....	349
Pre-cut Piece .....	130, 199, 383	Motif Fill .....	431
Preferences.....	482	Motif Line.....	469
Preferred Stitch Type		Parallel Fill.....	435
Express Embroidery .....	125	Pattern Fill .....	386
PREMIER+ Configure.....	85	Print Setup .....	480
Show Measurements.....	33, 94	Printer .....	481
PREMIER+ Embroidery Extra Features.....	2	QuickFont .....	394
Pre-placed Piece.....	130, 199, 384	Running Stitch .....	464
Prev Page		Satin Area .....	455
Print Preview.....	478	Satin Border .....	468
Preview .....	394	Stitch .....	424
Design .....	263	Triple Stitch .....	467
Endless Embroidery .....	85	Uniform and Non-Uniform .....	424
Express Border .....	130	Proportional.....	432, 433, 470

Curved Crosshatch Fill.....	440
MultiWave Fill.....	443
Shape Fill.....	448
Tapered Motifs.....	463
Proportional Shapes.....	204
Proportions	
Picture.....	108, 235
Puffy Foam.....	46, 47
<b>Q</b>	
Quality	
Video.....	43
Quick Color Theme.....	46
Add.....	53
Delete.....	54
Edit.....	54
Quick Color Themes.....	52
Quick Colors	
Theme.....	53
Quick Reference Guide.....	504
QuickFont.....	357
Wizard.....	370–394, 395
QuickLink	
Toolbar.....	530
QuickTrace	
Constant Width Satin.....	126
Heavy.....	126
Light.....	126
Method.....	126
Quilt Block	
Background.....	157, 158
Rotate and Crop Picture.....	163
Select Size.....	138
Shape.....	146, 151
Style.....	137
Wizard.....	136–149
QuiltStipple Fill Options.....	453
<b>R</b>	
Ramp.....	348
Range	
Draw.....	104
Print.....	394, 481
Thread.....	51
Readme.....	4
Real Size.....	31
Background.....	157, 168, 193
Color Tone.....	51
Find Outlines.....	118
Real Size%.....	394
Realistic 3D.....	29
Recently Used Embroideries.....	17
Rectangle	
PhotoStitch To.....	234
Rectangle Fit To.....	107
Red Eye Removal.....	236, 252
Red Green Blue (RGB) Color Model.....	55
Redo.....	72
Reduce Thick Lines.....	123
Reference Guide.....	3, 504
Remove	
Background.....	249
Corners.....	80
Last Bead.....	211
Overlap When Combining.....	482
Parts of Background.....	110
Parts of Photograph.....	235
Photograph Background.....	249
Red Eye.....	236, 252
Remove a point from curve.....	341
Remove Background.....	34, 156
Remove From Selection.....	61, 101
Repeat	
Embroidery.....	76
Repeat Embroidery	
Endless.....	84
Repeats	
Encore.....	81, 422
Number.....	81
Replace Selection.....	60, 100
Reset	
Number of Colors.....	120
Thread Colors.....	256
Resize.....	66
Blue Handles.....	98
Fit To Wavy Line Lettering.....	338
Monogram.....	317
Square Handles.....	57
Restrict Groups.....	63
Reverse.....	351, 432, 433, 470
Curved Crosshatch Fill.....	440
Letters Box.....	514
MultiWave Fill.....	443
Shape Fill.....	448
RGB.....	55
Right	
Align.....	70
Right Taper.....	469, 471
Right/Top	
Endless Marker.....	84
Right-Click	
Encore.....	82
Rocket.....	348
Rope & Chains — Patterns 181 to 192.....	474
Rotate	
45 Degrees.....	68
Handle.....	57
Letter Properties.....	351
Picture.....	115, 247
Rotate 45.....	143
Rotate and Crop Picture Page.....	115
Rotate Picture	
Load Picture Wizard.....	197
Rotation	
Angle.....	69
Block Angle.....	101
Free.....	67
Move Center.....	68
Rounded.....	343
Rounded Corners	
Border.....	315, 419
Echo Fill.....	444
Running Stitch	
Connection.....	331
Connector.....	221
Properties.....	464
Running Stitch - Stop - Double Stitch - Stop - Satin.....	199
Running Stitch Length.....	199
<b>S</b>	
Sample	
Fill Patterns Guide.....	472

Sample Files .....	4	Polygon .....	60, 100
Sample Guides .....	4	Single Stitches .....	96
Samples of SuperDesigns .....	516	Select All	
Satin .....	380	Rotate and Crop Picture .....	116
Appliqué .....	130, 199, 384	Select All Visible .....	100
Border Monogram .....	321	Select Decoration .....	205
Density .....	388	Select Eye .....	236
Embroidery On .....	427, 450, 468	Select Fabric .....	182, 420
Express Embroidery .....	125	Select Fill Pattern .....	144
Feathered .....	459	Quilt Block .....	152
QuickTrace Constant Width .....	126	Select Font .....	370, 373
Tiles .....	266	Select Piece .....	180
Width .....	388	Select Quilt Block Style .....	137
Satin Area Properties .....	455	Select Shape .....	143
Satin Border .....	382	Quilt Block .....	152
Properties .....	388	Select Size	
Satin Border Properties .....	468	Quilt Block Wizard .....	138
Satin Density		Word Sculpt .....	292
Tiles .....	266	Word Sculpt Wizard .....	292
Satin Effect		Select Style .....	400
Pattern Fill .....	386	Selected	
Satin Effect Fill .....	471	Combine .....	74
Satin Underlay .....	388	Selected Designs	
Saturation .....	55, 240	Grouping .....	62
Color .....	253	Selection	
Save .....	18	Box .....	57
All Embroidery Sections .....	223, 230	Font .....	329
Embroideries .....	18	Hoop .....	12
Embroidery .....	222	Sensitivity	
Picture for PhotoStitch .....	253	Express Border .....	129
Project .....	222	Picture Options .....	123
Project Sections .....	223	Quick Trace .....	127
Split Project Embroidery .....	230	Sepia	
Save As .....	18	PhotoStitch Embroidery .....	232, 243
Monogram .....	322	Sepia PhotoStitch	
Save On Close or Exit .....	19	Photographs .....	237
Scale .....	66	Sequin .....	201
Design .....	477	Sequin Snow .....	210
White Handles .....	98	Set Background	
Scan		Name .....	169, 194
Picture for Background .....	161, 190	Set Size	
Scan Depth .....	241, 261	Background .....	168, 193
Scan Picture .....	114, 196, 245	Set Stitch Options .....	370, 378
Scanner .....	196, 245	Settings .....	37
Search		Monogram .....	322
Font .....	328, 354	Setup	
SuperDesign .....	399	Print .....	480
Second Color .....	48	Shape	
Section		Encore .....	79
Align to Previous .....	228	Letter Properties .....	351
Project .....	218	Quilt Block .....	146, 151, 152
Stitch Out and Align .....	226	Shape Fill Options .....	446
Stitching Out the First .....	227	Shape Options	
Secure Points .....	465	Encore .....	79
Select		Shapes	
All .....	59	Proportional .....	204
Block of Stitches .....	97	Shape Fill .....	446
Box .....	59, 99	Share Picture .....	42
Color .....	120, 256, 531	Share Video .....	42
Embroidery .....	57	Shortcuts on the Desktop .....	5
Embroidery to Edit .....	98	Show	
Eye .....	253	Measurements .....	199, 200
Font .....	283	Show Design Panel .....	35
Freehand .....	59, 99	Show Divider	
Multiple .....	58	Fabric Background .....	166, 191
None .....	60, 100		

Show Measurements in PREMIER+ Configure33, 94	
Show Stitches .....	102
Side Pieces .....	408
Side to Side	
Tiles .....	266
Similar	
Group .....	81
Single Color Gradient .....	427, 457
Single Stitch	
Endless Marker .....	83
Single Stitches	
Delete .....	96
Edit .....	96
Select and Edit .....	96
Size .....	470
Constraint .....	341
Curved Crosshatch Fill .....	440
Font .....	512
Hoop .....	218
Letter Properties .....	350
Lettering .....	330
Monogram .....	310
MultiWave Fill .....	443
Paper .....	480
Shape Fill .....	448
SuperDesign .....	400, 403, 414
Slide .....	348
Slider Bars .....	105
Slope .....	347
Small	
Eraser .....	250
Letter .....	308, 312
Letter Options .....	320
Letter Size .....	304, 312
Small Letters	
Alternative Style .....	312
Identical Style .....	312
Social Media Picture42, 44, 115, 161, 190, 196, 246	
Software Window .....	6
Solar Reactive .....	41
Source	
Picture .....	123
Spacing	
Contour Fill .....	454
Curved Crosshatch Fill .....	437
Echo Fill .....	445
Lettering .....	332, 351
Monogram .....	311, 322
QuiltStipple Fill .....	453
Special Characters	
Enter .....	335, 532
Keystrokes .....	4
Not Available in Font .....	334
Special Fonts .....	330, 350
Specks	
Linear PhotoStitch .....	239
PhotoStitch .....	249
Speed	
Video .....	43
Spelling .....	482
Check .....	335, 482
Spiral	
Linear PhotoStitch .....	260
Spiral Fill Options .....	450
Split	
Embroidery .....	218
Intelligent .....	220
Method .....	220
Multipart Hoops .....	22
Project Wizard .....	216
Straight Line .....	220
Split Project	
ColorSort .....	73
Wizard .....	216-228
Split Sections	
Stitch Out and Align .....	226
Square	
Curved Crosshatch Fill .....	437
Resize Handles .....	57
Tile Shape .....	265
Square Corners	
Echo Fill .....	444
Squares 1 — Patterns 193 to 204 .....	474
Squares 2 — Patterns 205 to 216 .....	474
Stabilizers .....	227
Standard	
Color Box Tab .....	55
Encore .....	77, 80
Standard 1 — Patterns 1 to 12 .....	474
Standard 2 — Patterns 13 to 24 .....	474
Standard 3 — Patterns 25 to 36 .....	474
Standard 3D View .....	29
Standard Appliqué .....	130, 199, 383
Standard Density .....	427
Start	
PhotoStitch Wizard .....	233
Start Menu .....	5
Start Point .....	468, 471
Starting PREMIER+ Embroidery .....	5
Status Bar .....	8, 530
Step .....	351
Letter Page .....	514
Stiffeners .....	227
Stippled Pictures .....	112
Stitch .....	434, 470
Alignment .....	220, 230
Colors .....	391
Constant Count .....	66
Contour Fill .....	454
Count8, 35, 125, 127, 129, 145, 262, 264, 267, 295	
Curved Crosshatch Fill .....	440
Jump .....	221
Length .....	385
MultiWave Fill .....	443
Options .....	263
Paste Block .....	95
QuiltStipple Fill .....	453
Running .....	221, 331
Shape Fill .....	448
Type .....	378
Stitch Angle	
Tiles .....	266
Stitch Count .....	531
Stitch Length	
Curved Crosshatch Fill .....	438
Double .....	200
Running .....	199
Stitch Options .....	378
Color Tile .....	265

Quick Trace.....	127
Stitch Out	
Appliqué Frame.....	333, 334, 405, 410
Endless Embroidery .....	89
First Section .....	227
Order .....	226
Split Sections.....	226
Stitch Properties	
Double .....	466
Running .....	464
Triple.....	467
Stitch Type	
Border Options .....	419
Curved Crosshatch Fill.....	438
Express Embroidery .....	125
Full Letter .....	311
Options.....	124
Word Sculpt .....	293
Stitches	
Align With Corner or Baste .....	228
Align With No Alignment.....	228
Delete Single .....	96
Draw All .....	105
Edit .....	45
Edit Single.....	96
Hide and Show .....	102
Insert .....	97
Removing Strays .....	249
Select and Edit Single.....	96
Select Block.....	97
Traveling Around Outside of Fill Area.....	428
Stop.....	104
Appliqué.....	130, 199, 384
Insert .....	103
Straight .....	340
QuiltStipple Fill .....	453
Straight Line Split.....	220
Stray Stitches	
Removing .....	249
Stretch Picture.....	116, 167, 192, 197
Style .....	373
Curved Crosshatch Fill.....	437
Echo Fill .....	444
Font.....	310, 313
Monogram .....	308
QuiltStipple Fill .....	453
Sunlight	
Light Reaction .....	41
SuperDesign .....	398
Create .....	398
Different Colors.....	404
Encore .....	407
Fix as Embroidery .....	406
Properties .....	424
Search .....	399
Size .....	400, 403, 414
Tab.....	516
SuperDesign Effects.....	400
SuperDesign Properties.....	402
Change .....	403
SuperDesigns	
Encore .....	407
Super-Extended Character Set.....	374
Surname .....	278
Symbol Fonts .....	330, 350
System installed font .....	355

## T

Tab	
Encore .....	511
Letter .....	512
SuperDesign .....	516
Tab Key.....	57
Tapered Ends .....	388, 468, 471
Tapered Motifs .....	462
Technical Information .....	4, 478
Template	
Hoop.....	227
Stitch Out.....	227
Use 2D.....	226
Terms and Conventions .....	9
Test Stitch Out of Endless Embroidery.....	89
Texture	
Endless Embroidery .....	85
Theme .....	46
Colors .....	54
Name .....	54
Quick Color .....	52
Quick Colors.....	53
Thick Fabric .....	427, 450, 468
Thick Lines.....	123
Thread	
Change .....	121
Highlight.....	364
Photochromic .....	41
PopUp Description .....	364
Thread Color	
Change .....	45, 257, 320, 321
Choose New .....	55
Express Border .....	129
Linear PhotoStitch.....	260
Monochrome .....	260
Preview .....	123, 126, 258
Quick Trace.....	127
Thread Colors .....	45
Choose .....	120, 256
Thread Effects	
2D View .....	30
Modify Tab .....	47
Thread Range	
Conversion .....	51
Threshold	
Monochrome .....	118
Thumbnail	
Embroidery .....	229
Name .....	170, 229
Thumbnail Name .....	17
Tidying	
Picture.....	235
Tie Off	
Endless Marker .....	83
Tile	
Color Embroidery .....	233
Tile Colors	
Choose Thread.....	265
Tile PhotoStitch .....	244
Tile Shape .....	265
Tiles	
Width.....	265
Title Bar .....	6
Tone	
Color.....	50
Toolbar	

Main .....	529
Print Preview.....	478
QuickLink.....	530
Toolbars .....	529
Tools	
Alignment.....	70
Tooltips .....	4
Top	
Align .....	71
Trace	
Express.....	106
Express Options.....	126
Options.....	127
Transport — Patterns 217 to 228 .....	475
Traveling Stitches	
Around Outside of Fill Area .....	428
Triangular Flip Handles .....	57
Trim	
Lettering.....	331
Triple Stitch Properties.....	467
Troubleshooting.....	484
TrueType® Symbol Fonts.....	330, 350
Tutorials .....	4
Twin Needle .....	47
Size .....	48
Twitter11, 38, 41, 42, 115, 161, 190, 196, 239, 246	
Two Page	
Print Preview.....	478
Type	
Background.....	158
Encore .....	77
<b>U</b>	
UC Uppercase Font.....	334
Underexposed Pictures.....	236
Underlay.....	427, 468
Edge Walk.....	468
Express Embroidery .....	125
Pattern Fill.....	387
Satin .....	388
Satin Area.....	455, 457
Satin Columns .....	380
Undo.....	72
Background Removal .....	250
Undo and Redo.....	72
Ungroup.....	63
Uniform and Non-Uniform Properties.....	424
Units of Measurement.....	478
Uppercase Font UC.....	334
Use	
2D Template.....	226
Other Alignment Aids .....	227
Use Motif 2.....	432
Use Motifs	
MultiWave Fill .....	441
Shape Fill.....	446
User generated font.....	355
User's Guide .....	3
Using	
Appliqué .....	176
Backgrounds.....	155, 185
Decorations.....	201
Using and Adjusting Decorations .....	210
Using Decorations .....	501
Using Design Player .....	502

Using Groups.....	62
Using the Project-in-the-Hoop Wizard.....	298

## V

Vertical	
Alignment.....	71
Vertical Block	
Lettering Shapes .....	339
Vertical Flip.....	142
Vertical Hoop with Fabric Moving Up .....	87
Vertically	
Distribute.....	71
Flip Block.....	69
Video	
Share .....	42
Video Information.....	43
Video Title.....	43
View	
2D .....	30
3D .....	29
Embroideries .....	29
Embroidery Project .....	222
Life.....	39
Menu .....	523
Picture.....	195, 245
Picture for Background.....	160, 189
Project Next Section.....	230
Project Previous Section .....	230
Realistic 3D.....	29
Selected Colors.....	102
Standard 3D.....	29
View and Print PDF Guides.....	4
View Picture .....	113
Viewer	
Load Picture.....	196, 245
Picture.....	195
Visible	
Select All .....	100
VP4 .....	11
<b>W</b>	
Waves 1 — Patterns 229 to 240 .....	475
Waves 2 — Patterns 241 to 252 .....	475
Western 1 Character Set .....	375
Western 2 Character Set .....	375
Western 3 Character Set .....	375
Western 4 Character Set .....	375
Wheel Mouse Zoom.....	31
Where to Start .....	5
White	
Handles Scale.....	66
White Handles for Scale.....	98
WIA.....	114, 161, 190, 196, 245
Width .....	468, 531
Frame .....	413, 414
Full Letter.....	310
Satin.....	388
Tiles .....	265
Width %	
Modify Block.....	522
Width and Height .....	432, 433, 470
Curved Crosshatch Fill .....	440
Letter Options.....	330
Letter Properties .....	350
MultiWave Fill .....	443
Shape Fill.....	448
SuperDesign.....	400, 403, 414

Tapered Motifs .....	463
Window	
Overview .....	8, 32
Window Parts .....	6
Windows Image Acquisition .....	114
Windows® 8 Start Screen .....	5
Windows® Explorer .....	17
Wizard	
Background .....	155–170, 185–194
Choose and Optimize Photographs	234
Choose and Optimize Pictures for	
ExpressDesign .....	108
ExpressDesign .....	106–135
ExpressMonogram .....	301–325
Family Tree .....	273–289
PhotoStitch .....	232
Project-in-the-Hoop .....	298
QuickFont .....	370–394, 395
Quilt Block .....	136–149
Split Project .....	216–228
Word Sculpt .....	292–??
Wizards	
Menu .....	510
Word Sculpt	
Select Outline .....	292
Wizard .....	292–??
Work Area .....	7
Worksheet	
Color .....	45, 102
Project Wizard .....	224
Split Project Wizard .....	231
Worksheets .....	224

And Hoop Templates .....	227
--------------------------	-----

<b>Y</b>	
YouTube .....	11, 38, 41, 42, 44
<b>Z</b>	
Zigzag .....	347
Zigzag Underlay	
Satin Columns .....	380
Zoom .....	40
Border Options .....	316
By Percentage .....	31
Choose Thread Color .....	261
Choose Thread Colors .....	258
Choose Thread Colors Tiles .....	267
Color Tone .....	51
Commands .....	30
Find Outlines .....	117
PhotoStitch Options .....	263
Picture Options .....	253, 255
Remove Background .....	250
Rotate and Crop Picture .....	198
Rotate Picture .....	248
Save Embroidery Project .....	222
Wheel Mouse .....	31
Zoom Bar .....	32, 85, 308, 311, 313, 316
Word Sculpt .....	293
Zoom In .....	30
Print Preview .....	479
Zoom Out	
Print Preview .....	479
Zoom To Fit .....	31